contents
## CONTENTS

### INTRODUCTION

- Contents 5
- Vision, Mission & Values 6
- Principal Officers 7
- The Almanac 8

### GENERAL INFORMATION

- Historical Note 10
- The University Organisation 11
- Student Financial Procedures 12
- Schedule of Fees 13
- Student Admissions 14
- General Academic Regulations 14
- General Education Courses 21
- Regulations for Awards & Fellowships 22
- Examination Regulations 27
- Academic Appeals and Procedures 28

### FACULTY OF BUSINESS

- Department of Accounting & Finance 32
- Department of Management 34
- Department of Marketing 37

### FACULTY OF EDUCATION

- Department of Adult Education 40
- Department of Educational Foundations 42
- Department of Educational Technology 61
- Department of Home Economics Education 61
- Department of Languages & Social Sciences Education 62
- Department of Mathematics & Science Education 64
- Department of Physical Education 69
- Department of Primary Education 70

### FACULTY OF ENGINEERING & TECHNOLOGY

- Certificate and Diploma Programmes Unit 81
- Department of Architecture and Planning 87
- Department of Civil Engineering 89
- Department of Electrical Engineering 95
- Department of Industrial Design & Technology 97
- Department of Mechanical Engineering 99
- Course Listings 101

### FACULTY OF HEALTH SCIENCES

- Department of Environmental Health 129
- School of Medicine 130
- Department of Nursing Education 131
- Course Listings 133

### FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

- Department of African Languages & Literature 138
- Department of English 139
- Department of French 143
- Department of History 145
- Department of Library & Information Studies 149
- Department of Media Studies 153
- Department of Theology & Religious Studies 154
- Course Listings 157

### FACULTY OF SCIENCE

- Department of Biological Sciences 175
- Department of Chemistry 176
- Department of Computer Science 178
- Department of Environmental Science 181
- Department of Geology 186
- Department of Mathematics 188
- Department of Physics 191
- Course Listings 193

### FACULTY OF SOCIAL SCIENCES

- Department of Economics 205
- Department of Law 206
- Department of Political & Administrative Studies 210
- Department of Population Studies 215
- Department of Psychology 217
- Department of Social Work 219
- Department of Sociology 221
- Department of Statistics 223
- Course Listings 228

### UNIVERSITY ACT AND STATUTES

- House Rules and Regulations 234
vision

To be a leading centre of academic excellence in Africa and the world.

mission

The Mission of the University of Botswana is to improve economic and social conditions for the Nation while advancing itself as a distinctively African university with a regional and international outlook.
To achieve its Vision and fulfill its Mission, the University of Botswana values the following:

- **Students** by creating a holistic environment which ensures that learning is their central focus, and by establishing and developing a range of learning, social, cultural and recreational opportunities that will facilitate the full realisation of their potential for academic and personal growth.
- **Staff** by fostering a University community through encouraging, supporting, developing and empowering all individuals and groups to achieve the University’s Goals.
- **Academic freedom** by upholding the spirit of free and critical thought and enquiry, through the tolerance of a diversity of beliefs and understanding, as well as the open exchange of ideas and knowledge.
- **Academic integrity** expressed in creativity, objective analysis, experimentation, critical appraisal, independent thought, informed debate and intellectual honesty.
- **Cultural authenticity** by ensuring that the diversity of Botswana’s individual values and cultural heritage forms an important part of the academic and organisational life of the institution and reflects its distinctiveness as an African university.
- **Internationalism** through participation in the global world of scholarship, by being receptive and responsive to issues within the international environment as well as the recruitment of an international staff and student body.
- **Professional and ethical standards** by upholding the highest professional and ethical behaviour and through openness, honesty, tolerance and respect for the individual.
- **Social responsibility** by promoting an awareness of, and providing leadership in responding to, the issues and problems facing society.
- **Equity** by ensuring equal opportunity and non-discrimination on the basis of personal, ethnic, religious, gender or other social characteristics.
- **Autonomy** as an institution that is, through its self-governing structures, independent in action while being responsive to societal needs.
- **Public accountability** by ensuring transparent decision-making and open review as well as the full participation of stakeholders in the development of the institution.
- **Productivity** through the setting and rewarding of high standards of performance underpinned by a dedication to quality, efficiency and effectiveness throughout the institution.
- **Environmental Sustainability** by deepening awareness and ensuring environmental issues are incorporated into student learning and teaching and research, the development of environmentally sustainable campuses and through contributing to the environmental sustainability agenda in Botswana and beyond.

Specifically, the University will:

- Provide excellence in the delivery of learning to ensure society is provided with talented, creative and confident graduates.
- Advance knowledge and understanding through excellence in research and its application.
- Improve economic and social development by high impact engagement with business, the professions, government and civil society.

Values

To achieve its Vision and fulfill its Mission, the University of Botswana values the following:

- **Students** by creating a holistic environment which ensures that learning is their central focus, and by establishing and developing a range of learning, social, cultural and recreational opportunities that will facilitate the full realisation of their potential for academic and personal growth.
- **Staff** by fostering a University community through encouraging, supporting, developing and empowering all individuals and groups to achieve the University’s Goals.
- **Academic freedom** by upholding the spirit of free and critical thought and enquiry, through the tolerance of a diversity of beliefs and understanding, as well as the open exchange of ideas and knowledge.

University of Botswana Principal Officers

- **Chancellor** Sir Q. K. J. Masire
- **Chairman of Council** Mr E. W. M. J. Legwaila
- **Vice Chancellor** Prof. B. K. Otlhogile
- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Student Affairs) Prof. L. Nyati - Ramahobo
- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Academic Affairs) Prof. L. Nyati - Ramahobo
- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Finance & Administration) Mr D. B. Katzke

- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Academic Affairs) Prof. L. Nyati - Ramahobo
- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Finance & Administration) Mr D. B. Katzke

- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Academic Affairs) Prof. L. Nyati - Ramahobo
- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Finance & Administration) Mr D. B. Katzke

- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Academic Affairs) Prof. L. Nyati - Ramahobo
- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Finance & Administration) Mr D. B. Katzke

- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Academic Affairs) Prof. L. Nyati - Ramahobo
- **Deputy Vice Chancellor** (Finance & Administration) Mr D. B. Katzke
## semester one 2009

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event/Date</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee</td>
<td>2 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University Research Committee</td>
<td>9 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Registration Period</td>
<td>6-10 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University Research Committee</td>
<td>9 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Classes Begin</td>
<td>13 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Last Day of Late Registration</td>
<td>17 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Last Day to Add a Course</td>
<td>17 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Last Day to Drop a Course</td>
<td>24 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University Research Committee</td>
<td>16 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open registration ends for undergraduate Students</td>
<td>8 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>President’s Day</td>
<td>20 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Holiday</td>
<td>21 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Students Orientation and Registration (New Undergraduate)</td>
<td>15-24 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrival and Registration (All continuing Students)</td>
<td>27-31 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registration (Graduate students)</td>
<td>27th July to 31 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDE Registration Period</td>
<td>28 July-31 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDE New Students Orientation</td>
<td>31 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Graduate Student Orientation</td>
<td>30 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library Orientation for DDE New Students (Graduate students)</td>
<td>30 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE, DNGOM, DYD Residential Session 1</td>
<td>1-5 August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Degrees-DE Introductory Session (All Levels)</td>
<td>1-2 August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faculty Executive Committees</td>
<td>3-4 August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classes Begin</td>
<td>3 August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late Registration and Course Add/Drop Period Begins</td>
<td>3 August</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## semester two 2010

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event/Date</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>University Reopens</td>
<td>4 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faculty Executive Committees</td>
<td>4-5 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registration Period</td>
<td>5-8 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDE Registration Period</td>
<td>6-8 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee</td>
<td>7 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE, DNGOM, DYD Residential Session 1</td>
<td>9-10 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Degrees-DE Introductory Session (levels 1-5)</td>
<td>9-10 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classes Begin</td>
<td>11 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late Registration and Course Add/Drop Period Begins</td>
<td>11 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Sciences Faculty Board</td>
<td>11 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health Sciences Faculty Board</td>
<td>12 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senate Executive Committee</td>
<td>13 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Faculty Board</td>
<td>13 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education Faculty Board</td>
<td>14 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Day of Late Registration</td>
<td>15 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Day to Add a Course</td>
<td>15 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCE Board</td>
<td>15 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FET Faculty Board</td>
<td>18 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humanities Faculty Board</td>
<td>19 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science Faculty Board</td>
<td>20 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School of Graduate Studies Board</td>
<td>21 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Day to Drop a Course</td>
<td>22 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centre for Academic Dev Board</td>
<td>25 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tender Committee Meeting</td>
<td>28 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee</td>
<td>4 February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University Research Committee</td>
<td>5 February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finance &amp; Audit Committee Meeting</td>
<td>4-5 February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Degrees-DE (levels 3, 4, 5) Residential Session 1</td>
<td>6-7 February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Degrees-DE (levels 1-2) Residential Session 1</td>
<td>13-14 February*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senate</td>
<td>17 February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Degrees-DE Test 1 (Levels, 3, 4, 5)</td>
<td>20-21 February*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid-Semester Break Begins</td>
<td>22 February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Committee Meeting</td>
<td>25 February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Degrees-DE Test 1 (Levels 1, 2)</td>
<td>27-28 February*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE, DNGOM, DYD Residential Session 2 &amp; Test</td>
<td>1-5 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classes Resume</td>
<td>1 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Classes Resume</td>
<td>2 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee</td>
<td>4 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Council</td>
<td>5 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Degrees-DE (levels 3, 4, 5)</td>
<td>6-7 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residential Session 2</td>
<td>7-8 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Degree-DE (level 1-5)</td>
<td>8 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residential Session 2</td>
<td>9 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science Faculty Board</td>
<td>10 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Sciences Faculty Board</td>
<td>11 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health Sciences Faculty Board</td>
<td>12 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Faculty Board</td>
<td>12 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education Faculty Board</td>
<td>13-14 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semester 1 Class Schedule Information Due</td>
<td>15 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Degrees-DE (levels 1-2)</td>
<td>16 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residential Session 2</td>
<td>16 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCE Board</td>
<td>17th September</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DAE, DNGOM, DYD Residential Session 2 & Test  
Mid-Semester Break Begins
Tender Committee Meeting
Classes Resume
Semester 2 Class Schedule Information Due
Botswana Day
Public Holiday
University Research Committee
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee
Graduation Ceremony
Senate
Business Degrees-DE Residential Session 2 (Level 3, 4, 5)
Social Science Faculty Board
Health Sciences Faculty Board
Business Faculty Board
Education Faculty Board
Finance & Audit Committee Meeting
FET Faculty Board
Business Degrees-DE Residential Session 2 (1, 2)
CCE Board
Humanities Faculty Board
School of Graduate Studies Board
Tender Committee Meeting
Science Faculty Board
Business Degrees-DE Test 2 (Level 3, 4, 5)
Centre for Academic Dev Board
21-25 Sept
21 September
24 September
28 September
28 September
30 September
1 October
2 October
8 October
10 October
14 October
17-18 October
19 October
20 October
21 October
22 October
23 October
23 October
24-25 October
26 October
27 October
28 October
29 October
29 October
31 Oct - 1 Nov
2nd November
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee
DAE, DNGOM, DYD Residential Session 3
Tender Committee Meeting
Final Examination Period Begins
DAE, DNGOM, DYD Examination Days
Business Degrees –DE Test 2 (Level 1, 2)
DABS Classes End
Business Degrees –DE Examination Days
Open Registration for Semester 2
Last Day of Classes
Council
Reading Days
(DA) (No classes , Assessments , Examinations Held)
Business Degrees-DE Residential 3
(Last 1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
17-18 October
DAE, DNGOM DYD Residential Session 3
Final Examination Period Begins
DAE, DNGOM, DYD Examination Days
Business Degrees-DE Examination
Tender Committee Meeting
Final Examination Period Ends
Semester 1 Ends
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee
Departmental Boards of Examiners/CCE Examiners Board
Tender Committee Meeting
Faculty Boards
Final Grades due by 6 p.m.
Senate Executive Committee
All Final Grades Published
University closes for Christmas
5 November
6 November
7-8, 14-15 November
9-20 November
13 November
13 November
14-15 November
14-15 November
16-17 November
16 November
18-20 November
23-30 November
26 November
27 November
27 November
3 December
7-11 December
10 December
9-14 December
14 December
15 December
15 December
16 December

FET Faculty Board
Humanities Faculty Board
School of Graduate Studies
Business Degrees-DE Test 2 (Levels 3, 4, 5)
Centre for Academic Dev Board
Tender Committee Meeting
Business Degrees-DE Test 2 (Levels 1, 2)
University Research Committee
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee
Good Friday (Public Holiday)
Easter Monday (Public Holiday)
Open Registration for Semester 1 Begins
Senate
Last Day of Classes
Readings Days (No Classes, Assessments and Examinations Held)
Business Degrees-DE (Levels 3, 4, 5)
Residential Session 3
Final Examination Period Begins
DAE, DNGOM, DYD Residential Session 3
DAE, DNGOM, DYD Examination Session
Business Degrees-DE (Levels 1-2)
Residential Session 3
Tender Committee Meeting
Final Examination Period Ends
Semester 2 Ends
16 March
17 March
18 March
20-21 March
22nd March
25 March
27-28 March
27 March
1 April
2 April
5 April
12 April
14 April
16 April
17-18 April
17-18 April
19 April
19-20 April
21-25 April
24-25 April
29 April
30 April
30 April
1 May
3 May
3-7 May
5-6, 12-13 May
6 May
12-14 May
12-18 May
14 May
18 May
19 May
20 May
27 May
2 June
3 June
4 June
7 June
9 June
12 June
24 June
1 July
8 July
15 July
19 July
20 July
23 July
Historical Note
The opening of the University of Basutoland, Bechuanaland and Swaziland (UBBS) on January 1st 1964 was the outcome of an agreement reached in mid-1962 between the High Commission Territories and the Oblate of Mary Immaculate of Pius XII Catholic University, Roma, Lesotho. Pius XII College of Roma, 35 kilometres from Maseru, was itself the product of the desire for an institution of higher learning for Africans by the Catholic hierarchy in Southern Africa. It opened its doors to students in 1946, with five students and five priest-lecturers. In 1950, it was taken over by the Catholic Order of the Oblate of Mary Immaculate. By 1963 there were 180 students, both men and women, and several buildings, including a science block, refectory, administration complex and workshops. Courses followed at Pius XII College were taught and examined under a special relationship entered into in 1955 with the University of South Africa, which awarded students its degrees and diplomas in Arts, Science, Commerce and Education. Pius XII College experienced difficulties over finance for the expanding institution and over racial restrictions on student residence required by the University of South Africa. Negotiations with the High Commission Territories to transform the University College into a fully fledged University were therefore initiated during 1962. On June 13, 1963, a deed of cession and indemnity was signed by the Oblates and the High Commissioner of Basutoland, Bechuanaland and Swaziland. The new University, with Ford Foundation and British Government funds, purchased the assets of the Roma Campus for an indemnity of half of its value, in exchange for guarantees of a continuing Catholic presence on the campus. UBBS became UBLs (The University of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland) in 1966 on the Independence of Botswana and Lesotho. From a total of 188 students in 1964, the University grew to 402 students in 1970, of whom 145 were from Lesotho, with lesser numbers from Swaziland, Botswana, Rhodesia, South Africa and elsewhere. UBLs conferred its first degrees in April 1st 1967 after a transitional period during which the former Pius XII College students continued to take University of South Africa degrees. UBLs offered its own four-year undergraduate degrees and diplomas in Arts (including Economics and Administration), Science and Education, with Law students following a five-year degree, including two years tuition at the University of Edinburgh. Students seeking specialised degrees in Medicine, Engineering, etc, proceeded to other universities after completing Part I (Years 1 and 2) studies in Science. The number of academic staff grew from 31 in 1964 to 78 in 1970. Staff were recruited from many countries, but the University pursued an active localisation policy from 1971. UBLs was equally funded by the Governments of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland, but had comparatively little presence in Botswana and Swaziland in the first phase of its existence during 1964–1970. The only substantial ‘devolution’ of UBLs from Roma Campus came towards the end of this phase of University development and was the association of the Swaziland Agricultural College of Luyeng with the University, as the Swaziland Agricultural College and University Centre. This College, built for the Swaziland Government with Oxfam and ‘Freedom from Hunger’ funds, had been opened in 1966. In 1970, the Swaziland Government agreed to hand over the College to UBLs, together with the Research Division of the Ministry of Agriculture and its experimental station at Malkerns near Luyeng. From 1972, these together constituted a new Faculty of Agriculture. In Botswana, the UBLs presence was limited to the energies of the Division of Extra Mural Services and the School of Education, and a small Short-Course Centre built during 1969. With independence, the three countries began to take a closer look at the colonial inheritance of education, including their joint University, and began to identify the role of UBLs in higher and middle-level training. A series of academic planning reports for UBLs produced after 1966 culminated in the second Alexander Report of 1970, which combined, ‘The major recommendations of previous reports for the development of university campuses in each country and the unified development of higher education and vocational and teacher training’. The report recommended that Part I studies begin
in Botswana and Swaziland, with eventual division of Part II (Year 2 and 4) studies among the campuses, and the consideration of ‘polytechnic’ arrangements for technical and vocational courses. The second Alexander Report was accepted by the University and by the Governments of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland, at a meeting in October 1970, on the Luyengo campus. It heralded the second phase (1971-1976) of UBLS development. Plans were immediately drawn up to spend about one million Rand for campus development in each of the three countries. In Botswana and Swaziland there were to be campuses respectively within the capital of Gaborone, and at Kwaluseni adjacent to the national high school of Matsapha. Funds were obtained from the United States, British, Canada, Danish and Netherlands Governments as well as from the Governments of UBLS countries, the Anglo American Corporation and other bodies. Teaching of Part I began and temporary accommodation at Gaborone and Kwaluseni campuses became fully operational in 1973. In Swaziland, the William Pitcher and Nazarene Teacher Training Colleges were affiliated to the local university centre, as were the Francistown, Lobatse and Serowe Teacher Training Colleges in Botswana. Plans for specialised Part II and professional studies on each campus were dramatically advanced by the devolution of Part II Humanities teaching at Gaborone and Kwaluseni, as well as Roma, in 1974. Further negotiations between the three governments and the University resulted in agreement on June 11, 1975, known as the ‘Luyengo Package’ which was accepted by all parties. Following student unrest at Roma, and strained relations between the central UBLS administration and the Lesotho government over implementation of the ‘Luyengo Package’, the Roma campus was precipitately withdrawn from UBLS and constituted as the National University of Lesotho (NUL) on Monday October 20, 1975. This occurred at a time when a working group on further devolution of UBLS into three University Colleges was preparing its report for the Council of the University. The nationalization of all facilities, monies and files in Lesotho meant the central administration of UBLS could operate with only limited effectiveness from premises at Malkerns during 1975-1976, and considerable autonomy was devolved onto the Botswana and Swaziland campuses. Students from Botswana and Swaziland were immediately withdrawn from the Roma campus on the appropriation of all UBLS property in Lesotho by NUL. Part II teaching for students was resumed within a few months in Botswana (Economics and Social Studies and Science) and in Swaziland (Law). Following the acceptance of the Hunter Report and further negotiations between the University and the Governments of Botswana and Swaziland, the University of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland (UBLS) became the University of Botswana and Swaziland (UBS), with two constituent University Colleges of Botswana and Swaziland (UCB and UCS respectively). The new University structure was dedicated to maintaining and intensifying service to the ideals previously laid out for UBLS by the Botswana and Swaziland Governments. The ideals were summed up in the Second National Development Plan of Swaziland, which saw UBS as playing an ‘increasingly important role in National Development not only through providing the educated manpower needed, but also through [the university’s] great potential as a focus for the academic and cultural activities of the nation.’ The ideals were also identified as the beginning of the devolution phase of UBLS development into Botswana and Swaziland by the then Chancellor, Seretse Khama, in his graduation speech in May 1970, on the Luyengo campus. ‘The University must be a committed institution, committed to the fulfilment of the ambitions and aspirations of the communities it was created to serve. One of these is rapid development, another is nonracialism, and the third is simply pride in ourselves and in our past, which in turn would lead to a greater degree of self-confidence, which is one of the very basic ingredients of true independent nationhood.’ The years 1976 and 1982 saw both constituent Colleges of the University develop their physical resources and their academic programmes in close cooperation with each other, with a view to the eventual establishment of separate national universities on the 1st July, 1982. The formal inauguration of the University of Botswana was performed on 23rd October 1982 by His Excellency Sir Ketumile Masire, President of the Republic of Botswana. The University of Botswana and Swaziland continued to cooperate for a further six months to 31 December 1982 for the purpose of examining and awarding degrees, diplomas and certificates. In terms of an agreement between the Governments of Botswana and Swaziland, the National Universities in Botswana and Swaziland were to continue to exchange students and to cooperate in certain areas and to that end a consultative machinery set up to advise on how best to cooperate.

The University Organisation

The University of Botswana was established on 1st July 1982 by an Act of Parliament. The University campus consists of that part of the two former universities (UBLS and UBS – see Historical Note above) which was situated in Botswana and was sometimes referred to as the Gaborone Campus. The University is closely involved in the national development process of Botswana. In this regard the special functions of the University are to engage in improving the quality and in expanding the quantity of the human resources needed for development, and to act as the repository of the collective knowledge and experience of the nation and the world. The first of these functions is fulfilled through the teaching programmes offered by the University and its affiliated institutions, leading to the award of degrees, diplomas and certificates. The second function is carried out individually and collectively by the staff of the University and its affiliated institutions, through the research and development, consultancies and information services which they undertake. Like any other complex organisation, the University has established certain patterns of authority and specialisation, systems, and rules of procedure, in order to perform its functions in an orderly and effective manner. These regulate day-to-day work within the University.

The Council

The governing body of the University is the Council, which has the ultimate responsibility for the work and progress of the University towards the achievement of its goals. Its membership includes leading figures from the national and international community as well as senior personnel within the University. The Council has wide powers to make statutes, lay down policy, approve programmes and plans, and to establish working procedures governing the organisational life of the University. It also provides and controls the resources required to support both the academic activities and the physical development and maintenance of the University. But as a mainly policy-making body the Council cannot, and should not, be engaged in the day-to-day administration of the University. Clearly it could not carry out efficiently all its wide responsibilities by itself. On academic matters it consults the Senate; on many other matters, while retaining overall control and responsibility, it delegates much of the detailed work to the officers and committees.
The Senate
The chief academic authority of the University is the Senate, whose membership includes the VC, DVCs, Faculty Deans, Faculty representatives and Heads of academic support units as well as student representatives. Under the Council, the Senate has the responsibility for the general control and direction of teaching and research activities, examinations, the conferment of degrees and award of diplomas and certificates. Much of its statutory authority is exercised through its approval and, from time to time, amendment of various sets of academic regulations, all of which are published for general information in the later sections of this Calendar. They include general and special academic regulations, admissions and examination procedures, degree structures, programmes of study, syllabuses, library regulations, etcetera. Regulations in any organisation may appear to restrict freedom of action, but are necessary for the orderly conduct of affairs. Additionally, in a University context, the regulations are the means by which the Senate ensures that the academic standards and quality of teaching are acceptable not only to the University and the nation, but also to the wider academic community of the world. Senate also delegates much of its detailed work to committees, reviewing the recommendations they bring forward for its approval.

Faculties and Departments
Below the level of the Vice Chancellor’s office, the University is divided broadly into three types of specialised work: academic affairs, finance and administration, and student affairs. The academic side is represented by the Senate, Faculties, Schools, Departments and Institutes. Specialisation and the best use of staff expertise are achieved on the basis of the division of the academic areas into departments. Each department has a special focus, involving it in teaching and research in particular subjects or disciplines. These departments are responsible for the day-to-day teaching and research work of the University, and they formulate the programmes of study. A number of departments and similar or related disciplines are grouped together to constitute a Faculty. At present there are six established Faculties: Business, Education, Engineering and Technology, Humanities, Science, Social Sciences and the School of Graduate Studies. Detailed planning of the new Faculty of Health Sciences that was formally established on 1 April 2006 is underway. Currently, the Faculty is envisaged as comprising the emerging School of Medicine, a School of Nursing, a School of Allied Health Professions and the existing Department of Environmental Health. In general, departments in the same Faculty work closely together in offering Degree, Diploma and Certificate Programmes. In many cases there is a similar cooperation between Faculties. Faculties are headed by Deans, who represent the Faculty on other bodies and who have general responsibility for coordinating the work of the Faculty. Faculties work through their Faculty Boards and a variety of committees established by the Boards. Proposals from departments are brought to Faculty Boards for discussion and may then be submitted to Senate and, when necessary, to Council. Decisions and directions are then transmitted back to departments through the same channels.

Student Financial Information
Student Financial Procedures
2.21 Reporting to the Finance Office is an integral part of registration; until financial clearance has been obtained from the Finance Office, registration will be deemed to be incomplete.
2.22 All fees must be paid by the first day of the semester. Sponsored students have to produce satisfactory evidence of the award of sponsorship.
2.23 Where a scholarship includes a student’s personal allowance, the University may advance up to one half of it, at its discretion. If a cherub is not honored, a student may be asked to cancel registration immediately.
2.24 Scholarships administered by the University shall be awarded on the understanding that any monies received by the University and disbursed to or on behalf of the student, will be repayable by the student, should he or she withdraw during the course of the academic year without permission of the University.
2.25 Students who damage University property or equipment will be charged the cost of repair or replacement of the item(s). An annual caution fee is held to cover any such charges which are not otherwise settled upon demand. Before registering for a subsequent academic session, the caution fee must be restored. Unless an account for damage is settled immediately a student may be requested to withdraw.
2.26 Should a student leave the University without having paid the prescribed fees, including fines due, or without returning any library books, the academic results and transcripts and/or final certification for which a student is otherwise qualified, shall be withheld until such fees, library books or University property have been recovered.
2.27 Any registered student who decides to withdraw from the University must give notice of his/her intention to do so in writing to the Student Records Office.

Student Admissions
Prospective undergraduate applicants, may obtain application forms and information from the University Admissions Office located in Block 210 on the Main Campus. The forms must be returned directly to the Admissions Office at the University. For graduate Programmers, admission applications are made direct to The Dean, School of Graduate Studies. It must be stressed that application for a Government or other scholarship tenable at the University does not take the place of application to the University for admission. However, prospective applicants need not wait until they are assured of a scholarship before applying for admission to the University; the two applications can go forward in parallel. Similarly, students are free to simultaneously apply to other universities or educational institutions. For the admission application to be processed, all the forms and other requirements outlined in the Admission Regulations must be submitted.

Fees and Scholarships
It should be noted that statutory fees, and expenses do not include the costs of books, notebooks, stationery, personal laboratory equipment, medical attention, repair of clothes, dry-cleaning and living expenses. The cost of travel to and from the University is entirely the student’s responsibility. Many governments are prepared to offer scholarships or grants to prospective students; information about these scholarships should be obtained from the appropriate authority in the country concerned. Some industrial trusts and corporations also offer awards, usually through the appropriate government, and information about these should be sought accordingly. Although every effort will be made to ensure that no student is deprived of the opportunity for study by lack of money, acceptance by the University does not imply that a scholarship is available.
### Full Time Programmes

#### Undergraduate Programmes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Certificate</th>
<th>Estimated Annual Fee</th>
<th>Fee for One Credit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Science and Engineering</td>
<td>19 300</td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>38 600</td>
<td>1 287</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Other Faculties

| Resident Students | 14 500 | 483 |
| Non-Resident Students | 29 000 | 967 |

#### Diplomas

| Science and Engineering | 19 300 | 643 |
| Non-Resident Students | 38 600 | 1 287 |

#### Other Faculties

| Resident Students | 14 500 | 483 |
| Non-Resident Students | 29 000 | 967 |

#### Bachelors

| Science and Engineering | 19 300 | 643 |
| Non-Resident Students | 38 600 | 1 287 |

#### School of Medicine

| Resident Students | 21 280 | 817 |
| Non-Resident Students | 42 560 | 1 226 |

#### Other Faculties

| Resident Students | 14 500 | 483 |
| Non-Resident Students | 29 000 | 967 |

#### Postgraduate Programmes

#### Postgraduate Diplomas

| Resident Students | 12 580 | 524 |
| Non-Resident Students | 18 870 | 786 |

#### Masters Programmes

| Science and Engineering | 17 050 | 710 |
| Non-Resident Students | 25 575 | 1 066 |

#### MBA

| Resident Students | 19 610 | 817 |
| Non-Resident Students | 29 415 | 1 226 |

#### School of Medicine

| Resident Students | 18 750 | 817 |
| Non-Resident Students | 28 125 | 847 |

#### Other Faculties

| Resident Students | 13 550 | 565 |
| Non-Resident Students | 20 325 | 847 |

#### MPhil Science and Engineering

| Resident Students | 17 050 | 710 |
| Non-Resident Students | 25 575 | 1 066 |

#### MPhil (Other Faculties)

| Resident Students | 13 550 | 565 |
| Non-Resident Students | 20 325 | 847 |

#### PhD Science and Engineering

| Resident Students | 11 970 | 499 |
| Non-Resident Students | 9 350 | 390 |

#### PhD (Other Faculties)

* Based on normal load of 30 credits for undergraduates and 24 credits for post graduate students

### Part Time Programmes

#### Diploma (DABS)

(Excluding book costs)

| Annual Fee | 2 090 |

### International Student Fees

#### Undergraduate/Postgraduate

| Administration Fee | Students from Africa | 2 300 |
| Non-students from outside Africa | 3 220 |

#### Group Study Abroad

| Students from Africa | 580 |
| Non-students from outside Africa | 920 |

*Group Study Abroad (Special Service) ~20% of the cost of activity

### Other Fees

| Application Fee | Resident Students | 180 |
| Non-Resident Students | 360 |

| Late Application Fee | Resident Students | 260 |
| Non-Resident Students | 530 |

| Student Life Fee | 70 |

| Late Registration Fee/Day (Maximum 14 Days) | 100 |
| Late Registration Fee/Day (New Students) (Maximum 14 Days) | 60 |

| Transcript Fee | 25 |
| Identity Card Fee | 35 |

### Accommodation Fees

| Undergraduate Full Time Student/Annum | 4 000 |
| Undergraduate Hostel Fee during Holidays/Day | 25 |
| Undergraduate Hostel Fee for non-students during Holidays/Day | 140 |

| Refectory Fees Undergraduate Students/Annum ** | 8 970 |
| Graduate Hostels/Annum | 6 760 |
| Graduate Hostels/Annum (including holidays) | 9 660 |
| Graduate Hostels Fee during Holidays/Day | 60 |
| Graduate Hostels Fee for non-students during Holidays/Day | 300 |
| Laundry Fee/Annum | 430 |

**Fees subject to change during 2009/2010
Travel and Residence
International students accepted to the University of Botswana are required to be in possession of valid travel documents, visas and residence permits (where applicable) to enter the country.

Basic Entrance Qualifications
1. Admission Regulations
1.1 Qualifications for Entry
1.1.1 The normal basic requirements for entrance to Undergraduate Degree and Diploma programmes shall be Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) with a grade C or better in English Language, but other qualifications may be accepted on their merit as alternatives. Entry into the Science Degree programmes shall be on the basis of BGCSE Science and Mathematics aggregates and a grade D or better in English Language or equivalents. (For further details see General Academic Regulations covering the programme in question.)

1.1.2 For all programmes, only the results of examinations taken before March 1st in the year of application will be considered in assessing an applicant's entrance qualifications.

1.1.3 Full particulars concerning qualifications must normally be available to the University before 1st March. It is the responsibility of the applicant to ensure that all examination results and other documents are forwarded to the Admissions Office before the deadline.

1.1.4 Candidates who are awaiting the issue of a certificate following results of an examination shall normally be required to provide legal proof of qualification from an examining body, stating the level of the subjects passed, before an offer of admission is issued and registration to programmes of the University is effected. Applicants admitted and registered under this provision shall not normally be permitted to register for, or write final year examinations unless he or she has received a formal offer of admission.

1.2 Admission Applications
1.2.1 Unless other specific instructions are given, application forms are obtained from and must be returned to:
The Undergraduate Admissions Office
University of Botswana
Private Bag O022
Gaborone, Botswana
1.2.2 Each application shall consist of:
i) The application form to be completed by the applicant himself/herself, in ink, clearly and in capital letters;

1.3 Notification of Acceptance
1.3.1 The Admissions Office for undergraduate applicants and the School of Graduate Studies for graduate applicants shall notify each applicant whether or not he/she has been accepted for admission to the University.

1.4 Conditions of Acceptance
1.4.1 Acceptance of an applicant by the University shall be on the understanding that the applicant undertakes to be bound by and to observe the policies and regulations of the University. Acceptance to the University will be subject to the production of a satisfactory medical certificate.

1.4.2 Academic Transcripts
An official transcript will be provided to each student free at the conclusion of his/her studies. Extra copies thereafter shall be issued at a cost to be determined by the University from time to time.

General Academic Regulations
2 00.0 General Provisions
00.1 Preamble
00.11 Senate reserves the right to alter, amend, replace or cancel any of the Academic Regulations and shall be the final authority for the interpretation of these regulations.
00.12 Senate has the power to exempt any student from any of the Academic Regulations.
00.13 In addition to these general academic regulations, special faculty and departmental regulations, which must be approved by Senate, shall also apply.
00.14 General regulations shall take precedence over special faculty and departmental regulations unless Senate has otherwise provided.
00.15 Faculty regulations shall take precedence over departmental special regulations, unless Senate has otherwise provided.
00.16 Should a regulation, according to which a programme has been compiled, be amended, a student who has started a programme under the old regulation and who has not interrupted studies, may complete such a programme in accordance with the old regulation on condition that a faculty board may formulate special transitional requirements in order to enable that student to complete studies in accordance with the new regulation.
00.17 A student who has been admitted to a programme and fails to register for such a
00.2 Definitions of Key Terms

In these regulations, the following terms shall be used as indicated.

00.211 Academic Year and Semester: The academic year shall comprise two semesters, each consisting of 14 teaching weeks, a one week mid-semester break, and two weeks for examinations.

00.212 Programme: A plan of study made up of core, optional, electives, and general education courses, lasting over a specified period, which leads to a Degree, or Diploma qualification.

00.213 Subject: A collection of core and optional courses in a given discipline of study that will constitute a major or minor component of the programme.

00.214 Course: For the purpose of teaching, each subject shall be divided into one or more components called courses. A course is a basic building block of teaching and learning activities with content designed to meet particular aims and objectives. Each course will normally be assessed within the semester in which it is offered, except for a year-long course, teaching practice, internship, industrial training, or any other attachments.

00.215 Course Code: A course code is an identification of a course with a prefix of three capital letters followed by three digits. The first of the three letters shall normally be the same as the first letter of the subject, and the digits shall indicate the level, with 100 to 599 for Bachelor’s Degrees, and Diploma programmes.

00.216 Lecture Hour: A lecture hour is a period of instruction of a duration of 50 minutes.

00.217 Lecture Hour Equivalent: One lecture hour equivalent shall be equivalent to any of the following modes of teaching and learning: One lecture hour; Two to three hours of practical/laboratory work/activity defined by the department; or any number between one to four weeks of teaching practice, field work, industrial training or any other attachments or other academic work outside the classroom.

00.218 Credit or Credit Value: The number of credits (or credit value) is assigned to a course in relation to the work done. In any course, work entailing one lecture hour or one lecture hour equivalent per week throughout a semester shall have a credit value of 1.

00.219 Major Subject: A major subject shall comprise courses where the subject is treated in depth during the entire programme of study; and the workload shall depend on the type of programme as defined in regulation 00.230. A student shall normally register for a major subject either in the third or fifth semester.

00.220 Minor Subject: A minor subject shall comprise courses where the workload shall have fewer credits than those of the major subject as stated in regulation 00.232.

00.230 Types of Programmes: Possible programme formats shall include single major, combined degree (major/minor, major/major, multidisciplinary).

00.231 Single Major: A single major is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from one subject (normally chosen either in the third or fifth semester), as well as electives and general education courses.

00.232 Combined Degree (major/minor): A combined degree (major/minor) is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from two subjects normally in the ratio of major to minor of approximately 70:30, as well as electives and general education courses. A student’s major and minor cannot be from the same subject.

00.233 Combined Degree (major/major): A combined degree (major/major) is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from two equally weighted major subjects which are independently studied, as well as electives and general education courses.

00.234 Combined Degree (multidisciplinary): A combined degree (multidisciplinary) is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from more than two subjects (for example a combination of three equally weighted subjects, or a series of individualised courses resulting in a programme constructed by negotiation between a student and a personal tutor, and approved by Heads of relevant Departments and Deans), as well as electives and general education courses.

00.240 Types of Courses: Types of courses shall include core, optional, elective, general education, pre-requisite, co-requisite, winter, project, service and audit.

00.241 Core Courses: Core courses are those courses which must be taken in order to meet the requirements of an award, that is, they are compulsory or mandatory.

00.242 Optional Courses: Optional courses are those courses which may be selected from an approved list of courses within a subject of study and which count towards the requirements of an award.

00.243 Elective Courses: Elective courses are those courses which may be selected from a list of courses outside a subject of study and which count towards the requirements of an award.

00.244 General Education Courses: General education courses are those courses taken for the purpose of broadening the knowledge of a student and count towards the overall credit requirement for the award, but are not part of the core courses of the programme.

00.245 Pre-requisite: A pre-requisite is a course that must be taken and passed in preparation for another course.

00.246 Co-requisite: A co-requisite is a course that must be taken concurrently with other courses to enhance learning in the programme.

00.247 Winter Course: A winter course is that which is taken during the long vacation, such as, teaching practice, industrial training, field work, internships, and attachments. The curriculum and methods of assessment for these courses will be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.248 Project Course: A project course may be taken in a major subject and the requirements of such a course and its method of assessment will be specified in special departmental and faculty regulations. A project course may be taken as a semester course or as a year long project course.

00.249 Service Course: A service course is a course taken in a major or minor subject of one department but is taught by another department.

00.250 Audit Course: An audit course is a course taken by a student, but no credit is earned in such a course.

00.251 Attempted Credits: Attempted credits are the total number of credits a student is officially registered for in a given semester or in all years/levels of study. They exclude audit courses, non - credit courses a student may take, and courses which a student has officially dropped. Attempted credits are used in the calculation of the grade point average (GPA).

00.252 Earned Credits: Earned credits are the total number of credit values of the courses a student has passed in a given semester or in all years/levels of study. Earned credits are used in the determination of a student’s year/level of study and minimum number of credits required for graduation. Audit and non - credit courses do not count in credits earned within a particular
Students may be A special student transferred are subject to acceptance by the one-half in the university. The total credits programme, and must complete the remaining be the result of various articulation agreements academic credits deemed to be equivalent one who is registered with UB after transferring workload of less than 15 credits per semester.

00.312 Part-time Student: A part-time student is one who is registered with the university and normally carries a workload of 15 credits per semester, unless officially exempted.

00.312 Part-time Student: A part-time undergraduate student is one who is registered with the University and normally carries a workload of less than 15 credits per semester.

00.313 Transfer Student: A transfer student is one who is registered with UB after transferring academic credits deemed to be equivalent to UB credits. Such credits may come from another recognised university or equivalent, or be the result of various articulation agreements between UB and other institutions. Such a student can only transfer up to a maximum of one-half of the total credits required for the programme, and must complete the remaining one-half in the university. The total credits transferred are subject to acceptance by the relevant Department(s). Grade points are not transferable, and the cumulative GPA of transfer students will be computed on the basis of the work done at UB only.

00.314 Visiting/Exchange/Audit Student: A visiting/exchange/audit student is one who satisfies the university entrance requirements and is registered for a selected number of courses for credit or audit. Such students may be from within the country, from abroad or under exchange programmes.

00.315 Special Student: A special student is one who satisfies the university entrance requirements, but does not have immediate plans to enter a programme and wants to take courses with approval from the department. Such a student shall be limited to register for a maximum of fifteen credits overall.

00.32 Responsibilities of Students

00.321 While the university strives to give students proper academic advice, it is the responsibility of the individual student to know and follow all the regulations of the university.

00.322 A registered student for a course is expected to fulfill all requirements prescribed for that course.

00.323 A student who is unable to attend classes due to illness should notify the Director of Student Welfare of this fact within twenty consecutive days from the day the student misses classes. Certification from a recognized health officer will be required in support. Prior permission or supporting evidence will be necessary for circumstances other than illness.

00.324 A student who enters or returns to the university late shall not be entitled to extra tuition.

00.325 A student may have access to their academic transcript and has the right of appeal on any matters concerning it, to Senate through their Faculty Board.

00.4 Exemptions, Credit Banking, Credit Transfer, and recognition of prior learning.

00.41 Permission for exemptions shall be sought in all cases from the Director, Academic Services, and exemption shall be subject to the approval of the relevant Head(s) of Department. Exemption from taking certain courses may be granted under the following conditions:

a) A student who has been registered at UB can bank credits up to a maximum of ten consecutive semesters. Exemption may be given to a former UB student who subsequently rejoins UB if such a student has banked credits. Once such exemption has been granted, the programme for which the student is currently registered will be credited with the original marks obtained for the credit course(s) and the corresponding grade points.

b) Exemption(s) may be given to a student if such a student took a course or courses at another recognized University or institution with which UB has a formal articulation agreement, within ten semesters prior to registration. Once such exemptions have been granted, the student may transfer up to a maximum of one-half of the total credits required for the programme. However, grade points for such students are not transferable, and the cumulative GPA shall be computed on the basis of the work done at UB only.

c) Exemption may be granted to a student if such a student took a course or courses at another recognized University or institution with which UB has no formal articulation agreement within ten semesters prior to registration. Such exemptions shall be based on course to course articulation and once they have been granted a student may transfer up to a maximum of one third of the total credits required for the programme. However grade points for such students are not transferable, and the cumulative GPA shall be computed on the basis of the work done at UB only.

00.42 Articulation agreements between UB and other institutions resulting in de facto exemptions shall be applied to general admissions to diploma, higher diploma and degree programmes as well as to satisfy programme specific internal requirements.

00.5 Entrance Qualifications

00.51 Normal Entry Scheme

00.511 The normal requirement for entrance to Diploma Programmes are specified in General Regulation 10.2.

00.512 The normal requirements for entrance to
Bachelor’s Degree Programmes are specified in General Regulation 20.2.

00.52 **Mature Age Entry Scheme for Undergraduate Programmes**

00.521 Applicants of at least 25 years of age on the first day of the semester of entry who have BGCSE with grade C or better in at least three subjects and grade D or better in English Language or equivalent but lack the qualifications for entry into the undergraduate programmes may apply as a mature age applicant.

00.522 Subject to regulation 00.521, any additional entry requirements shall be specified in the appropriate special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.523 Subject to regulations 00.521 and 00.522, a mature age applicant may use the direct entry route if such an applicant possesses BGCSE or equivalent with grade B or better in two subjects and grade C or better in four subjects.

00.53 **Transfer Students**

00.531 Transfer students from other recognised universities or institutions may be accepted for undergraduate studies if they have at least a cumulative GPA of 2.00 (on a five point scale) or equivalent and are eligible to return to the university or institution last attended.

00.532 Transfer students with a cumulative GPA of less than 2.00 (on a five point scale) or equivalent shall be subjected to the provisions of general academic regulation 00.9 to determine their admissibility for undergraduate studies. Students admitted under such provisions will have an academic probation status.

00.6 **Registration**

00.611 The normal workload for a full-time undergraduate student shall be 15 to 18 credits per semester.

00.612 A full-time undergraduate student may carry 12 to 14 credits per semester if such a student has approved course exemptions or is on academic probation.

00.613 Subject to the provisions of regulation 00.9.12, a full-time undergraduate student may carry 19 to a maximum of 21 credits if such a student has a cumulative GPA of at least 3.50.

00.614 No student shall be registered for any programme one week after the commencement of classes. Any exception to this regulation must have the written permission of the Dean of the Faculty who may consult with the Head of Department and shall not extend beyond the end of the second week after the commencement of classes.

00.615 A student may register for a course only if the official class timetable allows the student to attend all the classes.

00.616 No student shall be allowed to add a course or courses after the first week of the commencement of classes.

00.617 A student may drop a course or courses up to the end of the second week of the commencement of classes.

00.618 A student who has been admitted to the university can register for a core, optional, elective or general education course offered in any of the university programmes, subject to pre-requisites or any other approved programme restrictions.

00.619 An undergraduate student shall register for general education courses selected from the following areas: Area 1: Communication and Study Skills; Area 2: Computer and Information Skills; Area 3: Modes of Inquiry and Critical Thinking; Area 4: Physical Education, Health and Wellness; Area 5: Science and Technology; Area 6: World Civilisation; and Area 7: World Economy and Business Skills.

00.620 An undergraduate student must, during their first two semesters at UB, register for at least four credits in level 100 general education courses in each of Areas 1 and 2, unless exempted.

00.621 In addition to the requirements of general academic regulation 00.620, an undergraduate degree student must register for a minimum of an additional twelve credits of general education courses selected from at least two credits from Area 3, and the balance from at least two areas out of Areas 4, 5, 6, and 7 before completing their programme of study. Where there are problems of accessing any of Areas 3 to 7 courses, a student shall fulfil the requirement by selecting optional or elective courses.

00.622 The total number of credits earned by a student from elective and general education courses shall not exceed one third of the total credits gained in the entire programme.

00.623 A Dean, on the recommendation of a relevant department may cancel the registration of a student or the registration for a course during a semester, if the student does not meet the programme requirements or prerequisite requirements for the course.

00.624 A registered student shall have access to an official registration record printout detailing the course(s) registered for. It is the student’s responsibility to ensure that the registration record is correct. Any registration record amendments should be made by the end of the add/drop/late registration period.

00.625 A student should not attend a course unless such a course is officially registered for as indicated on the official registration printout.

00.626 A student cannot earn credit for a course unless such a course is officially registered for as indicated on the official registration printout.

00.627 Any registered for course which is abandoned or not attended will be recorded with a zero mark for any graded component not taken. Such a course will be included in the calculation of the student’s cumulative GPA.

00.628 The minimum number of students required in order for an optional course to run is 15 students for levels 100 to 200 classes, and 8 students for classes above level 200 except as permitted by Senate.

00.629 The maximum number of students permitted to be enrolled in each course shall be determined by the Head of Department in consultation with the Dean.

00.630 **Cancellation of Classes**: If no class cancellation notice is posted on the classroom door, classes are officially considered cancelled if an instructor is 15 minutes late. All cases of cancelled classes must be reported to the relevant Head of department.

00.631 A visiting/exchange/special/audit student may register to take courses for credit or audit. An application to take courses for credit or audit should be made to the Director of Academic Services. The application will be subject to approval by the relevant Head(s) of Department(s).

00.632 A student may, in addition to their normal academic programme, register to audit courses up to a maximum of three credits.

00.633 A student on audit courses shall not be subject to assessment, but such audited course(s) shall be recorded on the student’s academic transcript.

00.634 A visiting/exchange/special student who register for credit course(s) and subsequently enrolls in an academic programme of UB shall have their courses treated in accordance with general academic regulation 00.41 (b) on credit banking.

00.7 **Withdrawal**

00.711 Withdrawing refers to withdrawing from all courses for which a student is enrolled for a given semester, and therefore the student is no longer enrolled. The withdrawal application should be lodged through the relevant Head of Department and Dean’s office.

00.712 A student may officially withdraw from the university by voluntarily terminating
enrolment during a semester which is in progress. Such a student shall not receive any credit for courses taken during the semester. If such a student subsequently enrols in the university the courses previously taken shall be treated in accordance with regulation 00.41 (b) on credit banking.

00.713 A student who withdraws prior to the end of the eighth week of a semester or who withdraws after the eighth week of a semester where there are documented acceptable extenuating circumstances, will receive a grade of "W" (withdrawn) otherwise a zero mark will be recorded for any graded component not taken.

00.714 If a student is obliged through illness or any other cause to be absent from classes for a continuous period exceeding three weeks, the Dean, in consultation with relevant Departments and in light of an appropriate medical report, shall decide whether such a student shall be withdrawn from the university for the duration of that semester.

00.715 A student who has withdrawn from the university may re-enter the programme subject to quota restrictions and compliance with existing programme requirements. The university does not guarantee to offer the same courses as at the time the student withdrew from the university.

00.8 Assessment

00.81 Continuous Assessment

00.811 The continuous assessment component of each course may include one or more of the following: written assignments, written tests, practicals, projects, research exercises, essays, open book tests, independent study, dissertations/theses, oral tests, plus other forms of continuous assessment as shall be determined by the instructor and approved by the Head of Department.

00.812 A student is required to fulfil all requirements prescribed for continuous assessment. Failure to do so without valid reasons will normally incur penalties as prescribed in special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.813 Progress Reports: Each faculty shall report continuous assessment marks for all undergraduate students by the end of the eighth week of classes. Progress reports are made available to students and to the students’ advisors through the computer system at UB.

00.82 Final Examinations

Where the assessment of a course includes final examinations, the following regulations shall apply:

00.821 All final examinations shall be held during the scheduled examination period at the end of the semester in which the course is taught.

00.822 A paper in a final written examination of a course shall be of one to three hours duration.

00.823 Other forms of examination of a course shall be as prescribed in special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.824 A student must take final examinations at the scheduled times. Failure to do so without valid reasons will amount to a candidate being awarded a zero mark in that particular examination.

00.825 Special final examinations will be considered on an individual basis for students who miss scheduled final examinations due to exceptional and extenuating circumstances.

00.826 Once a student has sat for an examination, the student may not afterwards apply for a special examination on the basis of unforeseen circumstances or illness.

00.827 In the week preceding the final examinations, all lectures and tutorials will continue, however, no assignment, test, examination, field trip, or any assessment work may be scheduled.

00.83 Quality Assurance

00.831 Senate shall determine the system of quality assurance of programmes of the university.

00.84 Overall Course Grade

00.841 In any course, the weighting between different components of assessment shall be specified in the special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.842 Overall performance in a course shall be assessed on a percentage scale, a letter grade, and a grade point as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marks (%)</th>
<th>Letter Grade</th>
<th>Grade Point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>90 – 100</td>
<td>A+</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85 – 89.9</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 – 84.9</td>
<td>A-</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 – 79.9</td>
<td>B+</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 – 74.9</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 – 69.9</td>
<td>B-</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 – 64.9</td>
<td>C+</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 – 59.9</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 – 54.9</td>
<td>C-</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 – 49.9</td>
<td>D+</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 – 44.9</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 – 39.9</td>
<td>D-</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 – 34.9</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

00.843 When letter grades are used, they shall represent the following:

- **A+**: Outstanding
- **A**: Excellent
- **A-**: Excellent
- **B+**: Very Good
- **B**: Very Good
- **B-**: Good
- **C+**: Good
- **C**: Satisfactory
- **C-**: Satisfactory
- **D+**: Poor - Fail
- **D**: Poor - Fail
- **D-**: Poor - Fail
- **E**: Very Poor - Fail
- **I**: Incomplete

00.845 Auditing a course means obtaining a mark of at least 50 percent.

00.85 Completion of Credits in a Programme

00.851 A student shall only be awarded a qualification after completing a minimum number of credits in a given programme as follows:

- **a)** A minimum of 60 credits in a Diploma programme with a duration of 4 semesters;
- **b)** A minimum of 90 credits in a Higher Diploma programme with a duration of 6 semesters;
- **c)** A minimum of 120 credits in Bachelors’ Degree programmes with a duration of 8 semesters;
- **d)** A minimum of 150 credits in Bachelors’ Degree programmes with a duration of 10 semesters.

00.852 To be awarded a qualification, at least two thirds of the total credits must come from core and optional courses prescribed in the programme, and the total number of credits from elective courses shall not exceed one third of the total credits. Where there have been exemptions, general academic regulation 00.862 shall apply.

00.86 Calculating Cumulative GPA

00.861 Cumulative GPA associated with courses at UB at any time during the student’s programme is obtained as follows:

- **a)** Identify the credits for the course;
- **b)** Identify the marks (%), corresponding letter grade and grade point for each course;
- **c)** Calculate the GPA for each course using the formula:

\[ \text{GPA} = \frac{\text{Total Credits} \times \text{Grade Point}}{\text{Total Credits}} \]

- **d)** Calculate the cumulative GPA by taking an average of the individual course GPAs.

00.862 The Cumulative GPA is based on the most recent of the two methods outlined in the academic regulations.
grade and the grade point using the table in regulation 0.842;  

c) Obtain the weighted score by multiplying the credits and the grade point for each course;  
d) Obtain the total weighted score by adding the weighted scores for all the courses;  
e) The cumulative GPA is given by the total weighted score divided by the total number of credits. The cumulative GPA shall be computed to two decimal places.

00.862 Where there have been exemptions for credits as per regulation 00.4, grade points from other institutions are not transferable to UB, and the cumulative GPA shall be computed on the basis of the work done at UB only.

00.9 Progression from Semester to Semester

00.911 To remain in academic good standing, a student must pass at least half the attempted semester credits and attain a cumulative GPA of at least 2.00.

00.912 A student proceeding on academic good standing who fails a core, prerequisite or co-requisite course must retake the course. Such a student shall carry a semester credit load not exceeding eighteen (18) credits.

00.913 To proceed on academic warning (AW) or academic probation (AP) a student must pass at least half the attempted semester credits and attain a cumulative GPA of at least 2.1. Such a student shall be subject to regulation 00.92 below.

00.92 Academic Warning and Academic Probation

00.921 A student must pass at least half the attempted semester credits and attain a cumulative GPA of at least 2.1 for the status of academic warning or academic probation to apply.

00.922 The status of academic warning shall apply to a student whose cumulative GPA is less than 2.00 but higher than the academic probation level as indicated in regulation 00.923 below.

00.923 The status of academic probation shall apply to a student in accordance with cumulative GPA performance levels as indicated below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attempted Credits</th>
<th>Academic Warning</th>
<th>Academic Probation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 30</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.81</td>
<td>1.50 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 to 60</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.81</td>
<td>1.60 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61 to 90</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.81</td>
<td>1.80 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 90</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.91</td>
<td>1.90 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

00.924 A student on academic warning status must retake any failed core, prerequisite and co-requisite course(s) when next offered. Such a student shall carry a semester credit load not exceeding sixteen (16) credits.

00.925 A student on academic probation status must retake any failed core, prerequisite and co-requisite course(s) when next offered. Such a student shall carry a semester credit load not exceeding fourteen (14) credits.

00.93 Fail and Discontinue

00.931 A student who fails more than half the attempted semester credits or attains a cumulative GPA of 1.20 or less shall be put on fail and discontinue (FD) status.

00.932 A student with two (2) consecutive academic probation shall be put on a fail and discontinue status.

00.933 A student with any combination of three (3) consecutive academic warnings and/or academic probation shall be put on a fail and discontinue status.

00.934 A student who fails a course thrice shall be put on a fail and discontinue status, even if the cumulative GPA is above 2.00.

00.935 A student on fail and discontinue status may apply for readmission to the programme after a lapse of at least one (1) semester. To return to the programme the student must apply and be accepted for re-entry/readmission.

00.936 A student on a fail and discontinue status may apply to change to another programme for which the student qualifies and can enter in the subsequent semester(s).

00.94 Fail and Exclude

00.941 A student who is placed on fail and discontinue status twice in one programme shall be placed on a fail and exclude (FE) status.

00.942 A student who has been unsuccessful in two programmes shall be placed on fail and exclude status.

00.943 A student placed on fail and exclude status may apply for re-admission to the university after a lapse of at least two (2) academic years.

00.95 Retaking Courses

00.951 A student shall not retake a course already passed with a minimum grade of fifty (50 C-).

00.952 Subject to regulations on academic warning/probation, fail and discontinue, and fail and exclude, a student may retake a failed course up to two (2) times.

00.953 A student who has failed a core, prerequisite, co-requisite course or a core general education course must retake the course.

00.954 A student who has failed an optional, elective, a non-core general education course may retake the course or take a substitute course.

00.955 When a student retakes a course, the series of retakes with their grades shall appear on the student's official academic record and count in the cumulative GPA. However, in satisfying the minimum number of credits required for graduation the credits shall count only once where a passing grade is recorded.

00.96 Prerequisite Courses

00.961 A student must achieve at least fifty (50 C-) in a prerequisite to enrol in the specific course(s) for which the course is a prerequisite.

00.97 Academic Standing

00.971 At end of each semester, a student's academic standing shall be reported using the following symbols:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Proceed (Academic Good Standing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AP</td>
<td>Proceed (Academic Probation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AW</td>
<td>Proceed (Academic Warning)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FD</td>
<td>Fail and Discontinue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FE</td>
<td>Fail and Exclude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Withdrawn with Permission</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

00.98 Minimum Cumulative GPA Required for Graduation

00.981 A student shall attain a minimum cumulative GPA of 2.00 to be considered for graduation. If the cumulative GPA is below 2.00 after passing the course retakes, the student shall take additional courses to bring the cumulative GPA to at least 2.00.

01.0 Aegrotat Regulations

01.01 If a student in the final semester of a programme is prevented by illness, or other sufficient cause, from undertaking some of the requirements for assessment (continuous assessment or final examinations), Senate may, upon written report of the Department(s) concerned, and upon any other evidence as it shall deem fit, recommend to assign an aegrotat award.

The student's illness or incapacity must be reported to the office of the Director of Academic Services within two weeks of the date on which the test(s) or examination(s) should have been written.

01.02 The aegrotat award shall be unclassified.

10. General Regulations for Undergraduate Diploma and Higher Diploma Programmes

10.1 Diploma Programmes

10.11 Diplomas

Programme titles appear in Faculty and Departmental sections below.
10.12 Higher Diplomas
Programme titles appear in Faculty and Departmental sections below.

10.2 Entrance Qualifications

10.21 The normal entry requirement for Diploma programmes is at least six subjects not below grade D in the BGCSE or equivalent. English language shall be one of the required subjects. Five subjects may be accepted. A grade of C shall be required in at least three of the five or six subjects.

10.22 Other entry qualifications for entry to Diploma programmes may be accepted on their own merit as alternatives. In particular, attention is drawn to the regulations governing mature age applicants in 00.52 and the regulation in respect to recognition of prior learning general academic regulation 00.41.

10.23 Subject to regulation 10.21, any additional requirements shall be specified in appropriate special regulations.

10.24 The entry requirements specified in 10.21, 10.22 and 10.23 do not guarantee admission.

10.3 Programme Structure

10.31 Curriculum and Assessment
The curriculum and methods of assessment for the undergraduate Diploma programmes shall be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations.

10.32 Duration of the Programme

10.321 Diploma and Higher Diploma Programmes
The normal duration for Diploma or Higher Diploma programmes shall be as follows: 4 to 6 semesters on a full-time basis; 8 to 12 semesters on a part-time basis.

10.4 Classification of Results
(Applicable to Undergraduates entering from August 2009)

10.41 Subject to regulations 00.85 and 00.98, the overall result of the Diploma or Higher Diploma shall be classified based on the cumulative GPA (computed to two decimal places) that includes all attempted credits as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Cumulative GPA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td>4.70 – 5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>4.00 – 4.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>2.00 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20. General Regulations for Bachelor’s Degree Programmes

20.1 Degree Programmes
Programme titles appear in Faculty and Departmental sections below.

20.2 Entrance Qualifications

20.21 The normal entry requirement for Degree programmes shall be at least six subjects not below grade D in the BGCSE or its equivalent. The grades obtained in five of the subjects shall be grade C or better from one examination sitting. Grades obtained from two (not more) examination sittings are acceptable, provided the applicant has grade B or better in two subjects and grade C or better in four subjects. English language must be grade C or better for non-Science based programmes and grade D or better in Science-based programmes.

20.22 Other entry qualifications may be accepted on their own merit as alternatives. In particular, attention is drawn to the regulations governing mature age applicants in 00.52 and the regulation in respect to recognition of prior learning general academic regulation 00.41.

20.23 Applicants possessing an acceptable Certificate qualification with grade C or better in at least 4 subjects and grade D in English language in the BGCSE or equivalent may be considered for entry to Level 100 of a related bachelor programme.

20.24 Where entry is on the basis of a Diploma qualification, the Diploma shall normally be two years or more and one acceptable to UB. Entry on the basis of a Diploma of less than two years in duration may be considered if the applicant has a previous related Certificate qualification.

20.25 Subject to regulation 20.21, any additional requirements shall be specified in appropriate special faculty and departmental regulations.


20.3 Programme Structure

20.31 Curriculum and Assessment
The curriculum and methods of assessment for Bachelor’s degree programmes shall be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations.

20.32 Duration of the Programme

20.321 The normal duration for Bachelor’s programmes shall be as follows: 8 to 10 semesters full-time or up to 16 to 20 semesters part-time respectively.

20.322 A student may register for a combined degree programme (major-major, major-minor or multidisciplinary) or single major programme as shall be specified in special departmental and faculty regulations.

20.4 Degree Classification
(Applicable to undergraduates entering from August 2009)

20.41 Subject to regulations 00.85 and 00.98, the overall result of the Degree shall be classified based on the cumulative GPA (computed to two decimal places) that includes all attempted credits as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Cumulative GPA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Class</td>
<td>4.70 – 5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Class, Upper Division:</td>
<td>4.00 – 4.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Class, Lower Division:</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>2.00 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20. General Education Courses

1. Overview
In line with the University of Botswana Vision and Mission statements, the new semesterisation system incorporates several features into the University academic programmes that will assist UB to become a leading academic centre of excellence in Africa and the world. One important feature of the new undergraduate academic programme structure is the introduction of the General Education Courses (GECs). The GECs provide more student determined choice and flexibility of programmes. They address such crosscutting issues as employers’ expectations, competence in communication skills, IT and information skills literacy, gender, HIV/AIDS, environment, energy and globalisation. The GECs fall under seven themes that have been approved by Senate after extensive consultations. These areas of study have generally received support from vital stakeholders such as the Ministry of Education and various major companies and organisations in the private sector. The concept of General Education Courses is not new. For many years now, UB has recognised the importance of courses such as Communication and Study Skills and Computer Skills for all students at the University. Thus the GECs are an extension of this concept.

2. Regulations
Regulations pertaining to the GECs are stated in Regulation 00.2124 of the General Academic Regulations, stated as follows:

a) Every undergraduate student shall take General Education Courses. These courses are taken for the purpose of broadening the knowledge of a student and count towards the overall credit requirement for the award, but are not part of the core courses of the programme. The purpose of these courses is to enhance university education so that it is broadly based, promotes critical thinking, intellectual growth, broader perspective in analysis of issues, and general skills for lifelong learning.

b) The total number of credits from elective/
general education courses shall not exceed one third of the total credits gained in the entire programme.
c) General Education Courses can be selected from the following:

Area 1: Communication and Study Skills
Area 2: Computer and Information Skills
Area 3: Modes of Inquiry and Critical Thinking
Area 4: Physical Education, Health and Wellness
Area 5: Sciences and Technology
Area 6: World Civilisation

Area 7: World Economy and Business Skills.
Each of the areas shall have a set of courses at different levels, and students from any Faculty can enrol in such courses. In addition to courses in Area 3, all other courses must include critical inquiry and analytical skills.
d) All undergraduate students must during their first two semesters at UB register for at least four credits in 100 level courses in Areas 1 and 2, unless exempted. In addition, all Bachelor’s Degree students must register for a minimum of an additional twelve credits of General Education Courses selected from at least two credits from Area 3, and the balance from at least two areas out of Areas 4, 5, 6 and 7 before completing their programme of study.
e) Students taking General Education Courses shall be subject to assessment procedures as specified in General, Special Faculty and Departmental Regulations, and the marks obtained shall count towards the semester’s assessment and the award of the qualification for which the student is registered.

3. Coding the GECs
In order to assist students and staff to identify GEs, these courses have been given two kinds of identification: Either:
a) With the code GEC followed by three digits, with the first digit indicating level (1 to 4), the second digit indicating area (1 to 7 as per Regulation 0.2124 (c) of the Revised Academic Regulations), and the third digit (0 to 9) indicates the Faculty (or Faculties) offering the GEC; or:
b) A Departmental code as per General Regulation 00.2124 (c) of the Revised Academic Regulations, and the marks obtained shall count towards the semester’s assessment and the award of the qualification for which the student is registered.

Area 1: Communication and Study Skills
Courses in Communication and Study Skills are open to Certificate, Diploma and Degree students.

Area 2: Computer and Information Skills
The objectives of the GECs in Computer and Information Skills are to promote the utilization of computers and Information Technology in University studies and to provide vital life long skills. All Faculties are expected to offer courses in Computer and Information Skills, and coordination will be done by the Department of Computer Science. These courses are open to Certificate, Diploma and Degree students.

Area 3: Modes of Inquiry and Critical Thinking

Area 4: Physical Education and Wellness
The purpose of the GECs in Physical Education, Health and Wellness is to encourage students to develop a physically active way of living and adopt positive attitudes to health so as to enrich the quality of life.

Area 5: Science and Technology
Courses in this area of study will be offered by the Faculty of Science and the Faculty of Engineering and Technology.

Area 6: World Civilisation (Humanities)
The GECs in World Civilisation, offered by the Faculty of Humanities, will help to promote an understanding of the diversity and complexity of different world cultures.

Area 7: World Economy and Business Skills.

GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, CSSU)
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, CSSU)
GEC210 Introduction to Legal Language (2, CSSU)
GEC211 Advanced Writing Skills (2, CSSU)
GEC212 Advanced Oral Presentations (2, CSSU)
GEC213 Advanced Communication Skills (2, CSSU)
GEC312 Introduction to Rhetoric and Public Speaking (2, African Languages and Literature)
GEC122 Fundamentals I (2, Computer Science)
GEC123 Fundamentals II (2, Computer Science)
GEC222 Problem-Solving with Spreadsheet (2, Computer Science)
GEC223 Web Application Skills (2, Computer Science)
GEC322 Multimedia Information Presentation Skills (2, Computer Science)
GEC232 Critical Thinking - A Life Tool (2, Theology and Religious Studies)
GEC233 Logic I: Introduction to Logic (2, Theology and Religious Studies)
GEC330 Introduction to Research Methods (3, All Faculties)
GEC333 Logic II: Logic and the Sciences (2, Theology and Religious Studies)
GEC334 Epistemology: Theories of Truth (2, Theology and Religious Studies)
GEC441 Introduction to Wetland Research
GEC141 Fitness Through Physical Education (2, Physical Education)
GEC145 Introduction to Swimming (2, Physical Education)
GEC148 Health and Wellness (2, Physical Education)
GEC247 HIV/AIDS Education, Prevention and Control (3, Nursing Education)
GEC248 Human Nutrition (3, Biological Sciences)
GEC249 Human Sexuality (3, Biological Sciences)
GEC371 Personal Development and Special Education (3, Biological Sciences)
GEC441 Special Education (3, Biological Sciences)
GEC250 Earth Processes, Mineral Resources and Development (2, Geology)
GEC251 Ground Water and Society (2, Geology)
GEC252 Origins of the Universe (2, Physics)
GEC253 Energy and Society (2, Physics)
GEC254 The Environment: Our Home, Our Resource (2, Environmental Science)
GEC350 Environmental Change in Southern Africa (2, Environmental Science)
GEC255 Electrical Energy and Rural Development (2, Electrical Engineering)
GEC256 History of Technology (2 Mechanical Engineering)
GEC257 Ancient and Modern Structures (2, Civil Engineering)
GEC258 Art and Science of Design (2, Technology and Educational Studies)
GEC355 Telecommunications in Society (2, Electrical Engineering)
GEC356 Renewable Energy (2 credits Mechanical Engineering)
GEC357 Advances in Technology (2 credits Technology and Educational Studies)
GEC261 The Languages of Botswana (2, African Languages and Literature)
GEC262 Introduction to Cultural Studies (2,
All proposals for the award of a fellowship to any student shall first be made to the Fellowship Selection Committee, which after careful deliberation shall recommend the name(s) of the recipient(s) to the Fellowships Committee.

ii) If the recommendation for an award of a fellowship is received and approved by the Fellowships Committee, the Vice Chancellor may approve the award on behalf of the Senate.

iii) No award of a fellowship may be approved before the donor has paid to the University the minimum amount required to establish a fellowship.

iv) All awards of fellowships shall be made subject to the Special Regulations for the individual fellowships.

90.23 Special Regulations for the University of Botswana Alumni Fellowship

The Alumni Fellowship was established in 1996/97 as a result of a donation by the Alumni of the University of Botswana Development Trust (ALUBDEV) to promote Master's Degree studies and research on some aspect of Botswana culture in any field of study. The Alumni Fellowship will cover the following fees: tuition, book and caution fee, Identity Card and fieldwork for both part and full-time students. For full-time Students, residence, refectory and laundry fees will also be covered by the fellowship.

i) The Alumni Fellowship shall be tenable at the University of Botswana and may be awarded by the Senate to citizens of Botswana who qualify for Master's Degree studies in any field.

ii) The maximum period of the fellowship shall be two years for full-time study and three years for part-time study.

iii) The Senate shall satisfy itself that the focus of the intended Master's Degree studies by the proposed recipient is on some aspect of Botswana culture.

iv) The recipient of the Fellowship shall be required to maintain a satisfactory performance during the course of study.

v) The UB Alumni Fellowship Selection Committee shall include two representatives of the Alumni of the University of Botswana Development Trust (ALUBDEV).

90.30 Scholarships

90.40 Studentship

90.50 Exhibitions

90.60 Prizes

90.61 Procedures for Instituting Prizes

i) All proposals for the institution of prizes shall be forwarded to the Director, Academic Services.

ii) Proposals shall include the suggested name of the donor or executor (unless the donor has since died or after due search cannot be traced).
the prize, full reasons for making the proposals and choosing the particular name, and the conditions under which the prize may be awarded.

iii) If the proposed prize is to be named in honour of a particular person or group, the donor should not inform the person(s) he/she wishes to honour before the appropriate University authorities have considered the proposal.

iv) Prospective donors of prizes should state the intended time span of the prize, the amount of money they wish to donate, and the value of each award of the prize. They may also indicate the nature of the prize.

v) As a general principle, current members of staff may not have prizes named after them.

vi) When the Department or Faculty has satisfied itself as to the suitability of the prize, it shall make a recommendation to the Senate.

vii) Before making a recommendation to the Senate, the Department or Faculty may request the prospective donor to supply more detailed information on the financing, nature of conditions for the award of the prize, and may advise the donor of the need to increase the donation value of the award.

90.62 Procedures for the Award of Prizes

i) A prospective donor may suggest a person who qualifies to receive an award for consideration by the Department or Faculty.

ii) Any proposal for the institution of a prize may include the composition of the awarding committee.

iii) All proposals for the award of a prize to any student shall first be made to the awarding committee, which after careful deliberation shall recommend the name(s) of the recipient(s).

iv) Subject to the Special Regulations for individual prizes, the award may be in cash or in books to the value of the prize, and the award may be made jointly to two or more persons in any one year in which case its value shall be shared equally between them.

90.63 The following Special Regulations apply to individual prizes:

1. Roderick Ross Prize in Administration

This prize was established in 1982/83 as a result of an annual donation to the University by Roderick Ross, a former visiting Registrar (1978) to the then University College of Botswana, to mark its attainment of full University status and to encourage studies in Administration. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the student with the best marks in the final examinations in the subject Public Administration for the BA Degree. The Senate may in any year award the prize jointly or, exceptionally and on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Social Sciences, make no award where an insufficiently high standard has been achieved. The prize shall be in books, chosen by the winner, to the value of 15 Pounds in Pula.

2. Isaac Schapera Prize

This prize was established in 1983/84 as a result of a donation to the University of the royalties accruing from the sale of the book "Land Reform In The Making", edited by R.P. Werbner. The prize, which is in honour of Professor Isaac Schapera's major contribution to the Social Sciences in Botswana, may be awarded, as income permits, by the Senate to a final year degree student with the best performance or project in one of the following fields of the Social Sciences; Sociology, Environmental Science, Law, Public Administration and Political Sciences. The Senate may award the prize jointly or, exceptionally and on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Social Sciences, make no award where an insufficiently high standard has been achieved. The prize shall be in books worth P150 chosen by the successful candidate.

3. Vice Chancellor's Prize

This prize was established in 1989 as a result of a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Honourable Mr D. N. Magang and his family. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the most outstanding full-time first degree graduating student(s). This student(s) should have made a significant contribution to student life, should be of good conduct and should have consistently outstanding leadership qualities during his/her period as a student. The prize will be in the form of the following: a miniature trophy on which the name of the recipient will be appropriately engraved, a scroll duly signed by the Vice Chancellor and the donor during his life time, and a shield on which the name of the prize and the recipient's name will be inscribed. The shield will be placed at a conspicuous place on the University Campus. The Senate may award the prize jointly or make no award at all, if there is no candidate qualified for the prize.

4. Michael Hamlyn Prize

This prize was established in 1987 by the staff members of the Faculty of Science in memory of Mr. Michael Hamlyn, a South African refugee student who was the only member of the University of Botswana killed by a South African Government commando force that invaded Gaborone in the early hours of Friday 14th June 1985. He had just completed the Degree of Bachelor of Science, First Class when he was killed. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to a student who studied and showed considerable ability in Mathematics and Physics in the second year of the BSc Degree programme and who demonstrated maturity in higher relationship with other students and staff. The Awarding Committee, comprising the Dean of the Faculty of Science, the Head and an elected member of the Mathematics Department, and the Head and elected member of the Physics Department, will make a recommendation through the Science Faculty Board to the Deputy Vice Chancellor. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner.

5. Bank of Botswana Prize

This prize was established in 1989 and may be awarded annually by the Senate to a Motswana graduating student with the best marks in Accountancy and Business Administration and Economics. The recipient will be invited to attend the annual the Bankers Banquet.

6. PriceWaterhouseCoopers Prize

This prize was established in 1990 as a result of a generous donation to the University of Botswana by PriceWaterhouseCoopers. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to a second year Motswana Bachelor of Accounting student with the best overall performance in any particular year. The prize will be in the form of books worth P500 chosen by the winner and a floating trophy. The winner will also be attached to the Firm during the vacation periods and will receive an allowance. The Firm will also pay for the student’s registration with the Chartered Association of Certified Accountants in the U.K. or other approved body.

7. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Education

This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Education in 1993. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Education who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be
8. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Science
This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Science in 1993. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Science who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

9. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Humanities
This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Humanities in 1992. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Humanities, who should have obtained least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

10. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Social Sciences
This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Social Sciences in 1992. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Social Sciences who should have obtained least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

11. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Business
This prize was established in 2001 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Business in 2000. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Business who should have obtained least 4.0 CGPA. The student should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of cash to the value of P400, a shield and a Certificate of Outstanding Performance signed by the Dean of the Faculty. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

12. Deloitte and Touche Prize
This prize was established in 1994 through a donation from the Deloitte and Touche Accounting Firm. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best final year all round Accountancy student. The prize will be P1,500 cash.

13. De Beers Private Sector Trust Prize
This prize was established in 1996 through a generous donation from the De Beers Botswana (Pty) Ltd. to the University of Botswana. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best graduating degree MBA student(s) who have obtained the highest overall minimum average of 70 percent. The recipient should have had a clean academic record and also should have not repeated a course or have been the subject of disciplinary action while a student. In the event that a graduating student with the highest overall average is disqualified from winning this prize because of disciplinary action, the prize will be awarded to the next best graduating student with the best marks. The prize will be in the form of books worth P1,000 and a floating imbua plaque on which the name of the recipient(s) shall be inscribed.

14. British High Commissioner’s Prize
This prize was established in 1990 through a donation from the then British High Commissioner Mr. Brian Smith. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year degree student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in either the Faculty of Education (Department of Mathematics and Science) or the Faculty of Science. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be a floating trophy.

15. The Builders World Prize
This prize was established in 1995 with seed money donated by Builders World Botswana (Pty) Ltd. The prize may be awarded annually to the most outstanding final year BSc Degree female student in the Faculty of Science with a degree classification of at least 2(i). The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 and a floating shield engraved with the donor’s and winner’s(s) names.

16. The John Cooke Prize for Environmental Conservation
This prize was established in 1993 in honour of Professor John H. Cooke (Founding Head of the Department of Environmental Science). It was established with money collected by the Department. The prize may be awarded annually to the best graduating student in Environmental Science with a degree classification of at least 2(ii) and a record of active interest in environmental issues. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 selected by the winner.

17. Botswana Institute of Accountants Prize (BIA)
This prize was established in 1994 through a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Institute of Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the most outstanding graduating Bachelor of Accountancy Motswana student(s) who must have obtained least 4.0 CGPA. The prize will be in the form of books worth P300, a shield for the winner with his/her name inscribed on it and a floating shield on which the name of the recipient(s) shall be inscribed.

18. CISNA ‘93 Information Technology Prize: Computer Science
This prize was established in 1996 through a donation from the CISNA ‘93 Conference Organising Committee. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best final year degree student in the Department of Computer Science with at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of P500 cash and a floating shield on which the name of the recipient and prize will be inscribed.

19. CISNA ‘93 Information Technology Prize: Engineering and Technology
This prize was established in 1996 through a donation from the CISNA ‘93 Conference Organising Committee. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best final year degree student in the Department of Engineering and Technology with at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of P500 cash and a floating shield on which the name of the recipient(s) and prize will be inscribed.

20. Michael Crowder Prize for History and Archaeology
This prize was established in 1996 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the History Department, well-wishers and supporters. The prize may be awarded by the University Senate...
to the best single or double major graduating student(s) in History Or Archaeology who should have obtained a degree classification of at least 2(i), and who should have obtained a minimum of 70% in History/Archaeology. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner.

21. The Chartered Institute of Management Accountants (CIMA) Prize: CABS
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation made to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Branch of the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the best final year student in the Certificate in Accounting and Business Studies who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner, and a plaque retained by the University in which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed. The Senate may award the prize jointly or make no award at all if there is no candidate qualified for the prize.

22. The Chartered Institute of Management Accountants Prize: DABS
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation made to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Branch of the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the best final year student in the Diploma in Accounting and Business Studies who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner, and a plaque retained by the University in which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed. The Senate may award the prize jointly or make no award at all if there is no candidate qualified for the prize.

23. Botswana Institute of Engineers Prize
This prize was established in 1996 through a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Institute of Engineers. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the most outstanding student(s) in the final year of the Bachelor of Engineering Degree programme and the student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of P10000 cash.

24. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Engineering and Technology
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the 1995 Maintenance of Engineering Facilities (MEF ‘95) Conference Organising Committee. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year degree student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Engineering and Technology who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize shall be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner, a scroll given to the recipient on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed, and a shield retained by the University on which the name of the recipient and prize shall be inscribed. The shield shall be placed in the Dean’s office.

25. The Lady Olebile Masire Prize
This prize was established in 1996/97 as a result of a generous donation to the University of Botswana by Lady Masire. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the best final year degree student(s) in the Faculty of Engineering and Technology. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize shall be in the form of a scroll given to the recipient on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed, and a shield retained by the University on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed.

26. The BDF Prize for Physical Education
This prize was established in 1996/97 as a result of a donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Defence Force. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the best final year degree student(s) in the Physical Education programme. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize shall be in the form of a trophy given to the recipient on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed.

27. Setswana Prize
This prize was established in 1998/99 through a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the National Setswana Language Council. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to a student(s) with the best performance in African Languages and Literature in a single or combined major. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize shall be in the form of a symbolic cultural artefact, depicting Setswana culture, given to the recipient. It will bear on it the name of prize, prize winner, donor and year of award. The Senate may award the prize jointly by using the interest money to purchase two or several cultural artefacts.

28. The Association of Chartered Certified Accountants Prize in Management (ACCA)
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Branch of the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the most outstanding Bachelor of Business Administration Management final year student(s) with at least 4.0 CGPA. The recipient should not have repeated a course or year of the programme and should be of acceptable conduct. The prize shall be in the form of a scroll on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed and a plaque retained by the University on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed.

29. The Indian High Commissioner’s Prize
This prize was established in 1997/98 as a result of a generous donation from the High Commission of India to the University of Botswana. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the most outstanding post-graduate student in the Faculty of Humanities. Preference will be given to a student(s) who undertook studies on some aspect of Asia, particularly of India, if any. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of a momento worth P1700 bearing the name of the prize, the achievement and the recipient’s name inscribed on it, and cash or books worth P5000 chosen by the winner.

30. The Ernst and Young Prize
This prize was established in 1998/99 through a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Ernst and Young firm of Certified Public Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the overall top three Bachelor of Accountancy programme first year students and the best Financial Accounting and Auditing third year student(s). The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of cash worth P350 and P750 per student for first year and third year students respectively.

31. Media Communications (Pty) Ltd Prize
A prize awarded to the student(s) with the best performance (not below 70%) in each of the
courses: integrated marketing communications, international marketing, marketing ethics, product and brand marketing, retail management, services marketing, contemporary issues in social marketing, strategic marketing.

32. Probe Market Intelligence Prize
A prize awarded to the student with the best performance (not below 70%) in course Marketing Research.

33. Sharma and Associates Prize
A prize awarded to the graduating bachelor's degree student with the highest grade in Taxation. In addition, the winner must not have failed any course in the programme and must also have a good conduct record.

34. BOCCIM Award
A prize awarded to the overall best student in Business with a degree CGPA of at least 4.5

35. IEE Region 8 AFRICON'04 Prize
A prize awarded to the most outstanding graduating Electrical and Electronic degree student with a Cumulative GPA of at least 4.5.

36. MLA Kgasa Longman Prize
A prize awarded to the best dissertation or research project.

37. English Prize
A prize awarded to the best graduating student in English Language and Literature.

38. Chibanda, Makgalemele, Ngcongco Prize
A prize awarded to the best graduating student in the Department of Law.

39. Law Society of Botswana Prize
A prize awarded to the best graduating student in Clinical Legal Education.

40. Helfer & Co Prize
A prize awarded to the best graduating student in Conveyancing.

41. The Lady Ruth Kharma Prize
A prize awarded to the graduating student(s) in Social Work with degree CGPA of at least 4.0 and who performed exceptionally well during fieldwork placement/community service.

3.1 Residence Regulations
3.1.1 Full-time students normally live in approved Halls of Residence on campus. However, because accommodation is not enough for everyone, some students have to live off campus. Accommodation, where available, is offered by the Department of Student Welfare.

3.1.2 Students who are accommodated on campus are required to follow regulations and guidelines for Halls of Residence.

3.1.3 Off campus students are not allowed to lodge in Halls of Residence without permission from the Department of Student Welfare. This also applies to non-UB students. 4. Discipline Regulations Pursuant to Statute 8(ii) of the Statutes of the University of Botswana, the following are and shall be, until amended, the Discipline Regulations:

4.1 Misconduct Under the Statute
4.12 A student shall be guilty of misconduct if he/she:
   i) Engages in conduct (on or off the premises of the University) which disregards the good name or is prejudicial to the peace, good order and good government of the University;
   ii) Fails to comply with any Statute of the University;
   iii) Wilfully destroys, damages, defaces, alienates or appropriates to himself/herself any property of the University;
   iv) Infringes the regulations of the University for the control of Library materials, examinations, class tests and assignments or any other approved regulations;
   v) Fails to comply with such instruction relating to his/her conduct as a student as he/she may receive from any member of the University staff in the exercise of his/her duties;
   vi) Infringes the traffic rules of the University;
   vii) Is convicted in any court of law of an offence in which the opinion of the Vice Chancellor is serious enough to warrant disciplinary action.

4.2 Disciplinary Procedures
4.21 Any charge of misconduct shall in the first instance be laid before the Vice Chancellor.
4.22 i) The Vice Chancellor may decide the case after taking such advice or seeking such evidence as he/she considers desirable or may refer the case for investigation to a sole investigator or may appoint a Disciplinary Committee with such membership as he/she deems appropriate.
   ii) The Vice Chancellor may forbid such student to attend lectures and/or participate in any student activities whilst the charge against him/her is being investigated.
4.23 Where the Vice Chancellor refers the case to a sole investigator or appoints a Disciplinary Committee and refers the case to the same Committee, the following procedures shall be followed:
   i) The student shall be given at least two clear days’ notice in writing of the time and place of the hearing and of the nature and substance of the charge against him/her.
   ii) The Vice Chancellor may designate a member of staff to be present at the hearing to present the case against the student. The sole investigator or the Disciplinary Committee may call witnesses and interrogate them concerning the matters at issue.
   iii) The hearing before the sole investigator or the Disciplinary Committee shall be conducted in private.
   iv) The Secretary of the Disciplinary Committee who shall be appointed by the Vice Chancellor, or the sole investigator, as the case may be, shall ensure that an accurate record is kept of all the proceedings and of the evidence pertaining to the case. The Director, Legal Services Office shall have custody of records.
   v) The sole investigator or the Committee, as the case may be, shall prepare a written statement of the decision together with a brief summary of the reason(s) thereof.
   vi) When a student is rusticated for a period longer than a semester, or is dismissed from the University, an appeal may be made to the Council and the student shall be informed of his/her right to appeal.
   vii) On receipt of a memorandum of appeal, the Vice Chancellor shall bring before the Council, which shall meet in special session if the Chairperson deems it necessary, without delay, a statement of the reasons for the decision, together with a summary of the evidence on which that decision is based, and the student’s written memorandum of appeal. The case shall then be decided by the Council on the basis of the material thus presented.
   viii) Such appeals may be considered by the whole Council or a Committee of not less than three members appointed by the Chairperson for the purpose. Council or its Committee may make its decision on the basis of the minutes or records of any previous hearing and students shall be given seven clear days’ notice of the day and time when the appeal will be heard and, in any case in which oral representations of any kind are heard, shall be given the opportunity to hear and cross examine any person making such representations.
   ix) The decision of Council shall be final.

4.3 Criminal Proceedings
4.31 A finding of guilt or an acquittal in a
criminal court shall not preclude proceedings against a student in respect of the same incident, but any sentence or order pronounced shall be taken into account in the imposition of any penalty. Further, the finding of a criminal court in respect of any incident which is the subject of proceedings against a student, may be used in evidence in those proceedings.

Examinations Regulations

4.41 Information and Guidance for Candidates
All candidates will be assumed to have read the following rules and regulations.

4.42 Examination Rooms
The rooms in which examinations are to be held appear in the examination timetable. Candidates are responsible for knowing in advance the rooms in which they write examinations.

4.43 Examination Numbers
In line with University policy on anonymous marking, Student Identity Numbers will be used for examination purposes. Candidates must produce a valid Student ID card at each of their examinations and display it on the examination desk/table for checking by the invigilator.

4.44 Time of Arrival
Examinations commence at times stated in the examination timetable. Candidates must confirm the times of each of their examinations. Candidates will be admitted into the examination room approximately 20 minutes before the start of each examination session. Candidates will be given 10 minutes reading time prior to the advertised time of exam commencement. Candidates must not make notes or commence writing during this period.

4.45 Absence from an Examination
i) If a candidate fails to take an examination for no good reason, special papers will not be set and the candidate will be deemed to have failed the particular examination. Losing, misreading or failure to consult the examination timetable are not acceptable reasons for absence or late arrival at an examination.

ii) In the case of absence from an examination through ill health, the candidate (or someone acting on his/her behalf) must submit a relevant medical certificate which must relate to the day or period of the examination. Evidence of illness will not normally be taken into account unless substantiated by a medical certificate. Such evidence must be received within 14 days after the day of examination in order for it to receive full consideration.

iii) It is the responsibility of the candidate to arrange with his/her doctor for any medical evidence to be sent to the examinations office.

iv) In the case of absence from an examination due to serious causes (other than ill health of the candidate), the candidate (or someone acting on his/her behalf) must submit to the examinations office: (a) evidence of the cause, where possible and, (b) a written explanation of the absence.

4.46 Entry into the Examination Room
Candidates will be told when they can enter the examination room and silence must be observed on entry and whilst in the examination room.

4.461 Seating Arrangements in the Examination Room
Invigilators and exam assistants will guide candidates to their seat.

4.462 Special Arrangements
Candidates who have a disability or suffer from any illness or condition that will require special examination arrangements should inform the Faculty office well in advance. Where feasible, special examination arrangements will be made.

4.463 Procedures During the Examination
Candidates must immediately on taking their examination seats fill in the attendance slip provided. Answer books and other requisite stationery will be provided. Candidates should carefully read the instructions on the front cover of the answer books and then enter their candidate's ID number and other details required. No part of the book may be torn off and all books used must be left on the desks. Rough work must be done in the answer book and should be crossed out to show that it is not part of the answer.

4.464 Starting the Examination
You will be told by the supervisor when you can start the examination and you should not look at the examination question paper before you are told to do so.

4.465 Late Arrival
Candidates who are more than one hour late will not be admitted into the examination room. Candidates who arrive late will not be allowed extra time to complete the examination.

4.466 Examination Reading Time
On being told to start reading, candidates will check that the question paper is the correct one, all questions are legible and all pages are attached. Discrepancies must be reported to the invigilator for attention.

4.467 Temporary Withdrawal
A candidate leaving the examination room temporarily for personal reasons will be accompanied by an invigilator or other authorised person. (NB: Smoking is not considered a suitable reason for leaving the examination room.) The candidate will not take the question paper, answer book(s) and other materials and must not consult or attempt to consult any materials or persons outside the room that may assist him/her in writing the examination.

4.468 Leaving the Examination Room
Candidates may not leave the examination room during the first hour of the examination session unless they feel unwell. Candidates must also not leave during the last ten minutes of the examination and must remain seated until all the examination scripts have been collected and checked by the invigilators.

If a candidate has completed his/her paper before the specified time and wishes to leave, he/she must do so as quietly as possible, so as not to disturb the other candidates. Such a candidate will not be allowed to re-enter the examination room. Permission to leave at any time must be requested from the supervisor.

4.469 Illness During Examination
Candidates who fall ill during the examination should inform the supervisor or invigilator who shall act or advise as appropriate.

4.470 Misconduct
The following will be construed as misconduct in an examination:

a) Taking into the examination room, or possessing or using whilst in that room any unauthorised materials or items. Misconduct is presumed from the fact of possession unless an innocent explanation is obvious or is established by the candidate;

b) Aiding or attempting to aid, obtaining or attempting to obtain aid from another candidate. Misconduct is presumed from the fact of communication unless an innocent explanation is obvious or is established by the candidate;
c) Consulting or trying to consult during the examination any books, notes or other unauthorised materials, or another candidate while temporarily outside the examination room;
d) Impersonating another candidate or allowing oneself to be impersonated;
e) Attempting to influence the examiners or other University officials;
f) Failing to obey or comply with any of the examination regulations, or instructions of the supervisor/invigilator acting within the scope of his/her authority. Such repeated behaviour as may in the view of the supervisor prejudice the performance of other candidates. It should be noted that the supervisor is empowered to discontinue the examination of a candidate suspected of misconduct and to expel him/her from the examination room.

4.471 End of the Examination
Candidates will be told to stop writing at the end of the examination by the supervisor. Candidates in the room should then remain seated until they have filled all the details required on the answer book and the scripts have been collected. It is the responsibility of the candidate to ensure that all the additional loose sheets, charts or papers and supplementary answer books are enclosed in the first answer book. Candidates may not take any examination materials, used or unused, out of the examination room other than:
- The material they brought into the examination room;
- The question paper (where permissible).

4.472 Penalties for Infringement of Examination Regulations
All candidates will be assumed to have read the above Regulations. The following steps will be taken to impose penalties on any candidate who infringes upon examination regulations.
- Any candidate who is considered by the invigilator to be committing an infringement of the rules will be reported and appropriate action taken. The supervisor has the power to dismiss a candidate from the room and compel him/her to surrender the scripts if deemed to be guilty of serious misconduct.
- In all cases of misconduct, the candidate will be warned that his/her conduct will be reported and that the decision as to whether the work will be accepted or disciplinary action taken rests with the authorities.
- When it is determined that the student has committed misconduct calculated to affect improper examination performance:
  - The student may be refused credit for any courses or examinations completed or attempted;
  - The results may be withheld;
  - The student may be suspended from writing the examinations;
  - The student may be dismissed from the University for repeated misconduct;
  - A candidate who wishes to appeal shall follow the procedure set out in the Disciplinary Regulations.

Academic Appeals and Procedures
A. Continuous Assessment
Appeals student may request a review of continuous assessment mark(s) and decisions during the course of the year.

Steps in the Process of an Assessment Appeal
1. Course Instructor
First discuss concern with the course instructor promptly upon receipt of the assessment mark or decision in an attempt to resolve any differences. The student has the right to take the matter directly to the Head of Department if need be.

2. Department/Programme
If the complaint has not been satisfactorily resolved at Step 1, the student may approach the Head of Department (or Dean if the Head of Department is the instructor, or DVC/AA if the Faculty/Dean is the instructor) for review, mediation or resolution. The student should attach to the written complaint all relevant evidence as is available to substantiate the complaint. The Head of Department shall investigate and may investigate further advice/ recommendation from the Departmental Board or other persons as he/she thinks fit. The Head of Department may direct that corrective action be taken when justified.

3. Faculty/School
If the complaint is not resolved at Step 2, either the Head of Department or the student will refer the written complaint to the Dean of the Faculty/School for investigation, review and resolution. The Dean will review the appeal, discuss with the student, the Head of Department, and any other persons concerned, and may refer it to the Departmental Executive for further advice/ recommendation. The Dean may direct that corrective action be taken when justified. He/she will report his/her decision to the student and the instructor.

4. Academic Appeals Committee
Should the complaint not be satisfactorily resolved at Step 3, either the student or Dean may refer the written appeal to the Senate Academic Appeals Committee for review and resolution. The Committee will review the appeal and the appeal decisions made at earlier steps of the appeals process. The Committee shall determine its own procedure. The student(s) and the instructor concerned may attend the hearings to hear and answer allegations and to present their arguments. The Committee shall not itself re-mark/regrade the continuous assessment script but shall direct that this be independently done where appropriate. The Committee’s decision shall be binding on all parties, may not be appealed, and takes effect when issued.

5. The Committee may refuse to proceed with an appeal or complaint if it concludes that the appeal or complaint is vexatious or malicious.

6. Appeals which challenge the professional academic judgement of individual examiners or Boards of Examiners on the examination performance of students will not be permitted.

7. Victimisation or harassment of students who lodge complaints is prohibited. Procedures relating to Sexual Harassment are dealt with separately below.

B. Examination Appeals
Students may request a review of their examination marks, results and academic decisions. However, examination appeals against externally moderated examination marks will not normally be considered unless evidence exists that errors/omissions/ irregularities had occurred or new evidence exists which necessitates a review of the mark, result or decision.

Appeals are heard on the following grounds:
1. New evidence: i.e. evidence of circumstances affecting the student’s examination performance that, through no fault of the student, could not reasonably have been presented at an earlier date.
2. Procedural or other irregularities in the conduct of the examination.
3. Procedural irregularities in the marking of the examination, e.g. evidence that the scripts have been insufficiently or incorrectly marked.
4. Evidence of prejudice or bias on the part of one or more examiners.
5. Inappropriate advice from members of administrative or academic staff on matters affecting the student’s examination candidature or performance.

6. Failure of the University to implement its agreed procedures and regulations.

Grounds for appeal must be specific. Reasons such as ‘I deserved a better grade’, or ‘I thought I did better’ are unclear and unhelpful. Appeals which challenge the professional academic judgment of examiners on the student’s examination performance will not be considered.

 Appeals or representations are allowed as a way of ensuring that as far as possible all relevant circumstances surrounding examination performance are brought to light and taken into account in formulating results and decisions. Appeals should be lodged with the Assistant Director (Records and Examinations). Examination appeals must state clearly the grounds for appeal and should include all relevant information. The burden of proof is on the student, and the written appeal should state and support with available evidence the grounds for appeal. The Examinations Appeals Committee will consider the details of the appeal and decide whether the appeal is valid, and if so, what relief should be provided.

The Committee does not usually hold hearings. The examination script may be re-marked only if the Committee so directs; there is no automatic re-marking/regrading of scripts. However, for all appeals and queries received from students, the marks and/or results will be checked for errors, omissions and conformity with regulations, and a correction made where necessary. The Committee’s decision is final and takes effect when issued. Examination scripts and the marks awarded for individual examination questions/answers are not shown to students.

For further details of the appeals procedure, please contact the:
Department of Academic Services,
Tel: (+267) 355 2018/2016
Fax: (+267) 3585 103.
University of Botswana

C. Complaints Relating to Individual Course Instructors

A student who has a grievance relating to a course instructor (e.g. unsatisfactory teaching, unsatisfactory relationship with the course instructor) may follow these steps:

1. Raise concern with the course instructor as soon as the problem or difficulty arises. Most grievances can be resolved amicably and quickly in this manner. The student may take the matter directly to the Head of Department if need be.

2. Concerns related to an instructor or that cannot be resolved at Step 1 should be discussed with the Head of Department (or Faculty Dean, if the Department Head is the instructor, or DVC/AA if the Dean is instructor).

3. If the complaint is not resolved at Step 2 above, the student may follow the steps as in 1.3 through 1.5 under Section 1 above. The complaint review process is accomplished in a collegial nonjudicial atmosphere rather than an adversarial one and allows the parties involved to participate as appropriate. Complaints must be raised and resolved promptly and as soon as they arise during the course of the year. The student and instructor may enlist the aid of a neutral third party (e.g. counsellor, academic advisor) to assist.

For further details of the appeals procedure, please contact the:
Department of Academic Services,
Tel: (+267) 355 2018/2016
Fax: (+267) 3585 103.
University of Botswana
FACULTY OF BUSINESS

DEAN
C. R. Sathyamoorthi, BCom (Kerala), MCom (Calicut)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATORS
L. B. Molokomme, DipAcc & BusAdmin (BIAC), BCom, MBA(UB)
B. Ndaba, BCom, MBA, MA (DVS)(UB)

COORDINATOR, SMALL BUSINESS CLINIC
E. D. M. Odirile, BA Economics & Statistics (UBS), PG Dip Economics & Statistics, MA Economics (East Anglia, UK), MBA (UB)

ASSISTANT SUPPORT MANAGER
Tefo Kebitseng, BSc: Comp. Sc.

IT TECHNICIAN
L. Dube, Diploma in Computer Studies (UB)
The Faculty of Business comprises the following:

**Accounting & Finance, Management and Marketing.**

Programmes are categorized as follows:

**Part-time**
- Diploma in Accounting & Business Studies

**Full-time and Distance mode**
- Bachelor of Accountancy
- Bachelor of Finance
- Bachelor of Business Administration (Management)
- Bachelor of Business Administration (Marketing)
- Bachelor of Information Systems (Business Information Systems)
- Combined Major in Accounting as part of BA combined Degree
- Bachelor of Tourism & Hospitality Management

**Full-time and Part-time**
- Master of Business Administration

**Special Regulations for the Faculty of Business**
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 00.0 to 20.4, the following special regulations shall apply.

**Entrance Requirement**

a) Admission shall be as stipulated in General Academic Regulations 20.2, 20.21 and 20.22 with the specific requirement of a grade C (60 percent) in English and Mathematics. Subject to the General Regulation 00.52 in respect of the Mature Age Entry Scheme, applicants to the Bachelor of Accountancy, Bachelor of Finance, Bachelor of Information Systems (Business Information Systems), Bachelor of Business Administration (Management) and Bachelor of Business Administration (Marketing), Tourism & Hospitality Management shall undergo an aptitude test.

b) Students with a Diploma in Accounting and Business Studies (DABS) or equivalent with a cumulative GPA of 2.00 or above can be admitted in the first semester of the Degree programme. Subject to the Departmental Regulations, a student with DABS or equivalent can be admitted in the third semester of the Degree programme of the Faculty, provided he/she has secured a cumulative GPA of 2.8 or above in the DABS or equivalent examination.

**Assessment**
Subject to General Academic Regulation 00.8 and the Departmental Regulations, the ratio of continuous assessment to final examination shall normally be 2:3.

**Progression from Semester to Semester**
General Academic Regulation 00.9 applies.

**Diploma in Accounting & Business Studies (DABS)**

**Entrance Requirements**
1. The entrance requirement shall be as specified in general regulations 10.2.1
2. A pass in CABS will be exempted from some courses in DABS.

**Programme Structure**
The programme will extend over a period of six semesters. Students will take four courses in each semester. Except the General Education Courses, all courses of this programme are core courses which must be taken and passed for the award of the certificate. Each core course consists of 3 credits and each General Education Course consists of 2 credits. The total number of credits for the entire programme is 68.

**Assessment**
1. Two pieces of continuous assessment tests for each semester course
2. The continuous assessment to final examination is in the 2:3 ratio.
3. There will be a two-hour end of-semester examination for each course.

**Progression from one Level to the next**
1. The General Academic Regulations 00.9 will apply in this case.

**Award of the Certificate**
1. A student must pass all the courses in three levels with a minimum GPA of 2.0
2. The Classification of results will be in accordance with general regulation 10.4

**Level 100**

**Semester 1**
- DAB111 Business Mathematics and Statistics (3)
- DAB112 Basic Accounting (3)
- GEC111 Communication and Study Skills (2)
- GEC121 Computing and Information Skills I (2)

**Semester 2**
- DAB113 Principles of Management (3)
- DAB114 Introduction to Marketing (3)
- GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2)
- GEC122 Computing and Information Skills II (2)
Total Credits Semesters 1&2 = 20

**Level 200**

**Semester 3**
- DAB111 Intermediate Accounting (3)
- DAB112 Micro Economics (3)
- DAB113 General Psychology (3)
- DAB124 Business Statistics (3)

**Semester 4**
- DAB115 Macro Economics (3)
- DAB116 Business Finance (3)
- DAB117 Business Law (3)
- DAB118 Taxation (3)
Total Credits Semester 3 & 4 = 24

**Level 300**

**Semester 5**
- Core Courses
  - DAB311 Quantitative Methods for Business (3)
  - DAB312 Financial Management (3)
  - DAB313 Cost Accounting (3)
  - DAB314 Management Information Systems

**Semester 6**

A – Accounting Stream
- DAB315 Financial Accounting (3)
- DAB316 Management Accounting (3)
- DAB317 Auditing (3)
- DAB318 Financial Institutions & Markets (3)

B – Management Stream
- DAB319 Human Resource Management (3)
- DAB320 Organisational Design and Develop. (3)
- DAB321 Small Business Management (3)
- DAB322 Fundamentals of Materials Management (3)

C – Marketing Stream
- DAB323 Sales Management (3)
- DAB324 Consumer Behaviour (3)
- DAB325 Marketing Management (3)
- DAB326 Purchasing Management (3)
Total Credits Semesters 5 & 6 = 24
Total Credits Semesters 1 to 6= 68
NOTE: 1. The students will choose one of the above streams A or B or C in the 6th Semester at DABS Level 300

Department of Accounting & Finance

Bachelor of Accountancy Degree Programme
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses

GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals I (2, GEC)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA114 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
Core Courses

GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses

ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC100)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
MGT203 Quantitative Methods (3, pre-req. STA101, STA102, STA114, STA116)
GEC Area 3

Semester 4
Core Courses

ACC200 Financial Accounting I (3, pre-req. ACC100)
ACC203 Cost Accounting Applications (3, pre-req. ACC201)
BIS205 Information Technology (3, pre-req. GEC121, GEC122)

ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
MGT200 Organisational Design and Development (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses

ACC300 Financial Accounting II (3, pre-req. ACC200)
ACC301 Introduction to Management Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC200)
ACC302 Auditing I (3, pre-req. ACC200)
LAW351 Introduction to Company Law (4)
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Semester 6
Core Courses

ACC303 Management Accounting Applications (3, pre-req. ACC301)
ACC304 Auditing II (3, pre-req. ACC302)
BIS309 Accounting Information Systems 3 (3, pre-req. BIS205, ACC200)
FIN300 Financial Management (3, pre-req. FIN200)
MGT302 Business Research Methods (3, pre-reg. STA101, STA102, STA114, STA116)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses

ACC400 Financial Accounting III (3, pre-req. ACC300)
ACC401 Introduction to Taxation (3, pre-req. ACC300)
ACC443 Industrial Attachment (3)
MGT400 Strategic Management (3)
One Optional Course
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Semester 8
Core Courses

ACC403 Financial Accounting IV (3, pre-req. ACC400)
ACC404 Taxation Applications (3, pre-req. ACC401)
ACC405 Accounting Theory (3, pre-req. ACC400)
ACC444 Research Project (4, pre-reg. MGT 302)
Elective
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Optional Courses

ACC406 Public Sector Accounting [3]
BIS302 Decision Support Systems I [3]
BIS417 Information Systems Auditing [3]
FIN301 Financial Institutions and Markets I (3, pre-req. FIN200)

Bachelor of Finance Degree Programme
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses

GEC121 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals I (2, GEC)
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
Core Courses

GEC122 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses

ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC100)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
MGT203 Quantitative Methods (3, pre-req. STA101, STA102, STA114, STA116)

GEC Area 3

Semester 4
Core Courses

ACC200 Financial Accounting I (3, pre-req. ACC100)
ACC203 Cost Accounting Applications (3, pre-req. ACC201)
BIS205 Information Technology (3, pre-req. GEC121, GEC122)

ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
MGT200 Organisational Design and Development (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses

ACC300 Financial Accounting II (3, pre-req. ACC200)
ACC301 Introduction to Management Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC200)
ACC302 Auditing I (3, pre-req. ACC200)
LAW351 Introduction to Company Law (4)
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Semester 6
Core Courses

ACC303 Management Accounting Applications (3, pre-req. ACC301)
ACC304 Auditing II (3, pre-req. ACC302)
BIS309 Accounting Information Systems 3 (3, pre-req. BIS205, ACC200)
FIN300 Financial Management (3, pre-req. FIN200)
MGT302 Business Research Methods (3, pre-reg. STA101, STA102, STA114, STA116)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses

ACC400 Financial Accounting III (3, pre-req. ACC300)
ACC401 Introduction to Taxation (3, pre-req. ACC300)
ACC443 Industrial Attachment (3)
MGT400 Strategic Management (3)
One Optional Course
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Semester 8
Core Courses

ACC403 Financial Accounting IV (3, pre-req. ACC400)
ACC404 Taxation Applications (3, pre-req. ACC401)
ACC405 Accounting Theory (3, pre-req. ACC400)
ACC444 Research Project (4, pre-reg. MGT 302)
Elective
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Optional Courses

ACC406 Public Sector Accounting [3]
BIS302 Decision Support Systems I [3]
BIS417 Information Systems Auditing [3]
FIN301 Financial Institutions and Markets I (3, pre-req. FIN200)

Bachelor of Finance Degree Programme
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses

GEC121 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals I (2, GEC)
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)
GEC121, GEC122
ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3; ECO 112)
MGT200 Organisational Design and Development (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
ACC300 Financial Accounting II (3, pre-req. ACC200)
ACC301 Introduction to Management Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC203)
FIN301 Financial Institutions and Markets I (3, pre-req. FIN200)
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Elective

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
ACC400 Financial Accounting III (3, pre-req. ACC300)
FIN400 Financial Institutions and Markets II (3, pre-req. FIN301)
FIN404 Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management (3, pre-req. FIN300)
FIN405 Seminars in Finance (2)
FIN444 Research Project (4, MGT 302)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Optional Courses
BIS202 Decision Support Systems I (3)
FIN304 Principles of Risk Management and Insurance
FIN305 Principles of Real Estate Finance (3)
ACC401 Introduction to Taxation (3)
ACC404 Taxation Applications (3)
FIN407 International Trade Finance (3)

Bachelor of Business Information Systems
Degree Programme

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals I (2, GEC)
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
BIS301 Business Process Re-engineering (3)
BIS302 Decision Support Systems I (3)
BIS303 Electronic Commerce I (3)
BIS343 Industrial Attachment (2)
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3)

 optional Course
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
MGT400 Strategic Management (3)
CSI461 Computer Communications Network Management (4)
BIS443 Industrial Attachment (2)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Optional Course
GEC Area 3

Semester 4
Core Courses
BIS204 Data Organisation Methods (3, pre-req. BIS201)
CSI252 Operating Systems Concepts (3)
CSI272 Computer Communications Networking Fundamentals (2)
MGT200 Organisational Design & Develop. (3)

Optional Course
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals I (2, GEC)
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
BIS301 Business Process Re-engineering (3)
BIS302 Decision Support Systems I (3)
BIS303 Electronic Commerce I (3)
BIS343 Industrial Attachment (2)
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3)

Optional Course
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
MGT400 Strategic Management (3)
CSI461 Computer Communications Network Management (4)
BIS443 Industrial Attachment (2)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Optional Course
Semester 8
Core Courses
BIS420 Strategic Information Systems (3)
BIS403 Information Systems Security (3)
BIS444 Research Project (4)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Optional Courses
BIS 205 Information Technology (3)
BIS304 Management Information Systems (3)
BIS306 IS Research and Practice (3)
BIS308 Marketing Information Systems (3)
BIS314 Multimedia Systems (3)
BIS401 Current Issues in Information Systems (3)
BIS402 Information Technology Productivity Tools
BIS404 Small Business Information Systems (3)
BIS405 Legal and Ethical Issues of Information Systems (3)
BIS406 Financial Information Systems (3)
BIS407 Electronic Commerce II (3)
BIS408 Systems Development Methodologies (3)
BIS409 Advanced Database Systems (3)
BIS410 Manufacturing Information Systems (3)
BIS417 Information Systems Auditing (3)
CSI312 Expert Systems (3)
CSI314 Decision Support Systems II (3)
CSI392 Human Computer Interaction (3)
CSI462 Distributed Systems (3)
CSI471 Object Oriented Systems Development (3)
CSI472 Social and Professional Issues of Computing (3)

Bachelor of Arts Degree (Double Major)
(Courses offered through the Department)

Level 100
Semester 2
Core Course
ACC100 Intro to Accounting (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
ACC201 Intro to Cost Accounting (3)
FIN200 Business Finance (3)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
ACC200 Financial Accounting I (3)
ACC203 Cost Accounting Applications (3, pre-req. GEC 121, GEC 122)
BIS205 Information Technology (3, pre-req. ECO 112)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
ACC300 Financial Accounting II (3)
ACC301 Introduction to Management Accounting (3)
ACC302 Auditing I (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
ACC400 Financial Accounting III (3)
ACC401 Introduction to Taxation (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
ACC403 Financial Accounting IV (3)
ACC404 Taxation Applications (3)
GEC270 Accounting for Non-Business Majors (2)
GEC271 Basic Cost Accounting and Control (2)
GEC272 Basic Finance and Taxation

DEPARTMENT OF MANAGEMENT
Bachelor of Business Administration (Management) Degree Programme

Programme Structure
Level 100
All courses at this level, excepting General Education Courses (GECs), are core.

Semester 1
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2, GEC)
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)

ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3) (Core)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3) (Core)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3) (Core)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3) (Core)
STA114 Business Statistics I (3) (Core)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3)
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics for Business (3, pre-req. ECO 111)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3) Optional
MGT201 Purchasing and Materials Management (3)
MGT202 Small Business Management
MGT203 Quantitative Methods for Business (3, prereg. STA101, STA102, STA114, STA116)

GEC Area 3

Semester 4
Core Courses
BIS205 Information Technology (3)
ECO212 Intermediate Micro- Economics for Business (3)
FIN200 Business Finance (3)
MKT200 Organisational Design and Development (3, pre-req. MGT100)
MKT303 Sales Management (3, pre-req. MGT 100)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Levels 300 and 400
Stream A: General Management
Semester 5
Core Courses
LAW351 Introduction to Company Law (4) (Core)
MGT300 Human Resource Management (3, pre-req. MGT 200)
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3, pre-req. MGT 200)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Optional Course (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
BIS304 Management Information Systems (3)
MGT302 Business Research Methods (3, pre-req. MGT203)
MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3, pre-req. MGT 202)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Optional Course (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 7
Core Courses
MGT400 Strategic Management (3, pre-req. MGT 301)
MGT402 Operations Management (3)
MGT443 Industrial Attachment (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Optional Course (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 7
Core Courses
MGT400 Strategic Management (3, pre-req. MGT 301)
MGT412 Foundations of Leadership and Teamwork (3, pre-req. MGT300)
MGT443 Industrial Attachment (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Optional Course (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
BIS420 Strategic Information Systems (3, BIS 307)
MGT405 Corporate Governance (3) (Core)
MGT445 Research Project (4, pre-req. MGT 302)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Optional Course (3)
Elective (3)

Core Courses
MGT300 Human Resource Management (3, pre-req. MGT200)
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3, pre-req. MGT200) (Core)
BIS320 Human Resources Information Systems (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Optional Course (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
MGT302 Business Research Methods (3, pre-req. MGT203)
MGT305 Human Resource Development (3, pre-req. MGT300)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Optional Course (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 7
Core Courses
MGT300 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3, pre-req. MGT 202)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Optional Course (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
MGT300 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3, pre-req. MGT 202)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Optional Course (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 7
Core Courses
MGT411 Practicum in Project Management (3, pre-req. MGT409)
BIS 420 Strategic Information Systems (3)
MGT444 Research Project (4, MGT 302)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Optional Course (3)
Elective (3)

Optional Courses
MGT306 Public Sector Management (3, pre-req. MGT200)
MGT308 Total Quality Management (3, pre-req. MGT302)
MGT403 Application of Operations Research Methods for Business Decisions (3, pre-req. MGT203)
MGT406 Administrative Environment and Public Policy in Botswana (3, pre-req. MGT200)

Stream B: Human Resource Management

Semester 5
Core Courses
MGT300 Human Resource Management
2.0 General Education Course (GEC)
The Department offers the following General Education Course (in Area 7: World Economy and Business Skills):

GEC371 Small Business Entrepreneurship (2)

Bachelor of Business Administration in Tourism and Hospitality Management Degree Programme

1. Objectives of the Programme
The following are the objectives of the Bachelor of Business Administration in Tourism and Hospitality Management degree programme:
(i) To produce graduates with the necessary knowledge and practical skills to be able to efficiently and effectively operate business enterprises in the tourism and hospitality industries.
(ii) To produce graduates who can cope with the demands of a dynamic and highly competitive tourism and hospitality environment and who can innovate and manage change.
(iii) To produce graduates who can be managers in tourism and hospitality organisations or consultants in tourism and hospitality management.
(iv) To develop entrepreneurial skills in graduates so that they can be entrepreneurs in their own right in the tourism and hospitality industries.

2. Regulations
2.1.1 Entrance Qualifications
2.1.2 Normal Entry Scheme
Admission shall be as stipulated in the General Academic Regulation 00.52.

2.1.3 Mature Age Entry Scheme
Admission shall be as stipulated in the General Academic Regulation 00.52.

2.1.4 Articulation
The new articulation policy as may be approved by Senate will apply.

2.2 Assessment
2.2.1 Assessment will be as stipulated in General Academic Regulation 00.8.
2.2.2 There will be variations in the mode of assessment in order to allow for more flexibility. In practical-based courses, continuous assessment shall have a higher weighting than the final examination.

2.3 Progression from Semester to Semester
In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must obtain a cumulative Grade Point Average (GPA), which is in accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.9.

2.4. Duration of the Bachelor’s Programme
The normal duration of the proposed degree programme will be as stipulated in the General Academic Regulation 20.32 (8 semesters).

2.5. Award of Degree
To be awarded a degree, a student must satisfy the requirements of General Academic Regulation 00.85.

2.6 Degree Classification
The degree classification will be as stipulated in General Academic Regulation 20.4.

Programme Structure

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
THM101 Principles of Tourism (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics I (4)
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2 GEC)

Semester 2
Core Courses
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA114 Business Statistics (3)
THM102 Introduction to Hospitality Management (3)

GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2 GEC)

GEC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2 GEC)
THM111 Industrial Training (4)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
THM 201 Accommodation Management I (3)
THM 202 Tour Operations Management (3)
ENV202 Ecotourism and Sustainable Development (3)

His 102 Introduction to the Study of History (2)

Optional/Elective
GEC GEC Area 32 GEC 16
Semester 4
Core Courses
THM 203 Food and Beverage Management 1 (3, pre-req: THM 101 and THM 102)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semesters</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
<th>Menu of optional courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semester 1</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
<td>GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2, GEC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semester 2</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
<td>GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, GEC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ECO112 Basic Microeconomics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semester 3</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
<td>MKT202 Distribution Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MGT100 Principles of Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC 100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semester 4</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
<td>MKT 200 Integrated Marketing Communication (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MKT201 Consumer Behaviour (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STA 114 Business Statistics I (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GEC/Option/Elective (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semester 5</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
<td>Level 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Semester 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GEC300 Human Resource Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MKT300 International Marketing (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GEC/Option/Elective (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semester 6</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
<td>Semester 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MKT310 Marketing Research Methods (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MKT 315 Pricing Strategy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GEC/Option/Elective (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semester 7</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
<td>Level 400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Semester 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MKT 443 Industrial Attachment (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MKT409 Brand Management (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Option/Elective/GEC (9)

**Semester 8**

MKT444 Research Project (4)
MKT410 Marketing Management and Strategy (3)
MGT 303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Development (3)

GEC/Option/Elective

Optional Courses

Students can take any of the under-listed optional courses at levels 2, 3 or 4. The number of optional courses offered shall depend on availability of staff.

MGT 201 Purchasing and Materials Management (3)
BIS205 Information Technology (3), GEC 121, GEC 122
MGT200 Organizational Design & Development (3)
MGT203 Quantitative Methods for Business (3)
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics For Business (3)
MKT303 Strategic Sales Management (3)
MKT304 Advertising Management (3, pre-req. MKT200)
MKT305 Public Relations (3, pre-req. MKT200)
MKT306 Business-to-Business Marketing (3)
MKT307 Retail Management (3, pre-req. MKT202)
MKT308 Services Marketing (3)
MKT309 Internet Marketing (3)
MKT 311 Strategic Retail Management (3)
MKT 312 Public Relations Strategy (3)
MKT 313 Services Marketing Theory and Practice (3)
MKT 314 Business to Business Marketing Practice (3)
MKT402 Applied Marketing Research (3, pre-req. MKT302)
MKT403 International Business (3)
MKT404 Social marketing (3)
MKT405 Tourism and Hospitality Marketing (3)
MKT406 Marketing Ethics (3)
MKT407 Relationship Marketing (3)
MKT408 Contemporary Issues in Marketing (3)
MKT409 Contemporary Issues in Marketing (3)
MKT 411 Global Business Strategy (3)
MKT412 Managing Marketing Relationships (3)
MKT413 Applied Marketing Research (3)
MKT 414 Social Marketing (3)
MKT 415 Tourism and Hospitality
ADULT EDUCATION
EDUCATIONAL FOUNDATIONS
EDUCATIONAL TECHNOLOGY
HOME ECONOMICS EDUCATION
LANGUAGES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES EDUCATION
MATHEMATICS & SCIENCE EDUCATION
PHYSICAL EDUCATION, HEALTH & RECREATION

DEAN
Dr. R. Tabulawa, BA, PGDE (UB), MA, PhD (Birmingham)

DEPUTY DEAN
Dr. G. Tsayang, BA, CDE (UBS), MEd (UB), EdD (Bristol)

TEACHING PRACTICE COORDINATOR
Dr V. S. Makwinja-Morara, DSE, BEd (UB), MSED Admin (Syracuse), PhD (Ohio)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATORS
Mr. J. J. Tsimako, BA, PGDE (UB), MLMEd (New Castle)
Mr. G. F. Gaogane, BAcc (UB), PGDAcc, MSc (Birmingham)
The following Departments are housed in the Faculty of Education:

Department of Adult Education
The Department of Adult Education is responsible for the training of adult educators through full-time and part-time programmes. Programmes of study are: Diploma in Adult Education, Diploma in NGO Management, Bachelor of Education, Master of Education, MPhil and PhD.

Department of Educational Foundations
The Department of Educational Foundations offers courses in General Methods, Psychology, Philosophy, History and Sociology of Education, Educational Research and Evaluation, and Planning and Administration in selected career areas such as Teacher Education. The Department also provides training in Counseling, Gender Education, Curriculum and Instruction, and Special Education, and the education component of the Design and Technology Education Program. The programmes of study are: Bachelor of Education in Special Education, Bachelor of Education in Counseling, Post Graduate Diploma in Education and Master’s and Doctoral Programmes in Counseling and Human Services, Curriculum and Instruction, Educational Management, Gender Education, and Research and Evaluation.

Department of Educational Technology
The Department of Educational Technology provides guidance and assistance in the design and implementation of teaching methods and materials, and offers courses in the use and development of educational resources for other departments of the Faculty of Education.

Department of Home Economics Education
The Department of Home Economics Education is responsible for the training of Home Economics specialists to teach in the formal education system, as well as to serve in extension and other non-formal education programmes. The programme of study is the Bachelor of Education in Home Economics.

Department of Languages and Social Sciences Education
The Department of Languages and Social Sciences Education offers undergraduate, postgraduate diploma and graduate level courses in the areas of Languages and Social Sciences Education. There are two graduate programmes: M. Ed (Religious Education) and M. Ed (Social Studies). Plans are underway to introduce M. Ed (Moral Education) and M. Phil/PhD (Social Studies).

Department of Mathematics and Science Education
The Department of Mathematics and Science Education provides programmes in computer studies, mathematics and science. It offers a wide range of courses including: The theory and practice of teaching school computer studies, mathematics and science education; curriculum development, research and evaluation; contemporary issues in computer, mathematics and science; issues in computer, mathematics and science pedagogical content knowledge; the impact of ICT on teaching-learning processes; and the philosophy and psychology of computer, mathematics and science teaching. The programmes of study are the Bachelor of Education (Science), Master of Education, MPhil, and PhD. The department offers service courses for Bachelor of Education (Secondary) and Post Graduate Diploma in Education (PGDE). Also the department has an in-service unit that provides workshops and seminars to school teachers and supports schools to strengthen the structure of computer, mathematics and science departments in these schools.

Department of Physical Education, Health & Recreation
The aim of the Department of Physical Education is to produce qualified Physical Education, Sport, and Recreation specialists who will either teach, coach or administer Physical Education, Sport, and Recreation programmes in primary and secondary schools, teacher training colleges, sports councils, rehabilitation and recreation centres in the country. The Programme of study is the Bachelor’s Degree in Physical Education. An MEd in Physical Education will be offered soon. Areas of concentration include teacher education and preparation, sport and athletic administration, research training and coaching, with an emphasis on recreation and tourism, pedagogical, scientific (Exercise, Physiology, Biomechanics, Kinesiology, Adapted Physical Education), and the psychological and sociological dimensions of human performance.

DEPARTMENT OF PRIMARY EDUCATION
The Department of Primary Education provides in-service programmes to upgrade the skills of primary and secondary teacher educators, such as teacher training college tutors, education officers, members of the school management teams and teachers. The Department offers a Bachelor of Education (Primary) and a Bachelor of Education (Educational Management) Degree. Masters of Education degrees in Arts and Music Education are still on hold pending recruitment of senior staff.

10.0 Faculty Regulations
All programmes in the Faculty shall be governed by the University General Academic Regulations. Any other relevant information pertaining to the programmes shall be as stipulated under the appropriate department in the following pages.

10.20 Teaching Practice
All pre-service students enrolled in a Bachelor of Education Programme shall undergo teaching practice as specified in the Faculty Teaching Practice Regulations, obtainable from the Teaching Practice office and Faculty website.

10.30 Entrance Requirements
The University General Regulations shall apply.

10.40 Assessment
For courses taught by the Faculty of Education, continuous assessment shall comprise a minimum of 2 components of work per course per semester. Each course shall be examined by an associated paper of duration between 1 to 3 hours. Some courses will be assessed by continuous assessment only, depending on the nature of the course. The ratio of continuous assessment to formal examination shall be 1:1. For courses taken in other Faculties, the ratio of continuous assessment to examination results shall be as determined by the Faculties concerned.

10.50 Progression
The University General Academic Regulations shall apply.

10.60 Award of Degree
The University General Academic Regulations shall apply.

DEPARTMENT OF ADULT EDUCATION

1.0 Departmental Special Regulations for the Diploma in Adult Education
2.0 Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 100, the following Special Regulations shall apply:
1.1 Entrance Requirements
The normal entrance requirements shall be as follows:

a) For Level 100, a minimum of 5 credits in the BGCSE or its equivalent or requirements as specified in General Regulation 10.21, with preference given to those with some experience in Adult Education.
b) For Level 200, a Certificate in Adult Education or its equivalent in a related field.

1.2 Programme Structure
1.2.1 The Programme shall extend over two full academic years.

1.2.2 Course Listings
Level 100

Semester 1
Core Courses
DAE100 Principles of Adult Education (3)
DAE101 Introduction to the Psychology of Adult Education (3)
DAE102 Introduction to Planning Programmes for Adult Learners (3)

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE210 Psychology and the Adult Learner (3)
DAE211 Promoting Community Enterprises and Economic Projects (3)
DAE214 Vocational Education and Training (3)
DAE216 Adult Education and Special Groups (3)

General Education courses
Two 2-credit GECs are to be taken from the university-wide menu:
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills 1 (2)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Semester 2
DAE103 Adult Education and Society (3)
DAE104 Adult Education in Practice (3)
EFR220 Introduction to Educational Research (3)

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE212 Participatory Development Methods (3)
DAE213 Adult Basic Education and Training (3)
DAE215 Computer Applications in Adult Education (3)
DAE217 Lifelong Learning (3)

General Education Courses
Two 2-credit GECs are to be taken from the university-wide menu:
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2)

Level 200

Semester 3
Core Courses
DAE200 Historical and Philosophical Foundations of Adult Education (3)
DAE201 The Psychology of Adult Learning (3)
DAE202 Programme Planning and Evaluation in Adult Education (3)
DAE208 Rural Development and Rural Extension (3)
DAE206 Supervising Adult Education (3)

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE210 Psychology and the Adult Learner (3)
DAE211 Promoting Community Enterprises and Economic Projects (3)
DAE216 Adult Education and Special Groups (3)
DAE214 Vocational Education and Training (3)
EFR220 Introduction to Educational Research (3) (new entrants only)

Semester 4
Core Courses
DAE203 Teaching Methods for Adult Education (3)
DAE204 Gender Issues in Adult Education (3)
DAE205 Adult Education and the World of Work (3)
DAE207 Community Project Planning and Management (3)
DAE209 Integrated Skills Project (3)

Electives
One 3-credit elective, to be chosen from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required (except for new entrants).

General Education Courses
For new entrants two 2-credit GEC courses are to be taken from the university-wide menu. These should be GEC111 and GEC121.

1.3 Assessment
1.3.1 The performance of each student shall be assessed at the end of each semester with a 2-hour examination unless otherwise stated in the course outline.
1.3.2 The ratio between continuous assessment and formal exam shall be 1:1.

1.3.3 Continuous assessment for Adult Education courses shall be based on extended assignments and tests as well as other forms of assessment, such as periodic tests, projects and presentations.

1.4 Award of Diploma
The award of the diploma shall be in accordance with General Academic Regulations 00.85

1.5 Progression to the Bachelor of Education Programme (Adult Education)
A student who successfully completes Levels 100 and 200 of the Diploma Programme may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the Degree Programme.

2.0 Departmental Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Education Degree in Adult Education
Subject to the provision of the General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

2.1 Entrance Requirements
The normal entrance qualifications shall be the following:

a) For Level 100, a minimum of 5 credits in the BGCSE or its equivalent, with credit in English Language, or as specified in General Regulations 2.2.2 and 2.2.3. Preference will be given to those applicants with some experience in adult education;
b) For Level 200, requirements will be as stipulated in General Regulation 2.2.4.
c) For Level 300, the requirement is a Diploma in Adult Education; or its equivalent in a related field.

2.2 Programme Structure
2.2.1 Level 100 courses shall be as stipulated in General Regulation 10.21, with preference given to those with some experience in Adult Education.
2.2.2 Course Listings
Level 200

Semester 3
Core Courses
DAE200 Historical and Philosophical Foundations of Adult Education (3)
DAE201 The Psychology of Adult Learning (3)
DAE202 Programme Planning and Evaluation in Adult Education (3)

General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective is to be chosen from the
Students are eligible, is required.

One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the General Education Courses university-wide menu.

Optional Courses
One optional course from the following:
DAE206 Supervising Adult Education Programmes (3)
DAE208 Integrated Extension (3)
DAE210 Psychology and the Adult Learner (3)
DAE211 Promoting Community Enterprises and Economic Projects (3)
DAE214 Vocational Education and Training (3)
DAE216 Adult Education and Special Groups (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
DAE203 Teaching Methods of Adult Education (3)
DAE204 Gender Issues in Adult Education (3)
DAE205 Adult Education and the World of Work (3)

General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE207 Community Project Planning and Management (3)
DAE213 Adult Basic Education and Training (3)
DAE215 Computer Applications in Adult Education (3)
DAE212 Participatory Development Methods (3)
DAE217 Lifelong Learning (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
DAE300 Organisation and Management in Adult Education (3)
DAE301 Leadership in Adult Education (3)
DAE305 Issues in International Adult Ed. (3)

General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE302 Principles of Human Resource Development
DAE303 Research Design in Adult Education
DAE304 Practicum in Adult Education Methods

General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE312 Evaluation Methods in Adult Education
DAE313 Instructional Media and Materials Development in Adult Education
DAE314 Counselling in Lifelong Learning
DAE315 Organisational Development in Adult Education
DAE316 Issues in Adult Education
DAE317 Adult Education and Sustainable Development

Semester 6
Core Courses
DAE302 Principles of Human Resource Development
DAE303 Research Design in Adult Education
DAE304 Practicum in Adult Education Methods

General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE406 Political Economy of Adult Education and Development
DAE410 Adult Education Research Project (6)
DAE411 Training and Development General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE412 Evaluation Methods in Adult Education
DAE413 Instructional Media and Materials Development in Adult Education
DAE414 Counselling in Lifelong Learning
DAE415 Organisational Development in Adult Education
DAE416 Issues in Adult Education
DAE417 Adult Education and Sustainable Development

Semester 7
Core Courses
DAE406 Political Economy of Adult Education and Development
DAE410 Adult Education Research Project (6)
DAE411 Training and Development General Education Courses

General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE418 Urban Adult Education
DAE419 Topics in Adult Literacy
DAE420 Adult Education, Democracy, Peace and Human Rights
DAE421 Development Policies and Adult Education
DAE422 Entrepreneurship Skills Development

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
DAE406 Political Economy of Adult Education and Development
DAE410 Adult Education Research Project (6)
DAE411 Training and Development General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE412 Evaluation Methods in Adult Education
DAE413 Instructional Media and Materials Development in Adult Education
DAE414 Counselling in Lifelong Learning
DAE415 Organisational Development in Adult Education
DAE416 Issues in Adult Education
DAE417 Adult Education and Sustainable Development

2.3 Assessment
Assessment shall be in accordance with Departmental Special Regulations 1.3.1 to 3.3. 2.4 Progression from Semester to Semester Progression from one semester to the next shall be in accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.9

2.5 Award of the Degree
Award of the Degree shall be in accordance with General Academic Regulations 00.85

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATIONAL FOUNDATIONS

Introduction
The Educational Foundations Department provides both foundational courses as well as offers full-fl edged programs. The Department is
organized into disciplines as follows:

Curriculum Studies plus Design & Technology
Education
Educational Management
Education Education Research and Evaluation
Education Psychology
Counselling and Human Services
History and Philosophy of Education Sociology
of Education
Special Education
Gender Education
The department house the following programmes:

Diploma Programmes
A two year full time in-service Diploma in Special Education A one year full time preservice Post Graduate Diploma in Education

First Degree Programmes
A two year in-service/four year pre-service Bachelor of Education in Special Education Program
A two year in-service/four year pre-service in Bachelor of Education in Counselling Program

Programmes and Courses Offered in the Department
Department Regulations

Diploma in Special Education
Aim
The aim of the Diploma in Special Education is to prepare teachers for teaching and working with children with different disabilities in special and regular primary schools.

Entry Requirements
For Level One
Primary Teachers Certificate (PTC) with a BGCSE or its equivalent and a minimum of two years of teaching experience. Applicants who do not have BGCSE or its equivalent but have JC plus PTC and two years of teaching experience, should apply through Mature Age Scheme as in General Regulation 20:24.

For Level Two
Certificate in Special Education or its equivalent

B. Ed (Special Education)
Double Major

Aim
The aim of the B.Ed (Special Education) double major is to equip students with relevant intellectual and professional skills for providing specialized services to exceptional learners in schools and other institutions such as rehabilitation and resource centres. In more specific terms the programme will raise the awareness level of the student in respect to the causes, prevention and intervention strategies of the various forms of impairment.

Produce knowledgeable and skilful special education teachers for secondary schools.

Produce knowledgeable and skilful special education teachers for primary schools.

Produce teachers who have the skills to teach school subjects to both disabled and non-disabled persons

Entry Requirements
For Level One
A minimum overall aggregate of Second class in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or its equivalent, including at least six subjects taken in not more than two sittings.

Obtain a minimum of grade C in English for candidates wishing to take a teaching subject in humanities.

Obtain a minimum grade of C in mathematics and a pass in English for candidates wishing to take a teaching subject in the sciences.

Or as specified in General Regulation 20:22.

Level Two
Graduates from colleges of education who did not major in Special Education and holders of Diploma in Primary Education or its equivalent from other recognized institutions. Candidates in this category will be awarded 6 credits of level one special education courses. They will however take courses as recommended by the department to make up for any shortfalls at level one

Level Three
Candidates with Diploma in Special Education from the University of Botswana or its equivalent qualification, will be admitted in 3.

Programme Structure and Content
All Special Education courses carry three credits unless otherwise stated. Articulation of Diploma and B.Ed will be done for Diploma and B.Ed Special Education (Primary) in terms of content.

Level One: Diploma and B.Ed Content
Level One
Course Type
Semester One
Semester Two

TOTAL cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses
SPED Core & Area
Courses 3 (1) 9 (3) 12 (4)
Second Major - Primary Education/Sec.
Education
6 (2) 6 (2) 12 (4)
General Education
Courses 6 (2) 3 (1) 9 (3)
Options 3 (1) - - 3 (1)
Electives
Student Load 18 6 18 6 36 12
NOTE: Articulation is done for Diploma and B.Ed Special Education (Primary) in both content and Special Education. Articulation for the B.Ed (Special Education) secondary is only possible in Special Education and not content.
Level 1, Semester 1
Semester 1 (18)
Double Major: Special Education And Primary Education
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)
ENV 101 Introduction to Physical and Human Environment (2)
EPE 100 Introduction to Algebra (3)
EPE 102 Introductory Science (3)
GEC 111 Communication study skills I (2)
GEC 121 Computer and Information skills I (2)
Plus one optional course from the following:
EFP 100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
EPE 101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)

Special Education and Primary Education
(18-20)
CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS 101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)
ENV 101 Introduction to Physical & Human Environments (2)
EPE 100 Introduction to Algebra (3)
EPE 102 Introductory Science (3)
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
GEC 121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)
Plus 3 credits from the following:
EFP 100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
EFP 101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)

Special Education and Science
(18-20 credits)
CORE (To be taken by all)
FACULTY OF EDUCATION

**Special Education Humanities (History)**

- EFS 101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)
- MAT 111 Introductory Mathematics (4)
- GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC 121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)
  Plus one course from the following (4 credits):
- BIO 111 Principles of Biology (4)
- CHE 101 General Chemistry I (4)
- PHY 111 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (3)
- PHY 119 Physics Practical 1.1 (1)

**Psychology (3)**

- EFP 100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
- EFP 101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)

**Special Education and Environmental Science (18-20 credits)**

**CORE (To be taken by all)**

- EFS 101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)
- ENV 101 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environment (2)
- ENV 103 Elementary Quantitative Techniques in Geography (3)
- MAT 111 Introduction to Mathematics I (4)
- GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills I (2)
- GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
  Plus one of the courses from the following (3):
- EFP 100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
- EFP 101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)

**Special Education Humanities (Religion) (18-20 credits)**

**CORE (To be taken by all)**

- EFS 101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)
- TRS 101 Introduction to Biblical Studies (2)
- TRS 102 Religions and Science (2)
- TRS 103 Religions of Botswana (2)
- ENG 121 Introduction to English Language Description & Usage (2)
- GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills I (2)
  Plus one course from the following (3):
- EFP 100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
- EFP 101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)

**Special Education Humanities (Religion)**

- EFS 200 Field experience in special education (3)
- EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
  Plus one course in the area of specialization

**Diploma in Education (Special Education)**

**Diploma in Special Education and Primary Education (18-20 credits)**

**CORE (To be taken by all)**

- EFS 101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)
- ARC 101 Introduction to Archaeology and Pre-history (2)
- ELC 201 Foundations of Social Studies (3)
- ELC 202 Social Studies and Nation Building (3)
- ENG 121 Introduction to English Language Description & Usage (2)
- GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills I (2)
  Plus one course from the following:
- EFP 100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
- EFP 101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)

**Special Education Humanities (Religion)**

- EFS 200 Field experience in special education (3)
- EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
  Plus one course in the area of specialization

**Visual Impairment**

- EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with visual impairment (3)

**Hearing Impairment**

- EFS 230 Communication Process for students with Hearing impairment (3)

**Mental Retardation**

- EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional method for students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation (3)

**Learning Disabilities**

- EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for students with learning disabilities/difficulties (3)
  Plus one Core and Optional course in relevant Primary Education concentration chosen in level 1.

**A. Language Concentration**

**CORE**

- EPE 212 Introduction to Language Arts (3)
  Plus optional course. Choose two Courses relevant to teaching subject taken in level 1.
- ENG 211 The Pronunciation of English (2)
- ALL 121 Introduction to the study of Language and Linguistics (2)
- ALL 141 Introduction to African Oral Literature (2)

**B. Maths and Science Concentration**

**CORE**

- EPM 226 Algebra and Trigonometry (3)
- EPM 228 Foundations of Chemistry and Biology (3)

**C. Social Studies/Religious Education Concentration**

**CORE**

- EPE 211 Language across the curriculum (3)
- EPS 200 Intro to Social Studies Education (2)
  Plus optional course. Choose one from the following:
- TRS 102 Religion and Science (2)
- ENV 211 Elements of Human Environment (2)

**Level 2**

**Semester 1**

**Level Two: Diploma and B.Ed**

**Course Type**

- Semester 3 Semester 4 TOTAL
  - cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses SPD
- Core & Area Courses 6-9 2-3 6-9 2-3 12-18 4-6
- Second Major- Pri. Ed [Sec. Ed. 3 (1) 3 (1) 6 (2)
  General Education Courses (18 6 18 6 36 12) 6 2-3 6 (2)
- Electives - - - - - -
  - Student Load 18 6 18 6 36 12-14
  - D. Practical Subject Concentration

**CORE**

- Take i, ii or iii

  i. **Art Education**
  - EPP 201 Introduction to Art (4)

  ii. **Music Education**
  - EPP 217 Intro to Philosophy of music Education and Fundamentals of music (4)

  iii. **Home Economics Education (Take one)**
  - HEE 114 Introduction to Nutrition (3)
  - HEE 115 Family studies Foundations (3)
Plus optional course choose one (for Practical Subjects concentration)

EPE 211 Language across the curriculum (3)
EPS 200 Intro to Social Studies Education (2)
Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 1 or 3 or 4

Bachelor of Education
(Special Education)

Special Education and Primary Education
(18-21 credits)

CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
Students from colleges of Education are to take
GEC 441,111 and 121

EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with
visual impairment (3)

EFS 230 Communication Process for students
with Hearing Impairment (3)

EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods
for Students with Mild to Moderate
Mental Retardation (3)

EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for
students with learning disabilities/ difficulties
(3 credits) Plus one Core and Optional course in
relevant Primary Education concentration
chosen in level 1.

A. Language Concentration

CORE

EPE 212 Introduction to Language Arts (3)
Plus optional course. Choose two
Courses Relevant to teaching subject taken in
level 1.

ENG 211 The Pronunciation of English (2)
ALL 121 Introductions to the study of
Language and Linguistics (2)

B. Math and Science concentration

CORE

EPM 226 Algebra and Trigonometry (3)
EPM 228 Foundations of Chemistry and
Biology (3)

C. Social Studies/Religious Education
concentration CORE

EPE 211 Language across the curriculum (3)
EPS 200 Intro to Social Studies Education (2)
ENV 211 Element of the physical
environment (3)

D. Practical Subject Concentration

CORE

Take i, ii or iii

i. Art Education
EPP 201 Introduction to Art (4)

ii. Music Education
EPP 217 Intro to Philosophy of music
Education and Fundamentals of
music (4)

iii. Home Economics Education (Take one)

HEE 114 Introduction to Nutrition (3)
OR

HEE 115 Family studies Foundations (3)
Plus optional course choose one (for Practical Subjects concentration)

EPE 211 Language across the curriculum (3)

EPS 201 Theory and Practice of Values in
Education (2)
Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 1 or 3 or 4

Special Education and Math/Science
(18-21)

CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
Students from colleges of Education are to take
GEC 441,111 and 121

EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with
visual impairment (3)

EFS 230 Communication Process for students
with Hearing Impairment (3)

EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods
for Students with Mild to Moderate
Mental Retardation (3)

EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for
students with Learning disabilities/ difficulties (3) Plus A or B

A. Mathematics Core

ESM 261 Basic Teaching Methods in Sec. Sch.
Mathematics. (3)
Plus one optional course. Choose: To be taken by
pre-service students

MAT 211 Introductory set and number
theory (3)

MAT 221 Calculus (3) To be taken by
in-service students

ESM 261 Basic Teaching Methods in Sch.
Mathematics (3)

ESM 203 Inset Algebra (3)

ESM 213 Inset Differential Calculus (3)

B. Science Core

ESS 261 Basic Teaching Methods in Sec. Sch.
Science (3)
Plus one optional course in I, II, III

I. Biology

BIO 211 Cell Biology (3)
BIO 213 Plant Structure and Functions (3)
BIO 215 Principles of Ecology (3)
BIO 217 Animal Diversity (3)
Choose One Plus Corresponding Lab

I. Chemistry

CHE 211 Introduction to analytical
Chemistry (2)

CHE 213 Analytical chemistry lab (1)
CHE 221 Atomic Structure Bonding and Hair

Group chem. (2)

CHE 223 Inorganic chemistry lab (1)
Choose One Plus Corresponding Lab III, Physics

PHY 211 Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)
PHY 219 Physics practical 2.1(1)
PHY 212 Properties of matter and thermo

dynamics (2)
PHY 219 Physics Practical 2.1(1) Plus 6
credits of GEC Area 2/3/4/5

Special Education and Environmental
Science (18-21 credits)

CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
ELG 290 Theory of geography teaching (3)

ENV 215 Introduction to special analysis (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization.
Students from colleges of Education are to

take an additional 3 credits other than area of
specialization

EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with
visual impairment (3)

EFS 230 Communication Process for students
with Hearing impairment (3)

EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods
for Students with Mild to Moderate
Mental Retardation (3)

EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for
students with hearing disabilities/ difficulties (3)

Plus optional course. Choose one from the
following.

ENV 211 Elements of human geography I (3)

ENV 103 Elementary quantitative techniques in
geography (3)

ENV 214 Elements of physical geography (3)
Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 4 or 5

Special Education and Humanities
(English/African Languages)

(18-21 credits) CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
Students from colleges of Education are to take
GEC 441,111 and 121

EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with
visual impairment (3)

EFS 230 Communication Process for students
with Hearing impairment (3)

EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods
for Students with Mild to Moderate
Mental Retardation (3)

EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for
students with hearing disabilities/ difficulties (3)

Plus optional course. Choose one from the
following.

ENV 211 Elements of human geography I (3)

ENV 103 Elementary quantitative techniques in
geography (3)

ENV 214 Elements of physical geography (3)
Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 4 or 5

Special Education and Humanities

(English/African Languages)

(18-21 credits) CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
Students from colleges of Education are to take
GEC 441,111 and 121

EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with
visual impairment (3)

EFS 230 Communication Process for students
with Hearing impairment (3)

EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods
for Students with Mild to Moderate
Mental Retardation (3)

EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for
students with hearing disabilities/ difficulties (3)

Plus optional course. Choose one from the
following.

ENV 211 Elements of human geography I (3)

ENV 103 Elementary quantitative techniques in
geography (3)

ENV 214 Elements of physical geography (3)
Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 4 or 5

Special Education and Humanities

(English/African Languages)

(18-21 credits) CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
Students from colleges of Education are to take
GEC 441,111 and 121

EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with
visual impairment (3)

EFS 230 Communication Process for students
with Hearing impairment (3)

EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods
for Students with Mild to Moderate
Mental Retardation (3)

EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for
students with hearing disabilities/ difficulties (3)

Plus optional course. Choose one from the
following.

ENV 211 Elements of human geography I (3)

ENV 103 Elementary quantitative techniques in
geography (3)

ENV 214 Elements of physical geography (3)
Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 4 or 5

Special Education and Humanities

(English/African Languages)

(18-21 credits) CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
Students from colleges of Education are to take
GEC 441,111 and 121

EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with
visual impairment (3)

EFS 230 Communication Process for students
with Hearing impairment (3)

EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods
for Students with Mild to Moderate
Mental Retardation (3)

EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for
students with hearing disabilities/ difficulties (3)

Plus optional course. Choose one from the
following.

ENV 211 Elements of human geography I (3)

ENV 103 Elementary quantitative techniques in
geography (3)

ENV 214 Elements of physical geography (3)
Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 4 or 5

Special Education and Humanities

(English/African Languages)

(18-21 credits) CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
Students from colleges of Education are to take
GEC 441,111 and 121

EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with
visual impairment (3)

EFS 230 Communication Process for students
with Hearing impairment (3)

EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods
for Students with Mild to Moderate
Mental Retardation (3)

EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for
students with hearing disabilities/ difficulties (3)

Plus optional course. Choose one from the
following.

ENV 211 Elements of human geography I (3)

ENV 103 Elementary quantitative techniques in
geography (3)

ENV 214 Elements of physical geography (3)
Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 4 or 5

Special Education and Humanities

(English/African Languages)

(18-21 credits) CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
Students from colleges of Education are to take
GEC 441,111 and 121

EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with
visual impairment (3)

EFS 230 Communication Process for students
with Hearing impairment (3)

EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods
for Students with Mild to Moderate
Mental Retardation (3)

EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for
students with hearing disabilities/ difficulties (3)

Plus optional course. Choose one from the
following.

ENV 211 Elements of human geography I (3)

ENV 103 Elementary quantitative techniques in
geography (3)

ENV 214 Elements of physical geography (3)
Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 4 or 5

Special Education and Humanities

(English/African Languages)
Relevant to teaching subject taken in level 1.

ENG 211 The Pronunciation of English (3)
ENG 213 Prose Literature of Southern Africa (2)
ENG 223 The Drama of Southern Africa (2)
END 212 Introduction to English Literature: the Novel (2)
ALL 221 Sound systems in African languages (2)
ALL 241 History and structure of the Setswana Novel (2)
ALL 232 Language instructions III (ALL 134 required) (2)
ALL 251 Folk Speech in Africa (2)
ALL 252 Rites of Passage: A study of social dreams (2)
Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 1 or 2 or 4 Special Education and Humanities (History) (18-21 credits)

CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 201 Psychology of exceptional children (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED Specialization
Students from colleges of Education are to take GEC 441,111 AND121
EFS 220 Braille Reading and Writing with visual Impairment (3)
EFS 230 Communication Process for students with Hearing impairment (3)
EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods for Students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for students with Learning disabilities/ difficulties (3)

PLUS
ELR 290 Theory of Teaching Religious Education (3)
Plus optional course. Choose one from the following.
TRS 203 African Traditional Religions in Botswana (2)
TRS 204 Theologies of Gender (2)
TRS 206 Beginning Biblical Greek 1: New Testament Greek (2)
TRS 207 Intro. to Christian Theology (2)
PLUS 6 credits of GEC Area 1 or 3 or 4

LEVEL 3 (17-21 credits depending on teaching subject concentration)
(Holder of UB Diploma)

Double Major: Special Education & Primary Education
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 201 Psychology of Exceptional Children (3)
Plus one course in SPED concentration Visual Impairment
EFS 240 Curriculum and instructional Methods for Students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for students with Learning disabilities/ difficulties (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 330 Communication Processes for students with hearing impairment (3)
Mental Retardation
EFS 340 Methods in Teaching School Subjects to students with mental retardation (3)
Learning Disabilities / Difficulties
EFS 350 Developmental Approaches and behavior management of students with learning disabilities/difficulties. (3)
Plus 6 credits from a, b, c or d

a. Language concentration
Core
ENG 311 Modern English Grammar (2)
ALL 221 Sound Systems in African Languages (2)
Plus optional courses. Choose one from the following:
ALL 241 History and Structure of Setswana Novel (2)

ALL 152 Style in Writing (2)
b. Mathematics/Science concentration
EPM 326 Introduction to Probability and statistics (3, pre-req. EPM227)
EPM 328 Principles of chemistry and Physics (3)
EPM 331 Social Studies in the Primary Schools (3)
c. Social Studies Concentration
Core
EPS 322 Social Studies and Curriculum Development (3)
EPS 331 Social Studies in the Primary Schools (3)
d. Practical subjects concentration
Take i, ii or iii
i. Art Education
EPP 301 Appropriate Art Methods and Materials for Primary School (4)
ii. Music Education
EPP 327 Introduction to Ethnomusicology Education (4)
iii. Home Economics
HEE 229 Child development Pre-natal through Early Childhood (3)
PLUS : Take one course in the area chosen at Level 3. Semester 1
LEVEL THREE B.ED
Course Type
Semester 5 Semester 6 TOTAL

cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses SPED Core & Area Courses
3 1 2 12 4
2 6 2 12 4 Second Major: Pri. Ed./ Sec.Ed.
2 6 2 12 4

General Education Courses
3 1 - - 3 1 Options 3 1 3 1 6 2
Electives - - 3 1 3 1
Student Load 18 6 18 6 36 12
level 2 from the following:
ALL 221 Sound systems in African Language (2)
ENG 311 Modern English Grammar (2)
EPM 326 Introduction to Probability and Statistics (3)
EPM 328 Principles of Chemistry and Biology (3credit)
EPM 330 Science Education (3)
EPS 322 Social Studies and Curriculum Development (2)
HEE 238 Orientation to Teaching home Economics (3)
Elective: EFR 200 Intro to Measurement in Education (3credits) GEC Area 4 (2credits)
Double major: Special Education &
Primary Education
Core (To be taken by all)
EFS301 Ed Asses and Identification of
Students with Disabilities (3)
Plus one area course in SPED specialization.
Visual Impairment
EFS 320 Advanced Mobil. and Orien
with Visual Impairment (3)
Hearing Impairment
EFS330 Approaches in Teaching Language to
the Deaf. (3)
Mental Retardation
EFS 340 Methods in Teaching School Subjects
to Students with Mental
Retardation (3)
Learning Disabilities/Difficulties
EFS 350 Developmental Approach And
Behavioural Management Of Students
with Learning
Disabilities/ Difficulties (3)
Plus 6 credits from courses relevant to area
of concentration in Primary Education.
Primary Education Teaching Subject Cluster:
1. Language Concentration
ENG 311 Modern English Grammar (2)
ALL 221 Sound Systems in African Language
(2)
Optional courses: take one
ALL 241 History and Structure of Setswana
and Novel (2)
ALL 152 Style in writing (2)
2. Mathematics & Science Concentration
EPS 330 Science Education (3)
EPS 326 Introduction to Probability and
Statistics (3)
3. Social Studies & Religious Education
EPS 322 Social Studies and Curriculum
Development (3)
ELR 301 Theories of Religious Education (3)
4. Practical Subject Concentration
i Art Education
EPP 301 Appropriate Art Methods and
Materials for Primary School (4)
ii Music Education
EPP 327 Introduction to Ethnomusicology
Education (4)
iii Home Economics
HEE 233 Food Science (3)
Plus: Take one course in the area chosen at level
2 from the following list
ALL 221 Sound systems in African
language (2)
ENG 311 Modern English grammar (2)
EPM 326 Intro to probability and statistics (3)
EPM 328 Principles of Chemistry and
biology (3)
EPM 330 Science education (3)
EPS 322 Social Studies and curriculum
development (3)
Elective: EFR 200 Intro to measurement in
education (3 Credits) GEC Area 4 (3 credits)
Double major: Special Education & Science
(Specials)
CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS 301 Educational Assessment and
Identification of Students with Disabilities (3)
Plus one area course relevant to SPED
specialization
Visual Impairment
EFS 320 Advanced Mobility and Orientation
for Students with Visual
Impairment (3)
Hearing Impairment
EFS 330 Approaches in Teaching Language to
the Deaf [3]
Learning Disabilities/Difficulties
EFS 350 Developmental Approach And
Behavioural Management of Students
with Learning Disabilities (3)
Choose one of a, b, c or d
A. Biology Core
ESS 391 Principles and Practice of Teaching
School Science (3)
BIO 211 Cell Biology (3)
BIO 218 Biology of Flowering Plants (3)
Plus optional course. (Choose one)
BIO 212 Genetics (3)
BIO215 Principles of Ecology (3)
BIO214 Intro. To Mammalian Physiology (3)
B. Chemistry Core
ESS 391 Principles and Practice of Teach Sch.
Science (3)
CHE211 Analytical Chemistry (2)
CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Lab (1)
CHE232 Structure & Survey of Functional
Groups 1 (2)
CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory 1 (1)
C. Pure Mathematics Core
ESM 391 Principles and Practice of Teach Sch.
Maths (3)
MAT381 Calculus for Teachers 1(3)
MAT383 Linear Algebra for Teachers (3)
D. Physics Core
ESS 391 Principles and Practice of Teaching
School Science (3)
PHY211 Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)
PHY212 Properties of Matter and
Thermodynamics (2)
PHY 219 Physics Practicals 2.1(1)
GEC 2 credits area 4 or 5
Double major: Special Education &
Environmental Science
CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS 301 Educate Assess and Identification of
Students with Disabilities (3)
CATION
EEL 301 Introduction to Environmental
Education (3)
ENV 301 Environmental Issues (2)
ENV 304 Quantitative Methods in Human
Geography (2)
Plus one area course relevant to SPED
specialization
Visual Impairment
EFS 320 Advanced Mobility and Orientation
for Students with Visual
Impairment (3)
Hearing impairment
EFS 330 Approaches in Teaching Language to
the Deaf (3)
Learning Disabilities
EFS 350 Developmental Approach And
Behavioural Management of Students
with Learning
Disabilities/Difficulties (3)
Optional Courses. Choose one from the
following:
ENV 302 Concepts and Principles in Population
Geography (2)
ENV 305 Rural Geography (2)
ENV 307 Human Settlements: Principles and
 Morphology (2)
Plus one GEC area 4 or 5 course
GEC
Double major: Special Education &
Humanities (History)
CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS 301 Educational Assessment and
Identification of Students with
Disabilities. (3)
Plus one area course relevant to SPED
specialization
Visual Impairment
EFS 320 Advanced Mobil. and Orient for Studs
with Visual Impairment (3)
Hearing Impairment
EFS 330 Approaches in Teaching Language to
the Deaf (3)
Learning Disabilities/Difficulties
EFS 350 Developmental Approach And
Behavioural Management of Students
with Learning
Disabilities/Difficulties (3)
History Core
ELC 302 Gender Issues in Social Studies (3)
HIS 301 Historical Research Methods (3 credit)
HIS 303 Historiography of Botswana (1)
Plus Optional courses. Choose one.

ELC 321 Education for Self-reliance (3)

HIS 333 Intro to Foreign Policy, Dipl and Inter Rela 1800-1945 (3)

HIS 343 Trade & Politics in Central African Kingdoms (3)

HIS 341 African Diaspora in the Islamic World & Asia (3)

HIS 343 Trade and Politics in Central African Kingdoms (3) Plus one GEC area 3 or 5 GEC

Double major: Special Education & Humanities (Theology and Religious Studies)
CORE (To be taken by all)

EFS 301 Educational Assess. & Identification of Students with Disabilities (3)

ELR 301 Theories of Religious Education (3)

TRS 304 African Philosophy and Culture (2)
Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

Visual Impairment
EFS 320 Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 330 Approaches in Teaching Language to the Deaf (3)

Learning Disabilities
EFS 350 Developmental Approaches and Behavioural Management for Students with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties (3)
Plus Core and Options in teaching subject

Mathematics Core
ESM 361 Teaching Strategies for School Mathematics (3)
MAT 321 Real Analyses 1(3)
MAT 311 Abstract Algebra 1 (3, pre-req.MAT 212)
Plus one from the following:
MAT 323 Vector Calculus (3, pre-req. MAT 222)
MAT 251 Vectors & Introductory mechanics (3)

Biography Core
ESB 361 Teaching Strategies for School Biology (3)
BIO 316 Plant Physiology (3)
BIO 317 Comparative Vertebrate Physiology (3)
Plus one from the following:
BIO 307 Biochemistry (revised) (3)
BIO 216 General Microbiology (pre-req. BIO 310, BIO 312) (3)

Chemistry Core
ESC 361 Teaching Strategies of School Chemistry (3)
CHE 321 Coordination in Chemistry (2)
CHE 323 Inorganic Chemistry Lab 11 (1)
CHE 331 Structure and Survey of Functional Group (3)
CHE 341 Application Thermodynamics & Electro Chemistry (2)
CHE 343 Physical Chemistry Lab 111 (1)

Physics Core
ESP 361 Teaching Strategies of School Physics (3)
PHY 311 Mechanics (2)
PHY 312 Quantum Mechanics (2)
PHY 319 Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)
PHY 314 Electronics 1 (2)
Plus 2 credits GEC area 5 GEC

Double major: Special Education & Home Economics (Secondary In-Service)
CORE (To be taken by all)

EFS 301 Educational Assessment and Identification of Students with Disabilities (3)
Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

Visual Impairment
EFS 320 Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 330 Approaches in Teaching Language to the Deaf (3)

Learning Disabilities/Difficulties
EFS 350 Developmental Approaches and Behavioural Management of Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Home Economics Take All
HEE 229 Child Care and Development (3)
HEE 238 Orientation to Teaching Home Economics (3)

Area of concentration (Choose One from 1 To 4)
1. Food and Nutrition (take all)
HEE 320 Community Nutrition (3)

HEE 343 Food Service management (3)

2. Human Development and Family Studies (take all)
HEE 316 Family Health Education (3)
HEE 348 Risk and Resiliency in Child Devt. (3)

3. Clothing and Textile (Take all)
HEE 353 Analysis & Evaluation of Textile Performance (3)
HEE 356 Apparel Design & Product Devt. (3)

4. Housing and Interior Design (Choose 2)
HEE 359 Design Fundamentals (3)
HEE 360 Building Construction and Envr. Systems (3)
HEE 362 Housing & Services for Families with Special Needs (3)

GEC Area 4 (2)

B Ed Special Education (Double major)

Semester 1 (16–18)
Double major: Special Education and Primary Education (In-service)

CORE
EFS 401 Rehabilitation and Transition of Children with Disabilities (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization

EFS 420 Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)

EFS 430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

EFS 440 School- & Comm-Based Progs for Indivs with Mental Retardation (3)

EFS 450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties across the Life Span (3)
Plus CORE courses and optional course relevant to concentration in Primary Education

1. Language Concentration
EPL 411 Teaching Reading in the Primary School (3)

EPL 414 Literature for primary schools (3)
ENG 421 Approaches to Syntax (2)  
Plus Optional course  
ALL 331 Introduction to Translation (2)  
2. Mathematics & Science Concentration (6 credits)  
EPM 426 Introduction to Derivatives & their Application (3, pre-req. EPM 327)  
EPM 428 Advanced Concepts in Physics & Earth Science (3)  
Plus Optional course, choose one from the following  
EPM 430 Maths Applications for Primary teaching (3)  
EPM 431 Science Applications for Primary Schools (3)  
3. Social Studies & Religious Education Concentration (6 credits)  
EPS 401 The Role of Democracy in the Teaching of Social Studies (3)  
ELC 431 Civic education (3) Plus Optional course (choose one)  
EPS 331 Teaching Social Studies in Primary Schools (3)  
EPS 401 The role of Democracy in the teaching of Social studies (3)  
4. Practical Subjects:  
Choose one in the teaching subject chosen at Level 200  
ALL 321 The Structure of the Sentence (2)  
ENG 421 Approaches to Syntax (2)  
EPM 426 Introduction to Derivatives and their Applications (3)  
EPM 428 Advanced Concepts in Biology and Chemistry (3)  
ENV 307 Human Settlement: Principles and Level 4, semester 1  
Level Four  
Course Type  
Semester 7 Semester 8 Total cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses  
SPED Core Courses 6 2 9 3 15 5  
Second Major: Pri. Ed/Sec. Ed.  6 2 6 2 12 4  
General Education Courses  
Options 3 1 -- 3 1  
Electives 3 1 3 1 6 2  
Student Load 18 6 18 6 36 12  
Morphology (2 credits)  
Plus Practical Area Subject and the optional course  
(i) Art Education  
EPP 406 Contemporary Issues in Art Education (4)  
(ii) Music Education  
EPP 447 Basic Instrumental Skills (4)  
(iii) Home Economics  
HEE 328 Orientation to Teaching Home Economics (3)  
Optional Course (Choose one)  
PHR 309 Adapted Physical Education (2)  
HEE 338 Consumer Protection (2)  
HEE 337 Human Development across the Life Span (2)  
EFP 301 Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)  
5. Special Topics concentration  
Students in this concentration shall continue with the area chosen at Level 200.  
ALL 321 The Structure of the Sentence (2)  
ENG 421 Approaches to Syntax (2)  
EPM 426 Introduction to Derivatives and their Applications (3)  
EPM 428 Advanced Concepts in Biology and Chemistry (3)  
ENV 307 Human Settlement: Principles and Morphology (2)  
Plus one from the following areas and the optional  
Guidance and Counselling  
EFH 403 Programme Development in CHS (3)  
Infant Education  
EPI 431 Management of Early Childhood Programme 3)  
Environmental Education  
EPI 442 Environmental Conservation Strategies (3)  
ONE optional course  
EPP 301 Adult-child Intervention and Cognitive Development 3)  
Electric or GEC "2-3 credits"  
Retake courses (if any)  
Semester I (17 credits) Pre-service Double major: Special Education and Science in Social Studies (3)  
SPED: CORE  
EFS 401 Rehabilitation and Transition of Children and Youth with Disabilities (3)  
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization  
EFS 420 Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)  
EFS 430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)  
EFS 440 School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)  
EFS 450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span (3)  
Plus CORE and Optional courses relevant to teaching subject.  
Biological Core  
ESB 461 Critical Debates in Biology Education (3)  
ESS 441 Information and communication technology for the science teacher (2)  
Plus Two from the following: teaching subjects in Science  
BIO 412 Aquatic biology (3)  
BIO 427 Evolution (3)  
BIO 423 Plant Responses to Environmental Stress (3)  
BIO 421 Ex. Physiology (3)  
CHE 421 Advanced Physical Chemistry (3)  
Chemistry Core  
ESC 461 Further Issues in Chemistry Pedagogical Content Knowledge (3)  
ESS 441 Information and communication technology for the science teacher (2)  
Plus Choose Two from the following teaching subjects in Science  
CHE 421 Advanced Transition Metal Chemistry (3)  
CHE 431 Heterocyclic Chemistry: Synthetic Chemistry and Design of Organic Synthesis (3)  
CHE 441 Advanced Physical Chemistry (3)  
Mathematics Core  
ESM 461 Advanced Teaching Methods in School Maths (3)  
ESEM441 Intro. To Info and Communication Technology in Maths Education (2)  
MAT 421 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)  
MAT 423 Mathematical Methods (3)  
Physics Core  
ESP 461 Advanced Pedagogic Strategies for School Physics (3)  
ESS 441 Information and communication technology for the science teacher (2)  
Plus teaching subject s in the science discipline  
PHY 411 Atomic and Nuclear Physics (2)  
PHY 412 Statistical Mechanics & Solid State Physics (2)  
PHY 419 Physics Practicals 4.12(2)  
Special Education and Science- Specials (19 credits) SPED  
CORE (To be taken by all)  
EFS 401 Rehabilitation & Transition of children with disabilities (3)  
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization  
EFS 420 Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)  
EFS 430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)  
EFS 440 School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)  
EFS 450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span (3)  
Second Major: CORE courses in Math/ Science
### Special Education and Environmental Science (19 credits) SPED:

**CORE** (To be taken by all)

- **FYS 401** Rehabilitation and Transition in SPED (3)  
  Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization  
- **FYS 420** Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)  
- **FYS 430** Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)  

**Second Major: Core courses**

- **EEL 401** Environmental Education Conservation Strategies (3)  
- **ENV 402** Natural Resource Conservation and Management (3)  

### Special Education and Humanities: English (African languages)

**SPED**: CORE (to be taken by all)

- **FYS 401** Rehabilitation and Transition of Children and Youth with Disabilities (3)  
  Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization  
- **FYS 420** Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)  
- **FYS 430** Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)  
- **FYS 440** School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)  
- **FYS 450** Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span (3)  

### Special Education and Humanities: Special Education and Humanities (English/ African languages)

**SPED**: CORE (To be taken by all)

- **FYS 401** Rehabilitation & Transition for Children with Disabilities (3)  
  Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization  
- **FYS 420** Teaching Students with Low vision (3)  
- **FYS 430** Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)  
- **FYS 440** School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)  
- **FYS 450** Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span (3)

Second major: Two CORE courses and one Optional course in Teaching subject

1. **Home Economics**
   - **HEE 449** Seminar in Human Development (2)  
   - **HEE 451** Public Policy for Children and Families (3)

2. **Social Studies**
   - **ELC 403** Economic Cooperation and Integration (3)

3. **Theology & Religious Studies**
   - **ELR 401** Teaching Religious Education in Sec. Sch. (3)  
   - **TR 401** New Religious Movements (2)  
   - **TR 402** Religion and Politics (2)

### Optional course. Choose one

- **TR 403** The Doctrine of Sin in the Bible (2)  
- **TR 405** Intermediate Hebrew I (2)  
- **TR 406** Intermediate Arabic I (2)  
- **TR 407** Islam’s Socio-Cultural, Legal & Political structures (2)  
- **TR 409** African Christian Theologies (2)  
- **TR 411** Politics and Development of Biblical thought (2)  
- **TR 412** Ecumenical Theology (2)  
- **TR 413** Hinduism (2)

### Special Education and Humanities: Special Education and Humanities – Specials (18 credits)

**SPED CORE** (To be taken by all)

- **FYS 401** Rehabilitation and Transition
in SPED (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization

EFS 420 Teaching Students with Low vision (3)
EFS 430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
EFS 440 School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties Across the Life Span (3)

Second Major: CORE courses

His 401 Metzecane and the Settler Scramble for South Africa (3)
His 412 Segregation, apartheid and African Nationalism in South Africa (3)
Elc 400 Socialization Issues (3)
Elc 403 Economic Cooperation and integration (3)

And choose one

His 421 Political Ideas during the ancient and medieval periods (3)
His 431 Historical research Methods (3)
Elc 401 One course outside Special Education and second major Retake course (if any)

Special Education and Theology and Religious Studies (20 credits)

SPED CORE (To be taken by all)

EFS 420 Teaching Students with Low vision (3)
EFS 430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
EFS 440 School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties Across the Life Span (3)

Second Major: CORE courses

His 401 Metzecane and the Settler Scramble for South Africa (3)
His 412 Segregation, apartheid and African Nationalism in South Africa (3)
Elc 400 Socialization Issues (3)
Elc 403 Economic Cooperation and integration (3)

And choose one

His 421 Political Ideas during the ancient and medieval periods (3)
His 431 Historical research Methods (3)
Elc 401 One course outside Special Education and second major Retake course (if any)

Visual Impairment

EFS 221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
EFS 222 Early Stimulation Programs for Children with Visual Impairment (3)

Primary Education

Hearing Impairment

EFS 231 School Audiology and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
EFS 232 Early Childhood Education of Children with Hearing Impairment (3)

Primary Education

Mental Retardation

EFS 241 Programme Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 242 Early Childhood Education of Children with Mental Retardation (3)

Primary Education

Learning Disabilities

EFS 251 Remediation Techniques in School Subjects for Students with Learning Disabilities (3)
EFS 252 Early Intervention for At-Risk Children (3)

Major II Primary Education Areas of concentration

1. Language Concentration

CORE courses
FACULTY OF EDUCATION

ALL 142 Study of Drama (2)
ENG 221 English Linguistics (2)
Optional course (choose ONE from the following)
EPA 203 Classroom Management (3)
ALL 153 Introduction to the African Novel (2)
2. Maths. & Science Concentration
CORE Courses
EPM 227 Introduction to functions and the domains (3)
EPM 228 Foundations of Chemistry and Physics (3)
3. Social Studies/Religious Education Concentration
CORE Courses
EPS 203 Indigenous Peoples and their Environments (3)
EPS 201 Theories & Practice of Values Education (2)
Optional Course (choose ONE from the following)
TRS 107 African Traditional Religion (3)
HIS 202 Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slave Trade (3)
ENV 214 Elements of the Physical Environment (3)
4. Special Topics Concentration
(take ONE of the following course related to your chosen teaching subject)
ALL 142 The study of Drama (2)
ENG 221 English Linguistics (2)
EPM227 Introduction to functions and Domains (3, pre-req. EPM226)
EPM228 Foundations of Chemistry and Physics (3)
EPS 201 Theories & Practice of Values Education (2)
i. Guidance/Counselling
EHF 105 Counselling Approaches and Theories (3)
ii. Infant Education
EPI 229 Theories and Principles of Infant Education
iii. Environmental Education
EPI 225 Environmental Issues, Pol and Educ for sustain Development (3)
5. Practical Subject Concentration (take all courses in one of the following areas as your teaching subject)
ALL 142 The study of Drama (2)
ENG 221 English Linguistics (2)
EPM 227 Introduction to functions and the Domains (3, pre-req. EPM226)
EPM 228 Foundations of Chemistry and Physics (3)
EPS 201 Theories & Practice of Values in Education (2)
In addition, take ONE of the following courses
i. Art Education
EPP 202 Pract Art, Craft & Desg Skills for the Classroom Teacher (4)
ii. Music Education
EPP 218 Listening, Composing and Performing (4)
iii. Home Economics
HEE 116 Introduction to consumer Education (3)
Level 1, Semester 2
Bachelor Of Education (Special Education)
Special Education and Primary Education
(19 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 102 Service Delivery Approaches in Special Education (3)
EFS 103 Medical Aspects of Disability (3)
EFS 104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)
ALL 122 The Characteristics of Human Languages (2)
ALL 142 The Study of Drama (2) Plus one course from the following combinations
EPE 103 Principles of Science (3)
EPE 114 Introduction to Education in Botswana (3)
OR
EPE 101 Algebra and its Applications (3)
EPE 103 Principles of Science (3)
OR
HIS 102 Introduction to the Study of History (2)
EPE 114 Introduction to Education in Botswana (3 credits) Plus 4 credits of GEC
GEC 112 Communication & Study Skills II (2)
GEC 122 Computer & Information Skills II (2)
Special Education and Science (20 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 102 Service Delivery Approaches in Special Education (3)
EFS 103 Medical Aspects of Disability (3)
EFS 104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)
ALL 122 The Characteristics of Human Languages (2)
Plus one course from the following
ALL 134 Language Instruction II (2)
ALL 153 Introduction to African Novel (2)
ALL 154 Theory of Humour in Africa (2)
SOC 133 Social Change in Botswana (2)
Plus 4 credits of GEC
GEC 112 Communication & Study Skills II (2)
GEC 122 Computer & Information Skills II (2)
Special Education and Humanities (English)
(19 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 102 Service Delivery Approaches in Special Education (3)
EFS 103 Medical Aspects of Disability (3)
EFS 104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)
ENG 111 Studies in Pros (2)
ENG 123 Introduction to Literature Drama & Poetry (2)
Plus one course from the following
ALL 134 Language Instruction II (2)
ALL 153 Introduction to African Novel (2)
ALL 154 Theory of Humour in Africa (2)
SOC 133 Social Change in Botswana (2)
Plus 4 credits of GEC
GEC 112 Communication & Study Skills II (2)
GEC 122 Computer & Information Skills II (2)
Special Education and Humanities (African Languages) (19 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 102 Service Delivery Approaches in Special Education (3)
EFS 103 Medical Aspects of Disability (3)
EFS 104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)
ALL 122 The Characteristics of Human Languages (2)
ALL 142 The Study of Drama (2)
Plus one course from the following
ALL 153 Introduction to African Novel (2)
ALL 154 Theory of Humour in Africa (2) Plus 4 credits of GEC
GEC 112 Communication & Study Skills II (2)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFS 241</td>
<td>Programme Development for Students with Mental Retardation</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 242</td>
<td>Early Intervention Programmes for Young Children with Mental Retardation</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 243</td>
<td>Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 251</td>
<td>Remediation Techniques in School Subjects for Students with Learning Disabilities, Difficulties</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 252</td>
<td>Early Intervention for At-Risk Children</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 253</td>
<td>Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities, Difficulties</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESM 262</td>
<td>Practicum in Secondary School Science</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT 212</td>
<td>Introduction to Algebra</td>
<td>(3, pre-req.: MAT 111 or A-Level)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESM 206</td>
<td>Introductory Algebra</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESM 216</td>
<td>Integral Calculus</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT 222</td>
<td>Calculus II</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT 242</td>
<td>Computer Science</td>
<td>(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO 211</td>
<td>Cell Biology</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO 213</td>
<td>Plant Structure &amp; Function</td>
<td>(3, pre-req. for BIO 316)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS 262</td>
<td>Practicum in Secondary School Science</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE 232</td>
<td>Structure Survey of Functional groups</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE 234</td>
<td>Organic Chemistry Laboratory</td>
<td>(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE 242</td>
<td>Introductory Physical Chemistry</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE 244</td>
<td>Physical Chemistry Laboratory</td>
<td>(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS – (take all)</td>
<td>Electric &amp; Magnetic Physics</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY 222</td>
<td>Electronics &amp; Nuclear Physics</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY 229</td>
<td>Physics Practical</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS 262</td>
<td>Practicum in Secondary School Science</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 221</td>
<td>Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 222</td>
<td>Early Stimulation Programmes for Children with Visual Impairment</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 223</td>
<td>Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 231</td>
<td>School Audiology and Evaluation of Hearing</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 233</td>
<td>Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Special Education and Humanities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEC 122</td>
<td>Computer &amp; Information Skills II</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC 112</td>
<td>Communication &amp; Study Skills II</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC 122</td>
<td>Computer &amp; Information Skills II</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 221</td>
<td>Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 222</td>
<td>Early Stimulation Programmes for Children with Visual Impairment</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 223</td>
<td>School Audiology and Evaluation of Hearing</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 231</td>
<td>School Audiology and Evaluation of Hearing</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 233</td>
<td>Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Special Education and Environmental Science (17 credits)**

**Core Courses**

- **ETP 200**: Teaching Practice (3)
- **EFS 221**: Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
- **EFS 222**: Early Stimulation Programmes for Children with Visual Impairment (3)
- **EFS 223**: Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired (3)
- **EFS 231**: School Audiology and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
- **EFS 233**: Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired (3)
FACULTY OF EDUCATION

Learning Disabilities
EFS 251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)
EFS 253 Secondary School Programme for Students With Learning Disabilities, (3)

Environmental Science Take
EEL 302 Environmental Education Methodology (2)

Plus any two from the following
ENV 219 Elements of Human Geography II (3)
ENV 220 Elements of Physical Environment II (3)
ENV 216 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)

Special Education and Humanities (English/African Languages) (18 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
ETP 200 Teaching Practice (3)

Plus all courses relevant to SPED specialization
Visual Impairment
EFS 221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
EFS 223 Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 231 School Audiometry and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
EFS 233 Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired (3)

Learning Disabilities
EFS 251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disability/Difficulties (3)
EFS 253 Secondary School Programme for Students with Learning Disability/Difficulties (3)

History Take
ELC 321 Social Studies Methods (3)
HIS 213 Agriculture and Industrialization in World Economy 1945 (3)
ELH 290 Theory of Teaching History (3)
HIS 202 Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slave Trade C. 1500-C.1800 (3)
HIS 212 Catastrophe and Survival in 20th Century Europe (3)

Special Education and Humanities (Theology and Religious Studies) (17-18 credits)
ETP 200 Teaching Practice in Special Education (3)
ETP 200 Teaching Practice in Special Education and Second Major (3)

Special Education and Humanities (History) (18 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
ETP 200 Teaching Practice (3)

Plus all courses relevant to SPED specialization
Visual Impairment
EFS 221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 231 School Audiometry and Evaluation of Hearing (3)

Learning Disabilities
EFS 251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Level 3
Semester 2
Special Education & Primary Education (17–20 credits)
CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS 202 Education of the Gifted and Talented (3)
ETP 300 Teaching Practice in Special Education & Second Major (3)

Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization
Visual Impairment
EFS 321 Communications and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Mental Retardation
EFS 341 Society and children with Mental Retardation (3)

Learning Disabilities
EFS 351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Plus 6 credits from a, b or d
EPA 303 Planning and management (3)

ALL 253 The sociology of literature (2)
b. Mathematics & Science concentration
EPM 331 Teaching School Maths (3)
EPM 329 Principles of Physics & Earth Science (3)
c. Social Studies & Religious Education
EPS 323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
ELR 302 Practicum in Religious Education (3)
d. Practical subject concentration
i. Art Education
EPP 302 Practical Skills in Planning & Teaching Arts in the Primary School (4)
ii. Music Education
EPP 328 Teaching Methods in Music Education (4)
iii. Home Economics
HEE 227 Foundations of Food Preparation & meal Management (3)
Optional course: Choose one from the following:
EPA 303 Planning and Management (3)
PHR 261 Introduction to skills and techniques of soccer (2) GEC
Area 4 (2credits)
Bachelor Of Education
(Special Education)
(Credits depending on teaching subject concentration)
(Holder of UB Diploma)
Optional course: Choose one from the following:
EPL 300 Teaching Practice in Special Education & Second Major (3 credits). Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization
Visual Impairment
EFS 321 Communication and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
Hearing Impairment
EFS 231 School Audiology and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
Mental Retardation (For B Ed. Primary)
EFS 341 Society and children with Mental Retardation (3)
Learning Disabilities
EFS 351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)
ESB 362 Advanced Practicum in School Biology (3)
BIO 311 Plant Systematics (3)
BIO 216 Principles of Ecology (3, pre-req. BIO 434)
Plus ONE of:
BIO 306 Developmental Biology (3)
BIO 308 Molecular Biology (3)
Chemistry
ESC 362 Advanced Practicum in School Chemistry (3)
Plus two from the following:
C 312 I Lab Third Year Inorganic Laboratory (1 credit)
C 312 II Lab Third Year Physical Chemistry Laboratory (1)
Physics
ESP 362 Advanced Practicum in School Physics (3) Plus
PHY 321 Electromagnetism (2)
PHY 322 Thermal Physics (2)
PHY 323 Vibrations, waves and Optics (2)
PHY 329 Physics Practicals 3.2 (2) Plus 2 credits GEC area 5
Special Education & Humanities (English/African Languages) (16-18 credits)
CORE (To be taken by all)
ETP 300 Teaching Practice in Special Education & Second Major (3)
EFS 302 Education of the Gifted and Talented (3)
Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization
Visual Impairment
EFS 321 Communication and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
Hearing Impairment
EFS 331 Advanced Communication Process for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
Learning Disabilities
EFS 351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)
Plus Core and Options in teaching subject.
Mathematics
ESM 362 Advanced Practicum in School Mathematics (3)
Plus two from the following:
MAT 312 Abstract Algebra I (3, pre-req. MAT 311)
MAT 324 Differential Equation (3, pre-req. MAT 222)
MAT 322 Real Analysis I (3)
Biology
ESB 362 Advanced Practicum in School Biology (3)
EPL 300 Theory and Practice of Second Language (3)
talented (3)

ETP300  Teaching Practice in Special Education & Second Major (3).

Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

Visual Impairment

EFS321  Commun and Language Dev for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Hearing Impairment

EFS331  Advanced Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

Learning Disabilities

EFS351  Career Educ for Studs with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

English

ELL302  The teaching of Literature at Secondary School level (3)

ENG351  Phonology of English (2)

ENG321  Usage in English (2)

African Languages

ELL302  The teaching of Literature at Secondary School Level (3)

ALL342  African Oral Narratives (2)

ALL343  Introduction to African Popular Theatre (2)

Plus 2 credits of GEC area 4 or 5

Special Education & Humanities (History) (18 credits)

CORE (To be taken by all)

EFS302  Education of the Gifted and Talented (3)

ETP300  Teaching Practice in Special Education and Second Major (3)

Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

Visual Impairment

EFS321  Communication and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Hearing Impairment

EFS331  Advanced Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

Learning Disabilities

EFS351  Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Theology and Religious Studies Core

ELR302  Practice of Religious Education (3)

TRS314  Christian Moral Theology (2)

Plus optional course: choose two from the following.

TRS316  History and Mythology of Jesus (2)

TRS325  Foundational Structures of Islam (2)

TRS302  Missionaries in 19th Century South Africa (2)

Plus one GEC area 3 or 5

Level 4

Semester 2

Bachelor Of Education

(Special Education)

Special Education and Primary Education

(19-22)

SPED: CORE (To be taken by all)

EFS400  Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in SPED (3)

EFS402  Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)

Plus one from the following courses:

EFS403  Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)

EFS404  Education of Children with ADHD (3)

Second Major Content

Primary Education Teaching Subject Cluster:

1. Reading English/ Setswana

EPL411  Teaching Reading in the Primary Schools (3)

ALL342  African Oral Narratives (2)

ENG411  Form, Function and Variation of English (2)

EPM429  Advanced Concepts in Physics and Earth Science (3)

2. Mathematics and Science

EPM429  Advanced Concepts in Biology and Earth Science (3)

EPM427  Calculus II (3)

Plus

EPE411  Educational Management and Curriculum Development (3)

3. Social Studies and Religious Education

HIS414  Chiefs, Commoners, and the Impact (3)

TRS315  Sociology of Religion (3)

ENG320  Botswana Environment (2)

4. Practical Subjects. Continue with area chosen at level 200 Semester 1

i. Art Education

EPP405  Integrated Arts Education in Cultural Context (4)

ii. Music Education

EPP449  Movement in Music (4)

iii. Home Economics

HEE311  Clothing Design and Construction (3)

HEE453  Family Resource Management (3)

Plus a course in the following areas (Continue with area chosen at level 200 Sem. 1)

ALL342  African Oral Narratives (2) OR

ENG411  Form, Function and Variation of English (2)

EPM429  Advanced Concepts in Physics and Earth Science (3)

TRS315  Sociology of Religion (3) and

HIS414  Chiefs, Commoners and the Impact of Colonial Rule (3)

1. Special Topics (Continue with areas chosen at level 200 Sem. 1)

i. Guidance and Counseling

EFH406  Consultation in Counselling and Human Services (3)

ii. Infant Education

EPI342  Contemporary Issues in Early Childhood Education (3)

iii. Environmental Education

EPI443  Environmental Conservation Strategies II (3)

Plus a course in the following areas (Continue with area chosen at level 200 Sem. 1)

ALL342  African Oral Narratives (2) OR

ENG411  Form, Function and Variation of English (2)

EPM427  Calculus II (3)

EPM429  Advanced Concepts in Physics and Earth Science (3)

TRS315  Sociology of Religion (3) and

HIS414  Chiefs, Commoners and the Impact of Colonial Rule (3)

Plus Optional Courses: (Choose one)

EPE411  Educational Management and Curriculum Development (3)

ENV320  Botswana’s Environment (3)

Special Education and Science

(Specials) (19)

SPED: CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS 400 Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in SPED (3)

EFS 402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)

Plus one from the following courses:

EFS 403 Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)

EFS 404 Education of Children with ADHD (3)

Second Major

ELC 411 Curriculum Development for Social Studies Teachers (3)

Plus one from the following courses:

ELC 412 Development of Social Studies Instructional Materials (3)

ELC 432 Skills in Map Interpretation (3)

Elecctives (3 credits) a course outside of Special Education and second major.

Special Education and Humanities: History (15-18 credits)

SPED: CORE (To be taken by all)

EFS 400 Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in SPED (3)

EFS 402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)

Optional (one from the following)

EFS 403 Speech Correction for Students with Communication disorders (3)

EFS 404 Education of Children with ADHD (3)

Second Major:

HIS 414 Chiefs, Commoners and the Impact of Colonial Rule (3)

HIS 422 Historical lokas during the Modern and Contemporary Period (3 credits)

Plus one from the following:

ELC 422 Social Studies Teacher Preparation (3)

ELC 442 Values Education (3)

Elecctives (3 credits) one course outside of Special Education and second major.

Special Education and Humanities: English and African Languages/Theology and Religious Studies/Social Studies/Home Economics—Specials (21 credits)

SPED: CORE (To be taken by all)

EFS 400 Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in SPED (3)

EFS 402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)

Plus one from the following courses:

EFS 403 Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)

EFS 404 Education of Children with ADHD (3)

Second Major

English

ENG 411 Form, Function and Variation in English (2)

ENG 431 Introduction to Discourse Analysis (2)

ELL 402 Interdisciplinary Approaches to Literacy Education (3)
Assessment
Performance in each course shall be assessed by a combination of coursework and two hour final examination in the ratio 1:1, unless otherwise stated in the Course Description.

Award Of Diploma and Degree
Subject to General Regulation 00.852:
To be awarded the Diploma in Special Education a student must complete a minimum of 72 credits; to be awarded the B.Ed (Special Education), a student must complete a minimum of 144 credits.

Bachelor of Education Degree in Counselling (Bed Counselling)

i) Entrance requirements
a) At least five credits in any Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent. These subjects should include credit in English Language and a pass in Mathematics.

b) An acceptable Diploma or equivalent in Adult Education, Home- Economics, Nursing, Physical Health and Recreation, Primary Education or Secondary Education, Social Work or Theology, or any other relevant field. Holders of acceptable Diploma qualifications, who have equivalent foundation courses in Counselling will gain credit exemptions for equivalent courses completed at College level. Entrants who gain sufficient credit exemptions may enter with advanced standing and enroll direct in Levels 200 or 300. Credit exemptions will be considered on a case-by-case basis. Relevant work experience shall be an added advantage.

c) Holders of a Certificate in Education plus BGCSE/COSC grades or equivalent not meeting ii) above but who have at least two years appropriate work experience may be admitted under the Mature Age Entry Scheme. Applicants admitted through this scheme shall be interviewed.

d) To determine the numbers who take the Major/Major, there will be screening and interviews. The screening will include BGCSE grade equivalents of credit in English and pass in Mathematics, passing core courses in counselling at levels 100 and 200 a minimum GPA of 3.0, a personal interview in which the academic background, educational and professional goals, experience, personal and emotional stability of each candidate are evaluated before admission is granted.

Major/minor – BEd Counselling

IX) Major/Minor Courses
Student in the Major/Minor will take the following courses.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
EFH 100 Foundations of Guidance and Counselling (3)

EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)

Elective Course (3 credits)
Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

General Education Courses (4 Credits)
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills 1(2)

GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals1 (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
EFH 102 Indigenous Guidance and Counselling Approaches (2)

EFH 103 Introduction to Career Development (2)

EFH104: Helping Relationship Skills (3)

Elective Course (3 credits)
Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

General Education Course (4 credits)
GEC112 Communications & Study Skills II (2)

GEC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
EFH201 Counselling over the Lifespan (3)

EFH202 Theories and Techniques of Counselling (3)

Elective Course (3 credits)
Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

Semester 4
Core Courses
EFH 200 Group Work in Counselling (3)

EFH 204 Ethical & Legal Issues in Counselling (2)

EFR 220 Introduction to Educational Research (3)

Elective Course (3 credits)
Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
EFH 300 Appraisal Techniques in Counselling(3)

EFH 302 Community Counselling (3)

EFH 303 Multicultural Counselling (3)

Elective Course (3 credits)
Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

Semester 6
Core Courses
EFH304 HIV/AIDS Counselling (3)

EFH305 Teaching of Guidance & Counselling in Schools & Other Settings (3)

EFH307 Practicum in Guidance and Counselling (Classroom/field work practice) (3)

Optional Courses (Choose One):
EFF220 Historical, Philosophical and Sociological Foundations of Education (3)

EFH203 Occupational Counselling (3)

EFP200 Human Learning, Cognition and Motivation (3)

EFH308 Family and Marriage Counselling (3)

Elective Course (2 credits)
Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
EFH400 Substance Abuse Counselling (3)

EFH401 Research Project in Counselling (3)

Optional Course (Choose one):
EFF309 Human Sexuality & Counselling (3)

EFH410 Seminars in Counselling (3)

EFH405 Spiritual Counselling (3)

Elective Course (3 credits)
Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

Semester 8
Core Courses
EFH407 Consultation in Schools & Community Settings (3)

EFH408 Internship in Guidance and Counselling (Field work) (6)

EFH409 Development & Management of Guidance & Counselling School Programs (3)

Major/Major – BEd Counselling

Major/Major
The proposed program can be taken by any
student from any program and it shall extend over 8 semesters. It shall comprise of CHS core, optional, elective and general education courses. Students shall meet normal elective and general education requirements stipulated for bachelor’s degrees. In the Major/Major, students shall take a minimum of 57 credits in Counselling core, and 6 optional as listed below.

MAJOR/MAJOR

Students in Major/Major will take the following courses being for the counseling major:

LEVEL 100

Semester 1
Core Courses
EFP100 Foundations of Guidance and Counselling (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
EFP200 Education (Semester 1)
EFP201 Education (Semester 2)

LEVEL 200

Semester 3
Core Courses
EFP300 Educational Foundations (Semesters 1 and/or 2)
EFP301 Sociological Foundations of Education (Semesters 1 and 2)

Semester 4
Core Courses
EFP400 History of Education in Botswana (Semesters 1 and 2)
EFP401 Current Issues in Teacher Education (Semesters 1 and 2)

LEVEL 300

Semester 5
Core Courses
EFP500 Educational Psychology (Semesters 1 and/or 2)

Semester 6
Core Courses
EFP600 Educational Leadership (Semesters 1 and 2)

LEVEL 400

Semester 7
Core Courses
EFH400 Substance Abuse Counselling (3)
EFH401 Research Project in Counselling (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
EFH407 Consultation in Schools & Community Settings (3)
EFH408 Internship in Guidance and Counselling (6)
EFH409 Development & Management of Guidance & Counselling School Programmes (3)

Assessment
1. CA. only normally comprising at least three pieces of work (such as written assignment, test, presentations, project and reports) Or
2. CA normally comprising at least two pieces of work and a final examination in the ratio of 1:1

List of Foundational Courses Offered in the Department
The Department of Educational Foundations offers core courses in Education, which are considered essential for all students in the Faculty of Education. The courses are offered at various levels.

Level 1
EFA100 School Organisation (Semester 1 and 2).
EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (Semesters 1 and 2).

Level 2
EFA200 Managing Quality Schools (Semesters 1 and 2)
EFP200 Human Learning, Cognition and Motivation (Semesters 1 and 2)

The Post Graduate Diploma in Education
Aims
(1) The main aim is to prepare teachers who are professionally qualified to teach in secondary schools with a sensitivity and understanding of the multi-layered and multidimensional context in which they operate. These contexts include the socio-cultural, political, local, national and international dimensions of education.

(2) It also proposes to prepare individuals who are sensitive to issues of unity, equality, social justice and democracy in the classrooms, educational institutions and society at large. This incorporates issues of gender, social class, ethnicity, age and race.

(3) to prepare teachers who will promote the Vision 2016 goal of an educated and an informed.
nation.

Objectives
Having successfully completed the PGDE programme the student should be able to
- apply knowledge, values, teaching and learning perspectives essential to the teaching profession
- demonstrate expertise in applying, synthesising and analysing teachers’ work
- show competence in critical thinking and reflective practice
- demonstrate familiarity with and ability to adapt to the everyday life of the school and class requiring skills in interpersonal relations and communication, and knowledge of action research through the successful completion of portfolios, projects and other assignments.

Entrance Qualifications
The normal entry requirements into the PGDE shall be in accordance with the General regulations 30.20

Programme Structure
The Post Graduate Diploma in Education shall normally be a one year full-time programme. The minimum number of credits required to graduate is 31 made up of core courses of 2 to 3 credits. All students shall take 8 courses from EDF and the remaining four from one of the respective departments of LSSE/DMSE/HE according to the area of specialization of the student. Thus the PGDE shall comprise 12 core courses and an additional compulsory Winter course of Teaching Practice worth 3 credits. Students shall take the following core courses:

(i) Take in Semester 1
- EFP500 Psychology of learning (3) (semesters 1 and 2)
- EFC500 Curriculum and Instruction (3)
- EDT500 Information and Technology (2)
- EFG 500 Guidance and Counselling (2)
(ii) Take in Semester 2
- EFF573 The Teacher, School and Society (2) (semesters 1 and 2)
- EFR500 Measurement and Evaluation (3)
- EFA 500 School Organization and Management (3)
- EFC 510 Contemporary Issues in Education (2)
- EFS 500 Special Education (2) (semesters 1 and 2)

And any one of the following Options (A to E): A. Students intending to be Language and Social Science Teachers
- (i) Take in Semester one any two of ELL 501 Language and Education Issues
  - ELR501 Theory and Practice of Religious Education
  - ELG501 The Theory and Practice of Teaching Geography
  - ELH501 Theory of Teaching History
  - ELF501 Theory of Teaching French
(ii) Take in Semester 2
  - Two courses corresponding to those taken in semester one in (i) above.
  - ELL502 Practical Approaches to the Teaching of English Language and Literature
  - ELL504 Practical Approaches to the Teaching of Setswana
  - ELR502 Theory and Practice of Religious Education
  - ELO502 the Theory and Practice of Teaching Geography
  - ELH502 Practice of Teaching History
  - ELF 502 Practice of Teaching French
B. Students intending to be Home Economics Teachers
(i) Take in Semester 1
- EHE511 Fundamentals of Teaching Home Economics in Secondary Schools
- EHE512 Methods of Teaching and Evaluation in Home Economics
(ii) Take in Semester 2
- EHE513 Management of Home Economics Instruction
- EHE514 Curriculum Issues in Home Economics
C. Students intending to be Computer Studies teachers shall
(i) Take in Semester 1
- ESE561 Introduction to Theory of Teaching Computer Studies
(ii) Take in Semester 2
- ESE 62 The Practice of Teaching Computer Studies
- ESE572 Secondary School Computer Studies Teaching
D. Students intending to be Mathematics teachers shall
(i) Take in Semester 1
- ESM561 Introduction to the Theory of Teaching Mathematics
- ESM 591 Guided Study in Mathematics Education
(ii) Take in Semester 2
- ESM562 The Practice of Teaching Mathematics
- ESM572 Secondary School Mathematics Teaching
- ESE591 Guided Study in Computer Education
E. Students intending to be Science teachers shall
(i) Take in Semester 1
- ESS561 Introduction to the Theory of Teaching Secondary School Science
- ESS591 Guided Study in Science Education
(ii) Take in Semester 2
- ESS662 The Practice of Teaching Secondary School Science Plus one of:
  - ESB572 Teaching the Secondary School Biology Syllabus
  - ESC572 Issues in Secondary School Chemistry Teaching
- ESE572 Secondary School Physics Teaching Winter Course
- ETP300 Teaching Practice

Assessment
All courses will normally be assessed by means of continuous assessment and final examination on a ratio 1:1, or by a CA only. Students shall be encouraged to visit schools and produce reports based on their observations and practical applications of the theoretical approaches they will have been provided with.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Shall be in accordance with the Provision of General Regulation 00.9.

Award of the Diploma
The diploma shall be awarded in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 10.4 subject to:
- Completing a minimum of 31 credits
- Completion of seven weeks of Teaching Practice which has to be passed. The final mark of T.P. will be part of the overall grade.

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATIONAL TECHNOLOGY

1.3 Course Listings
1.3.1 Kindly consult the Department for the list of courses on offer.
1.3.2 Courses offered by the Department of Educational Technology have been awarded the Department’s code (EDT) as follows:
- EDT310 Producing Instructional Materials for Primary Education (2 credits - Sem 2)
- EDT543 Planning and Producing Instructional Materials (2 credits - Sem 1 and 2)
- EDT411 Educational Technology Basics (2 credits - Semester 1 Only)
DEPARTMENT OF HOME ECONOMICS EDUCATION

Bachelor of Home Economics Education Degree Programme

Entry Requirements
In addition to satisfying the requirements of General Regulations 20.21, candidates shall be required to have a credit in Biology, and/or Chemistry, or related Science Combination at Ordinary Level or its equivalent. A pass in any Home Economics subject shall be an added advantage.

Alternative Entrance Qualifications
Applicants with a Diploma in Home Economics Education, or a Diploma in Secondary Education from Colleges of Education, shall be admitted into Level 200 or 300 of the Degree Programme on the basis of accumulated credits in the area of Home Economics.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
- HEE114 Introduction to Nutrition (3)
- HEE115 Family Studies Foundations (3)
- BIO123 Anatomy, Physiology and Biochemistry (3)
- CHE107 Chemistry Applied to Home Economics (3)
- EC011 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
- HEE116 Introduction to Consumer Education (3)
- BIO123 Introduction to Microbiology and Stored Product Entomology (3)
- EFP100 Intro. to Educational Psychology (3)
- PHY162 Physics Applied to Home Econ. (3)
- GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2)
- GEC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2)

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
- HEE229 Child Development: Prenatal through Early Childhood (3)
- HEE230 Introduction to Housing (2)
- HEE232 Introductory Textiles – (pre CHE 120) (3)
- HEE233 Food Science – (pre BIO 123, CHE 120, PHY 162) (3)
- HEE234 Social and Psychological Aspects of Clothing (2)
- HEE235 Foundations of Home Economics Extension (3)
- HEE238 Orientation to teaching Home Economics (3)
- HEE239 Elective courses are to be chosen from any other course outside of the Home Economics programme for which students are eligible.

Semester 2
Core Courses
- HEE218 Fundamentals of Clothing Production – (pre HEE 232) (3)
- HEE227 Foundations of Food Preparation and Meal Management – (pre HEE 233) (3)
- HEE236 Methods of Teaching Home Economics Extension (3)
- HEE237 Home Economics Internship (3)
- ETP200 Teaching Practice (3)
- EFR200 Introduction to Measurement in Education (3)
- EFR220 Introduction to Educational Research(3)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
- HEE337 Human Development Across the Lifespan (2)
- HEE338 Consumer Protection (2)
- HEE339 Housing in World Perspective – (pre HEE 230) (3)
- HEE367 Research Methods in Home Economics (3)
- EFH 201 Counseling over Lifespan (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
- HEE332 Community Nutrition – (pre HEE 114) (3)
- HEE343 Food Service Management – (prereq, HEE 227) (3)
- HEE345 Food Technology – (prereq, HEE 233) (3)
- HEE347 Curriculum Development in Early Childhood Education (3)
- HEE348 Risk and Resiliency in Childhood Development (3)
- HEE355 Fashion Merchandising & Marketing (3)
- HEE356 Apparel Design and Product Development (3)
- HEE359 Design Fundamentals – (prereq, HEE 230) (3)
- HEE360 Building Construction and Environmental Systems – (pre HEE 359) (3)
- HEE362 Housing and Services for Families with Special Needs (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
- HEE325 Programme Planning in Home Economics Extension (3)
- HEE326 Community Mobilization and Group Dynamics – (pre HEE 325) (3)
- HEE340 Home Economics Instruction in Secondary Schools – (pre HEE 238) (3)
- ETP300 Teaching Practice (3)
- EFC200 Introduction to Curriculum Development (3)

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
- HEE441 Research Project – (pre HEE 340) (3)
- MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3)
- HEE443 Clinical Nutrition – (pre HEE 114) (3)
- HEE445 Quantity Food Production – (pre HEE 343, HEE 344, HEE 227) (3)
- HEE447 Food Product Development – (pre HEE 233) (3)
- HEE451 Public Policy for Children and Families (3)
- HEE454 Family Counseling (3)
- HEE455 Textiles and Technology – (pre HEE 232) (3)
- HEE459 Tailoring – (pre HEE 357) (3)
- HEE462 Housing and the Social Environment (3)
The normal Entry Requirements shall be as stipulated in the University of Botswana General Regulations – Entrance Qualifications 20.20, and Departmental Regulation E.D. 26. 10 and ED. 26.12.

Semester 5
Level 3
African Languages and Literature
ALL321 The Structure of the Sentence (2)
ALL322 The Structure of Meaning (2)
ALL341 Introduction to Literary Theory (2)
English
ENG311 Modern English Grammar (2)
ENG317 African Drama (2)
ENG373 Botswana Literature (2)

English Language and Literature Curriculum Courses
ELL301 Curriculum and policy issues in language education (3)

Environmental Education
EEL301 Introduction to Environmental Education (2)

Home Economics
HHE229 Childcare and Development (3)
HHE238 Orientation to Teaching Home Economics (3)

Moral Education Curriculum Courses
ELM301 Theory of Moral Education (3)

Religious Education Courses
ELR301 Theology of Religion Education (3)

Setswana Language and Curriculum Courses
ELL301 Curriculum and policy issues in language education (3)

Social Studies
ELC302 Gender issues in Social Studies (3)

The Contemporary Setswana Novel (2)
English
ENG312 Milton (2)
ENG343 Modern African Poetry (2)
ENG324 Twentieth Century American Literature (2)
ENG327 Practical Drama (2)
ENG321 Usage in English (2)
ENG341 Introduction to Socio-linguistic (2)

Home Economics
HHE344 Menu Planning and Design (3)
HHE346 Food Quality Control (3)
HHE355 Fashion Merchandising and Marketing (3)

Social Studies
ELC321 Social Studies Methods (3)

The Co-existence of God and Evil (2)
One course (2-3 credits) to be selected from the Optional Courses for Semester 7

**Theology and Religious Studies**
- TRS402 Theology and Religious Studies
- TRS416 Religion and Politics (2)

**Social Studies**
- ELC403 Economic Cooperation
- ELC401 Socialisation Issues

**Teaching Methodology**
- ELP490 Research Methodology in Languages and Social Sciences Education (3)
- ALL421 Introduction to Historical and Comparative Linguistics based in Africa (2)
- ALL441 World Literature in Setswana Translation (2)

**Basic English Courses**
- ENG421 Approaches to Syntax (2)
- ENG444 Introduction to Pragmatics (2)

**Curriculum Design**
- ELC431 Civic Education
- ELC451 Resource Management in Africa
- ELC461 Human Rights Issues

**Theology and Religious Studies**
- TRS401 New Religious Movements (2)
- TRS402 Religion and Politics (2)

---

**Optional Courses for Semester 7**

- One course (2-3 credits) to be selected from the menu below.

**African Languages and Literature**
- ALL431 Introduction to Psycho-linguistics (2)
- ALL432 Language Instruction VII (2)
- ALL451 Studies in African Aesthetics (2)
- ALL452 Popular Culture in Africa (2)
- ALL453 Women’s Literature in Botswana (2)

**English**
- ENG412 Introduction to Shakespeare (2)
- ENG413 The African Novel I (2)
- ENG471 Introduction to Literary Stylistics (2)

**Environmental Education**
- EEL401 Environmental Conservation (2)

**Home Economics**
- HEE338 Consumer Protection (3)
- HEE339 Housing in World Perspective (2)
- HEE348 Risk and Resiliency in Child (3)

**Religious Education Curriculum Courses**
- ELM492 Evaluation of Religious Education in Botswana Secondary Schools (3)
- ELM493 Contemporary Moral Issues in Moral Education (3)

**Setswana Language and Literature**
- ELL403 Literacy, education, culture (3)
- ELL404 Reader-response Theories in the Secondary School Classroom (3)

**Social Studies**
- ELC421 Global Perspectives and Materials in Social Studies (3)
- ELC431 Civic Education (3)

**Theology and Religious Studies**
- TRS403 The Doctrine of Sin in the Bible (2)
- TRS405 Intermediate Hebrew I (2)
- TRS406 Intermediate Arabic I (2)
- TRS407 Islam’s Socio-cultural, legal and Political Structure (2)
- TRS409 African Christian Theologies (2)
- TRS411 Politics and Development of Biblical Thought (2)
- TRS412 Ecumenical Theology (2)
- TRS413 Hinduism (2)

**Optional Courses for Semester 8**

One course (2-3 credits) to be selected from the menu below.

**African Languages and Literature**
- ALL434 Introduction to Applied Linguistics (2)
- ALL435 Language Instruction VIII (2)
- ALL454 Children’s Traditions and Dramatics (2)
- ALL455 Postcolonial Theory and African Literature (2)

**English**
- ENG443 The African Novel II (2)
- ENG451 Introduction to Semantics (2)
- ENG452 Shakespeare Drama (2)
**DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND SCIENCE EDUCATION**

**1.0 General Information**

**1.0.1** The Department of Mathematics and Science Education offers courses to students in Degree and Non-Degree Teacher Education Programmes in the following teaching subjects:

- Biology
- Chemistry
- Physics
- Computer Studies
- Mathematics
- Curriculum Studies for Computer Studies, Mathematics and Science Education.

**1.0.2** Courses are also offered in the following specialized areas:

- Science/Mathematics/Computer Studies and Society
- Information and Communication Technology and the School Mathematics/Science Curriculum
- Theory and Practice of Teaching Computer Studies/Mathematics/Science

**1.0.3** Regulations, course details and/or pre-req. are listed for the following Programmes:

- Bachelor of Education (Science)
- Bachelor of Education (Secondary)
- Post Graduate Diploma in Education
- Master of Education (Mathematics Education)
- Master of Education (Science Education)
- MPhil and PhD in Mathematics Education
- MPhil and PhD in Science Education

**1.0.4** The Bachelor of Education Programme in Science commenced in 1984 and now prepares graduates to become Computer Studies, Mathematics and Science (Biology, Chemistry and Physics) teachers.

**1.0.5** The Bachelor of Education Programme in Secondary Education was designed to accommodate both the diploma of the Department and the Colleges of Education. It began in 1996 and in 1998 replaced the Bachelor of Education Programme in Science Education, which began in 1987. The PGDE is offered as a teaching qualification to holders of Bachelor of Science Degrees to prepare aspiring Computer Studies, Mathematics and Science teachers for their teaching careers.

**1.0.6** Optional courses may be taken in other departments by students who have met the appropriate Programme requirements.

**1.0.7** Courses are assessed in a variety of ways, including written assignments, tests and projects as approved by the Senate.

**1.0.8** The Department reserves the right not to offer optional courses in a given semester.

**1.1 Bachelor of Education Degree in Science**

The aim of the Bachelor of Education Combined Major Degree Programme in Science is to significantly contribute, in collaboration with the Faculty of Science, to national manpower development by producing high quality Computer Studies, Mathematics and Science teachers for the national education sector. Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 00.0 and 20.00 and to the Faculty of Education Special Regulations, the following Special Regulations of the Department of Mathematics and Science shall apply:

**1.2 Entrance Requirements**

**1.2.1** Admission into Level One of the Programme shall be governed by General Regulation 20.2.

**1.2.2** Minimum requirements are a BGCSE with a pass in English Language and a C grade in Mathematics and any two of Biology, Chemistry or Physics, or a minimum of Grade BB in Science Double Award.

**1.2.3** An applicant who has taken relevant Advanced Level (A-Level) or equivalent examinations and who has attained a minimum of one E and two Os in the relevant subjects may be admitted into the Bachelor of Education Degree Programme in Science.

**1.2.4** If an applicant has Grade E or better at Advanced Level, or equivalent qualifications in Science subjects, he/she may, subject to the approval of the Head of Department and the approval of the Deputy Dean, be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent course(s) prescribed for the Degree Programme.

**1.2.5** Bachelor of Science students of the University with passes in at least two teaching subjects at Level One may be admitted into Level Two of the Programme.

**1.3 Programme Structure**

There are a total of forty-three (43) Mathematics Education/ Science Education/ Educational Foundations courses in the 8-semester Programme covering the teaching subjects Biology, Chemistry, Computer Studies, Mathematics and Physics. During the Programme, each student will be required to take thirteen (13) of these courses.
1.3.1 Levels One and Two (Seminars 1 to 4) In Level 1, students shall follow a common Level One Programme with the Bachelor of Science students. In Level Two, all Education courses are core courses and the Department prescribes four of these to be taken by all students.

1.3.2 Levels Three and Four (Seminars 5 to 8) a) In Level Three, the Department prescribes four core courses for all students and one optional course which students can choose from a menu of Computer Studies Education, Mathematics Education or Science Education courses in line with the proposed areas of specialization in the Department.

b) In Level Four, the Department prescribes two core courses for all students and two optional courses, which students can choose from a menu of Computer Studies Education, Mathematics Education or Science Education courses as a follow-up to choices in Level Three.

1.4 Levels One and Two

Level One

Core Courses (6 courses/26 credits)

Semester 1
- MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4)
- PHY111 General Chemistry I (4)
- BIOL111 Principles of Biology (4)
- CHE101 General Chemistry I (4)
- PHY119 Physics Practical 1.1 (1)

Semester 2
- MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II (4)
- PHY121 Electricity and Magnetism, Modern Physics (2) and:
- PHY129 Physics Practical 1.2 (1)
- CHE121S Computer and Information Skills I (2)
- GEC122S Computer and Information Skills II (2)
- GEC111S Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC112S Communication and Study Skills II (2)

Level 2

Core Courses (6 to 10 courses/16 to 20 credits) The two teaching subjects taken and passed at Level One shall be selected as follows:

a) Courses for the Major teaching subject are to be selected from the approved Faculty of Science courses listed below;

b) One 3-credit course per semester is to be selected from the approved Faculty of Science Minor teaching subjects listed below.

Option A
Students shall select courses from any two of the following teaching subjects: Biology; Computer Science; Chemistry; Physics.

Option B
Students shall take courses in Pure Mathematics and 1 of the following teaching subjects: Applied Mathematics; Biology; Chemistry; Computer Science; Physics.

Semester 3

Biology
- BIO212 Genetics (3)
- BIO214 Introduction to Mammalian Physiology (3)

Chemistry
- CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2)
- CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
- CHE232 Structure and survey of Functional Groups (2)

Applied Mathematics
- MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
- MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Physics
- PHY211 Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)
- PHY212 Properties of Matter and Thermodynamics (2)
- PHY219 Physics Practical 2.1 (1)
- MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)

Semester 4

Biology
- BIO211 Cell Biology (3)
- BIO213 Plant Structure and Function (3)

Chemistry
- CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2)
- CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
- CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2)
- CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

Computer Science
- LIS208 Principles of Data Communication (3)
- CSI252 Operating Systems Concept (3)

Applied Mathematics
- MAT242 Computing I (3)
- MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3)

Pure Mathematics
- MAT212 Introductory Linear Algebra (3)
- MAT222 Calculus II (3)

Physics
- PHY221 Electricity and Magnetism (2)
- PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)
- PHY229 Physics Practical 2.2 (1)

1.5 Levels Three and Four (Seminars 5 to 8)

Option A
Students shall select courses from the approved Faculty of Education courses listed below:

Semester 3
- EFF100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3) plus:
  One of the following courses:
  - ESE261 Basic Teaching Methods in Secondary School Computer Studies (3)
  - ESM261 Basic Teaching Methods in Secondary School Mathematics (3)
  - ESS261 Basic Teaching Methods in Secondary School Science (3)

Option B
Students shall select courses from any two of the following teaching subjects: Biology; Computer Science; Chemistry; Physics.

Semester 4
- EFF220 Historical, Philosophical and Sociological Foundations of Education (3) plus:
  One of the following courses:
  - ESE262 Practicum in Secondary School Computer Studies Teaching (3)
  - ESM262 Practicum in Secondary School Mathematics Teaching (3)
  - ESS262 Practicum in Secondary School Science Teaching (3)

Winter Course
- ETP200 Teaching Practice I (3)

General Education Courses (2 courses/6 credits)
- GEC121S Computer and Information Skills I (2)
- GEC122S Computer and Information Skills II (2)
- GEC111S Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC112S Communication and Study Skills II (2)

Level 2

Core Courses (6 to 10 courses/16 to 20 credits)

The two teaching subjects taken and passed at Level One shall be selected as follows:

a) Courses for the Major teaching subject are to be selected from the approved Faculty of Science courses listed below;

b) One 3-credit course per semester is to be selected from the approved Faculty of Science Minor teaching subjects listed below.

Option A
Students shall select courses from any two of the following teaching subjects: Biology; Computer Science; Chemistry; Physics.

Option B
Students shall take courses in Pure Mathematics and 1 of the following teaching subjects: Applied Mathematics; Biology; Chemistry; Computer Science; Physics.

Semester 3

Biology
- BIO212 Genetics (3)
- BIO214 Introduction to Mammalian Physiology (3)

Chemistry
- CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2)
- CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
- CHE232 Structure and survey of Functional Groups (2)

Applied Mathematics
- MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
- MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Physics
- PHY211 Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)
- PHY212 Properties of Matter and Thermodynamics (2)
- PHY219 Physics Practical 2.1 (1)
- MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)

Semester 4

Biology
- BIO211 Cell Biology (3)
- BIO213 Plant Structure and Function (3)

Chemistry
- CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2)
- CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
- CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2)
- CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

Computer Science
- LIS208 Principles of Data Communication (3)
- CSI252 Operating Systems Concept (3)

Applied Mathematics
- MAT242 Computing I (3)
- MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3)

Pure Mathematics
- MAT212 Introductory Linear Algebra (3)
- MAT222 Calculus II (3)

Physics
- PHY221 Electricity and Magnetism (2)
- PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)
- PHY229 Physics Practical 2.2 (1)

Core Courses (5 courses/15 credits) Students shall select courses from the approved Faculty of Education courses listed below:

Semester 3
- EFF100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3) plus:
  One of the following courses:
  - ESE261 Basic Teaching Methods in Secondary School Computer Studies (3)
  - ESM261 Basic Teaching Methods in Secondary School Mathematics (3)
  - ESS261 Basic Teaching Methods in Secondary School Science (3)

Option B
Students shall select courses from any two of the following teaching subjects: Biology; Computer Science; Chemistry; Physics.

Semester 4
- EFF220 Historical, Philosophical and Sociological Foundations of Education (3) plus:
  One of the following courses:
  - ESE262 Practicum in Secondary School Computer Studies Teaching (3)
  - ESM262 Practicum in Secondary School Mathematics Teaching (3)
  - ESS262 Practicum in Secondary School Science Teaching (3)

Winter Course
- ETP200 Teaching Practice I (3)

General Education Courses (2 courses/6 credits)
- GEC121S Computer and Information Skills I (2)
- GEC122S Computer and Information Skills II (2)
- GEC111S Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC112S Communication and Study Skills II (2)
Semester 5
Core Courses (5 courses/14 credits)
In this semester, students shall also select courses from the following list of Faculty of Education courses:
EFS101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3) plus:
One of the following courses:
ESE361 Teaching Strategies for School Mathematics (3)
ESB361 Teaching in the Contemporary Biology Classroom (3)
ESC361 Introductory Pedagogical Content Knowledge in School Chemistry (3)
ESP361 Pedagogic Strategies for School Physics (3)

Semester 6
Students will choose one of the following:
ESB362 Advanced Practicum in School Biology Teaching (3)
ESC362 Advanced Practicum in School Chemistry Teaching (3)
ESE362 Advanced Practicum in School Computer Studies Teaching (3)
ESP362 Advanced Practicum in School Physics Teaching (3)
ESM362 Advanced Practicum in School Mathematics Teaching (3) and:
ESR362 Introduction to Research Methods in Mathematics and Science Education (2)

Winter Course
EITP300 Teaching Practice II (3)
Optional Courses (1 course/2 credits)

Semester 6
Students shall select one of the following:
ESE372 Development and Evaluation of Computer Studies Practical Work (2)
ESE392 Impact of Information and Communication Technology on the Teaching/Learning Process (2)
ESM312 Philosophy and Psychology of Mathematics Teaching (2)
ESM3172 Mathematical Problem Solving (2)
ESS352 Human Impact on the Environment (2)
ESS372 Development and Evaluation of Investigative Work in School Science (2)
General Education Courses (1 course/3 credits)
Students shall choose GECs from the University-wide menu.
Elective Course (1 course/2 credits)
Elective courses shall be chosen from any course offered outside of the Department of Mathematics and Science Education for which students are eligible.
1.5.2 Level Four Core Courses (4 to 6 courses/12 credits)
Students shall select courses for their Major teaching subject from the approved Faculty of Science courses listed below:

Semester 7
Biology
BIO421 Entomology (3)
BIO427 Evolution (3)
BIO431 Plant Response to Environmental Stress (3)
BIO450 Research Project (6)

Chemistry
CHE431 Heterocyclic Chemistry, Synthetic Reactions and Design of Organic Synthesis (3)
CHE441 Advanced Physical Chemistry I (3)

Computer Science
CS421 Advanced Transition Metal Chemistry (3)
CS431 Operating Systems (3)
CS432 Systems Programming (3)
CS441 Software Engineering (3)

Mathematics
MAT421 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)
MAT423 Mathematical Methods (3)

Physics
PHY411 Atomic and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY412 Statistical Mechanics and Solid State Physics I (2)
PHY419 Physics Practicals 4.1 (2)

Semester 8
Biology
BIO416 Immunology (3)
BIO423 Exercise Physiology (3)
BIO424 Vertebrate Structure (3)
BIO430 Post-Harvest Physiology (3)
BIO434 Plant Ecology (3)
BIO450 Research Project (Cont) (6)

Chemistry
CHE412 Sample Handling and Biochemical Analysis (3)
CHE432 Secondary Metabolites and Biomolecules (3)
CHE442 Advanced Physical Chemistry II (3)
Semester 7
Core Courses (2 courses/5 credits)
Students shall choose one course from the approved Faculty of Education courses listed below:

ESE461 Advanced Teaching Methods in School Computer Studies (3)
ESM461 Advanced Teaching Methods in School Mathematics (3)
ESB461 Critical Debates in Biology Education (3)
ESC461 Further Issues in Chemistry Pedagogical Content Knowledge (3)
ESP461 Advanced Pedagogic Strategies for School Physics (3)

Plus one of the following courses:

ESE441 Enrichment Topics in Computer Studies Education (2)
ESM441 Introduction to ICT in Mathematics Education (2)
ESS441 ICT for the Science Teacher Science (2)

Optional Courses (3 courses/6 credits)
Students shall choose one of the following:

ESE471 Contemporary Issues in Computer Studies Education (2)
ESM471 Contemporary Issues in Mathematics Education (2)
ESS471 Contemporary Issues in Science Education (2)
ESR481 Research Project in Mathematics/Science Education (2)

1.6 Assessment

1.6.1 Courses offered by the Department of Mathematics and Science Education shall normally be assessed through continuous assessment (CA) and final examination. Courses offered in other Faculties/Departments shall be governed by their relevant regulations.

1.6.2 Continuous assessment shall take a variety of forms including written assignments, tests, practicals, presentations and reports.

1.6.3 Continuous assessment shall normally comprise a minimum of 3 pieces of assessed work. The components of continuous assessment shall be equally weighted.

1.6.4 Courses which include a final examination in their assessment shall be examined by a 2-hour paper.

1.6.5 The ratio of continuous assessment to final examination shall be 1:1.

1.6.6 The overall grade in a course shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 00.84.

1.7 Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 00.8.

1.8 Award of Degree
The Degree shall be awarded in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 00.85, subject to completion of 6 credits of Teaching Practice.

2.0 Bachelor of Education in Secondary Education (Biology, Chemistry, Mathematics, Physics)
For all Regulations governing the Bachelor of Education Degree in Secondary Education, consult the Handbook of the Department of Languages and Social Sciences Education.

2.1 Level Two Core Courses (8 to 10 courses/24 to 29 credits)
Students shall select two teaching subjects from the following subjects:

- Applied Mathematics
- Biology
- Chemistry
- Mathematics
- Physics

Semester 3
Applied Mathematics
ESM201 INSET Introductory Mechanics I (3)
ESM214 INSET Introductory Computer Studies (3)

Biology
ESB201 Introduction to Biological Principles and Processes for Teachers I (3)
ESB211 Introduction to Biological Principles and Processes for Teachers II (3)

Chemistry
ESC201 Introductory Chemistry for Teachers (3)
ESC211 The Chemistry of Selected Elements for Teachers (3)

Mathematics
ESM203 INSET Algebra I (3)
ESM213 INSET Differential Calculus (3)

Physics
ESP201 Mechanics for Teachers (3)
ESP211 Waves and Optics for Teachers (3)

Ancillary Mathematics for the Sciences
ESM221 Pre-Calculus for Science Teachers (3)

Semester 4
Applied Mathematics
ESM204 INSET Introductory Mechanics II (3)
ESM211 INSET Introductory Mathematical Statistics (3)

Biology
ESB204 Introduction to Diversity in the Plant Kingdom for Teachers (3)
ESB214 Introduction to Diversity in the Animal Kingdom for Teachers (3)

Chemistry
ESC204 Chemical Equilibria for Teachers (3)
ESC214 Chemical Energetics and Kinetics for
### FACULTY OF EDUCATION

#### Semester 5

**Applied Mathematics**
- MAT387 Mechanics for Teachers I (3)
- MAT389 Linear Programming and Game Theory for Teachers (3)

**Biology**
- BIO211 Cell Biology (3)
- BIO214 Introduction to Mammalian Physiology (3)

**Chemistry**
- CHE232 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (2)
- CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
- CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2)
- CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

**Mathematics**
- MAT382 Calculus for Teachers II (3)
- MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)

**Physics**
- PHY221 Electricity and Magnetism (2)
- PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)
- PHY229 Physics Practicals 2.2 (1)
- Core Courses: Faculty of Education (2 courses/6 credits)

#### Semester 5 Students shall choose one of the following:
- ESM391 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Mathematics I (3)
- ESS391 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Science I (3)

**Semester 6**

**Applied Mathematics**
- MAT384 Computing for Teachers (3)
- MAT388 Mechanics for Teachers II (3)

**Biology**
- BIO213 Plant Structure and Function (3)
- BIO215 Principles of Ecology (3)

**Chemistry**
- CHE232 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (2)
- CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
- CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2)
- CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

**Mathematics**
- MAT382 Calculus for Teachers II (3)
- MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)

**Physics**
- PHY221 Electricity and Magnetism (2)
- PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)
- PHY229 Physics Practicals 2.2 (1)
- Core Courses: Faculty of Education (2 courses/6 credits)

**Semester 6 Students shall choose one course from the following:**
- ESM392 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Mathematics II (3)
- ESS392 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Science II (3) plus:
- ESR362 Introduction to Research Methods in Mathematics and Science Education (2)
- Optional Courses (1 course/2 credits)

**Semester 6 Students shall choose one course from the following:**
- ESM392 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Mathematics II (3)
- ESS392 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Science II (3) plus:
- ESR362 Introduction to Research Methods in Mathematics and Science Education (2)
- Optional Courses (1 course/2 credits)

**Semester 6 Students shall choose one course from the following:**
- ESM392 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Mathematics II (3)
- ESS392 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Science II (3) plus:
- ESR362 Introduction to Research Methods in Mathematics and Science Education (2)
- Optional Courses (1 course/2 credits)

#### Semester 7

**Biology**
- BIO316 Plant Physiology (3)
- BIO317 Comparative Vertebrate Zoology (3)

**Chemistry**
- CHE321 Coordination Chemistry (2)
- CHE323 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
- CHE341 Applications of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2)

**Mathematics**
- MAT485 Number Theory and Abstract Algebra for Teachers (3)

**Physics**
- PHY311 Mechanics (2)
- PHY312 Quantum Mechanics I (2)
- PHY319 Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)

**Semester 8**

**Biology**
- Any two of:
  - BIO306 Developmental Biology (3)
  - BIO311 Plant Systematics (3)
  - BIO314 Conservation Biology (3)

**Chemistry**
- CHE312 Analytical Spectroscopy (2)
- CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
- CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2)
- CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

**Mathematics**
- MAT324 Differential Equations (3) plus:
  - One of the following courses:
    - MAT492 Geometry for Teachers II (3)
    - MAT484 Introduction to Probability and Statistics for Teachers (3)

**Physics**
- PHY321 Electromagnetism (2)
- PHY322 Thermal Physics (2)
- PHY329 Physics Practicals 3.2 (2)

**Semester 7**

**Core Courses**
- Faculty of Education (1 course/2 credits)
- Students shall choose one of the following courses:
  - ESB461 Critical Debates in Biology Education (3)
  - ESC461 Further Issues in Chemistry Pedagogical Content Knowledge (3)
  - ESM461 Advanced Teaching Methods in School Mathematics (3)
Core Courses (32 credits)

Options from the Department of Educational Foundations

Semester 1
- EFP500 Psychology of Learning (3)
- EFC500 Curriculum and Instruction (3)
- EDT500 Information and Technology (2)
- EFG500 Guidance and Counseling (2)

Semester 2
- EFR500 Measurement and Evaluation (3)
- EFA500 School Management (3)
- EFS500 Contemporary Issues in Education (2)
- EFS500 Special Education (2)

Computer Studies

Semester 1
- ESE561 Introduction to Theory of Teaching Computer Studies (3)
- ESE591 Guided Study in Computer Education (3)

Semester 2
- ESE562 The Practice of Teaching Computer Studies (3)
- ESE572 Secondary School Computer Studies Teaching (3)

Mathematics

Semester 1
- ESM561 Introduction to Theory of Teaching Mathematics (3)
- ESM591 Guided Study in Mathematics Education (3)

Semester 2
- ESM562 The Practice of Teaching Mathematics (3)
- ESM572 Secondary School Mathematics Teaching (3)

Science

Semester 1
- ESS561 Introduction to the Theory of Teaching Secondary School Science (3)
- ESS591 Guided Study in Science Education (3)

Semester 2
- ESS562 The Practice of Teaching Secondary School Science (3)

plus one of the following:
- ESB572 Teaching the Secondary School Biology Syllabus (3)
- ESC572 Issues in Secondary School Chemistry Teaching (3)

Elective Courses (2 courses/6 credits)

Students shall select two electives from any courses offered outside the Department of Mathematics and Science Education for which they are eligible.

3.0 Post Graduate Diploma in Education

For all Regulations governing the PGDE, consult the Handbook of the Department of Educational Foundations. All students shall take eight Foundation courses and four courses from their respective teaching specializations, which shall be one of Biology, Chemistry, Computer Studies, Mathematics or Physics. The Diploma will thus comprise twelve (12) courses all of which are core plus a 3-credit Winter Course of Teaching Practice.
### Semester 4

**Core Courses**

- PHR261 Introduction to Skills and Techniques of Soccer (2)  
- PHR263 Table Tennis (2)  
- PHR265 Accident Prevention, First Aid and Care of Sports Injuries (2)  
- PHR266 Human Physiology Applied to Sports and Games (2)  
- PHR267 Teaching Physical Education in Pre-Primary School (2)

**GEC Courses (6 credits)**  
Elective Course (2 credits)

### Semester 5

**Level 300**

**Semester 5**

**Core Courses**

- PHR300 Advanced Swimming (2)  
- PHR302 Softball (2)  
- PHR313 Nutrition and Sports Performance (2)  
- PHR314 Biomechanics (2)

**Optional Courses**

- PHR305 Physical Education Teaching Methods (2)  
- PHR306 Community Recreation (2)  
- PHR307 Introduction to Biochemistry of Exercise and Sport (2)  
- PHR309 Adapted Physical Education I (2)  
- PHR310 Principles of Sport Management (2)  
- GEC Courses (5 credits)

**Level 400**

**Semester 7**

**Core Courses**

- PHR401 Advanced Volleyball (1, pre-req. EPE100)  
- PHR403 Handball (1)  
- PHR405 Hockey (1)  
- EFH 407 Consultation Schools and Community Settings (3)  
- ETP300 Teaching Practice (3)

**Optional Courses**

- PHR406 Physiology of Exercise I (2)  
- PHR415 Facility Management (2)  
- PHR416 Kinesiology (2)  
- PHR419 Supervision of School Physical Education (2)  
- PHR420 Leisure and Youth (2)  
- PHR422 Sociology of Sport (2)  
- PHR424 Movement and Creative Dance Technique (2)

**Level 600**

**Semester 8**

**Core Courses**

- PHR407 Motor Development and Movement Experiences for Young Children (2)  
- PHR408 Mechanical Analysis of Sports and Games (2)  
- PHR413 Issues in Physical Education, Sport and Recreation (2)  
- PHR414 Prevention and Care of Sports Injuries (2)  
- PHR417 Physiology of Exercise II (2)  
- PHR418 Psychological Basis of Physical Activity (2)  
- PHR421 Principles and Methods of Coaching (2)

**Optional Courses**

- PHR422 Movement and Creative Dance Technique (2)  
- PHR423 Sports Medicine (2)  
- PHR424 Movement and Creative Dance Technique (2)

**Assessment**

- Assessment shall be as per General Regulation 00.8.

**Progression from Semester to Semester**

- Progression from semester to semester shall be as per General Regulation 00.9.

**Award of Degree**

- The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulation 00.85

### DEPARTMENT OF PRIMARY EDUCATION

**B.Ed (Primary Education)**

**Entry Requirements**

- Applicants must have:
  
  (a) At least three credits in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent  
  (b) Primary Teacher’s Certificate (PTC), and  
  (c) Two year work experience in an educational setting. Students who do not have BGCSE or equivalent but have Junior Certificate (JC) in addition to (b) and (c) above shall apply through the Mature Age Entry Scheme as in General Regulation 00.52. Applicants with a diploma in Primary Education of this university or equivalent qualification approved by Senate and two years work experience in an educational setting will enter at Year 2 of the degree programme.

**Level 100**

**Semester 1**

- Major: Primary Education (15-18 Credits)  
- ENV101 Introduction to the Physical & Human Environments I (2)  
- EPE100 Introduction to Algebra (3)  
- EPE102 Introduction to Science (3)  
- EFF100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)  
- GEC111E Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)  
- GEC112E Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)

**Semester 2**

- Major: Primary Education (15-18 Credits)  
- EPE101 Algebra and its applications (3, pre-req. EPE100)  
- EPE103 Principles of Science (3)
EPE114 Introduction to Education in Botswana (3)
  1 Elective Course (3)

GEC112E Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)

GEC122E Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, GEC)

In Level 200-400, in addition to the major Primary Education, choose one of the following areas of concentration to make the second major:

1. Languages concentration

2. Maths & Science concentration

3. Social Studies / Religious Education concentration

4. Special Topics concentration

5. Practical Subjects concentration

Level 200
Semantic 3
Major I: Primary Education (15–18 Credits)
EPE215 Fundamental Issues in Developmental Psychology (3)
EPE211 Language Across the Curriculum (3)
  Or EPE212: Introduction to Language Arts (3)
(Take EPE211 if not chosen the language concentration).
Major II: Choose one of the following areas of concentration. This choice will be followed throughout the course of the degree programme.

1. Languages concentration
ALL141 Introduction to African Oral Literature (2)
ALL121 Introduction to the study of language and linguistic (2)
ENG211 The pronunciation of English (2)
  1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EFA100 School Organisations (3)
ALL151 Short Story Theory and Practice (2)
ALL152 Style in writing (2)

2. Maths & Science concentration
EPM226 Algebra and trigonometry I (3, Pre EPE101)
EPM229 Foundations of Biology & Earth Sciences (3)
  1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EFA100 School Organisations (3)
EPA203 Theories of Leadership & Supervision (3)

3. Social Studies / Religious Education concentration
ELC202 Social Studies and Nation building (3)
EPS200 Introduction to Social Studies [2] Plus 1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EFA100 School Organisations (3)
EPA203 Theories of Leadership & Supervision (3)

4. Special Topics Concentration (take ONE of the following areas as a teaching subject)

English
ENG211 The pronunciation of English (2)
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Setswana
ALL121 Introduction to the study of language and linguistics (2) and
ALL141 Introduction to African Oral Literature (2)

Mathematics
EPM226 Algebra and trigonometry I (3)
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Science
EPM229 Foundations of Biology & Earth Sciences (3)

Social Studies
EPS200 Introduction to Social Studies [2] Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

In addition, choose ONE of the following areas:

EPP201 Introduction to Art, Craft & Design (4)
EPP217 Introduction to Philosophy of Music Education and Fundamentals of Music (4)

HEE114 Introduction to Nutrition (3) Or
HEE115 Family Studies Foundations (3)
PHR138 Foundations of Physical Education Sport and Recreation (2)

Plus 1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EFA100 School Organisations (3)
EPS200 Introduction to Social Studies (2) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Level 200
 Semester 4
Major I: Primary Education (15–18 Credits)
EPE217 Human Growth and Development (3)
EPE214 Theory and Practice of the Project Method (3)
Major II: Continue with the area of concentration chosen in Semester 1.

1. Languages Concentration
ALL142 The Study of Drama (2)
ENG221 English Linguistics (2)
  1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EPA201 Classroom Management (3)
ALL153 Introduction to the African Novel (2)

2. Maths & Science Concentration
EPM227 Introduction to functions and the domains (3, pre EPM 226)
EPM228 Foundations of Chemistry and Physics (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EPA201 Classroom Management (3)
EPM230 Technology in Teaching Primary Mathematics (3)

3. Social Studies / Religious Education
EPS203 Indigenous People and their Environment (3)
EPS201 Theories & Practice of Values in Education (2)
Optional courses (Choose one):
TRS107 African Traditional Religion (3)
HIS202 Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slave Trade (3)
ENV102 Introduction to the Physical and human environment (2)

4. Special Topics Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
ENG221 English Linguistics (2)
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)
In addition, continue with the area chosen in Semester 1.

**Guidance/Counselling**

**EFS104** Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of disabilities (3)

*Optional courses (Choose one):*

**ALL152** Style in Writing (2)

**ALL241** History and structure of the Setswana language (2)

**ENG351** Phonology of English (2)

**ENG415** Reading in Literary Theory I (2)

**ENG441** Introduction to Pragmastics (3rd years only) (2)

**Mathematics/Science Concentration**

**EPM326** Introduction to probability and statistics (3), pre EPM 227

**EPM328** Principles of Chemistry and Physics (3)

**EPM330** Science Education (3) 1 Elective Course (3)

**Social Studies/Religious Education**

**EPS322** Social Studies and Curriculum Development (3)

**EPS331** Teaching social studies in the primary school (3) 1 Elective Course (3)

**Setswana**

**ALL221** Sound systems in African language (2) 1 Elective Course (3)

**Mathematics**

**EPM326** Introduction to probability and statistics (3)

**Science**

**EPM328** Principles of Chemistry and Physics (3)

**EPM330** Science Education (3)

**Social Studies**

**EPS322** Social Studies and Curriculum Development (3)

In addition, continue with the area chosen in Semester 1.

**EPP301** Appropriate Art, Craft & Design Methods and Materials for the Primary School (4)

**EPP327** Introduction to Ethnomusicology Education (4)

**HEE229** Child Development- Prenatal through Early Childhood (3)

**PHR269** Motor Learning and Human Performance (2)

*Optional courses (Choose one):*

**PHR210** Psychology of Sports (2)

**PHR142** Organisation and Administration of Physical Education and Sports (2) 1 Elective Course (3)
Level 300

Semester 6
Major I: Primary Education (15-18 Credits)
EDT310 Instructional Materials (2)
EPA304 Advanced Investigation in Education (3, pre-reg. EPA302)
EPM327 Principle of Biology and Earth Science (3) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Social Studies
EPS323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
1 Elective Course (3)
In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EFH305 Teaching Guidance & Counselling in Schools & Other Settings (3)

1. Mathematics/Science Concentration
EPM329 Principles of Biology and Earth Science (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EPA300 Action Research (2)
EPA301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
EPM301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
ALL253 The structure of words (2)
ENGL11 Modern English Grammar (2)
EPL312: Breakthrough to Literacy (3)
EPL300 Theory and Practice of Second Language (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):
ENGL321 Usage in English (2)
ENGL361 Morphology of English (2)
EPA300 Action Research (2)
EPA301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
EPM301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)

Social Studies Education Concentration
EPS300 Culture & Citizenship Education (3)
EPS323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
ELC311 Multicultural Education (3)
1 Elective Course (3)

4. Special Topics Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
EPL300 Theory and Practice of Second Language Teaching (3)
ENGL321 Usage in English Language (2)

Setswana
ALL222 The structure of words in African Languages (2)
EPL312 Breakthrough to literacy (3)

Mathematics
EPM331 Teaching School Mathematics (3)
EPM327 Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)

Science
EPM329 Principle of Biology and Earth Science (3) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Social Studies
EPS323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
1 Elective Course (3)
In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EFH305 Teaching Guidance & Counselling in Schools & Other Settings (3)

1. Mathematics/Science Concentration
EPM329 Principles of Biology and Earth Science (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EPA300 Action Research (2)
EPA301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
EPM301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
ALL253 The structure of words (2)
ENGL11 Modern English Grammar (2)
EPL312: Breakthrough to Literacy (3)
EPL300 Theory and Practice of Second Language (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):
ENGL321 Usage in English (2)
ENGL361 Morphology of English (2)
EPA300 Action Research (2)
EPA301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
EPM301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)

Social Studies Education Concentration
EPS300 Culture & Citizenship Education (3)
EPS323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
ELC311 Multicultural Education (3)
1 Elective Course (3)

4. Special Topics Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
EPL300 Theory and Practice of Second Language Teaching (3)
ENGL321 Usage in English Language (2)

Setswana
ALL222 The structure of words in African Languages (2)
EPL312 Breakthrough to literacy (3)

Mathematics
EPM331 Teaching School Mathematics (3)
EPM327 Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)

Science
EPM329 Principle of Biology and Earth Science (3)

Social Studies
EPS323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EFH305 Teaching Guidance & Counselling in Schools & Other Settings (3)

1. Mathematics/Science Concentration
EPM329 Principles of Biology and Earth Science (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EPA300 Action Research (2)
EPA301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
EPM301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
ALL253 The structure of words (2)
ENGL11 Modern English Grammar (2)
EPL312: Breakthrough to Literacy (3)
EPL300 Theory and Practice of Second Language (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):
ENGL321 Usage in English (2)
ENGL361 Morphology of English (2)
EPA300 Action Research (2)
EPA301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
EPM301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)

Social Studies Education Concentration
EPS300 Culture & Citizenship Education (3)
EPS323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
ELC311 Multicultural Education (3)
1 Elective Course (3)

4. Special Topics Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
EPL300 Theory and Practice of Second Language Teaching (3)
ENGL321 Usage in English Language (2)

Setswana
ALL222 The structure of words in African Languages (2)
EPL312 Breakthrough to literacy (3)

Mathematics
EPM331 Teaching School Mathematics (3)
EPM327 Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)

Science
EPM329 Principle of Biology and Earth Science (3)

Social Studies
EPS323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EFH305 Teaching Guidance & Counselling in Schools & Other Settings (3)

1. Mathematics/Science Concentration
EPM329 Principles of Biology and Earth Science (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EPA300 Action Research (2)
EPA301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
EPM301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
ALL253 The structure of words (2)
ENGL11 Modern English Grammar (2)
EPL312: Breakthrough to Literacy (3)
EPL300 Theory and Practice of Second Language (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):
ENGL321 Usage in English (2)
ENGL361 Morphology of English (2)
EPA300 Action Research (2)
EPA301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
EPM301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)

Social Studies Education Concentration
EPS300 Culture & Citizenship Education (3)
EPS323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
ELC311 Multicultural Education (3)
1 Elective Course (3)

4. Special Topics Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
EPL300 Theory and Practice of Second Language Teaching (3)
ENGL321 Usage in English Language (2)

Setswana
ALL222 The structure of words in African Languages (2)
EPL312 Breakthrough to literacy (3)

Mathematics
EPM331 Teaching School Mathematics (3)
EPM327 Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)

Science
EPM329 Principle of Biology and Earth Science (3)

Social Studies
EPS323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EFH305 Teaching Guidance & Counselling in Schools & Other Settings (3)

1. Mathematics/Science Concentration
EPM329 Principles of Biology and Earth Science (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EPA300 Action Research (2)
EPA301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
EPM301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
ALL253 The structure of words (2)
ENGL11 Modern English Grammar (2)
EPL312: Breakthrough to Literacy (3)
EPL300 Theory and Practice of Second Language (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):
ENGL321 Usage in English (2)
ENGL361 Morphology of English (2)
EPA300 Action Research (2)
EPA301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
EPM301 Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
4. Special Topics Concentration

(continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
ENG421 Approaches to Syntax (2)

Setswana
ALL321 The Structure of the Sentence (2)

Mathematics
EPM426 Introduction to Derivatives and their Applications (3, pre EPM327)

Science
EPM429 Advanced Concepts in Biology and Earth Science (3)

Social Studies
EPS401 The Role of Democracy in the Teaching of Social Studies (3)

In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EHF400 Substance Abuse Counselling (3)

Infant Education
EPI431 Management of Early Childhood Programme (3)

Environmental Education
EPI442 Environmental Conservation Strategies I (3)

Special Education
EFS350 Developmental Approach and Behavioural Management of students with learning difficulties (3, pre EFS101)

Optional courses (Choose one):
EFS240 Curriculum and Instructional methods for students with mild to moderate mental retardation (3)
EFP301 Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)

5. Practical Subjects Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
ENG421 Approaches to Syntax (2)

Setswana
ALL321 The Structure of the Sentence (3)

Mathematics
EPM426 Introduction to Derivatives and their applications (3)

Science
EPM429 Advanced Concepts in Biology and Earth Science (3)

Social Studies
EPS401 The Role of Democracy in the Teaching of Social Studies (3)

In addition, continue with the area chosen in Semester 1

EPS405 Integrated Arts Education in Cultural Context (4)
EPP447 Basic Instrumental Skills (4)
HEE454 Family Counselling (3) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)
PHR313 Nutrition and Sports performance (2) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):
EFS240 Curriculum and Instructional methods for students with mild to moderate mental retardation (3)
PHR309 Adapted Physical Education (2)
HEE337 Human Development across the life span (2) Or
HEE338 Consumer Protection (2)

EFP301 Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)

Level 400 Semester 8
Major I Primary Education (15-18 Credits)

GEC441 Special Education (3) -for students who have not chosen EFS101

EFS404 Education of Children with Attention Deficit Hyper Disorder (3)- for students who have chosen EFS101

EPE442 Research Project- continues from Semester 1- (2)

EFF410 Philosophy of Education (3)

Major II: Primary Education (15-18 Credits) Continue with the area of concentration chosen in Semester 1.

1. Languages Concentration
ENG411 Form, Function and Variation (2)

EPL412 Introduction to Reading Process (3)

ALL342 African Oral Narratives (2)

Optional courses (Choose one):
ENG435 Readings in Literary Theory 2 (2)

EFS351 Career Education for students with Learning difficulties (3, pre EFS101)

EPA300 Action Research (2)

EPE411 Educational Management And Curriculum Development (3)

ALL354 The Contemporary Setswana Novel (2)

EFS402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with disabilities (3)

2. Mathematics/Science Concentration
EPM427 Calculus II (3, pre EPM426)

EPM428 Advanced Concepts in Physics and Chemistry (3) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

3. Social Studies/Religious Education Concentration
EPS400 Contemporary Issues in Teaching Primary Social Studies (3)

EPS403 International Organisations & Governance (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):
TRS315 Sociology of Religion (3)

EPA300 Action Research (2)

HIS414 Chiefs, Commoners and the Impact of Colonial Rule on Botswana, Lesotho & Swaziland (3)

ENV316 Agricultural Development (2)

4. Special Topics Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
ENG411 Form, Function and Variation English (2)

Setswana
ALL342 African Oral Narratives (2)

Mathematics
EPM427 Calculus II (3, pre EPM426)

Science
EPM428 Advanced Concepts in Physics and Chemistry (3)

Social Studies
EPS400 Contemporary Issues in Teaching Primary Social Studies (3)

In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EHF407 Consultation in Schools & Community Settings (3)

Infant Education
EPI432 Contemporary Issues in Early Childhood Education (3)

Environmental Education
EPI443 Environmental Conservation Strategies II (3)

Special Education
EFS351 Career Education for students with learning difficulties (3, pre EFS101)

5. Practical Subjects Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
ENG411 Form, Function and Variation English (2) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Setswana
ALL342 African Oral Narratives (2) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Mathematics
EPM427 Calculus II (3, pre EPM426) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)
Entry Requirements

Applicants must have:
(a) At least three credits in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or equivalent
(b) A Teaching Qualification
(c) Two year work experience in an educational setting. Students who do not have BGCSE or equivalent, but have Junior Certificate (JC) in addition to (b) and (c) of 20.10 shall apply through the Mature Age Entry Scheme as in General Regulation 00.52. Applicants with a diploma in Education of this university or equivalent credits approved by Senate (60 credits) in addition to ‘20.10-c’ above will normally enter at level 200 of the degree programme as in General Regulation 00.4. Applicants with a diploma in educational management of this university or equivalent (60 credits) in addition to ‘c’ above will normally enter at level 300.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses (15–18 Credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EPA111</td>
<td>Introduction to Educational Planning (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA112</td>
<td>Introduction to Resources Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFA100</td>
<td>School Organization (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC111E</td>
<td>Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC121E</td>
<td>Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2, GEC)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional courses (Choose one):

EFH100 Foundations of Guidance and Counselling (3)

Level 100
Semester 2
Core Courses (15–18 Credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EPE114</td>
<td>Introduction to Education in Botswana (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100</td>
<td>Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA200</td>
<td>Managing Quality Schools (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC112E</td>
<td>Communications and Studies Skills II (2, GEC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC122E</td>
<td>Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, GEC)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional courses (Choose one):

EFH104 Helping Relationship Skills (3)
EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)
EFS104 Introduction to procedures for assessment of disabilities (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses (15–18 Credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EPA200</td>
<td>Personnel Policies and Decision Making (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA203</td>
<td>Theories of Leadership and Supervision (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGT100</td>
<td>Principles of Management (3 credit)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):

EFH201 Counselling over a life span (3)
MGT202 Small Business Management (3)
EFF220 Historical, Philosophical & Sociological Foundations of Education (3)

Level 200
Semester 4
Core Courses (15–18 Credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EPA201</td>
<td>Classroom Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA202</td>
<td>Managing Educational Resources (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGT200</td>
<td>Organisational design &amp; Development (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):

EFH200 Group Work in Counselling (3)
EFR200 Introduction to Measurement in Education (3)
EFF210 Introduction to Sociology of Education (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses (15–18 Credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFH410</td>
<td>Philosophy of Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA302</td>
<td>Introduction to Educational Research (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA303</td>
<td>Planning &amp; Management in Education (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):

MGT300 Human Resource Management (3)
EFF301 Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)
EDT310 Instructional Material Production (2)

Level 300
Semester 6
Core Courses (15–18 Credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EPA304</td>
<td>Advanced investigation in education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA301</td>
<td>Leadership styles &amp; organizational behaviour (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE302</td>
<td>Principles of Human Resource Development (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):

- EFP301 Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)
- EPA300 Action Research (3)
- EFF310 Citizenship, Human Rights, Democracy, and Education; Critical Issues (3)

Level 400

Semester 7

Core Courses (15–18 Credits)

- EPE419 Computer Applications in Primary Schools (2)
- EPE442 Research Projects (2)
- EPA400 Staff Development in Education (3)
- EPA402 Contemporary Issues in Education Management (e.g., HIV/AIDS, Sexual Abuse, Access, Equity, Gender), (2)

1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):

- MGT400 Strategic Management (3)
- EFH400 Substance Abuse Counselling (3)

Level 400

Semester 8

Core Courses (15–18 Credits)

- EPE442 Research Projects (2)
- EPE411 Educational Management & Curriculum Development (3)
- MGT410 Negotiations and Conflict Management (3)
- EPA406 Policy Development, Analysis, Implementation and Evaluation in Education (3)

1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):

- EFF420 Contemporary Issues in Teacher Education in Botswana (3)
- EFC400 Curriculum Theory and Instruction (3)

Assessment

All courses except EPE214, EPA300 EPA304, EPE419, EPM331, EPM431, EPP302, EPP405, EPP406 and EPE442 shall be assessed as stipulated in general regulation 00.8. EPE214 would be assessed by practical presentations. For EPA304 assessments shall be based on tests/assignments (40%) and the research proposal (60%). EPE442 assessments shall be based on the research report only. Tests/assignments and Project Work would assess EPE419 and EPA300. EPM331 & EPM431 would be assessed by assignments and presentations. Failure without a good cause to submit continuous assessment work within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks. Failure to submit marks within 48 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 50 percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

Progression from Semester to Semester

Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulations 00.9

Award of Degree

The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.85
DEAN
Prof. A.B. Ngowi, BSc. (Dar es Salaam), MSc (Chalmers), Ph.D (Witwatersrand), MCIOB, Pr.CPM.

DEPUTY DEAN
J. Chuma, BEng (Nottingham), M.Sc, (Nottingham) Ph.D (Essex)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
Mrs. B. Barrows, BA (UB) MSc, HRM (Cardiff)

INDUSTRIAL TRAINING COORDINATOR
J. Marumo, BSc. (Florida A&M), PGD (UMIST) ASS.

ASSISTANT INDUSTRIAL TRAINING COORDINATOR
Mr. R. Sehurutshi, BEng (Hons), MOMS UK, AVT – Industrial (Germany)

ARCHITECTURE AND PLANNING
CIVIL ENGINEERING
ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC ENGINEERING
INDUSTRIAL DESIGN AND TECHNOLOGY
MECHANICAL ENGINEERING

FACULTY OF ENGINEERING & TECHNOLOGY
The Faculty of Engineering and Technology (FET) is dedicated to the following aims:

a) To produce high quality engineering graduates who can adapt to the work environment and discharge their duties to the satisfaction of their employers;
b) To be responsive to the needs of the industry in all sectors of the Botswana economy. This will be accomplished mainly by providing study programmes designed to meet the need for highly trained manpower in required areas of technology and the environment;
c) To respond to the needs of industry through research, consultancy, advisory and related services;
d) To maintain a continuous dialogue with industry and other relevant bodies to determine and fulfill any needs which may be raised by industry from time to time;
e) To provide access, with proper theoretical and practical backing, to recent developments in the technology sector and to prepare graduates for professional responsibilities;
f) To prepare FET graduates to pursue further studies in their relevant Engineering and Technology disciplines.

Academic Departments and Programmes
The Faculty of Engineering and Technology consists of five Departments and CDPU which has been transferred to Department of Technical Vocational Education and Training (BTIET). All CDPU programmes are administered by Botswana College of Engineering and Technology (BCET), sharing FET facilities until FET is relocated to the Main Campus:
- Department of Architecture and Planning
- Department of Civil Engineering
- Department of Electrical Engineering
- Department of Industrial Design and Technology
- Department of Mechanical Engineering
- Certificate and Diploma Programmes Unit

The Faculty of Engineering and Technology offers MPhil/PhD programmes which are interdisciplinary. The Faculty also offers undergraduate programmes as follows: The Departments of Civil Engineering, Electrical Engineering, and Mechanical Engineering offer Bachelor of Engineering Degree programmes in Civil Engineering, Construction Engineering and Management, Geomatics, Mining Engineering, Electrical and Electronic Engineering, and Mechanical Engineering. -The Department of Industrial Design and Technology offers Bachelor of Design Degree programmes in Industrial Design, and Design and Technology Education. The Department of Architecture offers Bachelor of Architecture Degree programme in Architecture, and a Bachelor of Science Degree in Urban and Regional Planning. The Certificate and Diploma Programmes Unit (CDPU) offers Higher Diploma programmes in Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Mechanical Engineering, and Water and Environmental Engineering. In addition, the Unit offers Certificate programmes in Building and Civil Engineering, Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Geomatics, Mechanical Engineering, Mining Engineering, and Water and Environmental Engineering. In addition, the Unit offers Certificate programmes in Construction Engineering, Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Motor Vehicle Engineering, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning, Plant Engineering, and Science Laboratory Technology. Details of the requirements for admission into the various programmes are outlined in the following pages under each relevant Department/Unit.

100 Special Regulations for the Technician Certificate Programmes
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and 100, the following Special Regulations shall apply to students in the following Technicians Certificate programmes:
- Construction
- Electrical and Electronic Engineering
- Motor Vehicle Engineering
- Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineering
- Plant Engineering
- Science Laboratory Technology

10.10 Entrance Requirements
10.11 The minimum entrance qualifications to the Certificate programmes shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent, with passes in Mathematics and Physics or Physical Science or any other subject as specified by the Special Departmental Regulations or 10.12 A Craft Certificate with credits in Mathematics and at least 3 technical subjects.

10.20 Programme Structure
10.21 Certificate programmes will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study, unless otherwise specified in the Special Departmental Regulations. 10.22 The courses offered in the programme shall be as specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

10.23 Industrial and/or site visits may be arranged to supplement learning, as specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

10.24 The availability of optional courses offered shall be at the discretion of the Department.

10.30 Assessment
10.31 The continuous assessment of a course may be designated to include the assessment of practical skills, by tests or other appropriate means. The department concerned will make provision for such assessment, and will make available to students a schedule showing the assessment points at the commencement of the course.

10.32 For continuous assessment, the ratio of test marks to assignment and/or laboratory report marks shall be 1:1.

10.33 Except for courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination marks shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

10.34 Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per working day. Failure to submit the assignment by the end of 1 week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

10.35 A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reasons shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with a documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a substitute test.

10.36 Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit value of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and 1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.

10.37 Courses with a practical component or drawing included in a written examination shall be examined by a 3-hour, end-of-semester examination.

110 Special Regulations for the Diploma in Engineering
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and 100, the following Special Regulations shall apply to students in the following programmes:
- Diploma in Building and Civil Engineering
- Diploma in Electrical and Electronic
11.10 Entrance Requirements

11.11 The minimum entrance qualifications to the Diploma programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent, with credits in Mathematics and either Physics or Physical Science or any other subject as specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

11.12 Alternative entry qualifications may be considered at the discretion of the Departmental Board. Mature entrants with evidence of relevant prior learning shall be admitted according to the General Regulations 003.52.

11.13 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Engineering Certificate may be admitted directly into the second year of the Diploma Programme.

11.20 Programme Structure

11.21 Diploma programmes will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study, unless otherwise specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

11.22 The courses offered in the programme shall be as specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

11.23 Industrial and/or site visits may be arranged to supplement learning, as specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

11.24 The availability of optional courses offered shall be at the discretion of the Department.

11.30 Assessment

11.31 Except for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination marks shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

11.32 A project shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 1:1:2.

11.33 For continuous assessment, the ratio of marks for tests to assignment and/or laboratory report marks shall be 1:1.

11.34 The final project report must be submitted to the co-ordinator at least 2 weeks before the beginning of the end of semester examinations.

11.35 Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per working day. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of 1 week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

11.36 A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reasons shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.

11.37 Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit value of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and 1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.

11.38 Courses with a practical component or drawing included in a written examination shall be examined by a 3-hour, end-of-semester examination.

120 Industrial Training Regulations for the Diploma in Engineering

Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and 100, the following Special Regulations shall apply to students in the following programmes:

- Diploma in Building and Civil Engineering
- Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering
- Diploma in Geomatics
- Diploma in Mechanical Engineering
- Diploma in Mining Engineering
- Diploma in Water and Environmental Engineering

12.10 Programme Structure

12.11 A student shall undergo a single period of supervised Industrial Training for 8 weeks and shall be undertaken at a time specified by the Faculty.

12.12 Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:

- ITD100 Industrial Training (duration 8 weeks, 4 credits, core course)

12.13 During the course of Industrial Training a student shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

12.14 Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline, Regulation 4.0, and Regulation 12.13 above, a student who receives a final warning during the course of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Disciplinary Regulations.

12.20 Assessment

12.21 During the course of Industrial Training, each student shall be visited at least once at the location of placement to be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

12.22 A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

12.22a) Continuous assessment by the industrial based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology;

12.22b) Industrial Training report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period.

12.23 ITD100 shall be assessed as based on Regulations 120.22 a) and 120.22 b). The ratio of marks for continuous assessment to Industrial Training report shall be 1:2.

12.24 A student who has an incomplete grade shall be allowed to complete Industrial Training at a time recommended by the Faculty.
13.22 The courses offered in the programme shall be as specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.
13.23 Industrial and/or site visits may be arranged to supplement lecture material.
13.24 The availability of optional courses offered shall be at the discretion of the Department.

13.30 Assessment
13.31 Except for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end-of-semester examination marks shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.
13.32 A project shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 1:1:2.
13.33 For continuous assessment, the ratio of marks for tests to assignments and/or laboratory marks shall be 1:1.
13.34 The final project report must be submitted to the co-coordinator at least 2 weeks before the beginning of the end of semester examinations.
13.35 A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reasons shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.
13.36 Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit value of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and 1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.
13.37 Courses with a practical component or drawing included in a written examination shall be examined by end-of-semester examination of 3 hours duration.

210 Special Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Engineering
Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

21.10 Entrance Requirements
21.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering Degree shall be as stipulated in General Regulation 20.20.
21.12 The normal minimum requirements for admission to Level 200 of the Degree programme shall be satisfactory completion of Level 100 of the Bachelor of Science (General) Degree of the Faculty of Science with at least C grades in Mathematics and Physics.
21.13 Applicants in possession of an appropriate ‘A’ level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and Physics may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree programme.
21.14 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree programme.
21.15 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Higher Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the appropriate Degree programme.

21.20 Programme Structure
21.21 Level 100 courses shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Science Degree.
21.22 Level 200 shall consist of the following core courses:

Semester 3
- DTB211 Workshop Technology I (2)
- MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)
- CCB211 Engineering Materials (2)
- CCB212 Statics (2)
- EEB211 Electrical Principles I (2)
- MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3, pre-req. MAT111, MAT122)

Semester 4
- DTB221 Workshop Technology II (2)
- MMB221 Manual and Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req. MMB211)
- MMB222 Dynamics (2)
- CCB221 Strength of Materials (2)
- EEB221 A.C. Circuit Principles II (2)
- MAT292 Engineering Mathematics II (3, pre-req. MAT291)
21.23 Students registered for a Bachelor of Engineering programme shall undergo two periods of Industrial Training: 8 weeks and 20 weeks as specified in Faculty Special Regulation 22.10.
21.24 At Levels 300, 400 and 500 each student shall register for General Education Courses as prescribed by General Regulations 00.2124, Departmental prescribed number of core, optional and elective courses per semester, unless exempted.
21.25 The availability of optional and elective courses offered by a Department shall be at the discretion of the relevant Department.
21.26 A student shall register for a Single Major or a Combined Degree programme in the fifth semester.
21.27 A subject may include courses consisting entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work or seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

21.30 Assessment
21.31 Continuous assessment in Levels 200, 300, 400 and 500 courses shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable, laboratory reports/field reports.
21.32 Except for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.
21.33 A project shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 1:1:2.
21.34 For continuous assessment, the ratio of marks for tests to assignments and/or laboratory marks shall be 1:1.
21.35 Level 500 Project Report must be submitted to the co-coordinator at least two weeks before the beginning of the end-of-semester examinations.
21.36 Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit value of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and 1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.
21.37 Courses with a practical component or drawing included in a written examination shall be examined by end of semester examination of 3 hours duration.
21.38 Industrial Training shall be assessed as specified in the Faculty Special Regulation 22.20.
21.39 Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per day. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.
21.40 A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reasons shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special
22.10 Programme Structure

22.11 A student shall undergo two periods of supervised Industrial Training: 8 weeks between Levels 200 and 300, and 20 weeks starting from the beginning of Semester 2 of Level 400 including part of the vacation between Levels 400 and 500.

22.12 Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:

**ITB200**  
Industrial Training I (duration 8 weeks, 4 credits, core course)

**ITB420**  
Industrial Training II (duration 20 weeks, 10 credits, core course).

22.13 During the course of Industrial Training, a student shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

22.14 Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and Regulation 22.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the course of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

22.20 Assessment

22.21 During the course of the Industrial Training period, each student shall be visited twice at the location of placement to be assessed by the Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

22.22 A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

22.22a) Continuous assessment by the industrial based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology;

22.22b) Industrial Training report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period;

22.22c) Oral Presentation.

22.23 ITB200 shall be assessed as based on Regulations 22.22 a) and 22.22 b). The ratio of marks for continuous assessment to Industrial Training report shall be 1:2.

22.24 ITB420 shall be evaluated as specified in Regulation 22.22. The ratio of marks for continuous assessment to Industrial Training report to oral presentation shall be 1:2:1.

23.10 Entrance Requirements

23.11 Admission into Level 100 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in the General Admission Regulations.

23.12 Admission into Level 100 of the BDes Degree Programme shall be minimum requirement of a BGCSE with a pass in English and a C grade in Mathematics and Physics and any one of Chemistry or Biology or a minimum of Grade BB in Science Double Award.

23.13 Admission into Level 200 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in General Admission Regulations.

23.14 Admission into Level 200 of the BDes Degree Programme shall be satisfactory completion of Level 100 of the Bachelor of Science General Degree of the Faculty of Science with at least C- [C minus] grades in Mathematics and Physics.

23.15 Applicants in possession of an appropriate ‘A’ level qualification with at least D grades in Mathematics and at least one of: Physics, Chemistry or Design and Technology may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme.

23.16 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme.

23.17 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Higher Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the Degree Programme.

23.20 Degree Structure

23.21 Level 100 courses shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Science Degree.

23.22 Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:

### Semester 3

- **DTB210** Elements of Design (3)
- **DTB211** Workshop Technology I (2)
- **MMB211** Engineering Drawing (2)
- **CCB211** Engineering Materials (2)
- **CCB212** Statics (2)
- **EEB211** Electrical Principles I (2)

### Semester 4

- **DTB220** Designing Artifacts (3, pre-req. DTB210)
- **DTB221** Workshop Technology II (2, pre-req. DTB211)
- **MMB221** Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req. MMB211)
- **MMB222** Dynamics (2)
- **CCB221** Strength of Materials (2)
- **DTB 222** Graphics (2)

23.23 Students registered for a Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall undergo industrial training as specified under Departmental Special Regulations.

23.24 At Levels 300, 400 and 500 each student shall register for General Education Courses as prescribed by General Regulation 00.2124, Departmental prescribed number of core, optional and elective courses per semester, unless exempted.

23.25 The availability of optional and elective courses offered by a Department shall be at the discretion of the Department.

23.26 A student shall register for a Single Major or a Combined Degree Programme in the third semester.

23.27 A subject may include courses consisting entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

23.30 Assessment

23.31 Continuous assessment in Levels 200, 300, 400 and 500 courses shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports/field reports.

23.32 Except for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.

23.33 A) Design Project shall be assessed through documentation (Folio, report and diary) of the Design Process and presentation. The ratio
of marks for documentation to presentation shall be 2:1.

23.33b A Major Make and Evaluate Project shall be assessed through Product and its Evaluation and presentation. The ratio of marks for documentation to presentation shall be 2:1.

23.33c A Design and Make Project shall be evaluated as specified in Regulations 23.33a and 23.33b.

23.34 The Level 500 Project Report must be submitted to the co-coordinator at least 2 weeks before the beginning of the end-of-semester examinations.

23.35 Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit value of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and 1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.

23.36 Courses having a practical component or drawing that include a written examination shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 3 hours.

23.37 Industrial Training shall be assessed as specified in the Faculty Special Regulation 35.20.

23.38 Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per day. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of 1 week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

23.39 A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reason shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.

350 Industrial Training Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Design Preamble

Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 the following Industrial Training Regulations shall apply to students on the following programmes:

• Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education)
• Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design)

35.10 Structure

35.11 A student shall undergo a period of supervised Industrial Training for 7 weeks between Levels 300 and 400.

35.12 In addition to the above, a student doing Industrial Design shall undergo a second period of supervised Industrial Training for 20 weeks starting from the beginning of semester 2 of Level 400 including part of the vacation between Levels 400 and 500.

35.13 Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:

IDB300 Industrial Training [duration 7 weeks, 3 credits, core course].

IDB400 Industrial Training for Industrial Design [duration 20 weeks, 10 credits, core course].

35.14 During the course of Industrial Training a student shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

35.15 Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and regulation 35.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

35.20 Assessment

35.21 During the periods of Industrial Training, each student shall be visited a minimum of twice at the location of placement to be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

35.22 A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

35.22a Continuous assessment by the industry based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant Department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology.

35.22b Industrial Training Report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period.

35.22c Oral Presentation.

35.23 IDB300 shall be assessed as based on regulations 35.22a and 35.22b. The ratio of marks for Continuous Assessment to Industrial Training Report and Logbook shall be 1:2.

35.24 IDB400 shall be assessed as based on regulation 35.22. The ratio of marks for Continuous Assessment to Industrial Training Report and Logbook to Oral Presentation shall be 1:2:1.

CERTIFICATE AND DIPLOMA PROGRAMS UNIT (CDPU)

Unit Coordinator/Head: K. J. Thomas

The unit was created in July 2003 within FET according to a decision made by University Council in November 2002. It manages all Certificate and Diploma Programmes except Diploma in Mining Engineering and Higher Diploma Programmes. There are 11 Programmes currently under CDPU and those programmes are now expected to be transferred to DVET under Ministry of Education by August 2008. The unit has four different sections:

CDPU Civil Engineering (4 programmes), CDPU Electrical Engineering (2 programmes), CDPU Mechanical Engineering (4 programmes) and CDPU-Science and Mathematics (1 programme). The Unit consists of about 50 teaching staff and over 700 students. All resources and facilities are shared to run the programmes with full quality assurance.

CDPU – Civil Engineering Section

Section Leader/Head: M. Silumbwe

Introduction

CDPU- Civil Engineering Section offers the following programmes:

• Diploma in Building and Civil Engineering
• Diploma in Geomatics
• Diploma in Water and Environmental Engineering
• Construction Technician Certificate.

113 Departmental Regulations for the Diploma in Building and Civil Engineering

Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations 000 and the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulations 110, the following Special Departmental Regulations for the Diploma in Building and Civil Engineering Programme shall apply:

113.10 Entrance Requirements

113.11 The minimum entrance requirements to the Diploma in Building and Civil Engineering Programme shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 11.10.

113.20 Programme Structure

113.21 The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Building and Civil Engineering consisting of courses shown below.

Level 100

Building and Civil Engineering

Semester 1

Core Courses

SMD111 Mathematics I (2)
CBD111 Construction Technology I (2)
CGD111 Plane Surveying (3)
CBD112 Engineering Drawing (2)
CBD116 (CBD126) CAD for Civil Engineering (2)
Semester 2  
Core Courses  
SMD121 Mathematics II [2]  
CBD122 Construction Materials [2]  
CBD123 Mechanics [2, pre-req. SMD110]  
CBD124 Construction Technology and Drawing, (3, pre-req. CBD111)  
CBD125 Mechanical and Electrical Workshop Practice [2]  
MED120 Engineering Materials [2]  
ITD100 Industrial Training (4) – Winter Course  

Level 200  
Building and Civil Engineering  
Semester 3  
Core Courses  
CBD211 Building Services (2, pre-req. CBD124)  
CBD212 Theory of Structures (3, pre-req. CBD123, SMD121)  
CBD213 Civil Workshop Practice (2)  
CBD214 Quantity Surveying [2]  
CBD215 Contract Administration (2)  
In addition students shall select at least 1 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:  
CBD216 Architectural Draughting (pre-req. CBD124)  
CBD217 Soil Mechanics I  
LAW253 Foundation of Engineering Law  

Semester 4  
Core Courses  
CBD221 Concrete Technology (3)  
CBD222 Construction Technology II (2, pre-req.)  
CBD124 Co-requisite, CBD221)  
CBD223 Structural Design (2, pre-req. CBD122)  
CGD221 Engineering Surveying (2, pre-req. CBD111)  
CBD224 Estimating and Tendering (2)  
In addition students shall select at least 1 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:  
CBD225 Structural Draughting (pre-req. CBD112, co-requisite CBD222)  
CBD226 Soil Mechanics II (pre-req. CBD217)  
CBD227 Construction Management  
In addition to the above, students are expected to do the compulsory courses GEC111, GEC112, GEC121 and GEC122, 2 credits each with a total credit of 8.  

113.30 Assessment  
113.31 For CBD126 and ITD100, the assessment shall be continuous assessment only.  
113.32 All other courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 11.30.  

114 Departmental Special Regulations for the Diploma in Geomatics  
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulations for Diploma 110, the following Special Departmental Regulations shall apply:  

114.10 Entrance Requirements  
114.11 The minimum entrance requirements to the Diploma Programme shall be as stipulated in the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulation 11.10.  

114.20 Programme Structure  
114.21 The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Geomatics consisting of courses shown below.  

Level 100  
Geomatics  
Semester 1  
Core Courses  
CGD111 Plane Surveying (3)  
CGD112 Principles of Geographic Information System (2)  
CGD113 Measurement Science (2)  
CGD114 Elements of Cartography (2)  
SMD111 Mathematics I (2)  

Semester 2  
Core Courses  
CGD121 Topographical and Cadastral Surveying [3, pre-req. CGD111)  
CGD123 Fundamentals of Photogrammetry (3)  
CGD124 CAD for Geomatics (2)  
CGD125 Planning and Environmental Studies (2)  
SMD112 Mathematics II (3)  
CGD126 Residential Survey Camp (2, core)  
- Winter Course  
ITD100 Industrial Training [4, winter course]  

Level 200  
Geomatics  
Semester 3  
Core Courses  
CGD216 Basic Programming (2)  
CGD211 Geodesy (3, pre-req. CGD111)  
In addition students shall select at least 1 course from each of the following groups of optional courses:  

Group A  
CGD212 Engineering Surveying (3, pre-req. CGD111)  
CGD213 Applied GIS (3, pre-req. CGD112)  

Group B  
CGD214 Adjustment of Survey Measurement (2, pre-req. SMD121)  
SMD215 Survey Mathematics (2, pre-req. SMD121)  

Semester 4  
Core Courses  
CGD223 Satellite Positioning (3, pre-req. CGD111)  
CGD224 Student Project (3)  
CGD225 Cadastral Studies and Land Administration (2)  
CGD226 Digital Cartography (2, pre-req. CGD104)  

In addition students shall select at least 1 from the following optional courses:  
CGD221 Digital Photogrammetry (3, pre-req. CGD123)  

CGD222 Remote Sensing (3, pre-req. CGD123)  
In addition to the above, students are expected to do the compulsory courses GEC111, GEC112, GEC121 and GEC122, 2 credits each with a total credit of 8.  

Assessment  
1. For CGD124, CGD126 and ITD100, the assessment shall be continuous assessment only.  
2. All other courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 11.30.  

Departmental Special Regulations for the Diploma in Water and Environmental Engineering  
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulations 110, the following Special Departmental Regulations shall apply:  

Entrance Requirements  
1. The minimum entrance requirements to the Diploma Programme shall be as stipulated in the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulation 11.10.  
2. Other entry qualifications shall be considered by the Department on a case-by-case basis in determining the point of entry.  

Programme Structure  
The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Water and
Environmental Engineering consisting of courses shown below.

Level 100
Water and Environmental Engineering

Semester 1
Core Courses
SMD111 Mathematics I (2)
GEO104 Intro. to Geology for Mining Engineering (2)
SWD113 Chemistry for Water Engineering (2)
CGD111 Plane Surveying (3)
CBD111 Construction Technology I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SMD121 Mathematics II (2)
CWD122 Surface Water Hydrology (3)
SWD123 Aquatic Biology (3)
CBD123 Mechanics (2)
CWD124 Hydraulics (3)
ITD100 Industrial Training (4)

Level 200 Water and Environmental Engineering
Semester 3
Core Courses
CWD211 Groundwater Hydrology (2, pre-req. CWD 122)
CWD212 Water Engineering I (2)
CWD213 Wastewater Engineering (2)
CBD217 Soil Mechanics II (2)
CWD214 Environmental Pollution (3)
In addition students shall select at least 1 of the following 2-credit, optional courses:
CBD212 Theory of Structures
CBD213 Civil Workshop Practice

Semester 4
Core Courses
CWD221 Advanced Hydraulics (3, pre-req. CWD124)
CWD222 Water Engineering II (3, pre-req. CWD212)
CWD223 Environmental Sanitation (3)
CWD224 Water Analysis (2)
In addition students shall select at least 1 of the following 2-credit, optional courses:
CBD226 Soil Mechanics II (pre-req. CBD217)
CWD225 Water and Wastewater System Management

In addition to the above, students are expected to do the compulsory courses GEC111, GEC112, GEC121 and GEC122, 2 credits each with a total credit of 8.

Assessment
(a) For ITD100, the assessment shall be continuous assessment only. (b) All other courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 11.30.

Special Departmental Regulations for Certificate in Construction
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulations for Technician Certificate 100, the following Programme Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The minimum entrance requirements to the Technician Certificate Programme in Construction shall be as stipulated in the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulation 10.10.

Programme Structure
The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of fulltime study. It shall contain 1 subject called Construction consisting of courses shown below.

Level 100
Construction
Semester 1
Core Courses
SMC111 Mathematics I (2)
CCC112 Fundamentals of Construction (3)
CCC113 Mechanical Workshop Practice (2)
CCC114 Engineering Drawing (2)
SEC111 Engineering Science (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SMC121 Mathematics II (2)
CCC122 Construction Technology I (3, pre-req. CCC 114)
CCC123 Brickwork and Carpentry Workshop Practice (2)
CCC124 Applied Mechanics (2)
CCC125 Introduction to Surveying (2)
CCC126 Construction Materials (2)

Level 200
Construction
Semester 3
Core Courses
SMC211 Mathematics III (2, pre-req. SMC121)
CCC212 Building Construction (3, pre-req. CCC122)
CCC213 Plumbing Workshop Practice (2, pre-req. CCC122)
CCC214 Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req. CCC114)
CCC215 Measurement of Construction Work (3)
CCC216 Construction Drawing (3)

SEMESTER 3

Core Courses
CCC221 Construction Technology II (3, pre-req. CCC212)
CCC222 Electrical Workshop Practice (2)
CCC223 Engineering Surveying (2, pre-req. CCC125)
STC221 Entrepreneurial Skills (2)
CCC224 Estimating and Tendering (2)
CCC225 Structural and Architectural Detailing (2, pre-req. CCC114)
CCC226 Intro. to Building Services (2, pre-req. CCC122, CCC212)

In addition to the above, students are expected to do the compulsory courses GEC111, GEC112, GEC121 and GEC122, 2 credits each with a total credit of 8.

Assessment
(a) For CCC113, CCC114, CCC123, CCC213, CCC214, STC221 and CCC222, the assessment shall be continuous assessment only.
(b) All other courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 10.30.

CDPU – Electrical Section
Section Leader/Head: D.D. Mbewe

Introduction
CDPU- Electrical Engineering Section offers the following Programmes:
• Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering
• Certificate in Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

Departmental Special Regulations for the Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulation

Entrance Requirements
(a) The normal minimum entrance requirements to the Diploma Programme shall be as stipulated in the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulation 11.10.
(b) Other entry qualifications shall be considered.
by the Department on a case-by case basis in determining the point of entry.

Programme Structure
The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Electrical and Electronic Engineering consisting of courses shown below.

Level 100
Electrical and Electronic Engineering
Semester 1
Core Courses
SMC118 Mathematics I (2)
EED112 Electrical Principles (3)
EED113 Analogue Electronics I (3)
EED114 Electrical Workshop Practice (2)

In addition all students shall select at least 1 of the following 3-credit, optional courses:

EEC122 Digital Electronics I (3)
EEC123 Electrical Workshop Practice II (3)
EEC124 Computer Aided Drafting (2)

In addition students are expected to do the compulsory courses GEC111, GEC112, GEC121 and GEC122, 2 credits each with a total credit of 8.

Assessment
All courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 11.30.

Departamental Special Regulations for the Technician Certificate in Electrical and Electronic Engineering
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulations for Technician Certificate 100, the following Special Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The minimum entrance requirements are as stipulated in the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulation 10.10.

Certificate Structure
The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Electrical and Electronic Engineering consisting of courses shown below.

Electrical and Electronic Engineering
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SMC118 Mathematics I (2)
EEC111 Introduction to Electrical Principles (3)
EEC112 Analogue Electronics I (2)
EEC113 Electrical Workshop Practice I (2)
EEC116 Electrical Instruments and Measurements (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SMC128 Mathematics II (2)
EEC121 AC Circuits Theory (3)
EEC122 Analogue Electronics II (2)
EEC123 Electrical Installation I (2)
EEC125 Technical Drawing (2)
EEC126 Electrical Power Equipment I (2)

In addition to the above, students are expected to do the compulsory courses GEC111, GEC112, GEC121 and GEC122, 2 credits each with a total credit of 8.

Assessment
All courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 11.30.

CDPU- Mechanical Engineering
Section. Section Leader/Head: T. S. Salim

Introduction
The Mechanical Engineering Section of the Certificate and Diploma Programmes Unit (CDPU) offers the following programmes:

• Diploma in Mechanical Engineering
• Technician Certificate in Motor Vehicle Engineering
• Technician Certificate in Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineering
• Technician Certificate in Plant Engineering.

Special Departmental Regulations for the Technician Certificate Programme in Motor Vehicle Engineering
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 00.0 and the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulations for Technician Certificate 100, the following Special Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The minimum entrance requirements are as stipulated in the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulation 10.10.
Programme Structure
The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Motor Vehicle Engineering consisting of the courses shown below.

Level 100 Motor Vehicle Engineering
Semester 1
Core Courses
SMC111 Mathematics I (2)
SEC111 Engineering Science (2)
MCC112 Workshop Practical I (1)
MVC111 Motor Vehicle Science and Technology (2)
MVC112 Motor Vehicle Workshop Practical I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SMC121 Mathematics II (2)
MCC122 Workshop Practical II (2)
MVC121 Motor Vehicle Technology I (3)
MVC122 Motor Vehicle Workshop Practical II (2)
MVC123 Vehicle Recovery (2)

Level 200
Motor Vehicle Engineering
Semester 3
Core Courses
SMC211 Mathematics III (2, pre-req. SMC121)
MCC112 Engineering Materials (2)
MVC112 Motor Vehicle Science I (3)
MVC122 Motor Vehicle Workshop Practical I (3)
MVC213 Motor Vehicle Workshop Practical

Semester 4
Core Courses
MED123 Workshop Organisation (2)
MVC211 Motor Vehicle Science II (2)
MVC222 Motor Vehicle Technology III (2)
MVC223 Motor Vehicle Workshop Practical IV (3, pre-req. MVC 213)
MVC224 Vehicle Electronics (2)
MVC225 Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems (2)
STC221 Entrepreneurial Skills (2)

Assessment
(a) Except for MCC112, MVC112, MCC122, MED211, MVC213 and MVC223, all courses shall be assessed in accordance with the Faculty Special Regulations 10.30
(b) For MCC111 and MCC121 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1.
(c) For MCC112, MVC112, MCC122, MED211, MVC213, MVC223 and STC221 the assessment shall be continuous assessment only.

Special Departmental Regulations for the Technician Certificate Programme in Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineering
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulations for Technician Certificate 100, the following Special Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The minimum entrance requirements for the Technician Certificate Programme shall be as stipulated in the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulation 10.10.

Programme Structure
The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineering consisting of the courses shown below.

Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineering
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SMC111 Mathematics I (2)
SEC111 Engineering Science (2)
MCC111 Engineering Drawing I (2)
MCC112 Workshop Practical 1 (1)
MRC111 Refrigeration Plant I (2)
MRC112 Refrigeration Practical I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SMC121 Mathematics II (2)
MCC121 Engineering Drawing II (2, pre-req. SMC111)
MCC122 Workshop Practical II (2)
MRC121 Refrigeration Science and Processes (2)
MRC122 Refrigeration Practical II (2, pre-req. MRC 112)

MRC123 Refrigeration Technology (2)

Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineering
Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
SMC211 Mathematics III (2, pre-req. SMC121)
MED211 Computer Aided Drafting (CAD) (2, pre-req. MCC121)
MCC211 Engineering Materials (2)
MRC211 Refrigeration Application (3)
ECC111 Introduction to Electrical Principles (3)
MRC213 Industrial Refrigeration Practical (2)
ECC219 Programmable Logic Controllers (2)

Semester 4
Core Courses
MED123 Workshop Organisation (2)
MRC221 Air Conditioning Applications (3)
MRC222 Refrigeration Plant II (3, pre-req. MRC122)
MRC223 Industrial Air Conditioning Practical (3)
MRC224 Vehicle Air Conditioning Systems (2)
STC221 Entrepreneurial Skills (2)
In addition to the above, students are expected to do the compulsory courses GEC111, GEC112, GEC121 and GEC122, 2 credits each with a total credit of 8.

Assessment
(a) Except for MCC112, MRC112, MCC122, MED211, MRC213 and MRC223, all courses shall be assessed in accordance with the Faculty Special Regulations 10.30
(b) For MCC111 and MCC121 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1.
(c) For MCC112, MRC112, MCC122, MED211, MRC213, MRC223 and STC221 the assessment shall be continuous assessment only.

Special Departmental Regulations for the Technician Certificate Programme in Plant Engineering
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulations for Technician Certificate 100, the following Special Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The minimum entrance qualifications shall be as
stipulated in the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulation 10.10.

Programme Structure
The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Plant Engineering consisting of the courses shown below.

Plant Engineering
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SMC111 Mathematics I (2)
SEC111 Engineering Science (2)
MCC111 Engineering Drawing I (2)
MCC112 Workshop Practical I (1 credit, core)
MPC111 Workshop Technology (2, core MCC112)
MPC112 Plant Workshop Practical I (2, core MPC111)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SMC121 Mathematics II (2)
MCC121 Engineering Drawing II (2, pre-req. MCC111)
MCC122 Workshop Practical II (2)
MPC121 Mechanical Engineering Science (2, pre-req. SEC111)
MPC122 Introduction to Plant Engineering (3)
MPC123 Plant Workshop Practical II (2, pre-req. MPC112)

Plant Engineering
Semester 3
Core Courses
SMC211 Mathematics III (2, pre-req. SMC121)
MED121 Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req. MCC121)
MED211 Engineering Materials (2)
MPC211 Plant Engineering Theory I (2)
MPC212 Plant Engineering Practice I (2)
MPC213 Plant Practical I (2)
EED111 Introduction to Electrical Principles (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
MED123 Workshop Organisation (2)
MPC221 Plant Engineering Theory II (3)
MPC222 Plant Engineering Practice II (2)
MPC223 Plant Practical II (2)
MPC224 Process Engineering (2)
EED123 Electrical Installation I (2)
STC221 Entrepreneurial Skills (2)

In addition to the above, students are expected to do the compulsory courses GEC111, GEC112, GEC121 and GEC122, 2 credits each with a total credit of 8.

Assessment
(a) Except for MCC112, MPC112, MCC122, MED211, MPC213 and MPC223, all courses shall be assessed in accordance with the Faculty Special Regulations 10.30
(b) For MCC111 and MCC121 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1.
(c) or MCC112, MPC112, MCC122, MED211, MPC213, MPC223 and STC221 the assessment shall be continuous assessment only.

Departmental Special Regulations for the Diploma in Mechanical Engineering
Subject to the provisions of Academic General Regulations 000 and the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulations 110, the following Special Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The minimum entrance requirements to the Diploma Programme shall be as stipulated in the Special Faculty of Engineering and Technology Regulation 11.10.

Programme Structure
The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Mechanical Engineering consisting of the courses shown below.

Mechanical Engineering
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SMD111 Mathematics I (2)
MED110 Mechanical Engineering Science I (2)
EED111 Electrical Principles (3)
MED111 Intro. to Workshop Processes (2, core MED112)

MED112 Mechanical and Electrical Workshop Practice (2, core MED111)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SMD121 Mathematics II (2)
EED125 Measurements and Instrumentation (3)
MED120 Engineering Materials II (2)
MED121 Mechanical Engineering Science II (2, pre-req. MED 110)
MED122 Engineering Drawing (2)
MED123 Workshop Organisation (2)
ITD100 Industrial Training (4 credits, core)

Mechanical Engineering
Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
MED210 Thermo-Fluids (core, 3)
MED211 Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req. MED122)
MED212 Manufacturing Methods I (2, pre-req. MED111)

In addition students shall select at least 2 from the following optional courses:
MED213 Motor Vehicle Technology (3)
MED214 Plant Engineering I (3, co-requisite MED 210)
MED215 Process Engineering (3)
MED216 Heat Transfer (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
MED220 Applied Mechanics (2, pre-req. MED121)
MED221 Engineering Design (2, pre-req. MED 122)
MED222 Project (3)

In addition students shall select at least 2 from the following optional courses:
MED223 Vehicle Systems (3)
MED224 Plant Maintenance and Services (3, pre-req. MED210, MED214)
MED225 Manufacturing Methods II (3, pre-req. MED212)
MED226 Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Principles (3)

In addition to the above, students are expected to do the compulsory courses GEC111, GEC112, GEC121 and GEC122, 2 credits each with a total credit of 8.

112.30 Assessment
112.31 Except for MED112, MED211, MED221, and MED222, all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 12.20
112.32 For MED122 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1.
112.33 For MED112, MED211, MED221, and MED222 the assessment shall be continuous
CDPU – Science and Mathematics
Section Leader/Head: V.D.S. Nair

Introduction
CDPU Science and Mathematics Section offers certificate in Science Laboratory Technology programme and covers all relevant Science and Mathematics courses, both common and specialized ones.

106.10 Entrance Requirements
The minimum entrance requirements to the Science Laboratory Technicians Certificate shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent, with passes in one of the following:

a) Physics, Chemistry, Biology and Mathematics;
b) Physics with Chemistry, Biology, and Mathematics;
c) Physics with Biology, Chemistry and Mathematics;
d) Chemistry with Biology, Physics and Mathematics;
e) Combined Science and Mathematics;
f) Any other equivalent qualifications.

106.20 Programme Structure

106.21 The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain one subject called Science Laboratory Technology consisting of the courses shown below:

Level 100
Science Laboratory Technology
Semester 1
Core Courses
SLC111 Introductory Physics (3)
SLC112 General Chemistry (3)
SLC113 Basic Cytology and Anatomy (3)
SLC114 Environmental Science (2)
SMC111 Mathematics I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SLC121 Heat and Waves (3)
SLC122 Separation and Purification Techniques (3)
SLC123 Basic Physiology (3)
SLC124 Science Laboratory Practice (2)
SMC121 Mathematics II (2, pre-req. SMC111)

106.23 Level 200
Science Laboratory Technology
Semester 3
Core Courses
SLC211 Elements of Electricity and Electronics (3)
SLC212 Analytical Chemistry (3)
SLC213 Introduction to Microbiology (3)
MCC111 Engineering Drawing I (2)
SMC211 Mathematics III (2, pre-req. SMC121)

Semester 4
Core Courses
SLC221 Optics (3)
SLC222 Basic Organic and Biochemistry (3)
SLC223 Basic Biology Techniques (3)
STC221 Entrepreneurial Skills (2)
SLC224 Science laboratory Inventory Control (1)
SLC220 Workshop Technology (3)

In addition to the courses listed above, students are expected to take the courses GEC111 - Communication and Study Skills I (2) in Semester 1, GEC112 – Communication and Study Skills II (2) in semester 2, GEC121 - Computing and Information Skills I (2) in Semester 3 and GEC122 – Computing and Information Skills II (2) in semester 4.

106.30 Assessment
106.31 For STC221, SLC224 and SLC200, the assessment shall be continuous assessment only. 106.31 All other courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 10.30.

DEPARTMENT OF ARCHITECTURE AND PLANNING

Departmental Regulations for Undergraduate Programmes General Provisions
Subject to General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Engineering and Technology Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Programmes and Qualification Titles
The Department of Architecture and Planning offers programmes in Architecture and Urban and Regional Planning, leading to the following qualifications:
A Single Major Programme leading to a Bachelor’s Degree in Architecture for students specialising in Architecture.
A Single Major Programme leading to a Bachelor of Science Degree in Urban and Regional Planning for students following the Urban and Regional Planning Programme

Aim and Objectives of Undergraduate Programmes
The aim of the URP programme is to train students to enable them to function and work in the fields of human settlement development and urban and regional planning. The Architecture programme is designed to equip students with the academic knowledge and skills they will need for a successful professional career in architecture. The Programmes have been carefully developed to be broad based including courses from the faculties of Science, Engineering, Humanities, Social Sciences and Business that are uniquely related to the cultural heritage of Botswana. These Programmes will benefit immensely from each other and also from other departments within the Faculty.

Objectives
The cores of the Architecture Programme are consecutive courses in design, consisting of studio work augmented by lectures and seminars in humanities, technology, environment and professional practice. At the end of the programme students should be able to:
• Deal creatively with architectural problems on analytical, conceptual, and developmental levels;
• Undertake more challenging formal architectural principles that will develop in them an aptitude for functional and programmatic accommodation, structural
and technological integration, energy conscious design, and materials and methods of construction; and
• Carry out independent judgments rooted in an ever-changing context of architectural thought.

Entrance Requirements
Architecture Programme
Admission to the BArch Degree programme shall be as stipulated in General Academic Regulation 20.2. In addition to 1.4.1.1, applicants for admission to Level 100 of the programme must take courses in Physics, Chemistry and mathematics in the Faculty of Science. Applicants in possession of an appropriate ‘A’ level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and at least one of: Physics, Chemistry, Art or Design and Technology may be exempted from taking Physics, Chemistry and Mathematics in the Faculty of Science. Applicants who possess the normal entry requirements listed in the General Academic Regulation 20.2 but who do not satisfy 1.4.1.2 or 1.4.1.3 may be admitted to the programme if they: a) have assessable experience in artistic and/or design activities and/or b) submit a portfolio of drawings and design exercises (not exceeding 10) with the application. Urban and Regional Planning Programme Urban and Regional Planning (URP) is offered as a Single Major Programme only. Students who wish to register for URP must satisfy any one of the following requirements:
a) Successful completion of Semesters 1 and 2 in the Faculty of Science;
b) Successful completion of relevant courses in Semesters 1 and 2 in the Faculty of Social Sciences;
c) Appropriate passes in relevant Advanced Level subjects or equivalent qualifications from a recognised University or equivalent institution, which may be considered on their own merit. Satisfying the requirements listed above does not guarantee automatic entry into the Programme. Students with the above qualifications must also take and pass at least 2 courses in each semester from the following course listings:

Semester 1
Core courses
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences
STA111 Elementary Statistics
STA116 Introduction to Statistics
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I
DCS101 Introduction to Computing Systems
Semester 2
Core courses
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research and Elements in Probability
MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II
DCS102 Data Processing and Communication and:
Take and pass at least 2 courses in each semester from the following:

Semester 1
Electives
BIO111 Principles of Biology
CHE101 General Chemistry I
ENV101 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments I
PHY111 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves
PHY119 Physics Practical’s 1.1
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principle or:
SOC122 Dominant Sociological Themes and Perspectives or:
SOC123 Social Structure of Society

Semester 2
Electives
BIO112 Diversity of Animals and Plants
CHE102 General Chemistry II
ENV102 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments II
PHY121 Electricity, Magnetism and Modern Physics
PHY129 Physics Practical’s 1.2
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics
SOC131 Introduction to Social and Cultural Anthropology or:
SOC132 Introduction to the Study of Human Societies or:
SOC133 Social Change in Botswana

Programme Structure
Architecture Programme
Level 100 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 1
Core Courses
ARB111 Design & Communication I (4)
ARB112 Building Materials & Construction I (2)

Level 100 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 2
Core Courses
ARB121 Building Materials & Construction II (4)
ARB113 Traditional African Architecture (2)
ARB123 History of Art (2)
ARB124 Environment and Comfort (2)
MAT192 Design Mathematics II (3)

Optional Courses
GEC Courses
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills II (2)

Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 3
Core Courses
ARB211 Architectural Design I (6)
ARB212 Building Materials & Construction III (2)
ARB222 Building Materials & Construction IV (2)
ARB214 Energy Efficiency in Buildings (2)
ARB216 Computer Aided Drafting (2)
CCB217 Theory of Structures I (2)

Level 300 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 4
Core Courses
ARB220 Internship I (2)
ARB221 Architectural Design II (6)
ARB223 History of Architecture I (2)
ARB225 History of Architecture II (2)
CCB227 Theory of Structure II (2)
URP207 Land Surveying and Cartography + Lab (3)

Level 300 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 5
Core Courses
ARB311 Architectural Design III (6)
ARB312 Building Services I (2)
ARB322 Building Services II (2)
CCB317 Theory of Structures III (2)
LAW253 Foundations of Engineering Law (2)

Optional Courses
URP200 Introduction to Town Planning (2)
URP202 Infrastructure Planning &

• Carry out independent judgments rooted in an ever-changing context of architectural thought.

Entrance Requirements
Architecture Programme
Admission to the BArch Degree programme shall be as stipulated in General Academic Regulation 20.2. In addition to 1.4.1.1, applicants for admission to Level 100 of the programme must take courses in Physics, Chemistry and mathematics in the Faculty of Science. Applicants in possession of an appropriate ‘A’ level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and at least one of: Physics, Chemistry, Art or Design and Technology may be exempted from taking Physics, Chemistry and Mathematics in the Faculty of Science. Applicants who possess the normal entry requirements listed in the General Academic Regulation 20.2 but who do not satisfy 1.4.1.2 or 1.4.1.3 may be admitted to the programme if they: a) have assessable experience in artistic and/or design activities and/or b) submit a portfolio of drawings and design exercises (not exceeding 10) with the application. Urban and Regional Planning Programme Urban and Regional Planning (URP) is offered as a Single Major Programme only. Students who wish to register for URP must satisfy any one of the following requirements:
a) Successful completion of Semesters 1 and 2 in the Faculty of Science;
b) Successful completion of relevant courses in Semesters 1 and 2 in the Faculty of Social Sciences;
c) Appropriate passes in relevant Advanced Level subjects or equivalent qualifications from a recognised University or equivalent institution, which may be considered on their own merit. Satisfying the requirements listed above does not guarantee automatic entry into the Programme. Students with the above qualifications must also take and pass at least 2 courses in each semester from the following course listings:

Semester 1
Core courses
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences
STA111 Elementary Statistics
STA116 Introduction to Statistics
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I
DCS101 Introduction to Computing Systems
Semester 2
Core courses
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research and Elements in Probability
MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II
DCS102 Data Processing and Communication and:
Take and pass at least 2 courses in each semester from the following:

Semester 1
Electives
BIO111 Principles of Biology
CHE101 General Chemistry I
ENV101 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments I
PHY111 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves
PHY119 Physics Practical’s 1.1
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principle or:
SOC122 Dominant Sociological Themes and Perspectives or:
SOC123 Social Structure of Society

Semester 2
Electives
BIO112 Diversity of Animals and Plants
CHE102 General Chemistry II
ENV102 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments II
PHY121 Electricity, Magnetism and Modern Physics
PHY129 Physics Practical’s 1.2
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics
SOC131 Introduction to Social and Cultural Anthropology or:
SOC132 Introduction to the Study of Human Societies or:
SOC133 Social Change in Botswana

Programme Structure
Architecture Programme
Level 100 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 1
Core Courses
ARB111 Design & Communication I (4)
ARB112 Building Materials & Construction I (2)

Level 100 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 2
Core Courses
ARB121 Building Materials & Construction II (4)
ARB113 Traditional African Architecture (2)
ARB123 History of Art (2)
ARB124 Environment and Comfort (2)
MAT192 Design Mathematics II (3)

Optional Courses
GEC Courses
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills II (2)

Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 3
Core Courses
ARB211 Architectural Design I (6)
ARB212 Building Materials & Construction III (2)
ARB222 Building Materials & Construction IV (2)
ARB214 Energy Efficiency in Buildings (2)
ARB216 Computer Aided Drafting (2)
CCB217 Theory of Structures I (2)

Level 300 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 4
Core Courses
ARB220 Internship I (2)
ARB221 Architectural Design II (6)
ARB223 History of Architecture I (2)
ARB225 History of Architecture II (2)
CCB227 Theory of Structure II (2)
URP207 Land Surveying and Cartography + Lab (3)

Level 300 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 5
Core Courses
ARB311 Architectural Design III (6)
ARB312 Building Services I (2)
ARB322 Building Services II (2)
CCB317 Theory of Structures III (2)
LAW253 Foundations of Engineering Law (2)

Optional Courses
URP200 Introduction to Town Planning (2)
URP202 Infrastructure Planning &
addition to work during the semester, a subject work, practical work, design, and seminars. In
a course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project
work, practical work, design, and seminars. In
addition to work during the semester, a subject
may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments
during the vacation periods.

Level 400 shall consist of the following courses:

Semester 7
Core Courses
ARB411 Architectural Design V (6)
ARB412 Building Systems I (2)
ARB422 Building Systems II (2)
LAW452 Construction Law (2)
URP305 Research Methods (2)
ARB415 Landscape Design (2)

Optional Courses
ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment (2)
ENV484 Urbanisation & the Environment (2)

Level 500 shall consist of the following courses:

Semester 9
Core Courses
ARB511 Design Project I (8)
CCB519 Building Economics (2)
ARB524 Project Management (2)

Optional Courses
URP307 Land and Property Evaluation (2)
URP314 Land and Property Management (2)

Semester 10
Core Courses
ARB521 Design Project II (8)
ARB522 Urban & Rural Design Practice (2)

GEC Courses
GEC273 The State & Society (2)
GEC277 Law & Society in Botswana (2)

A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project
work, practical work, design, and seminars. In
addition to work during the semester, a subject
may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments
during the vacation periods.

Programme Structures

Urban and Regional Planning Programme
Urban and Regional Planning (URP) is a Single
Major Programme offered to students registered
in the Faculties of Science and Social Sciences,
subject to Departmental Regulations 1.4.2.1 and
1.4.2.2. In accordance with Regulation 00.62,
the URP Programme shall consist of 15 credits
of both core and optional courses. Courses URP
312, URP 404 and URP 411 jointly satisfy Faculty
Regulation 23.47.

Level 100
URP courses are not offered at this level

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
URP200 Introduction to Town Planning (2)
URP201 Introduction to Drawing
Techniques (4)
URP202 Infrastructure Planning and
Management (2)
URP203 Urban and Regional Economics (2)
URP204 Planning and History of
Settlements (2)

Optional Courses
URP205 Environmental Planning (2)
URP206 Urban Morphology (2)

Semester 4
Core Courses
URP207 Land Surveying and Cartography (3)
URP208 Site Planning (4)
URP209 Transport Planning and
Management (2)
URP210 Planning Techniques (3)
URP211 Internship I (1)

Optional Courses
URP212 GIS for Planners (3)
URP213 Globalisation and Sustainable
Cities (2)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
URP301 Urbanisation and Planning (2)
URP302 Neighbourhood Planning (4)
URP303 Housing Studies (2)
URP304 Regional Planning (2)
URP305 Research Methods and Techniques (2)

Optional Courses
URP306 Remote Sensing for Planners (3)
URP307 Land and Property Valuation (2)

Semester 6
Core Courses
URP308 Planning Policy and Politics (2)
URP309 Urban Land Use Planning (2)
LAW353 Planning and Environmental Law (3)
URP311 Settlement Upgrading (4)
URP312 Project Directed Readings (1)
URP313 Internship II (1)

Optional Courses
URP314 Land and Property Management (2)
URP315 Building Technology and Materials (2)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
URP400 Philosophy and Planning (2)
URP401 Rural Land Use Planning (4)
URP402 Transport Engineering for Planners (2)
URP403 Urban Governance and
Management (2)
URP404 Project Research Methodology (3)

Optional Courses
URP405 Gender and Physical Planning (2)
URP406 Public Participation in Physical
Planning (2)

Semester 8
Core Courses
URP407 Planning and Social Theory (2)
URP408 Development Impact Assessment (2)
URP409 Settlement Development Planning (4)
URP410 Project Planning and Management (2)
URP411 Project Report (3)

Optional Courses
URP412 Planning Negotiation and
Contracting (2)
URP413 Urban Agriculture (2)

Assessment and Examination
Performance in Urban and Regional Planning
courses shall be evaluated through a combination
of continuous assessment and final examination
in the ratio of 2:3 for theory courses and 1:1 for
practical courses. The duration of examinations
will be 2 hours for all the courses irrespective
of the number of credits. Courses URP211,
URP312, URP313, URP404 and URP411 shall
be assessed by continuous assessment only.
Courses URP 401 and URP 409 shall be assessed
by submissions of planning projects (part I and
part II). For Architecture courses, continuous
assessment shall be based on tests and/or design,
assessments, and where applicable laboratory reports and field reports. The ratio of continuous assessment to formal examination shall be 2:3. A project or design shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/ or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 2:1:1. Where a course includes a written final examination, the duration of the examination will be 2 hours for all the courses irrespective of the number of credits. Overall performance in a course shall be as specified in the General Regulation 00.84. There shall be no supplementary examinations. A student who fails a core or pre-req. or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/Elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall be in accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.90.

Duration of the Programmes
The duration of the URP Programme shall be 8 to 10 semesters full-time; and the duration of the Architecture Programme shall be a minimum of 10 and a maximum of 14 semesters on a full-time basis. Award of the Degree General Academic Regulation 00.85 shall apply. However, for the Architecture Programme a minimum of 180 credits is required. Classification of the degree shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Academic Regulation 20.4

Professional Training
For both Architecture and Urban and Regional Planning Programmes, students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry/organisation during the Professional Training.

Urban and Regional Planning Programme
Students shall undergo Professional Training (Internship) of 6 weeks duration after Assessment of Professional Training at level 200 and 300. The internship courses are URP 211 and URP 323. During each Professional Training period, students shall be visited 2 times at locations of placement by staff teaching the programme to monitor progress and also give advise where necessary.

Architecture Programme
Professional Training (Internship) Regulations for the Bachelor of Architecture Programme Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 00.0 and 100 the following Professional Training Regulations shall apply to students on the Bachelor of Architecture Programme.
A student shall normally undergo 3 periods of supervised Professional Training (Internship) of 8 weeks each after Levels 200, 300 and 400. Professional Training course codes are: ARB220, ARB320 and ARB420.

Assessment
A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

a) Confidential report from the student’s immediate supervisor at location of placement.
b) Professional Training reports and logbook submitted by the student at the end of each Internship period.
c) Professional Training visits by an assessor from the relevant Department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology.
d) Students will be assessed through confidential reports from the organisation they have been placed at, presentation of a concept paper and an oral presentation. Therefore the assessment ratio for Confidential Report to Internship Concept Paper to Oral Presentation shall be 1:2:1. For both Architecture and Urban and Regional planning Programmes, a student who has an incomplete grade shall be allowed to complete Professional Training at a time recommended by the Faculty.

Repeating Professional Training
A student who fails to meet the requirements of Professional Training shall be required to repeat the training at a time recommended by the Faculty.

DEPARTMENT OF CIVIL ENGINEERING

Introduction
The Department of Civil Engineering offers the following programmes:
- Bachelor of Engineering (Civil)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management)
- Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering)
- Bachelor of Geomatics
- Diploma in Mining

240 Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Civil) Degree
Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulation 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Civil) Degree shall apply:

24.10 Entrance Requirements
24.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering (Civil) Degree shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.10.

24.20 Programme Structure
24.21 The Programme for the Degree in Civil Engineering will be a Single Major Programme that will extend over 10 semesters of fulltime study. It shall contain 1 subject called Civil Engineering consisting of courses shown below.
24.22 The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.20.

Level 300
Civil Engineering
Semester 5
Core Courses
MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III (3, pre-req. MAT 292
CCB313 Surveying (3)
CCB311 Geomechanics I (3)
CCB315 Environmental Engineering (2)

In addition, all students shall select at least 1 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:
CCB312 CAD for Civil Engineers (pre-req. MMB 221)
CCB316 Principles of Mining Engineering
CCB314 Engineering Geology

Semester 6
Core Courses (all 3 credits)
CCB321 Structural Analysis (pre-req. CCB212, CCB221)
CCB324 Construction Materials (pre-req. CCB211)
CCB322 Fluid Mechanics and Hydraulics
CCB323 Construction Principles
In addition, all students shall select at least 1 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:
CCB325 Geomechanics II (pre-req. CCB 311)
CCB329 Architectural Design
MAT392 Engineering Mathematics IV (pre-req. MAT391)

DEPARTMENT OF CIVIL ENGINEERING
FACULTY OF ENGINEERING AND TECHNOLOGY

Level 400
Civil Engineering
Semester 7
Core Courses
CCB411 Structural Design (3)
CCB412 Water Engineering (3, pre-req. CCB315)
CCB413 Traffic and Highway Engineering (3, pre-req. CCB313)
CCB414 Geotechnics (2, pre-req. CCB311)
In addition, all students shall select at least 2 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:
CCB415 Civil Engineering Construction (pre-req. CCB323)
CCB416 Structural Steelwork (pre-req. CCB321, co-requisite CCB411)
URP200 Introduction to Town Planning
CCB418 Hydrology and Water Resources (pre-req. CCB322, co-requisite CCB412)
CCB419 Engineering Surveying (pre-req. CCB313)

Semester 8
ITB420 Industrial Training I (Vacation, 20 weeks), (10, core, pre-req. ITB 200)

Level 500
Civil Engineering
Semester 9
Core Courses
CCB514 Project I (3)
CCB511 Structural Engineering (2, pre-req. CCB321)
CCB512 Construction Management I (2)
CCB515 Transportation Engineering (2, pre-req. CCB413)
In addition, all students shall select at least 2 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:
CCB516 Foundation Design (pre-req. CCB414)
CCB517 Structural Dynamics (pre-req. MMB222)
CCB518 Public Health Engineering (pre-req. CCB315)
CCB513 Measurements and Specifications - Civil Works

Semester 10
Core Courses
CCB524 Project II (3, pre-req. CCB514)
CCB522 Construction Management II (2, pre-req. CCB512)
In addition, all students shall select at least four of the following 2 credit, optional courses:
CCB521 Waste Water Engineering
CCB523 Timber and Pre-stressed Concrete Structures (pre-req. CCB412)
CCB525 Advanced Transportation Engineering (pre-req. CCB515)
CCB526 Foundation on Problematic Soils (pre-req. CCB516)
CCB527 Construction Costs & Financial Control
CCB528 Estimating and Tendering for Civil Works (pre-req. CCB 513)

24.30 Assessment
24.31 Except for CCB313 (Surveying), all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.30.
24.32 For CCB313 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1.

250 Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management) Degree
Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulation 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management) Degree shall apply:

25.10 Entrance Requirements
25.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management) Degree shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 21.10.

25.20 Programme Structure
25.21 The Programme for the Degree in Construction Engineering and Management will be a Single Major Programme that will extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Construction Engineering and Management consisting of courses shown below.
25.22 The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be stipulated in the Faculty of Engineering and Technology Special Regulation 21.20.

Level 300
Construction Engineering and Management
Semester 5
Core Courses (all are 3 credits)
MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III (pre-req. MAT292)
CCB313 Surveying
CCB311 Construction Technology I

Level 400
Construction Engineering and Management
Semester 7
Core Courses
CCB411 Structural Design (3)
CCB412 Water Engineering (3, pre-req. CCB315)
CCB413 Traffic and Highway Engineering (3, pre-req. CCB313)
CCB414 Geotechnics (2, pre-req. CCB311)
In addition, all students shall select at least 2 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:
CCB415 Civil Engineering Construction (pre-req. CCB323)
CCB416 Structural Steelwork (pre-req. CCB321, co-requisite CCB411)
URP200 Introduction to Town Planning
CCB418 Hydrology and Water Resources (pre-req. CCB322, co-requisite CCB412)
CCB419 Engineering Surveying (pre-req. CCB313)

Semester 8
ITB420 Industrial Training I (Vacation, 20 weeks), (10, core, pre-req. ITB 200)

Level 500
Construction Engineering and Management
Semester 9
Core Courses
CCB514 Project I (3)
CCB511 Structural Engineering (2, pre-req. CCB321)
CCB512 Construction Management I (2)
CCB515 Transportation Engineering (2, pre-req. CCB413)
In addition, all students shall select at least 2 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:
CCB516 Foundation Design (pre-req. CCB414)
CCB517 Structural Dynamics (pre-req. MMB222)
CCB518 Public Health Engineering (pre-req. CCB315)
CCB513 Measurements and Specifications - Civil Works

Semester 10
Core Courses
CCB524 Project II (3, pre-req. CCB514)
CCB522 Construction Management II (2, pre-req. CCB512)
In addition, all students shall select at least four of the following 2 credit, optional courses:
CCB521 Waste Water Engineering
CCB523 Timber and Pre-stressed Concrete Structures (pre-req. CCB412)
CCB525 Advanced Transportation Engineering (pre-req. CCB515)
CCB526 Foundation on Problematic Soils (pre-req. CCB516)
CCB527 Construction Costs & Financial Control
CCB528 Estimating and Tendering for Civil Works (pre-req. CCB 513)

24.30 Assessment
24.31 Except for CCB313 (Surveying), all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.30.
24.32 For CCB313 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1.

250 Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management) Degree
Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulation 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management) Degree shall apply:

25.10 Entrance Requirements
25.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management) Degree shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 21.10.

25.20 Programme Structure
25.21 The Programme for the Degree in Construction Engineering and Management will be a Single Major Programme that will extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Construction Engineering and Management consisting of courses shown below.
25.22 The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be stipulated in the Faculty of Engineering and Technology Special Regulation 21.20.
Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering) Degree

12.20 Entrance Requirements

12.21 Admission to the Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering) Degree shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.10.

12.22 The normal minimum requirements for admission to level 200 for a degree program shall be satisfactory completion of level 100 of the Bachelor of Science (General) degree of the Faculty of Science or equivalent institution with at least C grades in Mathematics, Chemistry and Physics.

12.23 Applicants in possession of an appropriate 'A' level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and at least one of: Physics and Chemistry may be admitted directly to Level 200 of the programme.

12.24 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the degree programme.

12.30 Duration of the Programme

The duration of the programme shall be: A minimum of 10 and a maximum of 12 semesters on a full-time basis.

12.40 Degree Structure

12.41 The curriculum for Level 100 shall be stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.20.

12.42 Level 200 Mining Engineering shall consist of the following courses:

Semester 3
Core Courses
MAT 291 Engineering Mathematics 1 (3)
CCB 211 Engineering Materials (2)
CCB 212 Statics (2)
MIN 211 Introduction to Mining Engineering (2)
EEB 211 DC Circuit Principles (2)
MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)
GEC 253 Energy and Society (2)

Semester 4
Core Courses
MAT 292 Engineering Mathematics 11 (3, pre-req. MAT 291)
CCB 221 Strength of Materials (2)
MIN 221 Introduction to Mine Safety and Health (3)
EEB221 AC Circuit Principles (2)
MMB221 Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req. MMB211)
MMB222 Dynamics (2)
GEC 250 Earth processes, mineral resources and development (2)
MIN 220 Professional Training (4, pre-req. MIN211)

Semester 5
Core Courses
MIN 311 Introduction to Mine Surveying (3)
MIN 312 Introduction to Geology (2)
MIN 313 Introduction to Mineral Processing (3)
MIN 314 Computer Applications in Mining (2)
MIN 315 Small Scale Mining (2, pre-req. MIN211)
MIN 316 Elements of Mining Environmental Management (2)
GEC 276 Contemporary Economic Issues (2)

Semester 6
Core Courses
MIN 321 Elements of Mining Methods (3, pre-req. MIN211)
MIN 322 Elements of Mine Safety & Health (2, pre-req. MIN221)
MIN 323 Elements of Mine Ventilation (2)
MIN 324 Botswana Mining Law (2)
MIN 325 Introduction to Mine Supervision & Management (2)
MIN 326 Mine Surveying (2, pre-req. MIN311)
ECO 111 Basic Microeconomics (2)
ECO 112 Basic Macroeconomics (2)
MIN 320* Mine Tour (1)

12.44 Level 400 Mining Engineering shall be as stipulated in the advanced mining engineering subjects offered at the Mining Engineering Department, University of Missouri Rolla.

12.45 Level 500 Mining Engineering shall be as stipulated in the advanced mining engineering subjects offered at the Mining Engineering Department, University of Missouri Rolla.

12.46 A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, design, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

12.50 Assessment

12.51 Continuous assessment in courses shall be based on tests or design, assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports and field reports.

12.52 The ratio of continuous assessment to formal examination shall be 2:3. 12.53 Overall performance in a course shall be as specified in the General Regulation 00.84.

12.60 Final Examinations

There shall be no supplementary examinations. A student who fails a core or pre-req. or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective/general education course may
12.70 Progression from Semester to Semester
General Regulation 00.90 shall apply.

12.80 Award of the Degree
12.81 The UMR General Regulation for awarding the degree shall apply.

12.90 Professional Training
Students shall undergo Professional Training (Internship) of 8 weeks duration after levels 200 and take a 2-week Mine Tour after level 300 as specified in the Special Regulations for the Professional Training and Mine Tour for the Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering) Programme.

12.91 Assessment of Professional Training
Professional Training shall be assessed as specified in the Special Regulations for the Professional Training and Mine Tour for the Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering) Programme.

Special Regulations for Professional Training and Mine Tour for the Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering)

Preamble
Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 100 the following Professional Training Regulations shall apply to students on the Bachelor of Engineering (Mining) programme.

1.0 Structure
1.1 A student shall undergo supervised Professional Training of 8 weeks duration after level 200 (MIN 220).
1.2 A student shall undergo a 2-week Mine Tour after level 300 (MIN 320).
1.3 During the Professional Training students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the mining industry/organisation.

2.0 Assessment
2.1 During each Professional Training period, students shall be visited 2 times at location of placement to be assessed by staff teaching on the programme.
2.2 A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:
   a) Confidential report from the student’s immediate supervisor at location of placement.
   b) Professional Training reports and logbook submitted by the student at the end of each Internship period.
   c) Professional Training visits by an assessor from the relevant Department of Faculty of Engineering and Technology.

2.3 The Professional Training session shall be evaluated as specified in 2.2. The ratio of Confidential Report marks to Professional Report marks to Professional Training Visits shall be based on the FET industrial training regulations.
2.4 Assessment of the Mine Tour shall be by submission of a written report.
2.5 A student who has an incomplete grade shall be allowed to complete Professional Training at a time recommended by the Faculty.

3.0 Repeating Professional Training
3.1 A student who fails to meet the requirements of Professional Training shall be required to repeat the training at a time recommended by the Faculty.

10 Special Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Geomatics
10.0 Special Regulations for Bachelor’s Degree in Geomatics (BGeom)
Preamble: Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Faculty Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Geomatics Degree shall apply.
10.20 Entrance Requirements
10.21 Admission into the Bachelor of Geomatics Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in the General Regulations 20.2.
10.22 Admission into Level 100 of the BGeom Degree Programme shall be a minimum requirement of BGCE with a D grade in English and a C grade in Mathematics and Physics and any one of Chemistry or Biology or a minimum of Grade B in Science Double Award.
10.23 Admission into Level 200 of the Bachelor of Geomatics Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in the General Admission Regulations.
10.24 Applicants who are in possession of an appropriate Diploma in Geomatics, Land Surveying, Cartography, GIS, or equivalent and have GPA of at least 2.5 or its equivalent may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme.
10.25 Admission into Level 200 of the BGeom Degree Programme shall be upon satisfactory completion of Level 100 of the Bachelor of Science General Degree of the Faculty of Science with at least C grades in Mathematics and Physics.
10.26 Applicants in possession of an appropriate ‘A’ level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and Physics maybe exempted from taking Mathematics and Physics from the Faculty of Science and may be admitted into Level 200 but will take Level 100 Geomatics courses.
10.27 A student admitted directly to Level 200 Geomatics who has not completed Level 100 Geomatics courses must take them during their first year at the University of Botswana.

10.30 Programme Structure
The programme for the degree in Geomatics will be a single major programme that will extend over 8 semesters of Full time studies. It shall consist of a single subject called Geomatics consisting of the courses shown below:

10.40 Degree Structure
10.41 Level 100 shall consist of the following courses:

Semester One
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics 1 (4 credits, core)
PHY111 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (3 credits, core)
PHY119 Physics Practical 1.1 (1 credit, core)
GBB111 Geomatics I (3 credits, core)

In addition students will take the following GEC Courses
GEC111 Communication and Study Skill I (2)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills (2)

Semester Two
MAT122 Introductory Mathematics 11 (4 credits, core, pre-req. MAT111)
PHY121 Electricity and Magnetism, Modern Physics (3 credits, core, pre-req. PHY111)
PHY129 Physics Practical 1.2 (1 credit, core, pre-req. PHY119)
CGB121 Geomatics II (3 credits, core, pre-req. CGB111)

In addition students will take the following GEC Courses
GEC112 Communication and Study skills (2)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills (2)

Students will also take the following winter course:
CGB122 Survey Camp I (2 credits, core, pre-req. CGB111, CGB121, 2 weeks)

Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:

Semester Three
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3 credits, core)
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3 credits,
Semester Four

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAT292 Engineering Mathematics II</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>MAT291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB221 Digital Photogrammetry</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB222 Theory of survey adjustments</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>CGB212, MAT271, CGB121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB223 Digital Cartography</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>pre-req. CGB213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB224 Programming for Geomatics</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>core, pre-req. CGB212</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The students will also take the following winter course:

- ITB200 Industrial Training (4 credits, core, 8 weeks)

10.42 Level 300 Shall consist of the following courses:

Semester Five

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB311 Engineering Surveying</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>pre-req. CGB121, CGB222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB312 Geodesy I</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAW354 Law for Geomatics</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV330 Environmental Surveying</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>exempt from pre-req. ENV215</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester Six

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CGB321 Introduction to Land Administration</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>pre-req. CGB313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB322 Principles of GIS</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>pre-req. CGB213, CGB223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB323 Satellite Positioning Systems</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>credits, pre-req. CGB312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB324 Geodesy II</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>pre-req. CGB312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS1362 Database Concepts</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition students will take the following winter courses:

- ITB300 Industrial Training II (4 credits, core, 8 weeks)
- GBB305 Survey Camp II (2 credits, core, pre-req. GBB323, GBB324, 2 weeks)

10.43 Level 400 shall consist of the following courses:

Semester Seven

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CGB411 Research Project I</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB412 Spatial Data Modelling and Analysis</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>core, pre-req. CGB322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB413 Advanced Land Administration</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>core, pre-req. CGB321</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition the students will choose 2 options from the following:

- CGB414 Remote Sensing Applications                                  | 3       | option, pre-req. CGB221 |
- CGB415 Advanced Cartographic Visualisation                          | 3       | option, pre-req. CGB223 |
- CGB416 GIS Design and Implementation                                | 3       | credits, option, pre-req. CGB362, CGB322 |
- CGB417 Digital Image Processing                                     | 3       | option, pre-req. CGB221 |
- CGB418 Principles and Practice of SDI Development                   | 3       | option |

Semester Eight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CBB529 Professional Ethics</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBB521 Contract Administration</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB421 Research Project II</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB422 Cadastral Surveying Practice</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>credits, core, pre-req. CGB413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGB423 GIS Applications</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>core, pre-req. CGB224</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition students will choose any 2 options from the following:

- CGB424 Special Studies in Land Administration                      | 3       | option, pre-req. CGB413 |
- CGB425 Location-based Services                                      | 3       | option, pre-req. CGB224 |
- MIN326 Mining Surveying                                             | 3       | option, pre-req. CGB121 |

10.45 A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, design, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

10.50 Assessment

10.51 Continuous assessment in courses shall be based on tests and assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports and field reports. The ratio between tests and assignment shall be 1:1.

10.52 The ratio of continuous assessment to formal examination shall be 2:3.

10.53 A project shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 2:1:1.

10.60 Progression from Semester to Semester General Regulation 00.90 shall apply.

10.70 Award of the Degree

10.71 General Regulation 00.85, shall apply. (A minimum of 139 credits).

72.72 Classification of the degree shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 20.4.

116 Departmental Special Regulations for the Diploma in Mining Engineering

Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and Faculty Special Regulations 110 for Diploma Programmes, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

116.10 Entrance Requirements

116.11 The minimum entrance requirements to the Diploma in Mining Engineering Programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent, with passes in Mathematics and at least 1 Science subject.

116.12 Preference will be given to candidates with relevant industrial experience.

116.13 Medical requirements are:

a) Applicants must be in possession of a satisfactory medical certificate required under University Regulations Governing Admissions (Regulation 1.41) and must also comply with the health and fitness requirements in accordance with Regulations 91 and 92 of the Mines, Quarries, Works and Machinery Regulations [CAP. 44:02];

b) A student who becomes permanently medically unfit to be employed at a mine as specified in the Mines, Quarries, Works and Machinery Regulations [CAP. 44:02] will be required to withdraw from the Programme.

116.20 Programme Structure

116.21 The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 6 semesters of full-time study, of which 40 weeks shall be spent on Industrial Training. It shall contain 1 subject called Mining Engineering consisting of courses shown below.

116.22 Students who have been in full-time employment within the mining sector may be exempted from part or all of the Industrial Training requirements at the discretion of the Departmental Board.
Level 100
Diploma in Mining Engineering
Semester 1
Core Courses
CMD111 Introduction to Mining Engineering (2)
CBD112 Introduction to Engineering Drawing (2)
CGD111 Plane Surveying (3)
SED111 Engineering Science (2)
SMD111 Mathematics I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
CMD121 Mining Methods (3, pre-req. CMD111)
GEO104 Introduction to Geology for Mining Engineering (2)
CMD123 Mining Safety and Health (2)
SMD121 Mathematics II (2)
CMD124 Introduction to Mineral Processing (2)
In addition all students shall select at least 1 from the following 2-credit options:
MED120 Engineering Materials
CMD125 Mine Ventilation
Industrial training shall be taken prior to Level 200 and shall consist of the following courses:
ITD100 Industrial Training (6 shifts/week, 48 weeks, 15 core)
CMD200 Mine Tour (1, core, pre-req. CMD 111, CMD 121)

Level 200
Diploma in Mining Engineering
Semester 3
Core Courses
CMD221 Advanced Mining Methods and Production Control (2, pre-req. CMD111)
CMD222 Principles of Ground Control (2, pre-req. CMD111, CMD 122)
CMD223 Mining Plant, Equipment Selection and Maintenance (2)
CMD224 Explosives, Drilling and Blasting (3)
CMD225 Computer Applications in Mining Problems (2)
In addition all students shall select at least 1 from the following 2-credit options:
CMD226 Small Scale Mining (pre-req. CMD111)
CMD227 Mining Environmental Management

Semester 4
Core Courses
CMD228 Production Control (2, pre-req. CMD122)
CMD229 Ore Reserve Management (3, pre-req. CMD121)

116.30 Assessment
116.31 All courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 11.30.

DEPARTMENT OF ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING
Bachelor of Electrical and Electronic Engineering

Entrance Requirements
Admission to the B.Eng. (Electrical and Electronic) shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulations 21.20. Applicants in possession of a Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering, or its equivalent, with a minimum of Credit including a Credit in Mathematics, may be admitted directly into Level 300. Applicants in possession of a Higher Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering, or its equivalent, with a minimum of Credit including a Credit in Mathematics, may be admitted directly into Level 200.

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III (3 pre-req. MAT 292)
EEB311 Network Theory (4) (pre-req. EEB221 & MAT 292)
EEB 315 Computer Programming (2)
Level 500  
Semester 9  
Core courses

EEB510  Project I (3) (pre-req. EEB316, EEB327 & EEB418) and either (EEB411 & EEB412), or (EEB413, EEB414)

Optional courses:  
At least three from  
EEB511  Control Theory II (3) (pre-req. EEB418)  
EEB512  Digital Signal Processing I (3) (pre-req. MAT392)

EEB513  Analogue Electronic System Design (3) (pre-req. EEB323)

EEB514  Process Instrumentation (3) (pre-req. EEB416 & EEB418)

EEB515  Power System Analyses (3) (pre-req. EEB413 & EEB414)

EEB516  Power Electronics (3) (pre-req. EEB323)

EEB517  Computer Aided Electrical Machine Analysis (3) (pre-req. EEB414)

Optional Courses

EEB518  Guided Waves (3) (pre-req. EEB327)  
EEB519  Computer Architecture and Design (3) (pre-req. EEB417)

Level 500  
Semester 10  
Core courses

EEB520  Project II (3, pre-req. EEB510)

Optional courses:  
At least two from  
EEB522  Digital Signal Processing II (3, pre-req. EEB512)  
EEB523  Digital Electronic System Design (3, pre-req. EEB412)

EEB524  Process Control Systems (3, pre-req. EEB511 & EEB514)

EEB525  Power Systems (3, pre-req. EEB413)  
EEB526  Electrical Machines I (3, pre-req. EEB516)

EEB527  Computer Aided Power Systems Analysis (3, pre-req. EEB515)

EEB528  Antennas and Propagation (3, pre-req. EEB518)

EEB529  Computer Networks (3, pre-req. EEB519)

Award of the Degree

The award of the BEng. in Electrical and Electronic Engineering shall be in accordance with the Faculty Special regulations 21.80.

Combined Bachelor of Engineering (B-Eng Major)

Degree Structure

The Major shall be a minimum of 53 credits over 10 semesters of full-time study. The major may be combined with a second major or minor. The curriculum for Level 100 and 200 shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.30.

Level 300  
Semester 5  
Core Courses

MAT391  Engineering Mathematics III (3, pre-req. MAT291)  
EEB 311  Network Theory (4) (pre-req. EEB221 & MAT292)

EEB 316  Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation I (3) (pre-req. EEB221)

Level 300  
Semester 6  
Core courses

MAT392  Engineering Mathematics IV (3, pre-req. MAT391)

Optional courses:  
At least two from  
EEB322  Digital Electronics I (3) (pre-req. EEB221)

EEB323  Analogue Electronics (3) (pre-req. EEB221)

EEB326  Electrical Machines II (3) (pre-req. EEB311)

EEB327  Electromagnetic Field Theory (3) (pre-req. MAT391)

Level 400  
Semester 7  
Core courses

EEB418  Control Theory I (3) (pre-req. EEB 311 & MAT392)

Optional courses:  
At least two from  
EEB411  Electronic Devices and Circuits, (3) (pre-req. EEB323)

EEB412  Digital Electronics II (3) (pre-req. EEB322)

EEB413  Power Generation and Distribution, (3) (pre-req. EEB326 & MAT392)

EEB414  Electrical Machines II (3) (pre-req. EEB326 & MAT392)

EEB417  Microprocessor Based Systems, (3) (pre-req. EEB322)

Level 500  
Semester 9  
Core courses

EEB510  Project I (3, pre-req. EEB316, EEB327 & EEB418) and either (EEB411 & EEB412) or (EEB413 & EEB414)

Optional courses:  
At least two from  
EEB512  Digital Signal Processing I (3, pre-req. MAT392)  
EEB513  Analogue Electronic System Design (3, pre-req. EEB323)  
EEB514  Process Instrumentation (3) (pre-req. EEB416 & EEB418)  
EEB515  Power System Analyses (3) (pre-req. EEB413 & EEB414)  
EEB516  Power Electronics (3) (pre-req. EEB323)  
EEB517  Computer Aided Electrical Machine Analysis (3) (pre-req. EEB414)

Level 500  
Semester 10  
Core courses

EEB520  Project II (3, pre-req. EEB510)

Optional courses:  
At least two from  
EEB522  Digital Signal Processing II (3, pre-req. EEB512)  
EEB523  Digital Electronic System Design (3, pre-req. EEB412)  
EEB524  Process Control Systems (3, pre-req. EEB511 & EEB514)  
EEB525  Power Systems (3, pre-req. EEB413)  
EEB526  Electrical Machines I (3, pre-req. EEB516)  
EEB527  Computer Aided Power Systems Analysis (3, pre-req. EEB515)  
EEB528  Antennas and Propagation (3, pre-req. EEB518)  
EEB529  Computer Networks (3, pre-req. EEB519)

Assessment

As per Special Faculty Regulations 21.40.

Level 500  
Semester 9  
Core courses

EEB520  Project II (3, pre-req. EEB510)  

Optional courses:  
At least two from  
EEB522  Digital Signal Processing II (3, pre-req. EEB512)  
EEB523  Digital Electronic System Design (3, pre-req. EEB412)  
EEB524  Process Control Systems (3, pre-req. EEB511 & EEB514)  
EEB525  Power Systems (3, pre-req. EEB413)  
EEB526  Electrical Machines I (3, pre-req. EEB516)  
EEB529  Computer Networks (3, pre-req. EEB519)

Level 500  
Semester 9  
Core courses

EEB520  Project II (3, pre-req. EEB510)  

Optional courses:  
At least two from  
EEB522  Digital Signal Processing II (3, pre-req. EEB512)  
EEB523  Digital Electronic System Design (3, pre-req. EEB412)  
EEB524  Process Control Systems (3, pre-req. EEB511 & EEB514)  
EEB525  Power Systems (3, pre-req. EEB413)  
EEB526  Electrical Machines I (3, pre-req. EEB516)  
EEB529  Computer Networks (3, pre-req. EEB519)

Assessment

As per Special Faculty Regulations 21.40.
FACULTY OF
ENGINEERING AND TECHNOLOGY

Progression
As per General Regulations 00.90.

Award of the Degree
The award of the BEng in Electrical and Electronic Engineering shall be in accordance with the Faculty Special regulations 21.80.

Combined Bachelor of Engineering (B-Eng Minor)

Degree Structure
The Minor shall be a minimum of 23 credits over 8 semesters of full-time study. The minor may be combined with a major or minor. The curriculum for Level 100 shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.30.

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
EEB216 Electrical Principles (2)
MMB 211 Engineering Drawing (2)

Level 200
Semester 4
Core Courses
EEB 226 AC Circuit Principles (2)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
A minimum of 5 credits from:
EEB311 Network Theory (4)
EEB313 Computer Programming (2)
EEB316 Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation I (3)
EEB317 Principles of Telecommunications (3)

Level 300
Semester 6
Core Courses
A minimum of 5 credits from:
EEB322 Digital Electronics I (3)
EEB323 Analogue Electronics (3)
EEB326 Electrical Machines I (3)
EEB327 Electromagnetic Field Theory (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Optional Courses
A minimum of 5 credits from:
EEB411 Electronic Devices and Circuits (3)
EEB412 Digital Electronics II (3) (pre-req. EEB326 & MAT392)
EEB413 Power Generation and Distribution (3) (pre-req. EEB326 & MAT392)
EEB414 Electrical Machines II (3)
EEB417 Microprocessor Based Systems (3)

Higher Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering

Entrance Requirements
Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering or its equivalent. At least one year of industrial work experience in the field of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SMH 111 Mathematics I (2)
EEH 111 Circuit Theory (3)
EEH 112 Analogue Electronics (3)
EEH 113 Measurement and Instrumentation (2)
EEH 114 Computer Aided Electrical Drafting (2)

Level 100
Semester 2
Core Courses
EEH 121 Mathematics II (2, pre-req. SMH 111)
EEH 122 Network Theory (3)
EEH 123 Digital Electronics (2)
EEH 124 Computer Programming (2)
EEH 125 Electromagnetic Field Theory (2)
EEH 126 Electrical machines I (2)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core courses
EEH 211 Control Theory (3)
Optional courses
At least four from:
EEH212 Fundamentals of Computer Networks (3)
EEH 213 Process Instrumentation (3)
EEH 214 Analogue and Digital Communication (3, pre-req. EEH 124)
EEH215 Troubleshooting Digital Systems, (3)
EEH 216 Electrical Machines II (3)

EEH 217 Power Transmission and Distribution (3)
EEH 218 Power Electronics (3)
EEH 219 Electrical Power Production (3)

Level 200
Semester 4
Core courses
EHH 221 Project (2)
EHH 222 Electrical Maintenance and Repair (2)
Optional courses
At least three from:
EHH223 Motor Drive Applications (3, pre-req. EEH 125, EEH 216)
EHH 224 Computer Engineering (3, pre-req. EEH 122)
EHH225 Process Control Systems (3, pre-req. EHH 213)
EHH226 RF Transmission and Propagation (3, pre-req. EHH 124)
EHH227 Audio Visual Engineering (3)
EHH228 Power System Protection (3)
MDH225 Renewable Energy (3)
All courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Regulation 13.30.130 In addition to the above, the department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering also offers the following General Education Courses (GEC).
GEC 255 Electrical Energy and Rural Development (2)
GEC354 Domestic Use of Electrical Energy (2)
GEC355 Telecommunications and Society

DEPARTMENT OF INDUSTRIAL DESIGN AND TECHNOLOGY

230 Special Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Design
Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000, 100 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

23.10 Entrance Requirements
23.11 Admission into Level 100 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in the General Admission Regulations.
23.12 Admission into Level 100 shall be possession of BGCE equivalent with a minimum of grade C in English Language and a grade C in Mathematics and Physics and in any one from Biology and Chemistry or a minimum of grade BB in Science Double Award or equivalent. OR
23.13 Admission into Level 200 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in General Admission Regulations.
23.14 Admission into Level 200 of the BDes
Degree Programme shall be satisfactorily completion of level 100 of Bachelor of Science with at least the equivalent of C grades in Mathematics and Physics. OR
23.15 Applicants in possession of an appropriate A-Level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and any one of Physics, Chemistry, or Design and Technology may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme. OR
23.16 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme. OR
23.17 For admission into Level 300 of the Degree Programme, applicants must have an appropriate Higher (or a 3 Year) Diploma with Mathematics, Physics, Chemistry and Engineering Drawing.

23.20 Degree Structure
23.21 Level 100 courses shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Science Degree. OR
23.22 Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester 3**

**Core Courses**
- DTB210 Elements of Design (3)
- DTB211 Workshop Technology I (2)
- MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)
- CCB211 Engineering Materials (2)
- CCB212 Statics (2)
- EEB211 Electrical Principles I (2)

**Semester 4**

- DTB220 Designing Artifacts (3, pre-req. DTB210)
- DTB221 Workshop Technology II (2, pre-req. DTB211)
- MMB221 Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req. MMB211)
- MMB222 Dynamics (2)
- CCB221 Strength of Materials (2)
- DTB 222 Graphics (2)

23.23 Students registered for a Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall undergo industrial training as specified under Departmental Special Regulations.
23.24 At Levels 300, 400 and 500 each student shall register for General Education Courses as prescribed by General Regulation 00.2124, Departmental prescribed number of core, optional and elective courses per semester, unless exempted.
23.25 The availability of optional and elective courses offered by a Department shall be at the discretion of the Department.
23.26 A student shall register for a Single Major or a Combined Degree Programme in the third semester.
23.27 A subject may include courses consisting entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

**23.30 Assessment**
23.31 Continuous assessment in Levels 200, 300, 400 and 500 courses shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports/field reports.
23.32 Except for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.

23.33 Project Assessment
a) A Design Project shall be assessed through documentation (folio, report and diary) of the Design Process and presentation. The ratio of marks for documentation to presentation shall be 2:1.
b) A Major Make and Evaluate Project shall be assessed through Product and its Evaluation and presentation. The ratio of marks for documentation to presentation shall be 2:1.
c) A Design and Make Project shall be evaluated as specified in Regulations 23.33a and 23.33b.
23.34 The Level 500 Project Report must be submitted to the co-coordinator at least 2 weeks before the beginning of the end of semester examinations.
23.35 Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit value of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and 1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.
23.36 Courses having a practical component or drawing that include a written examination shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 3 hours.

23.37 Due Dates and Tests
a) Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per day. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of 1 week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.
b) A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reason shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.

280 Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education) Degree
Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulation 230, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education) Degree shall apply:

28.10 Entrance Requirements
28.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education) Degree shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 23.10, i.e., 23.11 to 23.17.

28.20 Programme Structure
28.21 The Programme shall consist of the Major Subject called ‘Design and Technology’ and the Minor Subject called Education.
28.22 The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations.

**Level 300**
Design and Technology Education

**Semester 5**

**Core Courses**
- DTB311 Design, Technology and Society (2)
- DTB312 Aesthetics (2)
- DTB313 Ergonomics (2)
- DTB314 Materials Processing (3)
- EDT311 Principles of Learning (2)

In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
- DTB315 Internet for Designers (2)
- DTB317 Textiles and Leather Technology (2)
- HEE345 Food Technology (3)

**Semester 6**

**Core Courses**
- DTB 321 Computer Aided Design (3)
- EEB328 Electronics for Designers (3) (pre-req. EEB211)
- DTB323 Pneumatic Controls (2)
- DTB324 Product Analysis (3)
- EDT321 Teaching Methodology (2)
- Industrial Training
- DTB300 Industrial Training
FACULTY OF ENGINEERING AND TECHNOLOGY

Level 400
Design and Technology Education
Semester 7
Core Courses
DTB410 Computer Based Manufacture (2)
DTB411 Hydraulic Controls (2)
DTB412 Product Design I (3)
EDT411 Educational Technology (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
DTB413 Special Human Needs (2)
DTB414 School Design and Technology Projects (2)
DTB415 Design for Sustainable Development (2)
DTB416 Interior Design (2, pre-req. DTB312)
Teaching Practice
ETP400 School Teaching Practice
(Vacation, 7 weeks) (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses (Both 2 credits)
DTB422 Product Design II (2)
DTB423 Minor Design and Make Project (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
EDT421 Educational Testing and Evaluation (2)
EDT422 Curriculum Studies (2)
EDT423 Philosophy of Education (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:
DTB421 Ceramics, Glass and Stone Technology (2)
MMB420 Applied Thermodynamics (2)
DTB424 Safety and First Aid (2)

Level 500
Design and Technology Education
Semester 9
Core Courses
DTB511 Major Design Project (3)
EDT511 Research Project in D&T Education (3)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
EDT512 School Organisation and Management (2)
DTB515 Design and Technology School Curriculum Innovations (2)
DTB513 Product Design III (2)
DTB514 Industrial Product Design (2)
DTB515 Microcomputer Controls (2)

Semester 10
DTB521 Major Make-and-Evaluate Project
(Vacation, 7 Weeks) (3, core)
In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:
DTB522 Case Studies in Designing (2)
DTB524 Environmental Factors in Design (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
EFA500 School Management (2)
EFF430 Philosophical Analysis of Educational Concepts and Policies (3)
EHH500 Guidance and Counselling (3)
EFR500 Measurement and Evaluation (3)

28.30 Assessment
28.31 For courses DTB220, DTB300, DTB312, DTB315, ETP400, DTB321, DTB413, DTB414, DTB416, DTB422, DTB423, DTB424, DTB511, DTB514, DTB521 and DTB522 the assessment mode shall be continuous assessment only.
28.32 Assessment for courses offered by other faculties, e.g., Education, will be as stipulated in their Faculty/Departmental Regulations.

340 Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design Degree)
Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 230 the following Departmental Regulations for the B Des. (Industrial Design) shall apply:

34.10 Entrance Requirements
34.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Design Degree (Industrial Design) shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulations 23.10, i.e., 23.11 to 23.17

34.20 Degree Structure
34.21 The Programme shall consist of a single major subject called ‘Industrial Design’.
34.22 The curriculum for Level 100 and 200 shall be stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations.
Level 300
Industrial Design
Semester 5
Core Courses
DTB311 Design, Technology and Society (2)
DTB312 Aesthetics (2)
DTB313 Ergonomics (2)
DTB311 Industrial Design: Concept and Practice (2)
IDB312 Design of Mechanisms and Structures (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:
IDB313 History of Industrial Design (2)
DTB315 Internet for Designers (2)
DTB317 Textiles and Leather Technology (2)

Semester 6
Core Courses
DTB324 Product Analysis (3)
EEB328 Electronics for Designers (3)
(pre-req. EEB211)
IDB321 Computer Aided 3-D Design (2)
IDB322 Product Design (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:
IDB323 Basic Control Systems (2)
IDB324 Ceramics, Glass and Stone Technology (2)
MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3)
MGT325 Industrial Environment (2)
Industrial Training
DTB300 Industrial Training
(Vacation 7 Weeks, 3 Credits)

Level 400
Industrial Design
Semester 7
IDB411 Computer Aided Manufacture (3)
IDB412 Research Methods in Design (2)
IDB413 Minor Project (3)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
DTB415 Design for Sustainable Development (2)
DTB416 Interior Design (2)
IDB414 Eco-Product Design (2)
IDB415 Universal Design (2)

Semester 8
IDB400 Industrial Training for Industrial Design (20 Weeks, 10 Credits)
Level 500
Industrial Design
Semester 9
IDB 511 Major Design Project (3)
IDB 512 Contemporary Issues in Industrial Design (2)
IDB 513 Advanced Product Design (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least three of the following optional courses:
IDB514 Design Management (2)
IDB515 Occupational Health and Safety (2)
IDB516 Design Studies (2)
IDB517 Optimisation in Design (2)
Semester 10
IDBS21 Major Make-and-Evaluate Project, (3)
IDBS23 Professional Practice (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least two courses from the following:
1. DTB522 Case Studies in Designing (3)
2. IDBS22 Design for Automation (3)
3. IDBS24 Multimedia for Industrial Designers (3)
4. IDBS25 Packaging Design, (3)

3.24 Assessment
3.25 For DTB220, DTB300, DTB312, DTB315, IDBS13, IDBS21, IDB 322, IDB324, IDB400, IDB411, IDB413, IDB513, IDB515, IDBS16, IDBS17, IDBS22, IDBS24 and IDBS25, the assessment mode shall be continuous assessment only.

Service Courses
DTC 221 Entrepreneurial Skills (2): This course is available for students who are undertaking certificate or diploma programmes in FET.

GEC 357 Advances in Technology (2): Examinable: CA:Exam Ratio as per FET Regulations
GEC 258 Art and Science of Design (2): Examinable: CA:Exam Ratio as per FET Regulations

350 Industrial Training Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Design Preamble
Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 the following Industrial Training regulations shall apply to students on the following programmes:

a) Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education)
b) Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design)

3.10 Structure
3.11 BDes (Design and Technology Education) and Bdes (Industrial Design) students shall undergo supervised Industrial Training for 7 weeks at Levels 300 and 400. B Des. Industrial Design students shall in addition undergo supervised Industrial Training for Industrial Design for 20 weeks from the beginning of semester 2 of Level 400 including part of the vacation between Levels 400 and 500.
3.12 Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:
1. DTB 300 - Industrial Training (BDes Design and Technology Education and B Des. Industrial Design) duration 7 weeks, 3 credits, core course.
2. IDB 400 - Industrial Training for Industrial Design (B Des. Industrial Design) duration 20 weeks, 10 credits, core course.
3.13 During the periods of Industrial Training students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.
3.14 Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and regulation 35.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

3.20 Assessment
3.21 During the periods of Industrial Training, each student shall be visited a minimum of twice at the location of placement to be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.
3.22 A student's performance will be assessed by means of:
- Continuous assessment by the industry based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant Department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology.
- Industrial Training Report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period.
- Oral Presentation for IDB400 only.
3.23 DTB300 shall be assessed as based on regulations 35.22 (a and b). The ratio of marks for Continuous Assessment to Industrial Training Report and Logbook shall be 1:2.
3.24 IDB400 shall be assessed as based on regulations 35.22 (a,b and c). The ratio of marks for Continuous Assessment to Industrial Training Report and Logbook to Oral Presentation shall be 1:2:1.

DEPARTMENT OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERING

Introduction
The Department of Mechanical Engineering offers the following programmes:
- Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical)
- Combined Degree (Major in Mechanical Engineering)
- Combined Degree (Minor in Mechanical Engineering)
- MSc in Mechanical Engineering

Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical) Degree. Subject to General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical) Degree (BEng) shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical Engineering) Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulations 21.10.

Programme Structure
The Programme for the Degree in Mechanical Engineering will be a Single Major that will extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain one subject called Mechanical Engineering consisting of courses shown below. The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 21.20.

Level 300
Mechanical Engineering
Semester 5
Core Courses
MAT391 Mathematics III [3, pre-req. MAT291]
MMB311 Solid Mechanics [3, pre-req. CCB211]
MMB312 Materials [2, pre-req. CCB211]
MMB313 Mechanics of Machines [3, pre-req. MBB222]
MMB314 Measurement and Instrumentation [2]

Semester 6
Core Courses
MMB322 Machine Component Design [2, pre-req. MMB 311]
MMB323 Thermodynamics I [3]
MMB324 Fluid Mechanics [3]
MMB325 Manufacturing [2]
EEB326 Electrical Machines I [3]

Level 400
Mechanical Engineering
Semester 7
Core Courses
MMB411 Machine and Industrial Design [2, pre-req. MMB322]
MMB421 Heat Transfer [2, pre-req. MMB323, MMB324]
MMB413 Systems and Control Engineering I [3]
MMB414 Engineering Management [3]
MMB417 Fluids and Thermodynamics II [2, pre-req. MMB323]

In addition, all students shall at least select one of the following optional courses:
- MMB416 Mechatronics [2, pre-req. MMB314]
- MMB418 Pneumatics and Hydraulics [2]
Facility of Engineering and Technology

MMB410 Advanced Manufacturing (2, pre-req. MMB325)

Semester 8
ITB420 Industrial Training II (20 Weeks), (10 credits, core, pre-req. ITB200)

Level 500
Mechanical Engineering
Semester 9
Core Courses
MMB511 Project I (3)
MMB512 Plant Engineering (3)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
MMB513 Manufacturing Systems (4)
MMB514 Systems and Control Engineering II (4)
MMB515 Energy Conversion (4, pre-req. MMB412, MMB417)
MMB524 Refrigeration and Air Conditioning (4, pre-req. MMB412, MMB417)

Semester 10
Core Courses
MMB521 Project II (3, pre-req. MMB511)
MMB522 Production and Operations Management (3, pre-req. MMB414)
In addition, all students shall select two of the following optional courses:
MMB516 Building and Factory Services (4)
MMB523 Industrial Engineering (4, pre-req. MMB414)
MMB527 Thermo/Fluid system design (4, pre-req. MMB421, MMB417)
MMB526 Computational Mechanics (4)

Assessment
Except for MMB211 (Engineering Drawing), MMB411 (Engineering Design), MMB511 (Project I), MMB521 (Project II) and MMB526 (Computational Mechanics), all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.30. For MMB411 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1. For MMB211, MMB511, MMB521, and MMB526 the assessment mode shall be by continuous assessment only.

Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (General) Degree
Subject to the General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering Degree (Major in Mechanical Engineering) shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering Degree (Major in Mechanical Engineering) shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulations 21.10.

Programme Structure
The Combined Programme shall extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall consist of one major subject (Mechanical Engineering) and 1 minor subject selected outside the major subject. The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.20. At Levels 300, 400 and 500 students shall be required to follow a selected minor subject outside the major subject. The courses from the minor subject shall have a minimum credit value of 23. Subject to Regulation 31.22, students must achieve a minimum of 53 credits from the major subject courses listed below. In cases where a similar course appears in both the minor and the major subject, there shall be no double crediting of the course. Students shall be required to undertake Industrial Training as per Faculty of Engineering and Technology Special Regulations 220.

Level 300
Major in Mechanical Engineering
Semester 5
Core Course
MAT391 Mathematics III (3, pre-req. MAT291)
Students shall select and follow at least 3 of the following optional courses:
MMB311 Solid Mechanics (3)
MMB312 Materials (2)
MMB313 Mechanics of Machines (3, core, pre-req. MMB322)
MMB314 Measurement and Instrumentation (2)

Semester 6
Students shall select and follow at least three of the following optional courses:
MMB322 Machine Component Design (2)
MMB323 Thermodynamics I (3)
MMB324 Fluid Mechanics (3)
MMB325 Manufacturing (2)

Level 400
Major in Mechanical Engineering
Semester 7
Students shall select and follow at least two of the following core courses:
MMB411 Machine and Industrial Design (2, pre-req. MMB322)
MMB527 Thermal Fluid System Design (2, pre-req. MMB421, MMB417)

MMB413 Systems and Control Engineering I (3)
MMB414 Engineering Management (3)
MMB417 Thermodynamics II (2, pre-req. MMB323)
In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:
MMB416 Mechatronics (2, pre-req. MMB314)
MMB418 Pneumatics and Hydraulics (2)
MMB410 Advanced Manufacturing (2, pre-req. MMB325)

Semester 8
Core Course
ITB420 Industrial Training II (20 Weeks) (10)

Level 500
Major in Mechanical Engineering
Semester 9
Core Course
MMB511 Project I (3)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following options:
MMB512 Plant Engineering (3)
MMB513 Manufacturing Systems (4)
MMB514 Systems and Control Engineering II (4)
MMB515 Energy Conversion (4, pre-req. MMB412, MMB417)
MMB524 Refrigeration and Air Conditioning (4, pre-req. MMB412, MMB417)

Semester 10
Core Course
MMB521 Project II (3, pre-req. MMB511)
In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following courses:
MMB522 Production and Operations Management (3, pre-req. MMB414)
Optional Courses
MMB516 Building and Factory Services (4)
MMB523 Industrial Engineering (4, pre-req. MMB414)
MMB525 Process Engineering II (4)
MMB526 Computational Mechanics (4)

Assessment
Except for MMB211 (Engineering Drawing), MMB411 (Engineering Design), MMB511 (Project I), MMB521 (Project II) and MMB526 (Computational Mechanics), all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.30. For MMB411 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1. For MMB211 and MMB526 the assessment mode shall be by
continuous assessment only.

**Departmental Regulations for the Combined Degree Programme**
Subject to the General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Minor in Mechanical Engineering shall apply:

**Entrance Requirements**
Applicants shall have successful registration in a Combined Major Degree Programme in Science, Engineering or Technology. Courses in Mathematics must be covered in the major subject with at least two such courses in Level 200.

**Programme Structure**
The Minor Programme shall extend over 8 semesters of full-time study and shall be part of a Combined Major in another subject. It shall consist of one subject Mechanical Engineering with courses listed below. The curriculum for Level 100 shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 21.20. In cases where a similar course appears in both the minor and the major subject, there shall be no double crediting of the course. Students should achieve a minimum of 23 credits in the Minor Subject of Mechanical Engineering.

**Level 200**
Minor in Mechanical Engineering

**Semester 3**
Core Courses
- CCB212 Statics (2)
- MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)

**Semester 4**
Core Courses
- CCB221 Engineering Materials (2)
- MMB222 Dynamics (2)

**Level 300**
Minor in Mechanical Engineering

**Semester 5**
Students shall attain a minimum of four credits from any of the following core courses:
- MMB311 Solid Mechanics (3, pre-req. CCB221)
- MMB312 Materials (2, pre-req. CCB211)
- MMB313 Mechanics of Machines (3, pre-req. MMB222)
- MMB314 Measurement and Instrumentation (2)

**Semester 6**
Students shall attain a minimum of four credits from any of the following optional courses:
- MMB322 Machine Component Design (2)
- MMB323 Thermodynamics I (3)
- MMB324 Fluid Mechanics (3)
- MMB325 Manufacturing (2)

**Level 400**
Minor in Mechanical Engineering

Students shall attain a minimum of six credits from any of the following optional courses:

**Semester 7**
- MMB411 Machine and Industrial Design (2)
- MMB421 Heat Transfer (2, pre-req. MMB323, MMB324)
- MMB413 Systems and Control Engineering I (3)
- MMB414 Engineering Management (3)
- MMB416 Mechatronics (2)
- MMB417 Thermodynamics II (2)
- MMB418 Pneumatics and Hydraulics (2)
- MMB410 Advanced Manufacturing (2)

**Assessment**
Except for MMB211 (Engineering Drawing) and MMB411 (Machine and Industrial Design) all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.30. For MMB411 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1. For MMB211 the assessment mode shall be by continuous assessment only.

**ARCHITECTURE AND PLANNING**

**YEAR 1**
Level 100

**Semester 1**
Core Courses
- ARB111 Design Communication I

**Semester 2**
Core Courses
- MAT191 Design Mathematics I

**ARB112 Building Materials & Construction I**
This course deals with building materials and their use in “fundamental” conditions, “natural” as distinct from “fabricated” materials: earth and its derivatives and wood. It does so through observation of these materials in traditional and modern buildings. The course deals with materials and process of construction and their inter-relationship in the way they are used in building. Credits: 2 Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week

Continuous assessment: 2 Tests and 2 Assignments Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

**ARB113 Traditional African Architecture**
This course concerns the genesis of Architecture in Africa as a part of African Culture. It examines architecture as a response, an expression, and a formative part of the communal and individual human habitation. This course begins with a review of African communes and villages, proceeds to the study of particular buildings within them from their origin to the present. Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week

Continuous assessment: 2 Tests and 2 Assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

**PHY 111 Physics**
Laws of reflection and refraction and applications: Mechanics Units and dimensions; Vector algebra; Kinematics; Projectiles; Newton’s laws; Work, Energy and Power; Circular motion; Torque; Vibrations and Waves.
Credits: 3
Hours per week: 3 Lectures and 3 Tutorials
Continuous assessment: 3 Tests and assignments
Final Examination: 3 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

**PHY 119 Physics Practicals 1.1**
A set of experiments to be performed in Semester 1 illustrating work done in Level 100 Physics lecture courses.
Credits: 1
Tests: 2 hours per week
Final Examination: 1 hour
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

**MAT191 Design Mathematics I**
Basic algebra, introduction to functions, trigonometry, series, complex numbers, permutations and combinations.
ARB 121 Design Communication II
This course deals with representation and abstraction in the process of communication. It deals with free-hand drawing, perspective projection, three-dimensional models as instruments of study of geometry and appearance (light) of physical form, leading to the design of a simple structure.

pre-req.: ARB111
Credits: 4
Lectures/Studio: 8 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB122 Building Materials & Construction II
This course deals with building materials and their use in "fundamental" conditions with focus on industrially produced materials: cement, concrete, glass, steel and other metals used in buildings. The course covers basic characteristics of these materials but focusing on them as construction materials.

pre-req.: ARB112
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 123 History of Art
Architecture is rooted in the search for order and the establishment of immortality. The achievement of mankind is easily assessed and then the beginning of modernism at the Renaissance. The rising figure of the individual artist and the several revolutions since lead to the confirmation of radical movements from Impressionism onwards, until today.

pre-req.: ARB113
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 Test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 124 Environment and Comfort
This course introduces (1) the range of human comfort conditions within the built environment and the effect of air, light and temperature (2) sources of the natural and artificial environmental conditions affecting the built environment including the sun, wind, precipitation, seasons, day and night, weather and climatic conditions, electricity, HVAC and (3) the building as a controlled environment. Coursework consists of lectures providing knowledge of principles to be observed in field studies and reports to document the results. Assessment will be through continuous assessment in form of essays and tests and a final examination.

pre-req.: PHY111
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

MAT 192 Design Mathematics II
Calculus, co-ordinate geometry, vectors
pre-req.: MAT191
Credits: 3
Hours per week: 3 Lectures and 3 Tutorials
Continuous Assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 3 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

GEC Courses
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills I
The course deals with language use for academic purposes including introduction to communication, factors for independent learning, note-taking and making skills, reading skills, writing skills, aspects of academic language, and interfacing between reading and writing.

Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills
The course introduces students to computer systems; equip them with basic computing skills using application packages, like word-processing and electronic communications using e-mail and internet facilities.

Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

GEC122 Computing and Information Skills II
Additional computing and information skills including advanced operating systems file management concepts, basic spread sheets, and database management facilities.

Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Year 2
Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
ARS211 Architectural Design I
The course will deal with the simplest possible enclosure – a room, a hut, through examination of the room and buildings in existing contexts, examples in the work of architects, and its design by the students. The course will apply the various types of spatial organization and basic structures in small buildings in context, and the possibilities of presentational modes of professional architecture.

pre-req.: ARB121
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARS212 Building Materials & Construction III
Students are asked to study selected buildings as case studies, analyse the use of materials and methods of construction in the building, and apply the results in their own design. Emphasis...
ARB 213 History of Architecture I
The course covers Architecture As A Development of the individual and community as inhabitants of the earth. It examines the seminal building and communal forms that emerge as the "typical" forms in this evolutionary process. Beginning with the Prehistoric, the main civilisations from Mesopotamia to Rome are examined, detailing their main aspects.
pre-req.: ARB123
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB214 Energy Efficiency In Buildings
This course deals with the following topics: Basic principles of energy efficiency, energy efficiency and sustainable development, energy efficient design (passive and active design), technologies for energy efficient building, energy efficiency policy and legislation introduction to energy management, green financing. Throughout the course, case studies and existing good practice examples will be used as a major instrument of instruction. Assessment will be through continuous assessment in form of essays and tests and a final examination.
pre-req.: ARB124
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB216 Computer Aided Drafting
Introduction to computers and two drafting tools: Arch-Cad and Auto-Cad. This course involves four lectures followed by extensive exercise and application of exercises in the use of two architectural drafting tools.
pre-req.: GEC121 and GEC122, ARB111 and ARB121
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 217 Theory of Structures I
The course combines the fundamental concepts taught in two typical courses of the civil engineering discipline, such as Statics and Strength of Materials. The emphasis is put on the behaviour of different structural forms subjected to applied forces - what is essential in developing a common ground uniting the principles of safe and economical design of any type of structural system between the architect and structural engineer.
Credits: 2
Hours per week: 2 Lectures and 2 Tutorials
Continuous Assessment: 2 Tests and at least 2 Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio = 2:3

Semester 4
Core Courses
ARB221 Architectural Design II
More advanced and institutional building types form the vehicle of instruction in this course, allied with case studies and the understanding of natural light in architecture. A full response of the selection of materials, appropriate finishes and more complex structural applications is also demanded to ensure competence at this level.
pre-req.: ARB211
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB222 Building Materials & Construction IV
Students are asked to study selected buildings, analyse the use of materials and methods of construction in the building, and apply the results in their own designs. Emphasis will be put on materials used for interior finishes: floor and wall tiling, ceilings etc.
pre-req.: ARB212
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB223 History of Architecture II
The course deals with architecture as a development of the individual and community as inhabitants of the earth and examines the seminal building and communal forms that emerge as the "typical" forms in this evolutionary process. Beginning with Early Christian architecture, the course proceeds to deal with the Middle Ages, looking at Europe, Africa and the Far East.
pre-req.: ARB213
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

CCB 217 Theory of Structures II
As a continuation of CCB217, this course develops the principles already established and relates them to more complex structural forms and methods of building in terms of such materials as timber, steel and reinforced concrete, considering simpler design examples, and exercises based on such examples.
pre-req.: CCB217
Credits: 6
Hours per week: 2 lectures and 2 Tutorials
Continuous Assessment: 2 Tests and at least 2 Assignments.
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 220 Internship I
Internship means the external placement of a student with a professional or other kind of body in order to gain the necessary experience of the profession. During the long vacation of May to July, students spend at least eight weeks undergoing this professional experience. Staffs visit the students and meet their supervisors to get a feedback on the attachment.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Duration: Minimum 8 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper/Presentation = 1/2/1

URP 207 Land Surveying and Cartography
The course introduces students to basic elements of land surveying and cartography including linear measurements, levelling and
ARB311 Architectural Design III
This course builds on the input of previous design courses with the emphasis on buildings serving the community. More advanced structural analysis and response is expected, and issues of detailed planning of site and overall organization are explored, resulting in deepening awareness of architecture in relation to current norms of professional achievement.
pre-req.: ARB221
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB312 Building Services I
This course covers building services including water supply and plumbing, drainage and waste disposal, electricity supply, lighting, communications, HVAC, fire fighting, and conveyance. Assessment will be done by essays and examination.
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB313 History of Architecture III
The Post-Renaissance period up to nineteenth century was a period of revolutions in science, technology, commerce, and politics and had a decisive shaping influence on today’s world. The achievements of the High Renaissance and the Baroque are examined and how the Enlightenment and other movements prepared the way for Modernist ideas in the early nineteenth century.
pre-req.: ARB223
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

CCB 317 Theory of Structures III
The Course begins with the basic principles of the design of steelwork connections, and tensile and compression structural elements to BS 5950. The application of those principles to design of roof trusses and spatial grid systems constitutes the main Course content. Other types of long span structures, and tensile and shell like structures are also covered, as well as roof trusses, and tensile, textile and hybrid structures.
pre-req.: CCB227
Credits: 2
Hours per week: 2 lectures and 2 Tutorials
Continuous Assessment: 2 Tests and at least 2 Assignments.
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio=2:3
Optional Courses

URP 200 Introduction To Town Planning
The Course focuses on understanding the need to plan, the emergence of modern town planning, and the foundations of town planning legislation. It also provides an insight into the organisation and administration of town planning; the Planning Process; Survey preparation and techniques of analysis, and development control. The course also highlights the role of planners in dealing with current topical problems and issues in modern day living.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests, 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

URP 202 Infrastructure Planning and Management
The aim of the course is to introduce students to aspects of planning and designing of technical infrastructure such sanitation, water supply, wastewater treatment, solid waste management, power and telecommunication planning. It covers on-site and off-site sanitation systems, storm water management, solid waste management, water demand and supply, energy and power, telecommunication, technical infrastructure layouts and financing and cost recovery issues on provision of technical infrastructure.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB322 Building Services II
Subsequent to ARB321, this course will cover a practical analysis of the requirements of a selected building type followed by design of the building services as part of the process of design. Assessment will be done by coursework.
pre-req.: ARB312
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB323 History of Architecture IV
This course deals with the rise of modern states/cities and institutions in Europe following the
Industrial Revolution and examines new building types and technology in response to these developments up to the present. Clear notions of High Modernism are followed by a treatment of Postmodernism.

pre-req.: ARB313
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB320 Internship II
Internship means the external placement of a student with a professional or other kind of body in order to gain the necessary experience of the profession. During the long vacation of May to July, students spend at least eight weeks undergoing this professional experience. Staffs visit the students and meet their supervisors to get a feedback on the attachment.

pre-req.: ARB220
Credits: 2
Duration: Minimum 8 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper/Presentation =1/2/1

ARB325 Interior Design
The course consists of extensions of the current architectural design project in the studio. Students are taught to deal with colour, light and texture as well interior arrangements and spatial qualities. Advanced awareness of issues such as the integration of structures, services and environmental control are also expected.

Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Year 4
Semester 7
Core Courses
ARB411 Architectural Design V
This course will be concerned with urban and community issues of some complexity and the development of design skills in terms of functional and environmental control systems. Possible vehicles of delivery could be an urban design complex or social housing, accompanied by building studies and/or selected exemplars incorporated in a short report to accompany drawings and model.

pre-req.: ARB321
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB412 Building Systems I
The course will introduce the detailed critical analysis of the various Building Systems and their interactive effect on the built environment in general. It will include group work studies, review of theoretical material, case studies, documentation and presentation. Assessment will be done by coursework.

Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB413 Philosophy of Architecture I
This course consists of examination of main theories of architecture since the Renaissance and exercises aimed at helping the student to develop/ refine their own position in design. Many aspects of philosophical and cultural criticism are introduced, leading to a final essay on a major topic.

pre-req.: ARB323
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Continuous assessment:
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB415 Landscape Design
This course consists of study of principles of landscape design as related to design of microclimate and ecological considerations. It is centred around lectures on land and landscape design and parallel studio exercise based closely on the context of the architectural design project in ARB411.

Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: Assessments of studio projects
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB421 Architectural Design VI
This course will treat a major building of known performance or derived brief, and of high complexity in terms of structural application, formal exploration and environmental control systems and sustainability. The brief must be fully understood and realized in the design response, and issues of contemporary theory and international norms should be addressed as well.

pre-req.: ARB411
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB422 Building Systems II
The course introduces analytical methods in architectural design by applying the knowledge of various building systems from previous courses. Students are required to produce a comparable analytical report of their own design.

pre-req.: ARB412
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB423 Philosophy of Architecture II
The course will engage with current issues of the region, and especially those of Botswana. The diversity of contemporary architecture will be explored leading to a final essay dealing with a particular building or practitioner.
ARB424 Professional Practice I
The course deals with an introduction to the common and statute law and goes into the details of contract law before concentrating on construction contracts, types of building contracts and conflict/dispute resolution.
pre-req.: LAW253
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB420 Internship III
Internship means the external placement of a student with a professional or other kind of body in order to gain the necessary experience of the profession. During the long vacation of May to July, students spend at least eight weeks undergoing this professional experience. Staffs visit the students and meet their supervisors to get a feedback on the attachment.
pre-req.: ARB320
Credits: 2
Duration: Minimum 8 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper/ Presentation =1/2/1

Optional Courses
ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment
ENV484 Urbanisation Et The Environment

For these two courses contact "The Environment Science Handbook"

Year 5
Semester 9
Level 500
Core Courses
ARB511 Design Project I
The course consists of a proposal for a project at a community scale and the design from general strategy to Preliminary design stage, accounting for massing, basic organizational strategies and other issues of relevant importance.
pre-req.: ARB421
Credits: 8
Lectures/Studio: Individual supervised research
Continuous assessment: Interim assessments of research report
Final examination: Final assessment of research report
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB514 Professional Practice II
This course deals with the following issues: Architect licensing process, techniques and rationale of marketing architectural services, market forecasting, client behaviour, office organisation and business methods applied to architecture, meeting procedures.
pre-req.: ARB424
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

CCB519 Building Economics
The course is concerned with the nature, role and organisation of the construction industry and construction project economics. The character and organisation of the construction industry in Botswana provide the starting point for a host of issues that make up design economics, leading to cost analysis, and value engineering and management.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

LAW452 Construction Law
The course offers a detailed study of construction contracts and related legal issues, such as planning and environment considerations and dispute resolutions. It is designed to familiarise students with legal concepts and issues likely to be encountered in construction and related engineering fields.
pre-req.: LAW253
Credits: 3
Lectures: 3 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 3 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Optional Courses

URP 307 Land and Property Valuation
The Course starts with an introduction to the property market, the different types of property, the organisations and individuals that require and trade in property, and the dealing methods employed. The basic characteristics of real estate and the principal factors affecting value are then considered, followed by the concept of valuing a legal interest in land, and not the property itself. The Course also examines the appropriate valuation techniques employed in assessing the open market value of property, why valuations are required and the concept of intrinsic worth. The difference between open market value (property exchange price) and worth to the individual is finally introduced.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

URP 314 Land and Property Management
This Course develops the principles of land management through the consideration of the role of the commercial, residential and industrial property estate manager, the types of organizations that own and manage property, the practical understanding of the rent review process and lease renewal process, the examination of and practical consideration of commonly drawn lease terms and finally, an understanding of the use and application of information technology.
pre-req.: URP307
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Semester 10
Core Courses
ARB521 Design Project II
This course requires the students to take the proposal in ARB511 – or using an alternative strategy depending on the student. The course requires the student to prepare and present a proposal for a final design. Students will be expected to develop performance criteria for major spaces and components for the design and to present results to a high professional degree.
pre-req.: ARB511
Credits: 8
Lectures/Studio: Individual supervised studio
Continuous assessment: Interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARBS522 Urban and Rural Design Practice
This course requires a comprehensive urban study of the project selected as the subject of ARBS521. The students will be required to prepare a comprehensive research report on possible approaches to the urban design aspects of the "thesis" project – ARBS521. The report will be illustrated with design options related to each approach and to develop a selected approach in detail.
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARBS524 Project Management
This course deals with various processes and techniques of monitoring projects: the project life cycle, project planning and control, project cost control, Work Breakdown Structures (WBS), Programme Evaluation and Review Technique (PERT), Critical Path Method (CPM).
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Optional Courses
GEC273 The State and Society (2)
(Consult Department of Political and Administrative Studies)
GEC277 Law & Society in Botswana (3)
(Consult Department of Law)

Bachelor of Science in Urban and Regional Planning Programme (URP)

Year 1
Level 100
URP Courses are not offered at this level.

Year 2
Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses

URP 200 Introduction to Town Planning
The Course focuses on understanding the need to plan, the emergence of modern town planning, and the foundations of town planning legislation. It also provides an insight into the organisation and administration of town planning: the Planning Process; Survey preparation and techniques of analysis, and development control. The course also highlights the role of planners in dealing with current topical problems and issues in modern day living.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests, 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 201 Introduction to Drawing Techniques
The Course introduces students to the art, science and techniques of planning required to communicate graphically through drawings related to layout planning, design and construction of buildings and other structures. It covers description and care and use of drawing equipments; line drawing and lettering; projections; types, layout and presentation of drawings; tracing and reproduction of drawings.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 6 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 202 Infrastructure Planning and Management
The aim of the course is to introduce students to aspects of planning and designing of technical infrastructure such sanitation, water supply, wastewater treatment, solid waste management, power and telecommunication planning. It covers on-site and off-site sanitation systems, storm water management, solid waste management, water demand and supply, energy and power, telecommunication, technical infrastructure layouts and financing and cost recovery issues on provision of technical infrastructure.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Optional Courses

URP 203 Urban and Regional Economics
This is a basic Course that introduces students to application of economic theories and concepts in urban and regional planning. Emphasis is on spatial[land use models founded on economic models. These will include for example central place theory; Agricultural location theory and industrial location theory. Various regional growth models such as sector model will be discussed. Emphasis is on how these models have actually been used in urban and regional planning. Their application internationally and nationally should be reviewed.
pre-req.: ECO111, ECO112
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 204 Planning and History of Settlements
The Course introduces students to the history and planning of urban settlements. It presents the variety of urban settlements over the course of 5000 years from the Sumerian civilisation in the 3rd millennium BC until the functionalist urban forms created by modernist in first half of the 20th century. The Course focuses on morphology of urban space; urban taught; it also presents the main environmental, socio-economic and technological aspects of the historical periods examined and attempts to analyse the current various urban forms within the historical paradigm. It explains the concept of unplanned cites that grow organically, in contrast with planned cities that were shaped following urban regulations.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 205 Environmental Planning
The course provides a clear overview and analysis of environmental factors in the formulation of
development plans and projects and helps students to understand 1) different perspectives on sustainable environmental planning and development; 2) the legal, economic, ethical and ecological foundations of environmental planning; 3) the environmental planning process; and 4) the different types of environmental planning practices and topics.

pre-req.: ENV101, ENV 102
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: tests, theoretical and practical assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 206 Urban Morphology
The course helps students to understand the structures and shapes of urban space covering physical, social, functional and ecological dimensions of a city. It explores both theoretical and practical underpinning of urban morphology helping the students to understand the complexity of urban settlement form and its constitutive functional, spatial and social elements. It is tailored to help the students to comprehend the way in which urban space is created over time highlighting on the nature and the character of city’s functionality and materiality, as well as on socio-cultural and economic context of urban space production.

pre-req.: ENV101, ENV 102
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: tests, theoretical and practical assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Semester 4
Core Courses

URP 207 Land Surveying and Cartography
The Course introduces students to basic elements of land surveying and cartography including linear measurements, levelling and cadastral surveying; making, interpretation and reproduction of maps; coordinate systems; map projections; data manipulation, classification and generalisation; profiles and land-surface forms. At the end of the course, students are expected to submit thematic atlas of a selected urban or rural area covering different aspects of a human and natural phenomena in a scale from 1:5,000 to 1:50,000.

pre-req.: URP201
Co-requisite: ARB 216 and URP 207
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 1 lecture + 3 hours practical exercises per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests and submission of thematic atlas
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 208 Site Planning
The Course aims to to introduce students to practical basic design concepts and principles used in preparing layouts and site plans for common land use activities such as residential, commercial, civic & community, industrial, recreational and mixed land uses. This includes understanding the scope of site planning, site analysis in terms of the natural, physical and social environments and user requirements and urban management in town planning. The course will be taught through lectures, practical exercises, site visits, and group work and class presentations. At the end of the course, students should be able to interpret planning projects in real time production by presenting (2) dimensional to three (3) dimensional details alongside elaborate design considerations from design rationale(s) to design briefs.

pre-req.: URP 201
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 6 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 209 Transport Planning and Management
Transportation planners are responsible for estimating where future travel will occur, by what means, and on what routes. What tools are available for planners to evaluate the future demand for travel in our communities? This course introduces the student to transportation planning and provides an understanding of transportation planning models, including travel demand models of trip generation, trip distribution, mode choice, and traffic assignment. The course will also discuss data collection processes and limitations, new approaches, and the land use and transportation interactions.

pre-req.: URP 202
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests and 2 assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 210 Planning Techniques
This Course introduces students to the type of data required in planning such as sources, how it is collected (both quantitative and qualitative, questionnaire construction, interviews, non-survey methods and rapid appraisal methods). The Course continues with data analysis using frequency distribution, measures of dispersion, and statistical techniques, followed by data presentation using cartographic techniques and lastly, the stages in writing dissertations.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 211 Internship
The purpose of this Course is to provide opportunities to make the transition from school to professional planning, by translating knowledge into effective action, through field placement. The internship component is available to all students registered in the URP Programme.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 1
Duration: Minimum 6 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper/Self Presentation = 1/2/1

Optional Courses

URP 212 GIS for Planners
The Course introduces the student to the fundamental principles of GIS and use of computerised geographic information systems (GIS), focusing on their significance for planning. The course focuses on fundamental principles of GIS and applications of GIS in planning. Students are introduced to GIS principles through lectures, exercises and demonstrations.

pre-req.: GEC121 and GEC 122
Co-requisite: ARB 216 and URP 207
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 1 lecture + 3 hours practical exercises per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 213 Globalisation and Sustainable Cities
The search for sustainable cities and debates
surrounding globalisation currently feature prominently in emerging planning discourse. The Course explores such debates under such headings as: Defining globalisation as historical transformation; Globalisation, economic and political process and the built environment; Globalisation and denationalization of the economy; Actors in the Global Project; Trans national capital, urbanization and planning; International organization as agents of globalisation in the built environment.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 301 Urbanisation And Planning

The Course explores the linkages between the urbanization processes and urban planning. Emphasis is on different interpretations of the urbanization process and how these interpretations shape planning interventions and the focus is on sub-Saharan Africa. Topics covered include: Urbanisation, Development and urban planning, Definition, demographic trends and characteristics; Problems and opportunities; Theoretical approaches to urbanisation and implications to urban planning; modernization perspective and traditional urban master planning; political economy Marxist variant and world systems perspective – the search for radical planning practice; liberal-pluralist variant - the DPU school – the search for innovative planning practice.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 302 Neighbourhood Planning

This course seeks to expand and enhance students' urban design skills and capabilities developed under URP208. While the first part of this course covers the definition, origin and other theoretical aspects of the 'neighbourhood concept', the second part focuses on the practical complexities of designing 'viable places' - places that meet users' everyday needs in an efficient, safe and convenient manner. It also covers site inventory and analysis techniques; traffic circulation and safety; and sizing and location of public, recreational and commercial facilities. At the end, each student is required to prepare a detailed plan for about 5000 -10000 inhabitants.

pre-req.: URP208
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 6 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 303 Housing Studies

The Course includes such topics as: the role of housing in local and national development, housing types, problems and transformations, factors affecting housing demand and supply; assessment of private and public sources of housing finance; issues of equity, quality, health and standards in housing, assessment of public and private housing delivery systems, rent control, subsidies, legislation, land servicing and cost recovery; self-help housing, the national housing policy.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 304 Regional Planning

This Course provides a synthesis of the science of spatial systems with the art of planning and management and focuses on the analysis of spaces, regions and locations. The Course teaches the concept of region, regional models such as growth pole theory and how to manage regional change. The Course discusses factors affecting settlement network such as: specialisation, interdependence and settlement hierarchy; environmental impacts, distribution of natural resources, jobs, populations and opportunities, as well as regional linkages, transport networks and regional infrastructure. The role of small towns in rural development and growth central pole theory and practices elaborated in Botswana National Settlement Policy, Regional Master Plans and District Settlement Strategies are also highlighted.

pre-req.: URP 203
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week

URP 305 Research Methods and Techniques

The aim of the course is to introduce students to skills required in social science research in general and physical planning in particular. It covers definition and need for research; major research approaches (objectivity, positivism, empiricism, subjectivity and postmodernism; research ethics; the generic research process (problem identification, hypothesis, theoretical frame etc.); Quantitative and qualitative data and research approaches; data collection and analysis techniques, tools and processes; and references and bibliography.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests and 1 exercise
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Optional Courses

URP 306 Remote Sensing for Planners

This Course contains two parts. In part one it introduces the interpretation of aerial photographs, stereoscopic vision, parallax, scale in aerial photographs, classification systems, etc. In part two starts with the introduction to remote sensing where focuses on hands-on display and analysis of satellite images with computer pallets and symbols; methods of Image classification; histogram techniques on image enhancement; map algebra In satellite images; multi channel study of satellite images and spectral signatures. In addition deals with techniques on satellite images correction; temporal changes in satellite images; overlaying vector to raster images; as well as principal component analysis applications in planning. Computer lab work included with available software (e.g. IDRISI, ERDAS or TM)

pre-req.: URP212
Credits: 3
Lectures/studio: 1 lecture + 3 hours practical exercises per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 307 Land and Property Valuation

The Course starts with an introduction to the property market, the different types of property, the organisations and individuals that require references and bibliography. 

Credits: 3
Lectures/studio: 6 hours per week
URP 308 Urban Land Use Planning
The course explores both theoretical and practical underpinning of urban land use planning helping the students to understand urban planning movements, the nature of different types of urban plans, their elements and the process of their preparation. At the end of the course students will be able to understand: 1) the nature of urban land, land use & land cover, land information & land use planning; 2) the process of urban land use planning; 3) the types of urban plans in international urban planning arena; and 4) the types of urban plans in Botswana and South Africa.

Pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: tests and assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 310 Planning and Environmental Law
This Course is an introduction to the principles of land tenure and security, land and property transactions, customary land tenure and Tribal Land Act, freehold, lease and fixed time grants, the Town and Country Planning Act, rent control and the estate agent, the structure, power and functions of institutions such as SHHA, BHC, VDC, Land Boards, DLUPU etc. (2-hrs lecture per week).

Pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 311 Settlement Upgrading
The Course covers definitions of unplanned, spontaneous, traditional or squatter settlements, assessment of slum clearance versus upgrading, costs and benefits of incremental versus full scale redevelopment, retention holdings versus relocation, assessment of temporary, semi-permanent and permanent developments, needs assessment, public participation and consensus building; developing and building private sector, community and public partnership in land servicing and settlement redevelopment.

Pre-req.: URP302
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 6 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 312 Dissertation: Directed Readings
Each student is required to identify a research topic which will ultimately result in a dissertation to be submitted in Semester Seven. The Course consists of guided reading on the literature and research techniques applicable and relevant to the student’s research topic.

Pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 assignments
Final examination: Final paper
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 313 Internship II
As a result of close cooperation between the DAP and the various public and private offices of planning, an internship programme has been developed for all our undergraduate students in the BSc URP Programme. Its purpose is to provide opportunities for students to assist the transition from school to professional planner, by translating knowledge into effective action, through field placement. Students are expected to get a first-hand knowledge of how to relate land use planning and transportation planning. The Course is also expected to cover transport data collection, analysis, traffic forecasting, evaluation of transportation proposals and finally transport management.

Pre-req.: URP211
Credits: 1
Duration: Minimum 6 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper/Presentation =1/2/1

Optional Courses
URP 314 Land and Property Management
This Course develops the principles of land management through the consideration of the role of the commercial, residential and industrial property estate manager, the types of organizations that own and manage property, the practical understanding of the rent review process and lease renewal process, the examination of and practical consideration of commonly drawn lease terms and finally, an understanding of the use and application of information technology.

Pre-req.: URP307
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 315 Building Technologies and Material
The course introduces planning students to basic techniques and issues in the construction of simple structures as well as factors that affect the quality and suitability of common building materials. It covers general requirements for ‘appropriate’ building materials; climatic considerations in house design, construction management; Botswana traditional building materials and techniques; ‘modern’ building materials and techniques; and building maintenance.

Pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
The objective of the course is to introduce the student to common techniques for analysis and design in transportation engineering. The course covers transportation system objectives and constraints, physical design of transportation facilities, geometric design of road cross-sections, earthworks, traffic engineering studies and traffic flow principles.

URP 403 Urban Management and Governance
The course aims to bring awareness to the fact that good urban governance can lead to better-managed cities. It is argued that good urban governance is characterised by sustainability, decentralisation, equity, efficiency, transparency and accountability, civic engagement and citizenship, and security, and that these norms are interdependent and mutually reinforcing.

URP 404 Project: Research Methodology
The course seeks to students in producing a dissertation in partial fulfilment of an award of a degree in urban and regional planning. Through the guidance of supervisors, the student will critically review the methodologies and data collection techniques that deal specifically with the topics they will have chosen for their dissertations.

URP 405 Gender and Physical Planning
The aim of the course is to introduce students to the need to consider and integrate gender dimensions in physical planning and settlement management processes. Topics covered include: definition of gender; gender roles, contracts and relationships; gendered spaces; gender inequalities in traditional and modern settlements; approaches to gender planning; gender analysis, auditing, mainstreaming and proofing in physical planning processes.

Optional Courses

URP 406 Public Participation in Physical Planning
The realization of successful physical planning depends on the levels of public participation by local communities. The course explores various conceptualization of participation in physical planning. Students will be taken through Amstein classical ladder of citizen participation to more contemporary and radical views of participation as a self-empowerment and re-discovery project. Conditions necessary for participation as well as factors that impede participation will be explored. The course draws on case studies from Sub-Saharan Africa and other developing areas.

URP 407 Planning And Social Theory
The course traces how debates in social theory shape the urban planning discipline. Emphasis is on contemporary social issues. Topics covered include theories of social action, structural Marxism, post structuralism and critical theory.

URP 408 Development Impact Assessments
This course helps students to understand a Development Impact Analysis as a process of estimating and reporting the effects of future land developments and construction. This assessment applied to large and medium size urban growths projects. This course covers different areas of development impact analysis including legal
consideration, site analysis, market analysis, environmental impact analysis, social, economic and fiscal analysis, traffic analysis, as well as shared infrastructure costs. Each impact analysis includes methods for analysis, sources of data, a preview model, and tips for analysing critique. The Course also includes a computerized model that lets students try out hypothetical proposals to see in advance what effect they might have. 

pre-req.: None  
Credits: 2  
Lectures: 2 hours per week  
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests  
Final examination: 2 hours  
CA/exam ratio: 2:3  

**URP 409 Settlement Development Planning**  
The course is focused on preparation of comprehensive physical plan for a small urban/rural settlement. Working in planning teams students will continue to play the role of planning consultant assigned in URP 401. They are expected to refine goals and objectives; review planning standards; develop land use, socio-economic, environmental and engineering projections; review planning models; develop, evaluate and select preferable planning scenarios; develop planning vision; prepare development proposals and policies; prepare detailed designs for priority action areas; prepare Impact Assessment Analysis; review plan implementation and financial requirements for the first five years of plan implementation; develop phasing, monitoring and review schedule. The expected outputs shall be in the form of the Draft and the Final planning reports. 

pre-req.: URP401  
Credits: 2  
Lectures/studio: 1+3 hours per week  
Continuous Assessment: submission of draft Planning Report and interim assessment of its chapters  
Final examination: submission and class presentation of planning reports  

**URP 410 Project Planning and Management**  
To acquire practical knowledge on planning and management skills and how to apply them in complex planning situations. The lessons include project planning process and management concepts. Project planning also exposes students to basic appraisal techniques. Practical knowledge on how to prepare spatial plans (structure plans and local plans), incorporating planning briefs and design guides is studied. The linkage has to be drawn between project planning and the implementation of the physical development plans. Methodology focusing on implementation and the management techniques are taught. Case studies are reviewed on how planning is being undertaken/approached particularly in the Sub-Saharan Africa. 

pre-req.: URP 406  
Credits: 2  
Lectures: 2 hours per week  
Continuous Assessment: tests and practical assignments  
CA/exam ratio: 2:3  

**URP 411 Project Report**  
The Course seeks to assist students in producing a dissertation in partial fulfilment of an award of a degree in urban and regional planning. Using the proposal and methodology developed in URP 404 a student will analyse the data and do the final write up of a readable report based on problem investigated (1-hr per week). 

pre-req.: URP 404  
Credits: 2  
Lectures: 2 hours per week  
Continuous Assessment: tests and practical assignments  
Final examination: 2 hours  
CA/exam ratio: 2:3  

**URP 412 Planning Negotiation and Contracting**  
The aim of this course is to offer step-by-step instructions in contracting planning consultants and in organising successful public and professional negotiation meetings in situations where we have to resolve community planning related problems using mediating and facilitating skills to bring opposing parties together. The Course is essential for every private developer, planner, public official, or land use planning consultant who deals with the public, professional bodies, governmental, parastatal, private and non-governmental organisations. In addition it helps students to understand the needs for hiring of consultants in order to supplement central/local government planning agency staff time, expertise, to ensure objectivity and credibility and to obtain a variety of skills. 

pre-req.: URP 406  
Co-requisite: URP 410  
Credits: 2  
Lectures: 2 hours per week  
Continuous Assessment: tests and assignments  
Final examination: 2 hours  
CA/exam ratio: 2:3  

**URP 413 Urban Agriculture**  
A presentation of the various aspects of the concept and practice of urban and peri-agriculture. This is followed by an examination of the practice of urban agriculture; social, economic and environmental impacts of UA; food safety and health issues and lastly, enabling strategies to take on board UA in city and municipal planning. 

pre-req.: No  
Credits: 2  
Lectures: 2 hours per week  
Continuous Assessment: 1 test and 1 assignment  
Final examination: 2 hours  
CA/exam ratio: 2:3  

**DEPARTMENT OF CIVIL ENGINEERING**  

**CBB311 Construction Technology 1 (3)**  
Structure of the instruction industry, function of construction work, site organisation and investigation, basic construction techniques, framed structures, floors, roofing systems, and stairs.

**CBB312 History of Buildings (2)**  
History of building; Study of key building structures in relevant historical stages; Significant works; Architectural heritage of Botswana.

**CBB322 Measurement And Specification I (3)**  
The course deals with the measurement of materials and labour in simple building works. It also covers areas such bill preparation and the use of computer software in the preparation of bills of quantities. Principles of Measurement: Historical development of the quantity surveying profession; the standard method of measurement; measurement conventions; manual and electronic processing of project cost data. Measurement of Simple Buildings: Measurement of building elements including foundations, brickwork, partitions, roof, floors, doors, windows and internal finishes. Bill Preparation: Purpose of Bills of Quantities; various bill formats; preparation of Bills of Quantities.
CBB323 Construction Industry Economics (2)
Basic concepts covered include nature, role and market issues of the construction industry and construction project economics.

CBB325 Information Technology in Construction Industry (2)
Introduction: Technologies and trends; Information processing; Strategic use of information technology: E-commerce and Internet; IT in Project management; Use of GIS in facility management.

CBB411 Construction Economics I (3)
Construction design economics; Cost planning and control; Cost information; Introduction to engineering economics; Value engineering and management.

Construction Technology II (3)
This course covers the following: Site Works, External Enclosure, Internal Enclosure and External Works.

CBB413 Measurement & Specification II (3)
This course covers measurement of complex building works and use of computer software in measurement.

CBB414 Building Services (2)
Water supply systems, fundamentals of drinking water supply systems, hot water supply systems, sanitary appliances and installations, drainage systems, refuse disposal.

CBB415 Health And Safety Management In Construction (2)
Introduction to health and safety on construction sites, workplace safety, protective equipment, hazardous substances, accident reporting and investigation, first aid on the site.

CBB511 Construction Economics II (2)
Property markets, Development Economics, Development appraisal, Life Cycle Costing (LCC), Construction Industry Economics.

CBB512 Construction Management I (2)
Contract’ administration; Project estimating and cost control; Project management; Human resources; Construction planning; Managing health and safety at work.

CBB513 Measurements & Specifications – Cem Works (2)
Principles of measurement; Civil Engineering Quantities; Specialist Services and Equipment; Bill preparation.

CBB515 Estimating And Tendering (3)
Estimating processes; Methods of estimating; Cost estimation; Calculation of unit rates; Tender documents; Pre-tender functions; Methods of tendering; Selection of contractor; Bidding strategy.

CBB519 Building Economics
Nature, role and market issues of the construction industry, construction project economics; Design economics, Cost planning and control, Cost information; Value engineering and management: Construction industry - Nature and organisation the of construction industry; its role and contribution to the national economy, construction industry in Botswana; its products and the present status and future within the region and national economic growth and development; Construction project economics - Requirements of various clients and their impact on the construction process; relationship between cost, time, quality and value in development projects, Construction Design economics; cost implications of design factors, construction methods and site factors, Cost information: sources and reliability of cost data, cost limits, cost indices and cost analysis, Cost planning and control: elemental and comparative cost planning, practical applications and cost control techniques; Value engineering and management.

CBB521 Contract Administration (2)
Tendering and procurement systems; Preparation of interim certificates and set-off; Variations; Final account; Delays; Claims; Insurance; Insolvency; Risk management.

CBB522 Construction Management II (2)
Contract planning; Work-study; Application of planning techniques; Project control; Benchmarking and partnering; Employment and industrial relations.

CBB523 Construction Technology III (2)
Construction plant; Formwork and false work; Maintenance; Modular co-ordination.

CBB525 Property Management and Valuation (2)
Property Valuation; Valuation Theory and Methods; Property Management Framework; Property management function.

CBB526 Construction Dispute Resolution (2)
Nature and forms of construction dispute; Procedure for arbitration & dispute resolution; Alternative dispute resolution methods.

CBB527 Facilities Management (2)
Operational Services; Assets management; Life Cycle Costing; Services; Maintenance and Feedback.

CBB211 Engineering Materials (2)
This course covers the following: Types of materials; Atomic structure; and imperfections; Mechanical and physical properties of materials; Principles of solidification and phase diagrams; Ferrous and non-ferrous alloys; Ceramic materials; Polymers; Composite materials; Wood; The environmental stability of materials; The failure in materials in stress.

CBB212 Statics (2)
This course covers the following: Introduction to statics; Force vectors; Force systems; Equilibrium; Structures; Distributed forces and moment of inertial; Friction; Virtual work.

CBB217 Theory Of Structures I
Types of structural systems - trusses, beams, frames, arches, cable roofs, plate and shell structures, masonry structures; Supports and connections: types of supports and connections of structural components; Actions, reactions and equilibrium; Loads, force systems and equilibrium. Stresses and strains: Hooke’s law, state of stress and strain at a point, principal stresses: Stress resultants, free body diagram and types of internal forces; Section properties: centroid of area, moment of inertia, parallel-axis theorem, sectional principal axes; Trusses: axial tensile and compressive forces in plane trusses; Beams: bending moments and shear forces, diagrams; Frames: bending moments, shear forces and axial forces; Stability: initial stability, instability under loads, buckling of compression members, local buckling of member thin walls.

CBB221 Strength of Materials (2)
This course covers the following basic principles: Beams; Stresses and strains; Bending; Torsion; Composite sections; Buckling.

CBB227 Theory Of Structures II
Basic principles of limit states design of steel, reinforced concrete, steel-concrete composite and...

CCB311 Geomechanics I (3)
This course is a general introduction to soil mechanics including soil formation, physical properties, soil classification, soil compaction and stress distribution.

CCB313 Surveying (3)
Basic concepts covered in this course are as follows: Distances: Tape and optical square, optical distance measurement, Electronic distance measurement, GPS measurement; Levelling concepts and applications: Types of levelling surveys, types of instruments (including digital levels), error sources, corrections, checking and adjustment, field procedures; Areas and volumes: computation from plans, co-ordinates, measurement, intersections, gradients, indivisibility, Theodolite: concepts, error sources, checking, temporary and permanent adjustment, observation procedures, booking and calculation; Use of angles: single point determination, multiple point determination, triangulation, trilateration, traversing; Tachometry: polar radiation, instrument types, free set up, plotting, total stations, demonstration of software for manipulating survey data; Setting out: buildings, sewer lines, roads. This course consists of field practicals.

CCB315 Environmental Engineering (2)
Ecology, surface water pollution and control, groundwater pollution and control, air pollution, noise pollution and environmental regulations.

CCB312 Cad for Cml Engineers (2)
Creating and maintaining cost and specification database; Design of prototypes; Mini projects in designs.

CCB314 Engineering Geology (2)
This course gives an introduction to planet Earth, including but not limited to Minerals, Rocks, Structural geology, Surface processes and soils, Groundwater systems, Natural resources, Engineering geology and environmental geology.

CCB316 Principles of Mining Engineering (2)
Mineral resources; Life-of-mine and mining cycles; Mining production optimisation; Mine design fundamentals; Ore preparation; Ancillary engineering services.

CCB317 Theory Of Structures III
The course begins with the basic principles of limit state design of steelwork connections, and tensile and compression structural elements to BS5950. The application of those principles to design of roof trusses and spatial grid systems constitutes the main course content. Other types of long span structures, and tensile and shell like structures are also covered. The course stresses reference to case studies in existing and historical buildings, and combines critical analysis of such solutions with the students’ work comprising a partial computer-aided design of large span structural system. Steelwork design to BS5950: types of connections and joints, design of bolted and welded joints with an emphasis put special grid structures, design of steel tension and compression members. Roof trusses: types and uses, design of truss members and joints. Large span spatial grid structures: flat (plate like) and curved (shell like), form-finding and design principles. Tensile, textile and hybrid structures: basic concepts and examples of existing structures.

CCB321 Structural Analysis (3)
Determinate frames; Force displacement relations; Influence lines of determinate beams; Analysis of indeterminate beams; Influence diagrams and critical load conditions; Approximate methods of frame analysis.

CCB322 Fluid Mechanics & Hydraulics (3)
Concept of real and ideal fluid; Fluid properties; Measurement instruments; Fluid at rest; Kinematics of fluid flow; Hydrodynamics; Flow through pipes; Flow through open channels; Reciprocating pumps; Centrifugal pumps.

CCB323 Construction Principles (3)
Structure of the construction industry, site organisation and investigation, basic construction techniques, ground treatment methods, framed structures, construction plant, maintenance, repair and alteration.

CCB324 Construction Materials (3)

CCB325 Geomechanics II (2)
Soil permeability and seepage analysis; Seepage pressures on structures; Piping in soils; Soil Stabilization; Soil Exploration.

CCB329 Architectural Design (2)
Architectural design principles; Design program; Site planning; Functional organisation; Room Planning; Massing.

CCB411 Structural Design (3)
Basic principles of reinforced concrete design; Section design for moment; Shear; Deflection and cracking; Simply supported and continuous beams; Slabs; Columns; Foundations; Retaining walls; Examples of design of reinforced concrete structures.

CCB412 Water Engineering (3)
Fundamentals to drinking water supply; Water demand; Water quality assessment; Water treatment.

CCB413 Traffic and Highway Engineering (3)
Geometric design; Design of off-street parking facilities; Road safety; Traffic management; Road construction materials; Earthworks and earthworks equipment; Drainage; Road construction technology; Pavement design; Highway construction; Highway maintenance and road reconstruction and rehabilitation.
procedures; Use of computer software.

**CCB414 Geotechnics (2)**
Consolidation; Shear strength; Stability of slopes; Earth pressure; Earth retaining structures; Reinforced earth.

**CCB415 CML Engineering Construction (2)**
Landreclamation techniques; Tunnel construction; Offshore Construction; Construction of concrete structures; Managing construction equipment.

**CCB416 Structural Steelwork (2)**
Steel connections; Design of steel beams; Design of steel compression members; Design of steel tension members; Steel trusses; Examples of structural steelwork design.

**CCB418 Hydrology and Water Resources (2)**
Simplified hydrologic cycle; Precipitation; Surface waters; Dams and reservoirs; Underground waters. Evapotranspiration; Water resources.

**CCB419 Engineering Surveying (2)**
Principles of setting out; Definitions; Curve Ranging.

**CCB511 Foundation Structural Engineering (2)**
Soil Formation; Index Properties of Soils; Engineering Characteristics of Soils; Various Types of Foundations. Soil Formation, Residual and Transformed Soils, Void Ratio, Porosity, Water Content, Degree of Saturation and Unit Weights of Soils; Classification Tests and Classification of Soils; Compaction and Consolidation Characteristics of Soils; Shear Strength of Soils; Bearing Capacity of Soils; Various types of Shallow and Deep Foundations. This course consists of a project proposal, written progress report and presentation.

**CCB515 Transportation Engineering (2)**
Introduction to traffic flow theory; Traffic surveys; Principles of transport analysis and forecasting; Transport planning strategies; Public transport; Transportation systems management.

**CCB516 Foundation Design (2)**
Bearing capacity of soils; Types of foundations; Shallow foundation; Deep foundation; Improving site soil for foundation use; Field tests.

**CCB517 Structural Dynamics (2)**
Oscillatory motion; Single-degree of freedom system; Resonance and related matters; Introduction to multi-degree of freedom systems; Normal mode vibration.

**CCB518 Public Health Engineering (2)**
Environmental sanitation, solid waste management and public health practice.

**CCB521–AST–ATER Engineering (2)**
Wastewater characteristics, primary treatment, secondary treatment, sludge treatment and disposal, advanced treatment and wastewater effluent disposal and reuse.

**CCB523 Timber And Pre-stressed Concrete Structures (2)**
Timber Design; Design of Beams; Wood Columns; Trusses; Building design examples; Pre-stressed concrete; Basic principles; Design of members; Loss of pre-stress; Deflections and shear.

**CCB524 Project II (3)**
This course consists of collecting, compiling, analysing data and interpreting results to write and orally present the report.

**CCB525 Advanced Transportation Engineering (2)**
Design principles of pedestrian and bicycle facilities; planning for disabled people; Geometric design of railways; Airport layout and runway design; Belt conveyor design; Transportation forecast and modelling; Transportation systems impact assessment.

**CCB526 Foundation on Problematic Soils (2)**
Expansive soils; Foundation design on expansive soils; Collapsible Soils; Foundation design in collapsible soils; Laboratory tests.

**CCB527 Construction Costs And Financial Control (2)**
Characteristics and classification of construction costs; Financial costs and expenditures; Preparation, analysis and interpretation of management information.

**CCB528 Estimating and Tendering (2)**
Estimating purposes and functions; Cost estimation; Types of estimates; Calculation of unit rates for civil engineering works; day works and prorata rates; Tendering procedures, Tender documents, Pre-tender Functions and Methods of Tendering; Selection of contractor; Bidding strategy.

**Bachelor Of Geomatics**

**CGB111 Geomatics I (4)**
Introduction to Geomatics and review of the necessary mathematics; measurements of land: plane surveying; geodesy: the scientific foundation; measurements from space: satellite positioning and navigation. Mapping and managing geographic information.

**CGB122 Survey Camp I (2)**
The survey camp covers fundamental principles of field methods; errors and field checks; optical distance measurement; trig heighting; taping; adjusting angles; levelling; traverses; horizontal circular curves; vertical curves; measuring longitudinal and cross-sections; and report writing. Emphasis is placed on practical experience. Students will be divided into groups of four or five persons.

**CGB121 Geomatics II (4)**
Introduction to survey standards and specifications; survey network design and adjustment; operational and quality control aspects of electronic distance measurement (EDM), angle measurement, trig heighting and precise levelling; introduction to satellite positioning, observation techniques and data processing; advanced positioning techniques including automated field surveying, laser levels and reflectorless total stations to capture topographic data; data processing and analysis; setting out.

**CGB211 Elements of Photogrammetry (3)**
The course aims at introducing the student to the geometry of aerial photographs, stereo photogrammetry, mapping with analogue photogrammetric instruments, analytical and digital photogrammetry.

**CGB213 Principles of Cartography (3)**
The course aims at introducing the student to the basic concepts of cartography such as reference surfaces, coordinate systems and map projections, map design and layout, topographic and thematic cartography.

**CGB221 Digital Photogrammetry (3)**
This course deals with concepts and applications of analytical photogrammetry, digital photogrammetry and satellite photogrammetry.

**CGB222 Theory of Survey Adjustment (3)**
The course aims at introducing the student to
methods of survey adjustment; linearization of equations, propagation of errors in survey measurements; least square methods; observation equations; condition equations and statistical analysis.

CGB223 Digital Cartography (3)
This course deals with digital coordinates, digital representation of cartographic data, map digitisation, coordinate systems and datums; coordinate transformation, digital elevation models, geographic data acquisition, computer-aided statistical and thematic mapping.

CGB224 Programming for Geomatics (3)
The course aims at introducing the student to object-oriented programming, activeX, networks & World Wide Web, spatial data structures, geographic software components: Open GIS specifications, MapObjects and ArcObjects.

ITB200 Industrial Training (4)
During the course of industrial training, students shall undergo 8 weeks of supervised industrial training. Students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules and regulations as applicable to the industry.

CGB311 Engineering Surveying (3)
The course aims at introducing the student to methods of data collection in engineering projects. It covers curves, route surveys, and earthworks; DTMs in engineering surveys, construction surveying, deformation surveys and application of Lasers.

CGB312 Geodesy I (3)
This course covers an introduction to geodesy, Coordinate transformations; Geodetic Astronomy; Geodetic computations and the geodetic control network in Botswana.

LAW354 Land Law for Geomatics (3)
The course aims at presenting the various laws that impact on land administration. It covers concepts of Property law, Landownership, Rights in land, Conveyancing and introducing the Various Acts on land in Botswana.

CGB321 Introduction to Land Administration (3)
The course introduces the concepts of land; spatial organization; evolution of land tenure systems and concept of property; the cadastral concept and land information systems; land tenure systems in Botswana; land registration systems; cadastral surveying systems: boundary delimitation processes; survey systems; writing legal descriptions; retracement surveys; subdivision surveys; boundary evidence and possessory rights; land reform: land redistribution, land tenure reform, and land restitution in southern Africa.

CGB322 Principles of GIS (3)
The course aims to familiarize the students with the basic concepts of GIS. It covers the basic Concepts, Data Sources, Data Capture Methods, Data Structure and models, Hardware and software Configuration, Spatial relationships, GIS Analysis Functions, GIS and Remote Sensing, and a review of GIS software.

CGB323 Satellite Positioning Systems (3)
The objective of the course is to teach the basic principles of GPS, GLONASS and Galileo as means of position using satellite methods. It introduces the historical development of the three systems, the Signal Structure, GPS positioning concepts of resection from space, Point positioning, Relative positioning, Static positioning. Kinematic positioning RTK. Surveying and other mapping applications are also introduced.

CGB324 Geodesy II (3)
This course deals with the theoretical concepts of Satellite Geodesy and their use in positioning. It introduces students to concepts of Physical Geodesy leading to geopotential models, Orthometric and Geodetic Heights.

CGB325 Survey Camp II (2)
This is a field course covering planning and logistics of survey operations, horizontal control network, cadastral survey design; DTM modelling, precise engineering surveys, GPS surveys; production of final plan(s) using Geomatics software and report writing.

ITB300 Industrial Training (4)
After level 300, students shall further undergo 8 weeks of supervised industrial training. Students shall also be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules and regulations as applicable to the industry.

CGB413 Advanced Land Administration (3)
The course introduces modern issues in land tenure, land policy, land management and administration; survey law and practice: a profession for the 21st century; land information management: principles and applications. The role of property systems in land management, natural resource management, and parcel-based information systems. Comparative analysis of land tenure, land reform, and land administration systems.

CGB415 Advanced Cartographic Visualisation (3)
The course aims at introducing cartographic visualisation techniques. The course content will include cartographic visualisation processes; different visualisation strategies in Geospatial Data infrastructures; exploratory cartography using the intranet and WWW; Web Map Design and Multimedia.

CGB416 GIS Design and Implementation (3)
The course aims at teaching student how to design and implement a GIS system. The course content includes analysis of requirement; system planning and specifications; implementation of system; Legal and Policy issues.

CGB417 – Digital Image Processing (3)
The course is designed to introduce digital image processing concepts with specific reference to Remote Sensing data. It covers the basic concepts of Digital Image, Source of data, Data formats; Image Pre-processing; Image Enhancement; Information Extraction; Image Processing System Considerations.

CGB418 Principles and Practice of SDI Development (3)
This course introduces the principles and practice of implementing national spatial data infrastructures, challenges and opportunities for developing NSDI.

CGB 422 Cadastral Surveying Practice (3)
The course aims at preparing the students to have sound knowledge of the legal and technical requirements for making a cadastral survey. The course content includes cadastral surveying; methods of performing cadastral surveys; role of a land surveyor in resolving boundary disputes and as an expert witness; cadastral surveying computations; cadastral layout design and implementation; Land Survey Act and regulations; Sectional Titles Act and regulations; Tribal Land Act and regulations; Town and Country Planning Act and regulations; Deeds Registry Act and regulations; Survey of mining leases.

CGB423 GIS Applications (3)
The course aims at familiarizing the students with
various real life applications of GIS. The content includes guided study topics in the following fields: Topographic Mapping, Environment, Forestry, Biology, Geology, Mining, Utilities, AM/FM Systems, LIS, GIS in developing countries. Other relevant application areas can be discussed here and will depend on student interest.

CGB424 Special Studies in Land Administration (3)
The course introduces the concepts of land management and land administration from economic and institutional perspectives; evolving concepts of property and land tenure systems; Design, implementation, monitoring and evaluation of land reforms; Post-settlement support interventions.

CGB414 Remote Sensing Applications (3)
The course aims at familiarizing the students with various mapping applications of remote sensing. The course content will include guided study of various applications of remote sensing such as earth science, agriculture and land use and water resources.

CGB425 Location Based Services (3)
The objective of the course is to present the use of mobile technology to the students as possible utility in both field and office automation in a survey practice. The course synopsis covers Introduction to LBS, Databases, Linear referencing, and Data transmission.

(Mining Engineering courses offered in the junior years at UB)

MINN 211 Introduction to Mining Engineering

MINN 221 – Introduction to Mine Safety & Health
Health and safety issues in mining: common mining hazards relating to machinery, electricity, explosives and non-explosive gas and dust, radiation, heat and humidity; diesel exhausts; mine ventilation; noise; illumination; elements of safe working environment; hazardous materials. Hazards, accidents & emergencies: hazard control. Fires: Fire types, causes and effects, firefighting techniques.

MIN311 Introduction to Mine Surveying

MIN 312 Introduction to Geology
Introduction to the planet Earth: earth’s structure, the role of plate tectonics in geological systems and processes, the evolution of continental and oceanic basins, geological time. Minerals, rocks and soils: crystallography, crystal chemistry and crystal properties of the main rock forming minerals; characteristics, formation, identification and classification of igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic rocks; weathering processes. Structural geology: primary structures, mechanical principles of brittle and ductile rock deformation; the recognition, characterisation and interpretation of common structural types.

MIN 313 Introduction to Mineral Processing
Review of physical and chemical principles: review of the properties of minerals that are of use in mineral processing unit operations; Principles of liberation, concentration and separation: Comminution methods, crushing and grinding. Ore handling and sampling: Screening and particle size analysis. Classification: separation by gravity concentration (including dense medium separation), flotation, electrostatic and magnetic methods; Coal preparation technology: washing, briquetting. Slimes: the production, effect and treatment of slimes including thickeners and filters. Water use and recovery in mineral processing: Calculations of plant efficiency.

MIN 314 Computer Applications in Mining

MIN315 Small Scale Mining
Botswana Mining Law: provisions of the Mines and Minerals Act as it relates to mineral rights acquisitions and the various permits and licences will be introduced. Appropriate technologies for the artisanal miner; The business plan: The basic concept and development of the business plan; elements of a bankable feasibility study. Mine financing and the time value of money: Safety and health in small-scale mining: issues of safety and health facing the small-scale miner, special problems and possible solutions. Specific applications: panning, quarrying; basic metallurgical treatment, including leaching.

MIN 316 Elements of Mining Environmental Management

MIN 321 Elements of Mining Methods
Deciding on a mining method: geological factors, economic factors; advantages and disadvantages of surface and underground mining. Surface mining methods: open pit operations; open cast coal mining; comparison of surface mining methods. Underground mining methods: unsupported and supported mining, back-fill methods; caving methods; comparison of underground mining methods. Quarrying methods: sand and aggregate production; dimension stone extraction.
MIN 322 Elements of Mine Safety and Health
General hazards in the mining industry: identification and control of hazards; safe handling, transportation and storage of hazardous materials. Mine safety and health: mine rescue, emergency evacuation procedures and escape routes; emergency management; machine guarding; the types of protective equipment, their usage and limitations. Accidents: theory and principles of accident prevention; accident reporting, investigation and analysis. Inspection procedures: review of standard auditing systems, e.g. NOSA. Emergency preparedness: causes and effects of emergencies; escape routes; drills; teams. Fire: fires types, causes and effects; special instances of underground fires; fire-fighting techniques.

MIN 323 Elements of Mine Ventilation
The fundamentals of airflow: introduction to fluid dynamics as it relates to ventilation, total pressure components and pressure losses; pressure measurement and surveying techniques; gas laws; airflow measurement. Basic fan engineering: fan construction, characteristics and selection; regulation and control of ventilation. Atmospheric contaminants: the properties, origins and effect of dust and gases in mines; radiation; concepts of threshold values for hazardous substances; basic treatment procedures for exposure to contaminants; sampling methods; statutory requirements. Air conditioning: fundamentals of heat transfer; heat measurement and human heat stress; refrigeration technology; physiological effects of heat and humidity.

MIN 324 Botswana Mining Legislation

MIN 325 - Introduction to Mine Supervision & Management
Effective communication in the workplace: basic communication theory; effective communication including meetings; communication technologies. Human resource management: selection and placement of staff, job analysis and performance appraisal; training and human resource development. Principles of supervision and management: characteristics of an effective supervisor, leadership styles and organisational control. Project management skills: defining, planning, implementing and completing projects; time management. Industrial relations: stakeholders including unions, employers, employer associations and the role of the State; employer-employee relations; worker compensation; industrial action; conflict management, delegation, motivation.

MIN 326 Mine Surveying
Review of plane surveying methods. Operational surveying: characteristics of surface and underground mine surveying tasks, horizontal and vertical curves, area and volume calculation, stockpile measurement, survey requirements of civil construction including dams, roads, transportation systems and service positioning. Surface and Underground traversing: double angle, azimuth and compass traverses, distance measurement in traversing, detailing boundaries of mine workings, steeply incline lines, side telescope calculations, traverse calculation, corrections and reduction. Preparation of Maps and Sections: field notes, manual and computer calculations, drawing plans and sections, working plans.

DEPARTMENT OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC ENGINEERING
Level 300 Semester 5
EEEB311 Network Theory
Review of Circuit laws and theorems; Network topology; Time and frequency domain analysis; Three phase circuits; Computer simulation; Two-port networks; Application of Fourier Analysis to electrical networks; Application of Laplace transforms methods in electrical networks; Network functions; Active and passive filter theory and design; Synthesis of two-element type one port networks; State-variable analysis.

EEEB315 Computer Programming
Algorithms and Flowcharting, Program Structure, Data types, Data Input and Output, Control constructs, Subprograms, User-Defined data and Arrays, Records, Files, Introduction to Object-oriented programming.

EEEB316 Electrical Measurements & Instrumentation I
Standards, Units and Measurement Errors, Deflection Instruments, Measurement Methods, DC Potentiometer and Bridge Measurements, AC Potentiometer and Bridge Measurements.

EEEB317 Principles of Telecommunications
Receivers, Transmitters, Noise in Analogue Communications Systems.

MAT 391 Engineering Mathematics III
Vector Analysis, numerical solution of differential equations, Fourier series representation of periodic functions.

Level 300 Courses Semester 6
MAT392 Engineering Mathematics IV
Laplace transforms, Partial differential equations and Complex analysis.

EEEB321 Digital Electronics I
The basic logic functions; Derived logic functions; Boolean Algebra; Minimization techniques; NAND and NOR gates Universal function; Number Systems; Signed numbers; Arithmetic circuits; Combinational Circuits with MSI devices; Integrated Circuit Technologies; Digital to Analogue and Analogue to Digital Converters; Sequential Circuits.

EEEB322 Analogue Electronics
Diode semiconductor theory; Diode applications & circuits; Bipolar Junction Transistor (BJT); Field Effect Transistors (FET); Transistor Small Signal Amplifiers; Amplifier Frequency Response; Feedback.

EEEB326 Electrical Machines I

EEEB327 Electromagnetic Field Theory
Introductory Vector Analysis; Electrostatics; Magnetostatics; Waves and Applications.
Level 400
Semester 7
EEB418 Control Theory I
Introduction to control systems; System analogies; Mathematical representation; Controllers; Time domain analysis; System stability

MMB414 Engineering Management
This is an introductory course to management science and engineering economics covering management theory, social responsibility of an industrial engineer, health safety, engineering project appraisal, financial control systems, and impact of information technology on organisations.

EEB411 Electronic Devices and Circuits
Operational Amplifiers theory; Op-amp circuits; Positive feedback; Power Amplifiers; Power devices; converters and inverters, Optoelectronic devices, analogue filters.

EEB412 Digital Electronics II
Combinational circuits; Sequential circuits; Shift Register circuits and operation; Application Specific Integrated Circuits (ASICs).

EEB413 Power Generation and Distribution
Transmission Lines; Power generation; Power control; Distributors; Distribution equipment; Supply irregularities.

EEB414 Electrical Machines II

EEB415 Digital Communications and Telephony

EEB416 Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation II
Electronic Instruments, Oscilloscope measurements, Calibration of Instruments, Transducers, Signal Conditioning

EEB417 Microprocessor Based Systems
Microprocessor based system components; Microprocessor Instruction and Programming; Microprocessor Applications

Level 400
Semester 8
ITB420 Industrial Training II
Structure and layout of the organization; All/selected topics from: Office/site organisation and layout; purchasing and warehousing; manufacture, fabrication and assembly; building and construction; costing, estimating and tendering; operations; maintenance; plant erection, installation and testing, information system/design studio, involvement in small design assignments and projects.

Level 500
Semester 9
EEB511 Control Theory II
State-space models of linear systems; Solution of state equations; Digital control systems; Discrete-time systems stability analysis; Non-linear systems

EEB512 Digital Signal Processing I
Types of Signals; Time Domain Analysis; Frequency Domain Analysis; Z-Transform; Design of Non-recursive Digital Filter; Design of Recursive Digital Filter.

EEB513 Analogue Electronic System Design
Approximate Diode Models; BJT Small-Signal Amplifiers; Large-Signal Amplifiers; Operational Amplifiers; Compensation Amplifier Systems; Oscillator and Timing Circuits; Power Supply Circuits; Electronic Equipment Reliability and Fault Diagnosis.

EEB514 Process Instrumentation
Analog/digital signal conditioning and measurement; Optical measurements; Measurements of process parameters; Analytical Measurements; Control valves and actuators; Instrumentation systems; Smart/intelligent transducer systems

EEB515 Power Systems Analysis

EEB516 Power Electronics
Rectifier circuits; Thyristor circuits and controls; Converters; Inverters, Filters.

EEB517 Computer-Aided Electrical Machine Analysis

EEB518 Guided Electromagnetic Waves
Microwave Transmission Lines; Microwave Waveguides; Passive Microwave Devices; Active Microwave Devices; Introduction to Optical Fibres.

EEB519 Computer Architecture and Design
Design methodology; ALU design; Memory organization and design; Control organization and design; RISC processing and pipelining.

EEB520 Project (Stage I)
Selection of project type, its area and scope. Defining the problem and working out a scheduled action plan. Knowledge and technical data retrieval form relevant literature and other information sources, date analysis. Working out project methodology. Project pre-design. Acquiring the required materials, software and instrumentation (for experimental studies). Alternatively it may include preliminary data collection at an industrial plant. Writing a literature overview and a progress report. Project presentation.

Level 500
Semester 10
EEB510 Project (Stage II)
This is the continuation of the course EEB510

EEB522 Digital Signal Processing II
Filters derived from analogue designs; Fourier Transform; FFT Processing; Adaptive Filtering; Hardware Implementation of Digital Filters; DSP applications to Communications; DSP applications in Multi-Media

EEB523 Digital Electronic System Design
Course Synopsis:
Programmable Devices; Finite State Machines; System Design Using Programmable devices. Asynchronous Circuits. Reed-Muller algebraic description.

EEB524 Process Control Systems
Process control principles; Techniques for process control; Controllers; Computer Control systems; Control Communications; Statistical process and quality control systems (SPC-SQP); Expert Systems

EEB525 Power Systems Analysis
breakers. Power transients

EEB526 Electrical Machines and Drives

EEB527 Computer–Aided Power Systems Analysis

EEB528 Antennas and Propagation
Fundamental parameters of Antennas; Radiation Integrals and Potential Functions; Linear Wire Antennas; Loop Antennas; Array Antennas; Horn Antennas; Reflector Antennas; Propagation of Electromagnetic waves in Infinite Media. Radar Systems.

EEB529 Computer Networks
Network architecture and topology, ISO reference model, Network layer for point-to-point networks, Wide Area Network, Internetworking concept and architecture model, Internet.

Higher Diploma Courses Synopsis

Level 100

Semester 1

EEH111 Circuit Theory
Circuit laws and Theorems; Circuit Analysis Techniques; Time Domain Analysis; Frequency Domain Circuit Analysis.

EEH112 Analogue Electronics
Diodes; Small Signal Models; Small Signal Amplifiers; Amplifier Frequency Response; Power Amplifiers; Negative Feedback; Operational Amplifiers; Positive Feedback; D.C. Power Supplies; Digital to Analogue Conversion; Analogue to Digital Converters.

EEH113 Measurement and Instrumentation
Electrical Measurements; Power Measurements; Measurement of R,L,C; Digital Measurement of Frequency; Optical Sensors; Temperature Measurement; Pressure Measurement; Motion Measurement.

EEH114 Computer Aided Electrical Drafting
Electrical standards, Electrical and electronic diagrams, 2D drawings, 3D drawings, modification commands, Dimensioning, Custom drawings, Sectioning and hatching, Drawings, Plotting techniques; Auto LISP.

SMH111: Mathematics 1
Matrices and determinants, solution of nonlinear equations, differentiation and applications, partial differentiation, Statistical analysis.

Level 100 Courses

Semester 2

EEH129 Mathematics II

EEH121 Network Theory
Waveform Analysis; Poly phase Circuits; Passive two-port Network; Laplace Transforms and Inverse Transforms; Network Response, Introduction to Computer Methods of Network Analysis.

EEH122 Digital Electronics
Combination Logic MSI Devices; Sequential Logic; Design/Analysis of Moore/Mealy Synchronous State Machines. Digital-to-Analogue (D/A) converters. Analogue-to-Digital (A/D) converters.

EEH124 Electromagnetic Field Theory
Vector Analysis; Electrostatics; Magnetostatics; Time Varying Fields.

EEH123 Computer Programming
Introduction to programming; Program Structures; Data Types, Constants and Variables; Procedures; Functions; Control Structures; Strings and Arrays; Text input and output.

EEH125 Electrical machines 1
DC machines; Transformers; Three-phase Induction Motors.

Level 200 Courses

Semester 3

EEH211 Control Theory
Open-Closed Loop Control; Modes of Control; Mathematical Representations; Block Diagram, System Representation, Transfer Function, Controllers; Responses of 1, 2, 3 term Controllers; Controller Responses; Multi-loop Control; Stability; Non-Linear Behavior.

EEH212 Fundamentals of Computer Networks
Introduction to computer networks and protocols, ISO Open System Interconnection Model, Physical Layer, Data-link layer, Local Area Networks, Wide Area Networks.

EEH213 Process Instrumentation
Signal Conditioning and Transmission; Flow measurement; Level measurement; Analytical measurement; Machine Control Instrumentation; Instrumentation Engineering.

EEH214 Analogue and Digital Communication
Introduction to Communication Systems; Electrical Noise; Amplitude Modulation; Angle Modulation; Pulse Modulation; Digital/Communication Systems; Communication Links; Digital Communications, Information Theory and Coding.

EEH215 Troubleshooting Digital Systems
Testability; Tests and Specifications; Troubleshooting Instruments and Equipment; Basic Digital Troubleshooting Tools; Advanced Troubleshooting Tools – Logic Analyzer, Troubleshooting Fundamentals; Digital Circuit Fault Analysis; Combinational, Sequential and Microprocessor-based System Testing Problems.

EEH216 Electrical Machines II
Single-phase Induction Motors; Synchronous Machines.

EEH217 Power Transmission and Distribution
Overhead Lines; Corona; Underground Cables; Three-phase Power Transformers; Distribution Systems.

EEH218 Power Electronics
Power Control Semiconductor Switches; Phase Controlled Rectifiers and Inverters D.C. Chopper Circuits.

EEH 219 Electrical Power Productions

Level 200 Courses

Semester 4

EEH222 I Project
Project proposal, written report, presentation.

EEH 222 Electrical Maintenance and Repair
Record and stock keeping; Maintenance and Supervision; Testing and Commissioning; Trouble-shooting and emergency repair; Mechanical maintenance.
EEH 223: Motor Drive Applications
AC Voltage Controllers; Variable Voltage Frequency Converters; Motor Drive Applications.

EEH 224 Computer Engineering
Organization of modern digital computers, Arithmetic Unit, Memory Hierarchy, Memory management Systems, Input/Output Devices, Parallel and Serial I/O, Processor Modes of operation and Scheduling, Troubleshooting.

EEH 225 Process Control Systems
Introduction to Physical Processes; Discrete State Process Control; Control Systems; Control Strategies; Final Control Elements.

EEH 226 RF Transmission and Propagation
Transmission Lines; Microwave waveguides; Active Microwave Devices; Optic Fibres; Propagation of Waves; Antennas.

EEH 227 Audio Visual Engineering
Analogue Audio Parameters and Measurements Techniques; Microphones and Amplifiers; Microphone and Loudspeaker Systems; Digital Audio; Noise Reduction Systems; Television.

EEH 228 Power System Protection
Power system faults. Instrument Transformers, Relays, Fuses, Circuit Breakers. Over current Protection, Differential Protection, Distance Protection, Impedance protection, Pilot Protection In addition to the above, the department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering also offers the following General Education Courses (GEC)

GEC255 Electrical Energy and Rural Development (2 credits)
GEC354 Domestic Use of Electrical Energy (2 Credits)
GEC355 Telecommunications and Society (2 Credits)

DEPARTMENT OF INDUSTRIAL DESIGN AND TECHNOLOGY

DTB210 Elements Of Design (3)
This course covers the following: Design processes; Methods of searching ideas; Analysing and designing simple elements; Marketing and design – qualitative and quantitative market surveys; Manufacturing and design; Purchasing and design; Product evaluation. (2-hrs lecture, 2-hrs tutorial per week)

DTB211 Workshop Technology I (2)
This course covers the following: Structure of materials; Plastics: thermoplastics and thermosetting; Wood: natural and man-made; Metals: pure and alloys; Testing, Measuring and Marking out; Common hand tools and their use for wasting processes; Finishing processes. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB220 Designing Artefacts (3)
This course covers the following: Market research; Analysis of existing designs: Critical appraisals; Value addition; Graphical, mathematical and physical modelling; Design brief; Brainstorming: group discussion and overcoming mind blocks; Alternative solutions; Design folio and diary; Employing manufacturing techniques; Evaluating the artefact. (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 4-hrs practical per week)

DTB221 Workshop Technology II(2)
Joining processes: Welding, soldering and brazing; Plastic welding; Fasteners; Casting processes; Forming processes: forge working, extrusion, drawing and rolling, vacuum forming, bending, injection moulding and blow moulding; Machining: Heat Treatment Processes; Finishing. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

DTB222 Graphics (2)
This course covers the following: Materials and equipment; freehand sketching; three-dimensional drawing; perspective drawing; rendering colour; working drawings; presenting information; shape and form; colour; Advertising: logos and trademarks, packaging, display and exhibition design; Computer inputs and outputs: computer art, computer aided modelling: (1-hr lecture, 4-hrs practical per week)

DTB300 Industrial Training (3)
This course covers the following: Relationship between education, industry and society; Types of industries and production systems; Organisation and management strategies; Impact of mass production on society and environment: Culture, work ethics and discipline in industries; Role of labour organisation; Effects of technology changes on employment; Students will also complete a 7-week Industrial Training. (Vacation Course)

DTB310 Design, Technology and Society (2)
This course covers the following: Cultural Influences; Environmental Issues – pollution, waste disposal, recycling; Economic influences on design and manufacturing; Case Studies; Contemporary Design Issues. Conservation of natural resources: Obsolescence; The role of the designer in industry: (2-hrs lecture per week)

DTB312 Aesthetics (2)
This course covers the following: Philosophical basis of aesthetics; Visual and tactical impact; Styling products; Balance and symmetry; Colour combinations and appeal; Harmonious and complimentary colours; The Golden Mean and the Fibonacci series; Environmental synergy; Analysis of existing products vis-a-vis aesthetics. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB313 Ergonomics (2)
This course covers the following: General principles and dimensions of ergonomics; Anthropometrics: Body size and human diversity, human reach and use of anthropometric data, and the need for personal space; Muscular work, occupational stress and fatigue: Means of ensuring stress free environment; Time and motion study for some tasks; Mental activity, boredom and efficiency considerations; Design of workplace and utilization of space; Workstations for computers, driving, office, industry and domestic purposes. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB314 Materials Processing (3)
This course is a comparative study of different wasting techniques, covering the following: fabrication techniques for wooden structures; tolerances and fits for assemblies; selection of joints; Silver Soldering; Forming techniques; Plastics fabrication processes; Die casting; Model making techniques and tools for different materials. (1-hr lecture, 4-hrs practical per week)

DTB315 Internet For Designers (2)
This course is an introduction to Internet and Intranets structures. Course contents include: Setting up Internet; Search engines; Surfing the web; Use of multimedia tools; Interactive web sites and exchange of information; Creating and editing HTML documents; Creation of web sites; Alternative web designs; Design on an interactive web site. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB317 Textile and Leather Technology (2)
This course covers the following: Properties of textile materials; Classification; Selection; Properties of leathers; Dying and tanning; Design of articles; Cutting, joining and finishing
This course covers the following: Input process-output for pneumatics systems; Closed-loop control and feedback; Basic fluid mechanics: Incompressible flow; Pressure transmission and types of pneumatic systems: Elements of pneumatic systems and control circuits: Compressed air-supply; Steps in conditioning filters, moisture removal, and lubricant addition; Operation and application of pneumatic components. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB324 Product Analysis (3)
This course covers the following: Analyzing the need and functions of a variety of products and critique on their design; Value analysis; Identifying the component/function relationship and material characteristics; Product function analysis; Studies on several existing industrial and domestic designs; Field visits and studies. (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB410 Computer Based Manufacturing (2)
This course covers fundamental concepts of computerized manufacturing: Computer modelling for manufacture; CNC machine tools including lathes, multi axis machines and special machines; Programming semi industrial CNC machines and manufacturing simple components; Introduction to computer integrated manufacture for mass production. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB411 Hydraulic Controls (2)
This course covers the following: Basic hydrostatics; Forces on submerged bodies; Piezometric head; Manometers; Applications of hydrostatics: Bernoulli’s equation applied to incompressible flow; Reaction forces; Momentum and moment of momentum principles: Fluid control circuits and systems; Fluid logic devices: Principles of hydraulic devices. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB412 Product Design 1 (3)
This course covers the following: Types of products with alternative structures: Structures, equilibrium and Pin-jointed structures; Types of mechanisms: Products with transmission of motion and forces; Change of type of motion; Lifting machines and their efficiency; Factor of safety in design. (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB413 Special Human Needs (2)
This course covers the following: Maslow’s hierarchy of needs; Design in the context of special human need; Basic principles of ergonomics and anthropometrics for special human needs; Anthropometrics data collection, analysis and application; Design, detail, make, test and evaluate the Product Design. Client involvement and evaluation: (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB414 School DTcF Projects (2)
This course covers the following: Factors to be considered and classification of projects by levels and difficulty index; Formulation of project tasks and detailing of learning events; Alternative methods of project supervision and their comparison; Role-playing; Motivation and incentives. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB415 Design For Sustainable Development (2)
The course covers the following: the relation between Design and Sustainable Development, various models of Development, and the relation between Design, Technology, Development and Economics. Community products in the rural context: Field visits; Design for durability; Use of indigenous materials; appropriate technology; Sound social and ecological design; Design for lifelong use and serviceability; Design for recycling and evolution; Miniaturisation; Dematerialisation; Design for re-use and re-manufacture, new theories on Design for Sustainable Development. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB421 Ceramics, Glass and Stone Technology (2)
This course covers the following: Equipment and tools: Clay and its properties; Natural ceramics: Working properties of ceramics; Shaping clay, Firing, and Glazing: Making glass: Working properties of glass; Engraving, Painting, Heat forming. Staining. Working properties of stone. Carving. Masonry. (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB422 Product Design 2 (2)

DTB423 Minor Design-and-Make Project (2)
This course guides students through the process of a design and make project from the initial stage of choosing an appropriate, through selection of what research to undertake, selection of appropriate forms of modelling ideas, selection of appropriate means of realisation and objective product evaluation: (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB424 Safety and First Aid (2)
This course covers the following: Safety rules; Safety practices; Safety symbols and their interpretations; Causes and types of accidents in the workplace; Methods of giving First Aid to different cases of accident/injuries; First Aid and personal safety; First aid demonstrations and certification by the Red Cross Society of Botswana. (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB511 Major Design Project (3)
Students will proceed by way of their preferred design methodologies by conceiving alternative solutions, designing, selection of appropriate process, research, data analysis, etc. Students will select appropriate forms of modelling ideas and present a design folio at the completion of the course. (1-hr lecture, 4-hrs practical per week)
DTB513 Product Design 3 (2)
This course covers the following: Psychology of creativity; Brain maps and lateral thinking for alternative solutions; Properties of newer materials, processes and advantages in terms of cost, etc.; Design Protection: Patent law, Design registration. Copyright, Design right, Trademarks, Brand names, Company symbols, logotypes and ‘Passing off’ (2-hrs lecture, 1-hr tutorial per week)

DTB514 Industrial Product Design (2)
This course covers the following: Product and process design, Product development, Integrated product development, Product development teams, quality control, Production system design, Design for mass production, Mass-customisation, Performance design, Technical parameters of products. (2-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial per week)

DTB515 Microcomputer Control (2)
This course covers the following: Computer systems and control (e.g. control sensors); motorised control system (e.g. Stepper and DC electric motors); Pneumatics as control system; analogue to digital conversion; microprocessor and micro controller systems (e.g. PIC 16F84 or STAMP controller); system design and development tools (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB521 Major ‘Make and Evaluate’ Project (3)
Realisation of the designed artefact: Selection of appropriate means of manufacturing and finishing; Incorporating necessary design modifications; Product evaluation by revisiting the need and the consumer; Completion of the ‘Design folio’ to include manufacturing aspects and product evaluation. (6-hrs practical per week)

DTB522 Case Studies in Designing (2)
Critique of several cases with design problems: Problems encountered in manufacturing; Maintainability and meeting the desired functional; Safety and quality standards; Improving designs and conceiving newer designs. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB524 Environmental Factors In Design (2)
This course covers the following: Human environment, Factors influencing environment, the nature of pollution: Population growth with automation and new materials. Human waste and disposal: Industrial pollution and control: Effects of new materials and processes on environment. Global aspects and control of environment. Designing for environment friendliness: (2-hr lecture)

IDB311 Industrial Design: Concept and Practice (2)
Origins of Industrial Design, Practicing Industrial Design, Design Consultancy, Freelance Practice, In-house Designer, Industrial Design theory and practice, Industrial Design in relation to other professions, Industrial Design in relation to other bodies of knowledge. A critique of the role of Industrial Design in the following type of companies: home appliances, home-wait, toys, recreational products, interior products, medical and health care, furniture, transport, computers, product package, exhibition design, signage systems, product graphics, presentation techniques and applied photography. Strategies for successful design practice. (2-hr lecture per week)

IDB312 Design of Mechanism and Structures
Analysis and design of products with regard to different types of pin-jointed plane and space structures and equilibrium. Types of loading and forces in members. Factor of safety in design and its selection criteria. Types of motion and basic mechanisms for products. Function and design aspects of different elements in products, e.g., levers, shafts, pulleys, threaded elements, helical springs, belt and rope drive, coupling, slider, chain, ratchet, brake and clutch. Design of bell crank lever and toggle mechanism. Design of linear, rotary and rocking motion linkages. Cam and follower mechanisms. Design of simple lifting machines and their characteristics. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB313 History of Industrial Design (2)
This course explores, intellectual and philosophical framework that have shaped design, the relationship of design to the wider patterns of production and consumption, the effects of changes in materials and technology on the form and material culture, development of the design profession and design education, and the major design styles in history, design paradigms, The Bauhaus Movement, Modernism, Post-modernism, relation between design and technological and socio-economic change, Industrial design as a mirror of social and economic changes. (1-hr lecture per week)

IDB 321 Computer Aided 3-D Design (2)
Role of CAD in Industrial Design. Fundamentals of CAD, CAD software and operating systems, workstation environment, data storage and input devices, data exchange standards, graphic processors, graphic terminals, 2D and 3D graphic elements, 2D and 3D translation, hidden line algorithms, mass property algorithm. Wireframe modelling, solid modelling, constructive solid geometry, surface modelling, methods of surface construction, surface of revolution. Overview of rapid prototyping, virtual reality. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 322 Product Design (2)
Product Design models; total design method versus partial design method, concurrent versus linear and cyclic methods, techniques of decoding the brief, concept generation, concept selection procedures, concept refinement, product architecture, concept synthesis techniques, product systematisation, quality control, determinants of design specification, production system design, performance design, Designing ornamental products versus designing technical products, functionalist design versus form dominated design, form follows function dictum, product styling techniques, product semantics theory. Man-machine interface design, product interactivity, design for the client versus design for users, design for mass production, design for manual assembly, design for automatic assembly. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 323 Basic Control Systems (2)

IDB 324 Ceramics, Glass and Stone Technology (2)
Equipment and tools, Clay and its properties,
Natural ceramics, Working properties of ceramics, Shaping clay, Firing, Glazing, Equipment and tools, Making glass, Working properties of glass, Engraving, Painting, Heat forming, Staining, Equipment and tools, Working properties of stone, Carving. Masonry, Computers in ceramics, glass and stone technology, Design and manufacture of articles appropriate to ceramics, glass and stone. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 411 Computer Aided Manufacturing (2)

IDB 412 Research Methods in Industrial Design (2)
Research Methodology, choosing a topic, fact finding, assessment of information, problem definition and bounding, problem solving, project planning, forecasting and report writing, major research library and especially its resources such as abstracts, indices, computer databases, problem solving (synetics, brainstorming). Research methods for practical design problems, users needs analysis, focus groups, experimental research, observation techniques, product usability evaluation techniques, practice-based research, research through design. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr Tutorials per week)

IDB 413 Minor Project (3)
Selection of the process which is appropriate to the type of project, selection of what research to undertake, selection of appropriate forms of modelling ideas, selection of appropriate means of realisation, objective product evaluation. Application of design concepts to identified problems and rationalisation and justification of selected design intervention approach vis-à-vis various possible alternatives. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)

IDB 414 Eco–product Design (2)

IDB 415 Universal Design (2)
Universal Design Principles, Universal Design and inclusiveness, usability, equitable use, design for people of all ages and abilities, barrier free design, Design for flexibility in use, simple and intuitive use, perceptible information, tolerance for error, design for low physical effort, size and space for approach and use, trans–generational design strategies, design for the ageing methods, design for the disabled strategies, usability principles. Universal design assessment and checklist, usability assessment methods and checklist, analysis of products that meet the universal design criteria. Problems and limitations of universal design. Universal access legislation (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 400 Industrial Training (3)

IDB 511 Major Project–design (3)
Students will proceed by way of their preferred design methodologies by conceiving alternative solutions, designing, selection of appropriate process, research, data analysis etc. Selection of appropriate forms of modelling ideas and presentation of design with a design folio. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)

IDB 414 Eco–product Design (2)

IDB 415 Universal Design (2)
Universal Design Principles, Universal Design and inclusiveness, usability, equitable use, design for people of all ages and abilities, barrier free design, Design for flexibility in use, simple and intuitive use, perceptible information, tolerance for error, design for low physical effort, size and space for approach and use, trans-generational design strategies, design for the ageing methods, design for the disabled strategies, usability principles. Universal design assessment and checklist, usability assessment methods and checklist, analysis of products that meet the universal design criteria. Problems and limitations of universal design. Universal access legislation (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 400 Industrial Training (3)

IDB 511 Major Project–design (3)
Students will proceed by way of their preferred design methodologies by conceiving alternative solutions, designing, selection of appropriate process, research, data analysis etc. Selection of appropriate forms of modelling ideas and presentation of design with a design folio. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)
IDB 515 Occupational Health and Safety (2)
Ergonomics of work, Occupational hazards and preventative measures, Legal considerations, Health and Safety standards, Safety symbols and colours, Protective equipment and work practice controls, Design of hand tools, Construction activities, Fire prevention and protection, Seating and seat design, Workstation design, Lighting, colour and vision, Noise and vibration, Heat and ventilation, Manual material handling, Applied human kinematics and anthropometrics, Hazardous processes, Environmental pollution. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 516 Design Studies (2)
Cultural influences in design, Political and economic implications on design, Philosophical debates in design, Design and its impact on development, Social analyses of design, Identification of core issues that are significant to the area of design studies being investigated, Application of research methods to design studies, Application of design studies to related areas such as technology, engineering, art, architecture and photography. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 517 Optimisation in Design (2)
Systems approach to design. Optimisation and synergy of subsystems and components for materials, costs, quality, time, manufacturability, maintenance and energy conservation. Need-technology-customer matrix and diversification-capability matrix; optimisation of diversification. Failure modes and effects analysis for optimisation. Quality function deployment. Failure modes, effects and criticality analysis. Value analysis and optimisation. Case studies of design optimisation. (2-hr lecture per week)

IDB 521 Major Project-production (3)
Realisation of the designed artefact. Selection of appropriate means of manufacturing and finishing. Incorporating necessary design modifications. Product evaluation by revisiting the need and the consumer. Completion of the ‘Design folio’ to include manufacturing aspects and product evaluation. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)

IDB 523 Professional Practice (2)
Various models of design practice, reflective practitioner, developing a corporate approach, managing product design and development process, strategic planning, time and people management, computer-based time schedules, presentation and communication skills, writing skills for design-related discourses such as; briefs, rationales, reports and resumes. Tendering for jobs, authority approvals, publicity, techniques for improving productivity. Pricing and costing of design projects, quality assurance, staff resource allocation, staff salaries and associated costs. Legal classifications of industrial designs, design protection, ownership of designs, contract and administration, sub-contracting, design registration, patenting designs, copyright, product liability, franchise, design protection in Botswana. Design ethics, moral obligations, analysis of design practice firms around the world, problems of design practice. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 522 Design for Automation (3)
Elements of automation. Need and rationale for time and motion study and its applications in automation. Different types of jigs and fixtures and their relative merits. Jigs and fixtures design for precision and their indexing. Tool design for automation. Tool geometry, ie, dimensions, angles and clearances and tolerances. Tool materials selection. Modular tooling system, tool holders and adaptors. Tool locating and clamping, fasteners, etc. Use of dies; elements of die design. Tooling for numerical controls. Integrated computer aided design and manufacture with examples. Design of artefacts for integrated design and manufacture. Introduction to robotics and simple applications in design for automation. (2-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 524 Multimedia for Industrial Designers (3)
Need for multimedia in Industrial design and dissemination. Role of multimedia in effective communication and presentations. Range of multimedia hardware and software. Digital electronics and use in still and video cameras. Digital recording and editing. Computer Animation, Interactivity and computer generated digital movies. Industry-standard multimedia-authoring tools to develop design presentations. Integration of media objects, including: edited scanned images, rendered images (produced using CAD technology), line drawings, animation, video (captured off VHS) and sound. Production and application of multimedia in portfolio and major design presentation. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)

IDB 525 Packaging Design (3)
Packaging principles and practices in design, Materials handling and distribution, Production, Testing and evaluation, Printing and labelling, Regulatory practices, and environmental concerns, Paper, metal and wood packaging, Plastics, composites and glass packaging, Pharmaceutical, medical and cosmetics packaging, Packaging and the environment, Packaging production systems, Engineering of protective packaging, Distribution packaging and materials handling, Packaging development and management. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)

GEC 258 Art and Science of Design (2)

GEC 357 Advances in Technology (2)

DEPARTMENT OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERING

MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)
Introduction to basic constructions and mechanisms. Orthographic Projection is taught with examples from all fields of engineering. Students will also have some practice on engineering drawings with reference to the appropriate standards.
MMB221 Computer Aided Drafting (2)
The course introduces students to basic Computer Aided Drafting: Two dimensional and three-dimensional drafting systems; Use of CAD to generate Assembly and Detail engineering drawings; Title Block and plotting.

MMB222 Dynamics (2)
Kinematics of particles; Newton’s Laws; Kinetics of particles; Kinetics of rigid body; Impulse and momentum; Work, power and energy.

MMB311 Solid Mechanics (3)
Deflection of beams; combined stresses; buckling; metal fatigue; creep; stress strain analysis; strain rosettes; strain energy; failure criteria; torsion of non-circular sections; plastic deformation.

MMB312 Materials (2)
This course is a study of engineering materials; this includes heat treatment, behaviour in service, evaluation of materials and designing.

MMB313 Mechanics Of Machines (3)
Crank-effort diagram; General plane motion; Kinematics of machines; Balancing; Lagrange’s equation; Gyroscopic motion; Vibration.

MMB314 Measurement and Instrumentation (2)
This course covers the following: Basis of measurement and international standards; Electronics used in instrumentation systems; Methods of measurement; Calibration.

MMB322 Machine Component Design (2)
Phases of Design; Uniaxial and biaxial stress conditions; Deflection and Stiffness considerations; Design for static strength; Design for fatigue strength; Design of threaded elements; Rolling contact bearings; Flexible elements; Shaft and associated parts; Design of helical springs.

MMB323 Thermodynamics (3)
1st and 2nd laws of thermodynamics; thermodynamic processes with ideal gas; cycles of heat engines; energy systems.

MMB324 Fluid Mechanics (3)
Fluids and their properties; fluid statics; Basic fluid kinematics and fluid dynamics; viscous flow in pipes; flow in pipes and duct systems; flow around a body; open channel flow; and fluid machinery.

MMB325 Manufacturing (2)
Introduction to manufacturing technologies; hot manufacturing processes, cold manufacturing processes, measurements and quality control.

MMB410 Advanced Manufacturing (2)
Difference between conventional manufacturing and software driven manufacturing; CNC Technology and Part programming; Group technology; Computer aided process planning; Industrial robots; Discrete Control.

MMB411 Machine and Industrial Design (2)
Lubrication and journal bearings; Spur, helical, worm and bevel gears design; Industrial design: assessing the need for industrial design; The impact of industrial design; Product: risk and reliability, probability concepts, interaction of materials, processing and design.

MMB421 Heat Transfer (3)
Thermal properties, the Fourier’s law, heat diffusion equation, Newton’s Law of cooling, External and external flow forced convection, heat exchangers, thermal radiation.

MMB413 Systems and Control Engineering I (3)
Linearised dynamic system models; applications of Laplace transforms; transfer function models; spline, transient performance and inverse Laplace transforms; frequency response analysis: Bode, Nyquist, etc.

MMB414 Engineering Management (3)
This is an introductory course to management science and engineering economics covering management theory, social responsibility of an industrial engineer, health safety, engineering project appraisal, financial control systems, and impact of information technology on organizations.

MMB415 Materials Technology (2)
Study of theoretical and practical aspects of materials processing; Further consideration of casting, forming, powder processing, joining processes and surface treatments.

MMB416 Mechatronics (2)
An introduction to mechatronic systems, including uses and simple design; Simple microprocessor programming; Mechanical aspects of mechatronic systems.

MMB417 Thermodynamics II (2)
Cycles and principles of operation; cycles and analysis; combustion and emission control; fuel process; wear, lubrication, steam, nozzles, heat transfer and refrigeration.

MMB418 Pneumatics & Hydraulics (2)
Provides an introduction to the basic principles and control of pneumatic and hydraulic systems including electro-pneumatic and electro-hydraulic systems; Circuit and system design for function and capacity; Function sequencing diagrams; Introduction to control of such systems using programmable logic controllers.

MMB419 Vibrations (2)
Vibration of multi-degree of freedom systems; modal testing; noise control.

MMB511 Project (Stage I) (3)
Defining the project problem; working out an action plan and project methodology; information retrieval and analysis; project predesign; writing a literature overview and a progress report.

MMB512 Plant Engineering (3)
This course covers design, selection, operation, maintenance and control of engineering plant; Power plant, combined heat and power, process plants; Planned maintenance; Safety, costs, energy conservation, pollution and environmental factors.

MMB513 Manufacturing Systems (4)
Introduction to manufacturing systems, Single station manufacturing cells, Cellular manufacturing, Flexible Manufacturing systems, Transfer lines.

MMB514 Systems and Control Engineering II (4)
Modelling and analysis of system dynamics; continuous and digital control system design; elements of non-linear control.

MMB515 Energy Systems (4)
Energy resources; Conventional and renewable energy systems; Energy system design; Energy management and rational energy utilisation.
MMB516 Building and Factory Services (4)
Design, layout, installation, efficient operation and maintenance of building and factory services, such as heating, ventilation and air conditioning, water, steam compressed air, fire-fighting, lifts and escalators, electricity and lighting systems for buildings and factories as well as efficient utilisation and provision of these services.

MMB521 Project (Stage II) (3)
This is the continuation of the course MMB511.

MMB522 Production and Operations Management (3)
Forecasting, production control, plant location, maintenance costing, personnel and productivity, work study and operations management tools.

MMB523 Industrial Engineering (4)
Total systems intervention; System dynamics modelling; Cybernetics; Viable Systems Modelling; Interactive management; Productivity; Quality.

MMB524 Refrigeration And Air Conditioning (4)
This course covers the theories and practice of refrigeration and air conditioning. This includes application of thermodynamics, fluid flow, heat and mass transfer to refrigeration processes; Plant components, controls, plant layout, air conditioning processes, psychometric design, and acoustics; Installation, commissioning and operation of a refrigeration plant.

MMB527 Thermal Fluid System Design
Thermal design systems, system components aspects of design, exergetic analysis, heat transfer, economic analysis, optimization

MMB526 Computational Mechanics (4)
Introduction
The University Council decided in November 2005 to establish a Faculty of Health Sciences with effect from 01 April 2006. This decision stemmed from the University having resolved in academic year 2003/04 that during NDP9 it would engage in programme development that would be aimed at the long-term objective of establishing a Faculty of Health Sciences.

Effective 01 June 2007, the Faculty of Health Sciences was formally established and an Acting Dean appointed.

Academic Organizational Structure
Organisationally, the Faculty is a “work in progress” and currently comprises the following entities:

• The Department of Environmental Health (the seed of a future School of Public Health);
• The School of Nursing (formerly the Department of Nursing Education);
• The School of Medicine
• The Office of the Dean of Health Sciences

The plan is to set up a School of Pharmacy and a School of Allied Health Professions including a Department of Medical Laboratory Sciences during academic year 2009/10 with the recruitment of core founding staff.

The definitive academic organisational structure of the Faculty shall be determined during the course of the 2009/2010 academic year.

Recent and Future Developments
The principal activity of the Faculty in the next few years will be to engage in strategic planning that will embrace:

• affirmation/re-affirmation of the kind(s) and number(s) of university-trained and educated human resources for health that Botswana will need and the role(s) they are to play in the health system of the future;
• working with all stakeholders to arrive at a Faculty strategic plan that includes a statement of the vision, mission, values, goals and objectives of the Faculty as part of a national teaching health system;
• design, development, approval and international accreditation of high quality international curricula that are appropriate to the Botswana and African context, are aligned with the University Learning and Teaching policy, promote intra-faculty teaching and learning and articulate with programme offerings within Botswana and SADC;
• identification of relevant and high-priority areas of research and research training in the health sciences that will contribute to improved national and regional human health and welfare;
• ensuring that the faculty spearheads the drive for excellence in health professional service delivery.

This agenda will call for an holistic and innovative approach to the review of the learning and teaching, research and research training and professional service existing programmes of the faculty.

To do this within an appropriate governance framework, consultation with all interested parties is expected to result in the University approving the establishment of interim arrangements to ensure a smooth transition from the current structures, within and outside the University, to those that shall obtain under the aegis of a Faculty of Health Sciences that is embedded in a national teaching health system.

DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH
Acting Head: T. M. Maswabi, BSc, MSc (UB)

Departmental Regulations for the Undergraduate Program

General Provisions
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Programs and Titles of Degrees:
The Department currently offers one program in Environmental Health leading to the following qualification:

Bachelor of Science
(Environmental Health or BSc– EH degree)

Our values
In support of the UB values, the department will focus on the following:

(i) Students - We place our students at the core of our business
(ii) Research – Research is the basis for our vision
(iii) Professionalism – We endeavour to adhere to the highest professional and ethical standards

(iv) Partnerships – Collaboration and networking are key to the delivery of our programs
(v) Advocacy - We endeavour to promote awareness on safety, health and environmental issues.

Program Objectives
• To provide a sound foundation on the principles of public health and the interrelationship between humans and the environment.

• To develop competencies and skills needed after graduation to work effectively as an environmental health professional in different settings.

• To impart skills to conduct research to address environmental contamination problems and to contribute to sound public health policy development

• To provide students with the skills to utilize behavioral modification and motivation as positive approaches to the resolution of environmental health problems rather than relying totally on enforcement.

Entrance requirements
Prospective students must:
• If entering the program through the direct entry route, satisfy the University of Botswana General Academic Regulation 20.21 and the Faculty of Science Special Regulation 23.2 of the Faculty of Science. If already registered under the Faculty of Science under the General BSc Program, must have obtained at least a grade C in BIO 111 & 112; CHE 101 & 102; MAT 111 & 122; PHY 111, 119, 121 & 129 at first year level.

If possessing a Diploma, satisfy General Academic Regulation 20.24 and appropriate Special Regulations of the Faculty of Science.

Applicants with a Diploma in Environmental Health shall be admitted into level 200 or 300 of the degree programme on the basis of accumulated credits in the area of environmental health.

• If possessing other entry qualifications deemed relevant by the Department, satisfy General Academic Regulation 20.22 or General Academic Regulation 20.23 and any other appropriate Special Regulations of the Faculty of Science.
### FACULTY OF HEALTH SCIENCES

#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- CHE101 General Chemistry I (4)
- BIO 111 Principles of Biology (4)
- PHY111 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (3)
- PHY119 Physics Practical (1)
- MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4)
- GEC111 Communications and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC121 Computing and Information Skills I (2)

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- CHE102 General Chemistry II (4)
- BIO112 Diversity of Animals and Plants (4)
- PHY121 Electricity and Magnetism, Introduction to Modern Physics (3)
- PHY129 Physics Practical (1)
- MAT222 Introductory Mathematics II (4)
- GEC121 Communications and Study Skills II (2)
- GEC122 Computing and Information Skills II (2)

#### Semester 3
**Core Courses**
- BIO120 Introductory Biochemistry (3)
- ENH211 Introduction to Environmental Health (3)
- BIO301 Quantitative Biology (3)
- CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2)
- CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
- GEC/Optional (10)

#### Semester 4
**Core Courses**
- ENH222 Principles and Practice of Health Education (3)
- ENH222 Epidemiology (3)
- BIO216 General Microbiology (3)
- ENH223 Control of Communicable diseases (3)
- LAW203 Environmental Laws of Botswana (3)
- BIO225 Human Physiology and the Environment (3)

#### Semester 5
**Core Courses**
- ENH313 Basic Toxicology (3)
- CCB315 Environmental Engineering (3)
- CCB318 Liquid Waste Management (3)
- CCB319 Solid Waste Management (3)
- ASB 321 Meat Science (3)
- CCB331 Environmental Health and Building Services (3)

#### Semester 6
**Core Courses**
- BIO305 Insect Pest/Vector Control (3)
- ENH321 Environmental Health Sampling and Analysis (4)
- ENH322 Food Safety and Hygiene (3)
- ENH323 Occupational Health, Safety and Hygiene (3)
- PHY360 Atmospheric Pollution Control I (2)
- ASB321 Meat Science (3)

#### Winter Semester
- ENH331 Internship (4)

#### Semester 7
**Core Courses**
- ENH411 Environmental Risk Assessment (3)
- ENH412 Environmental Health Seminar (3)
- PHY460 Atmospheric Pollution Control II (2)
- GEC/ Optional (7)

#### Semester 8
**Core Courses**
- ENH413 Inspection and Report Writing (2)
- ENH422 Research Project in Environmental Health (3)
- GEC/Optional (10)

**Optional Courses**
- CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2)
- CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory (1)
- ENV10 Medical Geography (2)
- ENV382 Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards (3)
- ENV440 Geographic Information Systems (3)
- ENV462 Environmental Quality Management - Land & Air (3)
- ENV418 Environmental Policy (2)
- ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment (3)
- ENV463 Environmental Quality Management - Water & Waste (3)
- CHE416 Environmental Chemistry (2)
- CHE418 Special Topics in Analytical Chemistry (2)
- BIO418 Food Microbiology (3)
- LAW441 Law and Health Care (3)

### SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

#### Founding Dean
T. A. Massaro, SB(MIT)
MS(Stanford), PhD(University of California, Berkeley), MD (Wisconsin, Madison)

### Premedical Programme
The University of Botswana offers a four-semester pre-medical programme designed to qualify students to enter the medical degree programmes of the School of Medicine as well as medical schools outside Botswana.

#### Premedical Programme Structure
In first year, students take courses from Biological Sciences (BIO 102), Chemistry (CHE 101, CHE 102), Mathematics (MAT 111, MAT 112), Physics (PHY 111, PHY 112) and General Education courses in Fundamentals of Computer and Information Skills (GEC 121, GEC 122) and Communication and Study Skills (GEC 111, GEC 112). The second year consists of Basic Natural Sciences (level 200 courses in chemistry and Physics), Introduction to Biomedical Sciences (level 200 courses in cell biology, anatomy, physiology and genetics), Introduction to Health Informatics, and Introduction to Community Health (level 100 and 200 courses in biostatistics, demography, HIV/AIDS). Students have opportunities for clinical exposure at the referral hospitals in the first year and in clinics, district hospitals or private practices during the second year.

#### Entry Requirements to the pre-medical programme
(a) BGCSE/equivalent with a minimum of grade E in English Language and a grade of C or better in any two courses from Biology, Chemistry, Physics or a minimum of grade BB in Science Double Award or equivalent and a minimum of A in Physical Science and a C in Biology or equivalent.
(b) A-Level (Advanced Level) holders can enter at the second year provided that they have completed the clinical exposure track of the fi rst year. (N.B. Top “A-Level” students may apply for direct entry to many medical schools, bypassing the University’s premedical programme entirely.)
(c) First year students in Level 100 of the BSc degree may apply to transfer to Level 200 of the Premedical programme if they have performed well academically (i.e., achieved GPAs of at least 3.5 in all three Level 100 Sciences, 3.0 in Level 100 Mathematics and 3.0 in at least one of the General Education Courses), have been performed satisfactorily (a grade of at least ‘very good’), in the clinical exposure course that takes place between year one and two, and have succeeded in being designated for a career in medicine by the Ministry of Education (if a citizen of Botswana).
Admission to the School of Medicine

The University of Botswana will select a first cohort of 36 students to enter the new medical degree programme in August 2009. Students seeking admission to the preclinical curriculum in this group must apply by 1st April 2009. Admission to the University of Botswana School of Medicine will occur in two phases. In the first phase sixty Pre Med students will be selected by the regular UB Admissions process. The application will request several short essays in addition to routine demographic data. Phase two of the admissions process begins after completion of the first year. Personal and professional behaviors, academic performance and communication skills will be considered in the process. All interested students will be interviewed. Successful candidates will be immediately enrolled in the School of Medicine to begin the Pre Clinical Curriculum. For students not admitted to UB the application process may vary with the different medical schools. Those who gain admission to those other medical schools with which the Botswana Government has partnerships will generally report after successful completion of the level 200 programme. Those who qualify for the University’s South African and Australian partner medical schools may transfer there after three semesters to accommodate the academic schedules of those schools.

Undergraduate Degree Programme

The undergraduate programme will be six years in length and divided into three parts. The first phase will be similar to the the first year of the current pre medical programme with enhanced clinical exposure. Phase two (the pre clinical program) will require 2 years with increased patient contact. A 10 week Winter Semester has been added to allow for the greater intensity of medical education. During the preclinical phase students will participate in a course entitled The Patient, Doctor and Society which deals with ethical issues, acquisition of skills and involvement in the community. The teaching methodology will be varied and include lectures, PBL, team learning, small group exercises and laboratories for practical learning and demonstrations. The curriculum will be integrated, student oriented and resource based with a strong focus on the community. It will be flexible to meet the needs of both faculty and students, and respond to changing health care demands of the country. Design of the content will reflect the health problems and resources of the community. The three clinical years will have required hospital and clinic rotations in the major disciplines. These experiences will be enhanced one afternoon each week with the opportunity to follow patients longitudinally and explore community services and public health efforts. Some time will be spent in distant parts of the country to gain experience in rural medicine. A capstone course in the final year will re-emphasise the importance of the basic sciences, teach advanced cardiac life support and give tutorials on how to be an effective teacher while serving as a house officer. Implementation of this plan hopefully will be accelerated so that 36 of the students who enter the programme August of 2008 will graduate from the University of Botswana School of Medicine in May 2014.

Internship

The period of out-of country training varies from one medical school to another. It is usually five or six years. On completion of their medical training, doctors are expected to do a one-year internship in Botswana before being registered by the Botswana Health Professions Council (BHPC) to practice independently as a doctor.

Graduate Medical Education

By August 2009 we anticipate having internationally accredited specialty training in internal medicine, family medicine and pediatrics at Princess Marina Hospital and by August of 2010 in Nyangabwe Referral Hospital. By August 2010 we also anticipate specialty training in general surgery, obstetrics and gynecology and emergency medicine/trauma. Once implemented these specialty training programs will markedly enhance the clinical experiences and learning opportunities for medical students as well as improve the public health of the nation.

SCHOOL OF NURSING

Head: N. M. Sebongi, RN, RM, BEd (UBS), MA, MEd (Columbia), PhD (University of California, San Francisco)

1.0 Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Nursing Science Degree Programme

Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Education Special Regulations, the following Departmental Special Regulations shall apply:

1.1 Entrance Requirements for the Bachelor of Nursing Science

1.1.1 Admission to Level 100 of the Bachelor of Nursing Science

Generic Degree Programme shall be on the basis of performance in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination, or its equivalent, in Science subjects. There shall be cut-off points, which shall be determined by the Directorate of Academic Services.

1.1.2 Applicants who register for the Bachelor of Nursing Science (Generic) Programmes shall be required:

a) To have taken at least 5 subjects, including English Language and Mathematics, at the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination or at one sitting of its equivalent;

b) To have obtained a minimum grade of Pass in English Language;

c) To have obtained a minimum grade of credit, or its equivalent, in Mathematics.

1.1.3 In addition to the above basic requirements, applicants must have a minimum grade of C, or its equivalent, in at least 2 of the following subjects: Physics, Chemistry and Biology; and a minimum grade of B, or its equivalent, in Science. A double award or its equivalent is required. The other qualifying subject must be one of the following:

a) Development Studies

b) Literature in English
c) Design and Technology
d) Agriculture
e) Art
f) Food and Nutrition
g) Computer Studies
h) Fashion and Fabrics
i) Business Studies
j) Home Management
k) Any other subject deemed appropriate by the Faculty of Science.

1.1.4 An applicant who has taken relevant Advanced (A)-level or equivalent examinations and who has attained a minimum of one E and two O’s in the relevant subjects may be admitted to a Bachelor of Science Degree Programme.

1.1.5 If an applicant has grade E or better at Advanced (A)-level or equivalent qualifications in Science subjects, he/she may be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent course(s) prescribed for a Degree Programme, subject to the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department and approval of the Deputy Dean.

1.2 Course Listings for the Bachelor of Nursing
Level 100
Semester 1
General Education Courses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEC111</td>
<td>Communication and Study Skills</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC112</td>
<td>Computing and Information Systems</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Core Courses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIO111</td>
<td>Principles of Biology</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE101</td>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT111</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS101</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS Prevention and Control in Botswana</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 2
Core Courses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE102</td>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT122</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Students can choose to take Physics at Level 100 or Level 200 of their study.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHY119</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY111</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY121</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY129</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIO231</td>
<td>Human Anatomy</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO223</td>
<td>Parasitology for Health Sciences</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA111</td>
<td>Elementary Statistics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY161</td>
<td>Physics for Nurses</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS201</td>
<td>Introduction to Professional Nursing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS203</td>
<td>Basic Nursing Concepts and Skills in Health and Wellness</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS205</td>
<td>Primary Health Care: Individuals, Groups and the Community</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 4
Core Courses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS211</td>
<td>Cell Biology</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO216</td>
<td>Microbiology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO232</td>
<td>Human Biology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS202</td>
<td>Basic Nursing Concepts and Skills in Health and Illness</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses (3 credits)
All students shall take 1 optional course
Elective: one course

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS301</td>
<td>Pathophysiology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS302</td>
<td>Nursing Management of Low Risk Childbearing Families</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS303</td>
<td>Introduction to Community Health Nursing</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS305</td>
<td>Basic Nursing Knowledge and Skills in Care of Well and Ill Adults</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO307</td>
<td>Biochemistry</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS309</td>
<td>Community-Based Nursing Care Practicum</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE114</td>
<td>Introduction to Nutrition</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken, from the optional courses listed in Semester 4.

General Education Course (2 credits)
All students shall select a course not already taken from the list of General Education Courses.

Semester 6
Core Courses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS200</td>
<td>Pharmacology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS300</td>
<td>Health Assessment</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS304</td>
<td>Community Mental Health Nursing</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS306</td>
<td>Intro to Nursing Research</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS310</td>
<td>Institution-Based Nursing Care Practicum</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC332</td>
<td>Traditional and Alternative Medical Systems</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS311</td>
<td>Internship</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

General Education Courses (2 credits)
All students shall select a course not already taken from the list of General Education Courses.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose 1 of the optional courses listed in the optional course menu.

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS401</td>
<td>Principles of Management and Education in Nursing</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS402</td>
<td>Parent and Child Practicum</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS405</td>
<td>Advanced Knowledge and Skill in Adult Health</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS407</td>
<td>Nursing Management of High Risk Childbearing Families</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS410</td>
<td>Adult Health Nursing Practicum</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

General Education Courses (6 credits)

In addition, all students shall select 3 courses not already taken from the list of General Education Courses.

Semester 8
Core Courses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS403</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Community Health Nursing</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS404</td>
<td>Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing Practicum</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS406</td>
<td>Adolescent Health and Development</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS408</td>
<td>Community Health Nursing Practicum</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS409</td>
<td>Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

General Education Courses (4 credits)
In addition, all students shall select 2 courses not already taken from the listed General Education Courses. Students shall also take one elective course, and one optional course chosen from the following list:

Optional Courses Menu
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BSW201</td>
<td>Introduction to Group Work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSW202</td>
<td>Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSV309</td>
<td>Social Policy</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFH201</td>
<td>Counseling Over the Lifespan</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFH202</td>
<td>Theories and Techniques of Counseling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFH402</td>
<td>Counseling Persons with Special Needs</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100</td>
<td>Introduction to Educational Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE444</td>
<td>Issues in Food and Nutrition</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAW441</td>
<td>Ethics and Law in Health Care</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP220</td>
<td>History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP221</td>
<td>Theories of Fertility, Mortality and Migration</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP225</td>
<td>Demographic Aspects of the HIV/AIDS Epidemic</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP303</td>
<td>Urbanisation, Migration and Development</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP404</td>
<td>Gender, Reproductive Health and Development</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP405</td>
<td>Demographic Dimensions of Poverty</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC234</td>
<td>Social Problems in Southern Africa</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.3 Entrance Requirements for Bachelor of Nursing Science RN Completion
Candidates for the Bachelor of Nursing Science Completion will fulfill the following requirements:

a) A Diploma in General Nursing or its equivalent;
b) A minimum of 2 years Nursing experience after completion of a Diploma in a General Nursing Programme;
c) Current registration with the Nursing and Midwifery Council of Botswana or its equivalent; d) BGCSE or its equivalent with either a credit in Combined Science or a pass in any one of Biology, Chemistry or Physics and a pass in any other 4 subjects.

1.4 Course Listings for the Bachelor of Nursing Science

**Completion Stream**

**Level 200**

**Semester 3**

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS201</td>
<td>Introduction to Professional Nursing (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Education Course**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEC121</td>
<td>Education Computer Awareness (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Semester 4**

**General Education Course**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEC112</td>
<td>Communication and Study Skills (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIO231</td>
<td>Human Anatomy (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE109</td>
<td>Introductory Chemistry for Nursing Science (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY161</td>
<td>Physics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA111</td>
<td>Elementary Statistics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS201</td>
<td>Introduction to Professional Nursing (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses (6 credits)**

Students shall also choose two of the 3-credit optional courses listed at the end of this section.

**Level 300**

**Semester 5**

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS301</td>
<td>Pathophysiology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS307</td>
<td>The Individual in Health Illness (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS309</td>
<td>Community-Based Nursing Care Practicum (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP213</td>
<td>Introductory Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, all students shall take 1 elective course.

**Semester 6**

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS300</td>
<td>Health Assessment (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS304</td>
<td>Community Mental Health Nursing (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS306</td>
<td>Introduction to Nursing Research (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 400**

**Semester 7**

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS401</td>
<td>Principles of Management and Education in Nursing (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS402</td>
<td>Parent and Child Health Nursing Practicum (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS405</td>
<td>Advanced Knowledge and Skills in Adult Health Nursing (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS407</td>
<td>Nursing Management of High Risk Childbearing Families (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS410</td>
<td>Adult Health Nursing Practicum (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, all students shall select 3 General Education Courses not already taken.

**Semester 8**

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS403</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Community Health Nursing (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS404</td>
<td>Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing Practicum (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS406</td>
<td>Adolescent Health and Development (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS408</td>
<td>Community Health Nursing Practicum (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS409</td>
<td>Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Education Courses (6 credits)**

In addition, students shall select 3 General Education Courses not already taken. Students shall also choose one elective course and one optional course from the following listing:

**Optional Course Menu**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BSW201</td>
<td>Introduction to Group Work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSW202</td>
<td>Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSW309</td>
<td>Social Policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP201</td>
<td>Counseling Over Lifespan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP202</td>
<td>Theories and Techniques of Counseling (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP402</td>
<td>Counselling Persons with Special Needs (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100</td>
<td>Introduction to Educational Psychology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HEE444** Issues in Food Nutrition (3)

**LAW441** Ethics and Law in Health Care (3)

**POP220** History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration

**POP221** Theories of Fertility, Mortality and Migration

**POP225** Demographic Aspects of the HIV/AIDS Epidemic (3)

**POP303** Urbanisation, Migration and Development

**POP405** Demographic Dimensions of Poverty

**SOC234** Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)

**POP404** Gender, Reproductive Health and Development (3)

**1.5 Assessment**

1.5.1 Continuous assessment in Levels 200, 300 and 400 shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable, clinical practice.

1.5.2 The ratio of continuous assessment to an end of semester examination shall be 1:1, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.

1.5.3 The above Regulations shall apply to both Generic and In-service Bachelor of Nursing Science Streams.

1.5.4 General Regulations 00.811 to 00.826 and 00.842 shall apply to the Bachelor of Nursing Science Degree.

**1.6 Progression from Year to Year**

To proceed from one semester to the next, a student must pass all courses and have a cumulative GPA of 2.0 or above as specified in General Regulation 00.842.

**1.7 Award of Degree**

To be awarded a Degree, a student must satisfy the relevant General Academic Regulations 00.851 and 00.852. The Degree shall be classified in accordance with the provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.4, with the cumulative GPA of 2.0 or above completed in accordance with General Regulation 00.86. Faculty of Education

**DEPARTMENT OF MEDICAL LABORATORY SCIENCES**

From August 2009, a new Department of Medical Laboratory Sciences will offer a one-year BSc [Medical Laboratory Sciences] "upgrade" degree to qualifying holders of the Diploma in Medical Laboratory Technology of the Institute of Health Sciences or equivalent...
Details of this programme shall be published in a departmental handbook that will be available from 01 August 2009.
AFRICAN LANGUAGES & LITERATURE
ENGLISH
FRENCH
HISTORY
LIBRARY & INFORMATION STUDIES
MEDIA STUDIES
THEOLOGY & RELIGIOUS STUDIES

DEAN
Moahi, K.H.N, BA Admin. (UBS), MSc (Sheffield), PhD (Pittsburgh)

DEPUTY DEAN
Mwikisa, P.W, BA(Zambia), MA, D.Phil(Sussex)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATORS
B. Ramacologa, Dip in Agric and Home Economics (Kenya),
BEd (Missouri State)
O.T. Brooks, BA (UB), MSc (Manchester)
The Faculty currently comprises the following Departments

- Department of African Languages and Literature
- Department of English
- Department of French
- Department of History
- Department of Library and Information Studies
- Department of Media Studies
- Department of Theology and Religious Studies
- Confucius Institute

Although for administrative purposes the Departments of Environmental Science and of Sociology are located in other Faculties, they are considered academically to be part of the Faculty of Humanities. In fact, a considerable number of students who major in Environmental Science and Sociology are Humanities students. With the flexibility that is afforded by semesterised courses, more departments in the Faculties of Business and Science will become accessible to Humanities students, especially through cross-faculty programmes. With the new focus on educating specialists in a generalist way, the Faculty values a well-rounded education with the requisite ICT and numeracy skills. The Faculty of Humanities concentrates mainly on those studies that specialise in understanding human ideas, behaviour, culture and its mediation, with a particular emphasis on humanity in Africa in relation to the rest of the world. This Faculty thus has a prime role to play in the discovery and the appreciation of the heritage and liberal arts of the societies of Africa in general and of southern Africa and Botswana in particular. In this regard, the Faculty of Humanities, through research and teaching in its academic departments, is in a privileged position to effectively contribute to the realization of the Vision and Mission of the University. In addition, the Faculty of Humanities contributes to human resource development by assisting in the training of teachers. The departments in the Faculty provide the content base for secondary school and tertiary level teachers of English, Setswana, French, History/Social Studies, Geography and Religious/Moral Education by offering majors in the Bachelor of Arts, Bachelor of Education and the Masters of Education Degrees in these disciplines. As the Faculty continues to implement the provisions of the Ninth National Development Plan (NDP9), the semesterised academic programmes, and also plans new programmes within the plan period, it shall simultaneously address the requirements of the Revised National Policy on Education as well as the aspirations of the National Vision 2016. It will also position itself strategically within the plan period processes to face the challenges brought about by diminishing budget allocations and competition for fewer resources. With semesterisation, all departments have vigorously reviewed existing programmes, bringing them up-to-date and in line with semesterised teaching. Four of the departments in the Faculty offer Master and Doctoral degrees.

22.0 Special Regulations for the Faculty of Humanities

22.1 Preamble

22.11 The following are the Faculty's Special Regulations and shall apply subject to the General Academic Regulations.

22.12 In addition to these Special Regulations, relevant Special Departmental Regulations shall also apply.

22.2 Entrance Requirements

22.21 Admission into the Humanities Degree Programmes shall be on the basis of performance in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination, or its equivalent, in humanities (languages, geography, social studies, history, moral/religious education, and science), and also see Regulation 22.22a for other qualifying subjects.

22.22 Applicants who register for Bachelor's Degree programmes in Humanities shall be required:

a) To have obtained a credit in the English Language, at the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination.

b) To have obtained a credit in the English Language.

c) To have obtained a credit in the English Language.

d) To have obtained a credit in the English Language.

22.23 An applicant who has taken relevant Advanced (A) - level or equivalent examinations and attained a minimum of one E and two C's in the relevant subjects may be admitted to a Bachelor degree in Humanities programmes.

22.24 If an applicant has grade E or better at Advanced (A) -level or equivalent qualifications in relevant subjects, may subject to the recommendations from the relevant Head of Department and the approval of the Dean's Office, be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent course/s prescribed for a degree programme.

22.25 A student who may transfer from a recognized university, or any other institution of higher learning, and on the submission of a transcript of his/her academic records may, subject to the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department and the approval of the Dean's Office, be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent course/s prescribed for a degree programme.

22.3 General Provisions

22.31 A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, seminar or tutorials or any combination of these components. In addition to work during the semester, a course may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during university vacation periods.

22.32 Unless otherwise provided in the departmental regulations, all courses are semester long.

22.33 For ease of reference, the use of course codes shall provide information as follows: the first digit refers to the level of study, the second to the status and orientation of the course, and the last digit to the number of course in each category.

22.4 Degree Structure

22.41 In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.211, Departments in the Faculty of Humanities shall offer courses which shall be prescribed in Departmental Special Regulations.

22.42 The Faculty of Humanities shall, depending on the core course in the subject area offer the following degree programmes:

a) Bachelor of Arts which is composed of core and optional courses from African languages and literature, English, French, History, Archaeology, Environmental Science, Sociology, Psychology and Theology and Religious Studies subjects.

b) Bachelor of Library and Information Studies which is composed of core and optional courses from the department of Library and Information Studies.

c) Bachelor of Arts in Library and Information Studies which is composed of core and optional courses from Library and Information Studies and another subject available as a major to Humanities students.

d) Bachelor of Information Systems (Information Management) which is composed of core and optional courses from the Faculty of Business, Department of Computer Science and Department of Library and Information Studies.

e) Bachelor of Media Studies which is composed of core and optional courses from the Department of Media Studies.

22.43 A combined degree (major/major) shall
be a programme composed of core and optional courses from two equally-weighted subjects which are concurrently studied. In order to partially satisfy the requirement for a degree, a student must take and pass a minimum of 40 credits from each of the two subjects.

22.44 A combined degree (major/minor) shall be a programme composed of core and optional courses from two subjects. In order to partially satisfy the requirements for a degree, a student must take and pass a minimum of 56 credits from the major subject and a minimum of 24 credits from the minor subject.

22.45 In Semesters 1 and 2 (Level 1) of a degree programme, each student shall take courses in English as well as courses from at least two of the following subjects: African Languages and Literature, French, Environmental Science, History, Sociology, Theology and Religious Studies, Psychology.

22.46 In addition to core and optional courses, and in compliance with the General Regulation 00.2124d, each student shall, unless exempted, take two credits of General Education Courses in each of Area 1, Communication and Study Skills and Area 2, Computer and Information Skills, in each of Semesters 1 and 2 of his/her programme. In addition, a student shall register for a minimum of twelve credits of General Education Courses offered outside the Faculty of Humanities before completing his/her programme of study.

22.47 Departments may specify projects that each student shall carry out as partial fulfillment of the requirements for the award a degree, based on an investigation of some original theme in his/her major subject under the supervision of an academic member of staff. This study shall be for one semester and normally take place during the course of the programme. The mode of assessment shall be as prescribed under Special Departmental Regulations. There shall only be one such project per programme.

22.5 Assessment
22.51 Continuous Assessment (CA) shall be as prescribed in General Academic Regulations.
22.52 The examination in a course, whenever required, shall normally be held during the examination period at the end of the semester in which the course is taught.
22.53 Performance in each course shall normally be evaluated according to stipulated departmental requirements. Any departure from indicated ratios shall require the approval of the Faculty Board.

22.54 Overall performance in a course shall be assessed on a Percentage Scale, a Letter Grade and a Grade Point in accordance with General Regulations.

2.7 Award of Degree
22.71 To be awarded a degree, a student must satisfy the appropriate provision of General Academic Regulations from core and optional/ elective/general education courses.

DEPARTMENT OF AFRICAN LANGUAGES & LITERATURE

Bachelor of Arts Degree in African Languages and Literature

General Provisions
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in the Department of African Languages and Literature.

Programme Structure
Level 100
At Level 100 (Semesters 1 and 2), the Programme shall consist of a total of 12 credits from core courses (6 credits in each semester). Additional credits may be obtained from optional and other courses in accordance with Departmental Regulations 07.1 and 07.2, and General Regulation 00.62.

Level 200
At Level 200 (Semesters 3 and 4), the Programme shall consist of a total of 8 credits from core courses (4 credits in each semester). Additional credits may be obtained from optional and other courses in accordance with Departmental Regulations 07.1 and 07.2, and General Regulation 00.62.

Programme Structure
Levels 300 and 400
At Levels 300 and 400 (Semesters 5 to 8), the Programme shall comprise a Single Major, a Combined Major, a Major/Minor, Minor/Major and Multi-disciplinary Streams.

a) Single Major in African Languages and Literature
The Single Major Programme shall consist of a total of 24 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses in accordance with the Departmental Regulation 07.3.1 and General Regulation 00.62.

b) Combined Major/Major in African Languages and Literature
The Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of a total of 16 credits from the core courses and additional credits from the optional and other courses in accordance with Departmental Regulation 07.3.2 and General Regulation 00.62.

c) Combined Major/Minor with African Languages and Literature as a Major
The Combined Major/Minor with African Languages and Literature as a Major shall consist of 16 credits from the core courses and additional credits from the optional and other courses in accordance with Departmental Regulation 07.3.3 and General Regulation 00.62.

d) Combined Minor/Major with African Languages and Literature as a Minor
The Combined Minor/Major Programme with African Languages and Literature as a Minor shall consist of a total of 8 credits from the core courses and additional credits from the optional and other courses in accordance with Departmental Regulation 07.3.4 and General Regulation 00.62.

e) Multi-disciplinary Combined Degree Programme
The Multi-disciplinary Combined Degree Programme in African Languages and Literature shall consist of a minimum of 4 credits in accordance with Departmental Regulation 07.3.5 and General Regulation 00.62.

General Education Courses
The Department of African Languages and Literature offers three General Education Courses (GECs) under Area 6: World Civilisations.

Assessment and Examination
1.3.1 Performance in each course shall be evaluated by a combination of continuous assessment and final examination marks.
1.3.2 Continuous assessment shall normally constitute at least two pieces of work or one long paper per semester.
1.3.3 The duration of the final examination shall be two hours.

Progression
In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must maintain a cumulative GPA in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 100</th>
<th>ALL124</th>
<th>Introduction to the Study of Language and Linguistics (Co)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL123</td>
<td>The Characteristics of Human Language (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL131</td>
<td>Language and Communication in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL132</td>
<td>Language Instruction I: (Beginners Course in one of the Botswana Languages) Pre: ALL132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL134</td>
<td>Language Instruction II (Elementary course in one of the Botswana Languages) Pre: ALL132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL141</td>
<td>Introduction to African Oral and Written Literature (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL142</td>
<td>The Study of Drama in Indigenous Languages (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL151</td>
<td>Short Story Theory and Practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL152</td>
<td>Style in Writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL153</td>
<td>Introduction to the African Novel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL154</td>
<td>Theory of Humour in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 200</td>
<td>ALL221</td>
<td>Sound Systems in African Languages (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL222</td>
<td>Structure of Words in African Languages (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL231</td>
<td>The Perception and Transcription of African Language Sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL232</td>
<td>Language Instruction III (Intermediate Level course in one of the Botswana languages) Pre: ALL132 &amp; ALL134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL233</td>
<td>Generative Phonology in African Languages: (ALL221)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL234</td>
<td>Language Instruction IV (Intermediate Advanced Level course in one of the Botswana languages) Pre: ALL132, ALL134, &amp; ALL232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL241</td>
<td>History and Structure of the Setswana Novel (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL242</td>
<td>African Written Poetry (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL251</td>
<td>Folk Speech in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL252</td>
<td>Rites of Passage: A Study of Social Dramas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL253</td>
<td>The Sociology of Literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 300</td>
<td>ALL321</td>
<td>The Structure of the Sentence (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL322</td>
<td>The Structure of Meaning (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL323</td>
<td>Introduction to Stylistics and Discourse Analysis (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL331</td>
<td>Introduction to Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL332</td>
<td>Language Instruction V (Beginners' Level course in one of the major languages of Africa, Part I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL333</td>
<td>Introduction to Research Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL334</td>
<td>Introduction to Modern Theories in Grammatical Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL335</td>
<td>Language Instruction Course VI (Beginners' Level course in one of the major languages of Africa, Part III) Pre: ALL332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL336</td>
<td>Field Research Preparation and Proposal Writing Pre: ALL333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL341</td>
<td>Introduction to Literary Theory (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL342</td>
<td>African Oral Narratives (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL343</td>
<td>Introduction to African Popular Theatre (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL351</td>
<td>Politics and Southern African Poetry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL352</td>
<td>Epic Performance in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL353</td>
<td>African Oral Literature and the Media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL354</td>
<td>The Contemporary Setswana Novel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AFRICAN LANGUAGES & LITERATURE COURSE DESCRIPTIONS**

**ALL124 Introduction to the Study of Language and Linguistics (3)**

The content of the course will cover the study of human language and its significance in human life. It will also deal with linguistics as the scientific approach to language study, the branches of linguistics, how it is related to other disciplines and how linguistics can be applied to certain professions.

**ALL123 The Characteristics of Human Language (3)**

The content of this course will include an overview of the various theories about the origin of language and the relationship between language origin, the development of society and the structure of the brain. The course will also examine the difference between human language and animal communication as well as the unique characteristics of human language.

**ALL131 Language and Communication in Africa (2)**

The content of the course will include a study of the communication devices among human beings, with special reference to Africa. The course will also cover speech acts, writing systems as well as language acquisition phases and functions of language.

**ALL132 Language Instruction I (Beginners Course in one of the Botswana Languages) (2)**

The content will include an introduction to the culture and history of one of the Botswana Languages and training in the basic use of the language such as essential expressions and self-expression. The course will also introduce the students to some of the basic structures of the language.

**ALL134 Language Instruction II (Elementary Level) (2)**

The content of the course will include a study of the current state of one of the Botswana languages as well as a study of some selected areas of usage such as reporting, expressing one's feelings or seeking attention. The course will also introduce the students to the description of the language's morphology and syntax.
ALL141 Introduction to African Oral and Written Literature (2)
The content will include a study of sub-genres of African oral and written literatures such as oral and written stories (novel inclusive), oral and written poetry, traditional drama and written plays and their form and functions in society as well as how content and meaning is such literatures are manipulated in order to differentiate insider/writer from outsider/reader as well as men from women.

ALL142 The Study of Drama in Indigenous Languages (2)
The course deals with intrinsic and extrinsic aspects of drama with emphasis on the fact that plays are not primarily intended for reading but to be performed.

ALL151 Short Story Theory and Practice (2)
The course deals with theories of the short story but much of the time will be spent on reading short stories, critically analyzing them at the same time appreciatively enjoying and getting involved in their production.

ALL152 Style in Writing (2)
The course will deal mainly with the relationship between the author, the text and the readers with emphasis on aspects of style that enable messages to reach the addressees.

ALL153 Introduction to the African Novel (2)
The course will basically introduce students to genre classification, textual analysis of the novel and the sociopolitical as well as the gender and cultural history from which it emerged.

ALL154 Theory of Humor in Africa (2)
The course will focus on the structure and function of various types of the joke genre in Africa with a special focus on the text, context and performance aspects. The issue of gender and the influence of modern technology and the media on the genre will also be scrutinized.

ALL221 Sound Systems in African Languages (2)
The course content will include the definition of phonology, phonemic analysis and the function of distinctive features. The course will also consider the structure of the syllable and other prosodic phenomena.

ALL222 Structure of Words in African Languages (2)
The content of the course will include the definition and scope of morphology, the morpheme and its various types as well as allomorph variation. The course will then focus on the various types of morphemes and apply the principles underlying word formation, analysis to an African language; discuss the processes of term development in Setswana.

ALL231 The Perception and Transcription of African Language Sounds (2)
The content of the course will include practice in identifying, describing and transcribing speech sounds. Also students will be trained in classifying the sounds according to shared phonetic features.

ALL232 Language Instruction III (Intermediate Level) (2)
The course content will include a discussion of the current state of one of the Botswana languages and then train the students in oral and aural skills, texts comprehension and an introduction to the literature created in the language. It will also provide skills in the description of the structure of the target language.

ALL233 Generative Phonology in African Language Analysis (2)
The course content will include an introduction to generative phonology followed by the study of segmental, auto-segmental and metrical phonology. Setswana and one other African language will be used as case studies.

ALL234 Language Instruction IV (Intermediate/Advanced Level) (2)
The course content will include the discussion of the salient issues concerning the current and future situation of one of the Botswana languages. The course will enhance the students' oral and aural skills, text comprehension and a good understanding of the literature created in the language.

ALL241 History and Structure of the Setswana Novel (2)
The course will include an exploration of the evolution of the novel genre over time among the Setswana speaking peoples of Southern Africa and how it has been influenced by the social, cultural and political environment of the epoch of its composition and production, especially in terms of structure, artistic style and themes.

ALL242 African Written Poetry (2)
The course will include a holistic theoretical approach to African written poetry utilizing the Reader response, New Historicism and Feminist theories. Included will be the structure of poetry and the influences of various epochs on the form and content of African written poetry.

ALL251 Folk Speech in Africa (2)
The content of the course will cover aspects of performance, aesthetics, form and function of the various communicative speech acts such as proverbs, riddles, epithets, euphemisms and dysphemisms. The focus of the study will be on both literary texts and everyday discourse.

ALL252 RITES OF PASSAGE: A STUDY OF SOCIAL DRAMAS (2)
The course content will cover performance, structural patterns and functions of the calendar and life cycle ritual ceremonies that affect the individual and the community. Also the importance of symbolism, role-play and reversal of roles will be explored from various theoretical perspectives.

ALL253 The Sociology of Literature (2)
Basically, the course will include the importance of sociological considerations in understanding literature. These encompass the writer’s social situation, the production and the consumption of written literature and the impact of the historical, cultural and political environment on the production and consumption.

ALL254 Theory of Humor in Africa (2)
The course content will include the definition of meaning, types of meaning, semantic features and lexical relations. It will also consider the modes of meaning interpretation, context, deictic expressions, presuppositions and speech acts.
ALL323 Introduction to Stylistics and Discourse Analysis (2)
The content of the course will include the study of register, stylistic variation, discourse devices, discourse appropriateness and conversation structure.

ALL331 Introduction to Translation (2)
The course content will comprise the theory of translation; types, modes and problems of translation; the role of semantics, pragmatics and discourse analysis in translation and structural adaptation. Case studies will be taken from the Botswana languages as well as international languages spoken in Botswana.

ALL332 Language Instruction V (Beginners’ Level) (2)
The content of the course will include an introduction to the culture and history of one of the major languages of Africa and training in the basic use of the language such as essential expressions and self-expression. The course will also introduce the students to some of the basic structures of the language.

ALL333 Introduction to Research Methods (2)
The course will introduce students to both quantitative and qualitative research paradigms in African Languages and Literature. Also the content will include objectivity in scientific research, topic selection, definition of the problem, significance of a research study, formulation of hypotheses, research methodology, literature review and research proposal framework.

ALL334 Introduction to Modern Theories in Grammatical Analysis (2)
The course content will include a study of the current conception of a grammar, the modern grammatical theories, and their application to African language description.

ALL335 Language Instruction Course VI (Elementary Level) (2)
The course content will include the study of the current state of one of the major languages of Africa as well as a study of some selected areas of usage such as reporting, expressing one’s feelings or seeking attention etc. Also, the course will introduce the students to the description of the language’s morphology and syntax.

ALL336 Field Research Preparation and Proposal Writing (2)
The course will include techniques of fieldwork, data collection as well as archival research, resource planning, ethical issues and how to write a research proposal.

ALL337 Introduction to Computational Linguistics (2)
The course will introduce the students to a variety of topics in computer-based language analysis and processing among which three will be examined in a given semester. These topics will include: computational syntax, computational phonology, computational semantics, computational lexicography, speech synthesis, and machine translation.

ALL338 African Oral Literature and the Media (2)
The content will include a study of the multiple ways in which the mass media influence oral literature and how oral literature permeates media-manipulated texts and contexts as well as how it is portrayed by the media in its various forms.

ALL339 The Contemporary Setswana Novel (2)
The course will include a critical analysis of artistic styles, thematic trends, inter-textual relationships and literary quality of the Setswana novels recently written and published in Botswana and South Africa.

ALL341 Introduction to Literary Theory (2)
The course content will include five literary theories (mainly Structuralism, Psychoanalysis, Reception, Marxism and Deconstruction) from which at least three will be selected for discussion in a particular semester.

ALL342 African Oral Narratives (2)
The course will cover various sub-genres of institutionalized sub-Saharan African oral narratives such as myths, folktales and legends that will be studied, analyzed and interpreted from various theoretical viewpoints.

ALL343 Introduction to African Popular Theatre (2)
The course content will include the history of Popular Theatre in Africa from the pre-colonial to the postcolonial era with reference to socioeconomic problems facing Africa. Emphasis will be on practical drama and performances in schools and villages within the concept of intervention-participation-conscientisation.

ALL344 Politics and Southern African Poetry (2)
The course content will include an analysis and interpretation of translated or transcribed oral poetry that deals with socio-political criticism and the influence thereof of oral traditions on political poetry in general. Also included will be the influence of Ngritude and African-American poetry on Southern African protest and resistance poetry.

ALL345 Epic Performance in Africa (2)
The content of the course will include basic characteristics of African epics, their historical contexts, and the mode of delivery to the audience.

ALL346 Language Instruction VII (Intermediate Level) (2)
The course content will consist of the origin and migration of the Bantu and Khoesan languages of southern Africa, the settling of the Bantu languages in the Southern African region, the classification of the Bantu and Khoesan languages and their major characteristics.

ALL347 Introduction to Psycholinguistics (2)
The course will include the various approaches to psycholinguistics, language production and comprehension, the biological foundations of language and language pathology.

ALL348 Language Instruction VIII (Advanced Level) (2)
The course content will include discussion of the current state of one of the major languages of Africa, comprehension texts and an introduction to the literature created in the language, oral
and aural skills and structural analysis.

**ALL433 Research Project: Data Collection (2)**
The research project will be carried out through regular consultation with the relevant lecturer and will lead to the collection of data on the chosen research topic and documentation of the research findings.

**ALL434 Introduction to Applied Linguistics (2)**
The course content will include the study of mental representation of grammar, the child's processing of grammar, the psycholinguistic approach to mental process and the language learning processes.

**ALL435 Language Instruction VIII (Advanced Level) (2)**
The course synopsis will include a discussion of the salient issues concerning the current state and future situation of one of the major languages of Africa, advanced comprehension texts and a good understanding of the literature created in the language, advanced oral and aural skills and an in-depth descriptive knowledge of the language.

**ALL436 Research Project: Data Analysis and Interpretation (2)**
The course will consist of supervised work on hands-on data analysis, interpretation and research report write-up.

**ALL441 World Literature in Setswana Translation (2)**
The content of the course will include primarily literary texts translated into Setswana from other African languages, and secondly those translated from foreign/non-African languages. A study of how (and why) cultures are constructed, intertextualized and manipulated through translation will also be done.

**ALL442 Creative Writing, Theory and Practice (2)**
The content of this course includes techniques of writing in three genres: short stories, plays (drama) and poems (poetry).

**ALL443 Oral Poetry in Botswana (2)**
The course will cover the performance and significance of the various forms of indigenous oral poetry that are composed and rendered by oral artists under different cultural and situational contexts in Botswana.

**ALL451 Studies in African Aesthetics (2)**
The course content will include theories of aesthetic judgment and arguments propounded by philosophers, artists, literary critics and consumers of objects of aesthetic value.

**ALL452 Popular Culture in Africa (2)**
The course will include a study of culture, subcultures and visual culture with emphasis on music, dance, films/videos, television, computer and their inter-textual relationship. It will also include the ideology of mass culture, theories of consumption and its confrontation with politics, religion and the spirit of conservatism.

**ALL453 Women's Literature in Botswana (2)**
The course will include a study on various literary texts created by women in Botswana from oral to written, how they handle relations of power, sexuality and gender issues, their vision and communicative strategies.

**ALL454 Children's Traditions and Dramatics (2)**
The content of the course will include research on children's traditional games, storytelling, songs, and methods of dramatic improvisation and creative writing for children's books.

**ALL455 Postcolonial Theory and African Literature (2)**
The course examines from a historical perspective the national, transnational and translational boundaries of culture with reference to colonial and post-colonial literature.

**ALL456 Introduction to African Thought (2)**
The course content will include philosophical treatise that exist within the discipline of African philosophy and thought on various topics that by their very nature raise questions of philosophical discussion.

**GEC261 Languages of Botswana**
The content of the course will include the study of the various language groups that settled in what is now Botswana and how they have interacted over the years to give rise to the current language situation. The course will also discuss the role of Setswana as national and English as official language.
ter's Degree holders in English include professional employment in the fields of:

a) Education, teaching at secondary and tertiary levels or in the field of curriculum development in the Ministry of Education;
b) Print and Electronic Media;
c) Publishing;
d) Public Relations;
e) The Civil Service.

1.5.2 Training in English studies provides the recipient with the kind of adaptable mind that enables him/her to fit, with some additional training, into a wide range of managerial and administrative positions, including posts in financial and business institutions.

Course Structure

1.6.1 Courses in the Department of English shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the undergraduate programmes as outlined below.

1.6.2 In addition to the Department's courses, an undergraduate candidate majoring in English shall take General Education Courses (GECs) and electives in accordance with General Regulation 00.2124.

Level 100

Semester 1

Core Courses

ENG121 Introduction to English Language Description and Usage (3)
This course provides an overview of basic grammatical concepts and terms that students can apply to particular examples and difficulties of usage.

ENG113 Introduction to Literature: Prose (3)
This course is designed to introduce first-year students to the literary aspects of the essay and the (auto)biography, and to the structure and components of the novel and short story.

Semester 2

Core Courses

ENG131 Writing in English (3)
The course familiarises students with various rhetorical principles and examines various features of discourse types specific to particular genres.

ENG123 Introduction to Literature: Drama and Poetry (3)
This course is designed to introduce students to the literary and theatrical aspects of drama, and to the structure and literary strategies of poetry.

Level 200

Semester 3

Core Course

Band A: Language
ENG211 The Pronunciation of English (3)
This course introduces students to articulatory processes and the description of English sounds.

Optional Courses

Band B: English Literature
ENG212 Introduction to English Literature: The Novel (3)
The course seeks to introduce students to the development of the English Novel from its infancy in the 18th Century to modern times. The course broadly examines the emergence of the English Novel and the conditions under which it emerged.

Band C: African Literature
ENG213 Prose Literature of Southern Africa (3)
This course introduces students to prose literature of the Southern African region, covering various historical, political and social topics as they are written about in the literature of the region.

ENG223 The Drama of Southern Africa (3)
This course introduces students to the drama of Southern Africa, covering the genesis and development of Southern African drama, identifying a dramatic form that is Southern African, and relating, comparing and contrasting such dramatic forms to those from other parts of Africa.

Semester 4

Core Course

Band A: Language
ENG221 Introduction to English Linguistics (3)
An introductory overview of Descriptive Linguistics, viewed as a foundation for the study of English Language and Linguistics courses.

Optional Courses

Band B: English Literature
ENG222 Introduction to English Literature: Poetry and Drama (3)
The course seeks to introduce students to some of the major poets and dramatists in English Literature. It examines the works of some of the major poets and dramatists in English Literature from Chaucer up to the present time.

Band C: African Literature
ENG213 The Poetry of Southern Africa (3)
This course introduces students to the poetry of Southern Africa. While focusing on the modern written forms, it also points to the living, everyday experience of oral traditions of poetry. The course is broadly representative of the countries, themes and forms of poetic expression in the region.

Band G: Theatre Studies
ENG217 Theatre History (3)
This course introduces students to the study of Theatre, from a historical perspective. The course traces developments in Theatre across the world, highlighting circumstances that have either helped develop theatre or stifle it.

Level 300

Semester 5

Core Course

Band A: Language
ENG341 Introduction to Sociolinguistics (3)
The course introduces students to the relationship between language and society. It focuses in particular on the description of varieties of English and their use in various contexts, and on the analysis of and solutions to language problems, especially in developing countries.

ENG441 Introduction to Pragmatics (3)
This course introduces students to Pragmatics, a discipline which studies various factors involved in appropriate use and understanding of language. It looks at such factors as the speaker's intentions and how they are surmised by the addressee, the speaker's and addressee's background attitudes and beliefs, their understanding of the context in which the utterance is made, and their knowledge of how language can be used for a variety of purposes.

Band B: English Literature
ENG352 The Metaphysical Poets (3)
This course will chart the development during the 16th-17th Centuries of Metaphysical poetry
through its chief practitioners: Donne, Herbert, Vaughan and Marvell. It will study the poetic devices, styles and subjects that link together these writers as Metaphysical poets.

ENG332 English Romantic Poetry: The Early Romantics (3)  
This course deals with the early part of the literature that came to be known as English Romantic Poetry. Focus will be on Blake, Wordsworth and Coleridge.

ENG342 Elizabethan and Jacobean Literature: Drama (3)  
A study of Elizabethan and Jacobean Drama as a significant literary, cultural, political and religious expression of the Age.

ENG412 Introduction to Shakespeare (3)  
This course deals with the achievement of Shakespeare as the hallmark of the English literary tradition through an exploration of three of his more famous plays and a selection of his most popular poems.

Band C: African Literature  
ENG333 Critical Issues in Modern African Literature: Phases of Modern African Literature (3)  
An examination of the major critical issues and trends in Modern African literature using both creative materials and critical works of African authors.

ENG353 Currents of Thought in the Literature of the African Diaspora: African-American Literature (3)  
A survey of African-American literature from slave narratives to contemporary works.

ENG363 Oral Literature (3)  
This course acquaints students with orality as a cultural process. It develops an appreciation of verbal art and examines the fundamental sources and basis of the forms and structures of African and European literature.

ENG373 Botswana Literature (3)  
The course is a critical study of the novel, poetry, short story and drama of Botswana. It will also trace the development of the literature. The course will focus on stylistic, thematic and generic differences and similarities in the works.

Band D: World Literature  
ENG334 Commonwealth Literature (3)  
A selection of works of prose, fiction, drama, poetry and essays drawn from a number of literary traditions in The Commonwealth. The choice of texts for study will help students to reflect on the problematic use of the English language as a medium of literary expression in all Commonwealth societies.

Band E: Theory  
ENG415 Readings in Literary Theory 1 (3)  
The course surveys the changing conceptions of the nature and function of literature in the Western tradition from Plato and Aristotle in the Classical period to Tolstoy and Marx in the nineteenth century.

Band G: Theatre Studies  
ENG317 African Drama (3)  
The course offers students an opportunity to critically look at a representative selection of African dramatic literature. The course helps students to identify and appreciate the various themes explored in drama, its various styles and techniques and its role in society.

ENG327 Practical Theatre (6, 2 Semesters)  
This course is an introduction to the practice of theatre such as the processes of script analysis, research, rehearsal, stagecraft and performance. The course will offer students an opportunity to approach theatre holistically and to understand the relationships between the various arts that go into its making.

Semester 6  
Core Course  
Band A: Language  
ENG311 Modern English Grammar (3)  
This course is a detailed description and analysis of modern English grammar: meaning of grammar, word classes in English, English phrase types and English sentence structure.

Optional Courses  
Band A: Language  
ENG321 Usage in English (3)  
The course examines common problems associated with word class usage: noun/pronoun agreement, tense and voice in verbs, comparative and superlative forms in adjectives and adverbs) and sentence usage including modification, coordination, subordination and fragmentation.

ENG361 Morphology of English (3)  
The course provides students with an understanding of the morphological structure of English and their own languages. It also teaches students how to analyse any language morphologically.

Band B: English Literature  
ENG312 Milton (3)  
A detailed study of the seminal poetical writings of John Milton. It will place Milton in the context of the tradition of world Epic poetry and of English 17th Century poetry, and systematically explore Miltonic ideas about literary genre, politics, religion and philosophy.

ENG362 The Later Romantics (3)  
This course attempts to establish the relationship between the Early Romantics and the later in terms of theme and style. Focusing on Keats, Shelley and Byron, it will attempt to place the later Romantics in their proper literary and socio-political context.

ENG372 Elizabethan and Jacobean Poetry (3)  
The course examines how Elizabethan and Jacobean writers employed the poetic mode to express views on private and personal feelings, and on social and public issues.

Band C: African Literature  
Continued discussion of the major issues and trends in Modern African Literature using both creative works and critical writings of African authors.

ENG343 Modern African Poetry (3)  
The course deals with the modes, styles and themes of modern African poetry, and the socio-political and cultural influences that have shaped it. The traditions of modern African poetry are studied across periods and regions.

ENG393 Currents of Thought in the Literature of the African Diaspora: African-Caribbean Literature (3)  
A critical study of Caribbean literature within the context of the forces and conditions that occasioned its advent, and continues to impact its survival and future.
Band D: World Literature
ENG424 Twentieth Century American Literature (3)
A critical examination of twentieth-century American literature using representative texts of various genre-types: fiction, drama, and poetry.

Band G: Theatre Studies
ENG327 Practical Drama (6, 2 Semesters)
This course is an introduction to the practice of theatre such as the processes of script analysis, research, rehearsal, stagecraft and performance. The course will offer students an opportunity to approach theatre holistically and to understand the relationships between the various arts that go into its making.

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG421 Approaches to Syntax (3)
This course provides students with knowledge of various approaches to syntax with specific emphasis on functional approaches.

Optional Courses
Band A: Language
ENG331 Language Acquisition (3)
The course introduces students to the principles governing how humans acquire a first language, and a second or additional language. Important aspects of the course include the role of the brain and other speech organs in language processing, and learner strategies in Second Language Acquisition.

ENG471 Introduction to Literary Stylistics (3)
Students will be introduced to a range of linguistic theories on which they will draw in their analysis of selected texts.

Band B: English Literature
ENG422 The Development of the English Novel: The Early English Novel (3)
A chronological study of the development of the English Novel from its 18th Century inception by Defoe through to Romantic conceptions of the form. It will consider the novel’s evolution as a form of social commentary and its response to diverse social and political pressures.

ENG432 Victorian Poetry (3)
A study of 19th Century English Victorian poetry identifying the important themes and the characteristic poetic features of the age. It will consider the Victorian concerns about death, love, religious faith, marriage, the position of women, and the great growth and optimism of the age.

ENG442 Modern English Prose Fiction 1900-1930 (3)
The course is an intensive study of a major work by each of the following writers: Joseph Conrad, E.M Forster, D.H. Lawrence, Virginia Woolf and James Joyce. Students will explore and analyse the way these works relate to the intellectual, cultural and social concerns of the period.

ENG452 Shakespearean Drama (3)
This course considers a selection of Shakespearean tragic, comedic and historical texts, as well as their cultural setting, historical context and literary environment.

ENG413 The African Novel I (3)
A study of the African novel written in English or translated into English from indigenous and other languages of the continent of Africa. This study concentrates on the characteristic themes and concerns of the African novel.

ENG433 Introduction to Gender Issues (3)
This course will combine theoretical and practical approaches to literature in order to clarify how, and the extent to which, feminist criticism can be applied to analyse literary texts.

ENG427 Dramatic Literature (3)
The course explores the importance of play texts in the development of theatre traditions around the world. It is designed to help students appreciate the difference between drama as literature and drama as theatre.

Semester B
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG451 Introduction to Semantics (3)
This course introduces students to a range of linguistic theories on which they will draw in their analysis of selected texts.

Optional Courses
Band A: Language
ENG481 Language and Gender (3)
This course introduces students to Discourse Analysis, a discipline which is concerned with how language users produce and interpret language in situations and how these constructions relate to social and cultural norms, preferences, and expectations. Among other things, the course focuses on the nature and structure of written and spoken discourse and attempts to link the characterization of speaker/writer meaning and its explanation in the context of use.

ENG416 Research Essay (6, 2 Semesters)
The course offers the student the opportunity to conduct supervised research which should result in the submission of an essay of 5000 – 7000 words.

Band G: Theatre Studies
ENG417 Theory and Practice of Drama (6, 2 Semesters)
This is a course designed for students with an interest in the practice of theatre. It is intended to deepen students’ practical theatre skills and some important theories underlying the skills of acting, directing for the stage, set design, lighting, script-writing.

ENG442 Modern English Prose Fiction 1900-1930 (3)
The course is an intensive study of a major work by each of the following writers: Joseph Conrad, E.M Forster, D.H. Lawrence, Virginia Woolf and James Joyce. Students will explore and analyse the way these works relate to the intellectual, cultural and social concerns of the period.

ENG432 Victorian Poetry (3)
A study of 19th Century English Victorian poetry identifying the important themes and the characteristic poetic features of the age. It will consider the Victorian concerns about death, love, religious faith, marriage, the position of women, and the great growth and optimism of the age.

ENG442 Modern English Prose Fiction 1900-1930 (3)
The course is an intensive study of a major work by each of the following writers: Joseph Conrad, E.M Forster, D.H. Lawrence, Virginia Woolf and James Joyce. Students will explore and analyse the way these works relate to the intellectual, cultural and social concerns of the period.

ENG452 Shakespearean Drama (3)
This course considers a selection of Shakespearean tragic, comedic and historical texts, as well as their cultural setting, historical context and literary environment.

ENG413 The African Novel I (3)
A study of the African novel written in English or translated into English from indigenous and other languages of the continent of Africa. This study concentrates on the characteristic themes and concerns of the African novel.

ENG433 Introduction to Gender Issues (3)
This course will combine theoretical and practical approaches to literature in order to clarify how, and the extent to which, feminist criticism can be applied to analyse literary texts.

ENG427 Dramatic Literature (3)
The course explores the importance of play texts in the development of theatre traditions around the world. It is designed to help students appreciate the difference between drama as literature and drama as theatre.

Semester B
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG451 Introduction to Semantics (3)
This course introduces students to a range of linguistic theories on which they will draw in their analysis of selected texts.

Optional Courses
Band A: Language
ENG481 Language and Gender (3)
This course introduces students to Discourse Analysis, a discipline which is concerned with how language users produce and interpret language in situations and how these constructions relate to social and cultural norms, preferences, and expectations. Among other things, the course focuses on the nature and structure of written and spoken discourse and attempts to link the characterization of speaker/writer meaning and its explanation in the context of use.

ENG416 Research Essay (6, 2 Semesters)
The course offers the student the opportunity to conduct supervised research which should result in the submission of an essay of 5000 – 7000 words.

Band G: Theatre Studies
ENG417 Theory and Practice of Drama (6, 2 Semesters)
This is a course designed for students with an interest in the practice of theatre. It is intended to deepen students’ practical theatre skills and some important theories underlying the skills of acting, directing for the stage, set design, lighting, script-writing.

ENG442 Modern English Prose Fiction 1900-1930 (3)
The course is an intensive study of a major work by each of the following writers: Joseph Conrad, E.M Forster, D.H. Lawrence, Virginia Woolf and James Joyce. Students will explore and analyse the way these works relate to the intellectual, cultural and social concerns of the period.

ENG432 Victorian Poetry (3)
A study of 19th Century English Victorian poetry identifying the important themes and the characteristic poetic features of the age. It will consider the Victorian concerns about death, love, religious faith, marriage, the position of women, and the great growth and optimism of the age.

ENG442 Modern English Prose Fiction 1900-1930 (3)
The course is an intensive study of a major work by each of the following writers: Joseph Conrad, E.M Forster, D.H. Lawrence, Virginia Woolf and James Joyce. Students will explore and analyse the way these works relate to the intellectual, cultural and social concerns of the period.
poetry such as love, time, death, religion, and politics.

ENG472  The Development of the English Novel: The Victorian English Novel (3)
A chronological study of the traditional English Novel from the Romantic Movement to the end of the reign of Queen Victoria. Problems the novel address include the decline in religious faith due to Darwinism, and the social pressures of the increase of urbanisation and industrialisation.

ENG482  Modern English Drama (3)
An exploration of the stylistic and thematic advances made by British playwrights at the beginning of the 20th century and their imprint on the development of drama during the rest of the century.

ENG492  Modern English Poetry (3)
The poets of the period explore the material and spiritual dislocations that were signs of the break-up of Western Civilisation. The course studies the poetry of Hopkins, W.B. Yeats, T.S. Eliot and the poetry of WW1.

Band C: African Literature
ENG443  The African Novel II (3)
A study of the design and technical innovations to be seen in the African novel written in English or translated into English from indigenous and other languages of the continent of Africa.

ENG463  Gender Issues in African Literature (3)
Requiring a comprehensive reading of feminist theory and some literary texts, the course encourages students to draw on different disciplines to explore representations of motherhood and fatherhood in nationalist politics and literature; visual representations of female and male sexuality; mainstream feminist criticism and "womanism."

ENG453  Bessie Head (3)
This course focuses on Bessie Head as one of the major writers to emerge from Botswana and Africa.

Band D: World Literature
ENG434  Non-European World Literature (3)
This course provides an overview of the literatures of unfamiliar cultures, covering topics such as classical Asian poetry, the novel in China and Japan, magical realism in Latin America, identity and social status in multi-ethnic and multi-lingual societies, the problems of translation.

Band E: Theory
ENG435  Readings in Literary Theory II (3)
The course surveys the various and sometimes conflicting twentieth-century approaches to literature from Russian Formalism to the more recent Feminist and Postcolonial arguments.

ENG425  Seminar on Feminist Literary Theory (3)
Although the course demands an in-depth reading of feminist theory, emphasis will also be placed on interdisciplinary approaches. Students will be encouraged to consider how theoretical statements affect their own thinking and ideolo-

Band F: Project/Long Essay
ENG416  Project/Long Essay in Either Language or Literature (6, 2 Semesters)
The course offers the student the opportunity to conduct supervised research which should result in the submission of an essay of 5000 – 7000 words.

Band G: Theatre Studies
ENG417  Theory and Practice of Drama (6, 2 Semesters)
This is a course designed for students with an interest in the practice of theatre. It is intended to deepen students’ practical theatre skills and some important theories underlying the skills of acting, directing for the stage, set design, lighting, script-writing.

Programme Structure

Level 100
1.7.1 In each semester English shall comprise 6 credits made up of 1 core course in Language (3 credits) and 1 core course in Literature (3 credits).

Level 200
1.7.2 In each semester English shall comprise 6 credits made up of the following:

a) A core course in Language and;

b) A Literature course selected from the available options.

1.7.3 In a Combined Degree (Major/Major) Programme, English shall comprise the following at Level 300: In each semester, 6 credits made up of the core Language course and one Literature course selected from any of the bands.

1.7.4 In a Combined Degree (Major/Major) Programme, English shall comprise the following at Level 400: In each semester, 6 credits made up of the core Language course and one Literature course selected from any of the bands.

1.7.5 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme, where English is the Major subject, English shall comprise the following at Level 300:

(a) In each semester, 9 credits made up of the core Language course, one Literature course, and either another language course or another Literature course from a different band;

(b) Over the two semesters, a student may only take a maximum of 9 credits in Language.

1.7.6 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme, where English is the Major subject, English shall comprise the following at Level 400:

(a) In each semester, a minimum of 9 credits made up of the core Language course, one Literature course and another Language or another Literature, provided it is from a different band;

(b) Over the two semesters, a student may only take a maximum 9 credits in Language.

1.7.7 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme, where English is the Minor subject at Level 300:
In each semester English shall comprise 3 credits selected in consultation with the Head of Department of the Department’s course offerings from Level 300 and above.

1.7.8 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme, where English is the Minor subject at Level 400: In each semester, English shall comprise 3 credits selected in consultation with the Head of Department from the Department’s course offerings from Level 300 and above.

1.7.9 In a Single Major Programme at Level 300, English shall comprise the following in each semester: 15 credits made up of:

(a) The core Language course, one optional Language course, two Literature courses selected from different bands and another Language or Literature course also from a different band.

(b) Over the two semesters, a student must take at least 12 credits, the equivalent of 4 courses, in Language.

1.7.10 In a Single Major Programme at Level 400: In each semester, English shall comprise 15 credits made up of:

(a) A core Language course;

(b) One optional Language course;

(c) Two optional Literature courses provided that each course is from a different band;

(d) A project or long essay in Either Language or Literature (6 credits over two semesters).

1.7.11 In a Multidisciplinary Programme at
Levels 300 and 400, the student shall, in consultation with his/her tutor, select for credit relevant courses from the Departmental offerings. Such courses shall normally be at Level 300 and above.

Assessment and Examination

Student performance in each course shall be evaluated by taking into account continuous assessment and final examination, except in the case of ENG416: Research Essay, where the completed essay will take the place of a final examination.

Progression from Semester to Semester

In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must maintain a cumulative GPA in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.

DEPARTMENT OF FRENCH

Entry Requirements

1.1. Only candidates who have passed French in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent may be admitted to Level 100 Group A Advanced Programme.

1.2. Candidates without the above requirements may be admitted to Level 100 Group B Beginners Programme.

Level 100

Group A: Advanced Students (pre-requisite: BGCSE in French or equivalent).

Semester 1

Core Course
FRE111 Practical French Language (3)

Optional Courses
FRE112 Spoken and Written French (2)
FRE113 French for Specific purposes I (2)

Semester 2

Core Course
FRE121 Communication Skills in French (3)

Optional Courses
FRE122 Techniques of Oral and Written Expression (2)
FRE123 French for Specific Purposes II (2)

Group B: Beginners Programme.

Semester 1

Core Courses
FRE114 Basic French Language (3)

FRE115 Oral and Written Comprehension (3)

Semester 2

Core Courses
FRE124 Oral and Written Expression (3)
FRE125 Elementary French Language (3)

Level 200

Semester 3

Core Course
FRE211 Intermediate French Language (3)

Optional Courses
FRE212 Advanced French Language (3)
FRE213 French for Specific Purposes I (2)
FRE214 French Essay Writing
FRE215 Advanced Communicative French (3)
FRE216 Speaking Africa Countries (2)
FRE217 Speaking Africa Countries (2)
FRE218 Speaking Black African Countries.

Semester 4

Core Course
FRE221 Advanced French Language (3)

Optional Courses
FRE222 French and Dutch Language (2)
FRE223 Conversation (2)
FRE224 Conversation (2)
FRE225 African Literature: Study of a Genre, an Author (2)
FRE226 Research Essay (2)

Level 300

Semester 5

Core Course
FRE311 Proficiency in French Language (3)

Optional Courses
FRE312 Advanced French Language (3)
FRE313 Introduction to French Linguistics (2)
FRE314 French Culture and Civilization (2)
FRE315 Introduction to Text Analysis (2)
FRE316 French for Tourism and Hospitality I (2)
FRE317 Advanced French Linguistics (2)
FRE318 Aspects of French Thought (2)
FRE319 Theory of Translation (2)
FRE320 Advanced French Linguistics (2)
FRE321 African Caribbean Literature in French (2)
FRE322 Culture and Civilization of French-

Semester 6

Core Course
FRE325 Advanced Communicative French (3)

Optional Courses
FRE326 French Language through Drama (2)
FRE327 French Essay Writing
FRE328 French for Tourism and Hospitality II (2)

Level 400

Semester 7

Core Course
FRE411 French Language in Use (3)

Optional Courses
FRE412 Advanced French Language (2)
FRE413 Advanced French Linguistics (2)
FRE414 Advanced French Linguistics (2)
FRE415 Research Essay (2)
FRE416 Advanced French Linguistics (2)

Semester 8

Core Course
FRE426 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)

Optional Courses
FRE427 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)
FRE428 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)
FRE429 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)
FRE430 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)
FRE431 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)
FRE432 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)
FRE433 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)
FRE434 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)
FRE435 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)

Assessment

1. Performance in each course, with the exception of core courses and the Conversation course FRE224, shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment and the final examination in the ratio of 2:3. The final examination shall consist of a written paper of two hours duration.

2. In levels 100 to 400, the final examination for all core courses shall comprise a written paper of two hours' duration and an oral examination of 15 minutes in the ratio of 2:1.

3. The continuous assessment of each course shall comprise a minimum of two oral and written assignments and/or two tests.

4. The ratio between continuous assessment, oral examination and written examination shall be 2:1:2.

5. At Levels 100-400, a three hour Language Laboratory class shall be regarded as equivalent to one lecture hour.
Progression
1. In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must obtain a cumulative GPA of 0.9.
2. A minimum of credit in French in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent is required in order to be admitted to Levels 200, 300 and 400 courses.

Course Descriptions
FRE111 Practical French Language (3)
This course will reinforce students’ competence in oral and written French so that they have a more spontaneous use of the French Language. Emphasis will be laid on mastering basic language functions and linguistic structures learnt by students at secondary level for effective expression in French both written and verbal.

FRE112 Spoken and Written French (2)
This course aims at rapidly developing students’ fluency and accuracy in spoken and written French by equipping them with listening and reading skills and strategies. The content of the course will cover practical exercises both oral and written in the classroom and in the Language Laboratory.

FRE113 French For Specific Purposes I (2)
This French Language course aims at equipping students with reading techniques so as to understand and interpret texts of their area of specialization (economics, law and social sciences) written in French. The content comprises analysis and description of different types of the French discourse used in various disciplines offered to students at this level.

FRE114 Basic French Language (3)
This is an intensive French Language course intended to develop the student’s competence in French both orally and in writing. Emphasis is placed on elementary linguistic structures with emphasis on free expression (spoken and written), oral exercises in the Language Laboratory to consolidate communicative and linguistic competencies.

FRE115 Oral and Written Comprehension (3)
The aim of this course is to develop the students’ comprehension of spoken and written French by equipping them with some reading techniques and listening strategies and strengthening their ability to express ideas in French by means of both oral and written speech. The course will be based on oral and written comprehension of descriptive and narrative passages for essay writing.

FRE121 Communication Skills in French (3)
This course aims at developing the ability to use the French language efficiently in a practical way. It incorporates language activities related to all four skills that will enable learners to understand and communicate in spoken and written language.

FRE122 Techniques of Oral and Written Expression (2)
The aim of this course is to develop fluency and accuracy in spoken and written French. Students will be trained to introduce nuance in their oral expression through some communicative activities. Emphasis will be placed on techniques and strategies relevant to the planning and organization of writing tasks (writing reports, summaries, formal and informal letters, expressing opinions etc.).

FRE123 French for Specific Purposes II (2)
This French Language course aims at equipping students with reading techniques so as to understand and interpret texts of their area of specialization (Library and Information Studies, History etc.) written in French. The content comprises analysis and description of different types of the French discourse used in various disciplines.

FRE124 Oral and Written Expression (3)
This course aims at helping students use acquired communication skills so as to express themselves freely in accurate spoken as well as written French. Communication activities will be performed in both spoken and written French in order to give students self-confidence in the use of the French language.

FRE125 Elementary French Language (3)
This course will further develop communicative skills and introduce new speech acts and grammatical structures, and building up vocabulary on new topics in order for them to achieve proficiency in spoken and written French. The content includes the consolidation of language functions and grammatical structures already acquired and the introduction of new ones.

FRE211 Intermediate French Language (3)
This course aims at consolidating communicative fluency and grammatical accuracy in order to help students achieve proficiency in spoken French. Students will acquire useful oral and writing skills for setting up efficient communication in French within standard situations. Focus will be placed on the study of new language forms and functions. Classroom activities comprise oral and written exercises.

FRE212 Business, Scientific and Technical French (2)
This course aims at giving students an opportunity to learn the French language that can be used in professional situations of communication. A study of the French language mechanisms and structures that is necessary for understanding scientific and technical texts written in French. Study of the common and important commercial vocabulary related to the economic field.

FRE213 Introduction to French Literature (2)
This course is offered to introduce students to a variety of basic literary genres of particular authors from France: novels, short stories, and poems, of intermediate difficulty. The main objective will be to introduce students to a basic vocabulary of literary discourse in French, to make them aware of literary style and help them improve communicative competence in French.

FRE214 Introduction to Culture and Civilization of the French Speaking World (2)
This course intends to examine aspects of the culture and civilization of the French-speaking world. A survey will be made of civilization of French-speaking countries through authentic materials based on economy, social life and politics. Students will have the opportunity to compare aspects of culture and civilization of the French-speaking world with their own culture.

FRE217 French Language I (2)
This course is designed to develop students’ competence in spoken and written French so that they may have a more spontaneous use of the French language. Emphasis will be laid on mastering basic language functions and linguistic structures for effective expression in both spoken and written French. The content of this course will cover practical exercises, both oral and written, in the classroom and the language laboratory.

FRE221 Advanced French Language (3)
This course aims to help students express them-
The course will develop students' ability to use the skills so as to be able to use French effectively in oral and written exercises aimed at broadening vocabulary and improving style. Composition will cover the following areas: description, portrait and narration.

FRE222 French for International Relations, Tourism and the Hotel Industry (2)
This course aims at giving students an opportunity to learn the register of French typically used in a professional situation of communication. Study of vocabulary and savoir-faire related to international relations or to tourism and the hotel trade. Students are to choose one the following two topics: French for International Relations or French for Tourism and the Hotel Industry.

FRE223 Introduction to African Literature (2)
This course is offered to introduce students to a variety of basic literary genres of particular authors from francophone Africa: novels, short stories, and poems, of intermediate difficulty. The main objective will be to introduce students to a basic vocabulary of literary discourse in French, to make them aware of literary style and help them improve communicative competence in French.

FRE224 Conversation (2)
This course aims to develop students' ability to understand and produce general notions (basic concepts) and help them improve their command of spoken French. Real-life documents as well as communicative activities will be used to strengthen the students' ability to communicate in French. Conversation from a topic, a text, a film, a documentary etc. will lead to written exercises.

FRE227 French Language II (2)
The content of this course includes the consolidation of language functions and grammatical structures already acquired by students and the introduction of new ones. It will focus on essential linguistic (oral and written) communication skills so as to be able to use French effectively for the purpose of practical communication. This course will develop students' ability to use the French language in a practical way.

FRE311 French Novel and Poetry of the 19th Century (2)
This course aims at helping students achieve proficiency in spoken French and improve their written language. Students will obtain a deeper knowledge of the structure and functioning of the French language in order to write and speak better in French.

FRE312 French Novel and Poetry of the 19th Century (2)
The aim of this course is to introduce students to the major schools and movements of French literature through the works of some of the leading writers of the French tradition and to familiarize them with particular expressions and stylistic features used by selected authors in their work. Students will become familiar with major writers and schools of the French tradition and through them improve their language skills and familiarity with French culture. Students will read major works of French literature from selected movements of the 19th century.

FRE313 Introduction to French Linguistics (2)
This course will provide a general knowledge base for scientific study of the French language and equip students with facts and skills to enable them to describe the French language, and account for its internal changes. The course entails an elaborate description of phonetics, phonology, morphology, semantics and syntax of French.

FRE314 French Culture and Civilisation (2)
This course examines aspects of French culture and civilization that are relevant to the study of literature and language and constitutes an introduction to ways of life, social organization, law, politics, attitudes and mentalities, etc. Students will learn to appreciate better the civilization of France and be able to pursue studies of French language and literature.

FRE315 Introduction to Text Analysis (2)
This course intends to give students a basic familiarity with the genres of literature in French and with different ways of approaching texts: thematic studies, use of language, relationship between form and content, characterization and to familiarize them with the vocabulary used in French literary studies. This will include study of some schools and methods of literary criticism.

FRE317 French for Tourism and Hospitality I (2)
This is a practical course meant for students who want to acquire relevant language skills so as to communicate in a professional situation. The aim of the course is to help students acquire a basic knowledge of the type of French commonly used in the fields of the Hotel and Tourism Industry. It consists of the study of vocabulary and linguistic skills related to the profession of tourism and the hotel industry. This topic-based language course will cover real-life contexts and situations. Focus will be on oral and written communication related to the situations and practices in the area of hotel and tourism management. The course will also examine aspects of the culture and civilization of the French-speaking world.

FRE321 African and Caribbean Literature in French (2)
This course aims at introducing students to the main currents in Black African and Caribbean Francophone literature and to familiarize them with the history, culture, experiences and aspirations of Black African people and people of African descent in the Caribbean through the study of selected works of prose and poetry by major writers.

FRE322 Culture and Civilisation of French Speaking African Countries (2)
This course aims at giving students an opportunity to gain a basic familiarity with the civilization of French-speaking Black Africa and the ability to understand their own culture better by a comparison of the two. Aspects of the culture and civilization of French Speaking Black Africa will be examined.

FRE323 French Linguistics and Orthography (2)
This course introduces students to the understanding of the fundamental basis of the study of the French language and the application of the scientific knowledge of the French language to the understanding of transcription and of the writing systems of the language. It provides students with skills to manage possible language errors related to pronunciation and writing.

FRE324 French Essay Writing (2)
The course aims at improving students' performance and competence in objective reading and writing. Students will learn and put into practice reading and writing techniques. The content will cover practical exercises such as: note-taking,
summarizing, letter writing, writing paragraphs and compositions, reading and writing different types of texts.

FRE325 Advanced Communicative French (3)
The aim of this course is to help students use acquired communication skills so as to express themselves freely and accurately in spoken and written French. The course content will cover practical exercises that will help learners to use French in simulated communicative situations.

FRE 327 French for Tourism and Hospitality II (2)
This course aims at developing students’ communicative skills relevant to the profession of tourism, hotel management and the catering industry. More precisely, it aims at reinforcing all basic grammatical structures and vocabulary acquired through language functions in order to equip students with the necessary oral and writing skills for setting up an efficient communication in French within professional situations linked to Tourism and the Hotel Industry.

FRE411 French Language in Use (3)
The aim of this course is to develop particular communicative skills and strategies and to carry out some communicative activities as well as to familiarize students with the grammatical, stylistic, and linguistic problems in spoken versus written French. Students will study form and structure of the French language to improve their skills in conversation and writing.

FRE412 Currents of Thought in the French Speaking Africa (2)
The aim of this course is to familiarize students with currents of thought in the French-Speaking African and Caribbean countries. A study of selected philosophers and thinkers in Africa and the Caribbean: S. Signora. Césaire, F.Fanon, J.Roumain, Rabemananjara, S. Adotevi, V.Y. Mudimbe, A.Memmi etc.

FRE413 Theory of Translation (2)
This course provides students with skills to handle translation problems between French and English, Setswana and vice versa as well as an overview of theoretical problems of translation. It will also examine the role played by the vocabulary, structure and meaning in the theory of translation from French to English and vice versa.

FRE414 Modern French Literature: Study Of a Genre or an Author (2)
The aim of this course is to give students an in-depth knowledge of a particular author, genre, literary movement, or subject in Modern French literature. Students will read several works of the chosen author, genre, or subject.

FRE415 Research Essay (2)
This course provides students with the opportunity to conduct research and use their linguistic skills to write on a chosen topic of linguistic, literary, or cultural interest. Students will be trained in research methods and carry out such research under staff supervision that will result in submission of a finished dissertation. Admission to this course is subject to Departmental approval.

FRE421 French Language Through Drama (2)
The aim of this course is to develop particular communicative skills and strategies through the use of some theatrical techniques. Students will have an opportunity to learn the French language while writing their own plots, which they will perform subsequently. This course includes the use of some theatrical techniques and practical exercises and discussions of students’ work.

FRE422 Advanced French Linguistics (2)
The course introduces students to the scientific description of the French language with special emphasis on the phonetics/phonology, morphology/syntax and semantics. The approach is descriptive. Theoretical approaches (generativist, structuralist, transformationalist, etc.) will be referred to without being taken as the explicit basis of the language analysis.

FRE423 Translation (2)
This is a practical course that will give students skills to handle the translation of French into accurate English and vice versa using simple texts and writings, real-life documents and interpretation of speech.

FRE424 African Literature: Study of a Genre or an Author (2)
This course gives students more in-depth knowledge of particular authors, genres, literary movements, or subjects in Francophone African literature. Students will read several works of selected authors, and gain an ability to apply what they have learnt to their other studies. Readings on the chosen topic assigned by the staff member. Possible topics include Negritude, women in Africa, tradition and modernity.

FRE425 Aspects of French Thought (2)
The aim of this course is to familiarize students with currents of thought about France on social, economic, political, and cultural problems, as well as their philosophical underpinnings, as seen by influential French writers since the 1930s. Students will read selections from major French intellectuals of the post-war period and from current journals.

FRE426 Advanced Communication Skills in French (3)
This course aims at reinforcing students’ competence in oral and written expression and comprehension so as to give them more confidence in speaking and discussing a variety of topics.

FRE427 Caribbean Literature in French (2)
The objective of this course is to introduce students to the history, culture, experience and aspirations of people of African descent in the French speaking Caribbean. Course work includes a study from a selected period, theme, and piece of the work of an author.

DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY

Degree Programmes
Bachelor of Arts in Archeology
Bachelor of Arts in History

Entry Requirements
The normal Entry Requirements are as stipulated in General Regulation 20.20 and in Departmental Regulation 1.4

(A) Archeology Course Descriptions

ARC101 Introduction to World Prehistory
The course aims to provide students with a basic understanding of world history, and provides students with an opportunity to appreciate prehistory on a global scale: 2 lecture hours per week.

ARC102 Introduction to Archeology
Introduction to the nature of archaeological data and analysis of the state of knowledge of the subject in Botswana through, and discussion of case studies from Botswana in particular and southern and eastern Africa in general. 2 lecture hours per week.
To test student initiative in choosing and preparing a Research Project Proposal based on analysis of previous research reports and publications. (pre-requisite for ARC 471 and compulsory for Single Major) 3 lecture/tutorial hour per week.

ARC113 Stone Tools (Lithics)
This course introduces students to the basics of stone tool technology and typology-- including learning how to make stone tools, how to identify and describe them, and how others in the region have classified stone tools into various types. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC114 Ceramic Analysis
This course introduces students to the basics of ceramic technology and typology-- including how to make pots, how to identify and describe whole vessels and potsherds, and how others in the region have classified ceramics into various types. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC115 Field Techniques
This course introduces students to basic archaeological field skills--including map reading, orienteering, map-making, survey, excavation, sorting and cataloguing finds. Students spend two weeks intensive fieldwork training conditions under supervision. 3 credits per 2 weeks.

ARC116 Archaeological Interpretation
This course teaches students how archaeologists go about interpreting the past through a series of simulated archaeological problems that the students solve. The problems closely resemble actual archaeological evidence. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC 317 Bioarchaeology I
Study of the relationship between human beings and their natural and social Environments, integrating data from botanical and faunal remains. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC121 Ethnoarchaeology
This course introduces learners to basic concepts in ethnoarchaeology, the study of contemporary societies/ cultures and their relevance to archaeology. It focuses on the principles and development of the subdiscipline. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC122 Special Subject (Previous Title: Case Studies in Ethnoarchaeology)
Study of a subject of current research and debate and/or topical issues in Botswana and Southern African archaeology, based on current staff expertise--e.g. a study of Rock Art. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC223 Research Methods in Archaeology
(Previous Title: Reading Material Culture in Archaeology)
Equipping students with basic knowledge and skills to conceptualize, plan and carry out archaeological research and data analysis. 3 lecture/tutorial hours per week.

ARC401 Archaeology of Botswana
The course traces the history of archaeological research in Botswana and highlights major influences in and contributions to scholarship, and the impact of archaeology on the reconstruction of Botswana’s history and museum development. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC 402 Advanced Archaeological Theory
This course focuses on the ‘New Archaeology’ from the 1960s, including the influence of Euro-American researchers on theoretical archaeology and reviewing contributions of researchers in other parts of the world. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC 412 Human Origins
This course presents the naturalist’s point of view of evolution and human origins, from around 5 million years ago until farming began about 10,000 years ago--discussing the origins of upright posture, tools, languages, and our extraordinary brains. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC 413 Complex Societies (Previous Title: Farmers And State Formation)
This course examines why people turned to food production after more than a million years of successful hunting and gathering. Case studies cover food production, sedentary life, and complex societies in the Near East, Africa and Central America. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC 421 Geoarchaeology
The course focuses on spatial and temporal distributions of archaeological sites, landscape topography, geomorphology and subsurface stratigraphy, and site context formation theory. Practical classes include terrain unit evaluation. 3 lecture hours per week.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credit Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARC101</td>
<td>Introduction to Archaeology</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC102</td>
<td>Introduction to World Prehistory</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC201</td>
<td>Introduction to Archaeological Theory</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC203</td>
<td>Introduction to African Archaeology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC202</td>
<td>Introduction to Archaeological Methods</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC204</td>
<td>Introduction to Environmental Archaeology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC301</td>
<td>Archaeological Heritage Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC323</td>
<td>Research Methods in Archaeology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC302</td>
<td>Quantitative Techniques</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC304</td>
<td>Research Project Proposal</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC315</td>
<td>Field Techniques (optional)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC401</td>
<td>Archaeology of Botswana</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC417</td>
<td>Heritage Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC417</td>
<td>Research Project Fieldwork &amp; Preliminary Report</td>
<td>3 (core for Single Major Only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC422</td>
<td>Bioarchaeology II (Previous Title: Faunal And Floral Analysis)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC422</td>
<td>Bioarchaeology II</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC471</td>
<td>Research Project: Fieldwork &amp; Preliminary Reports</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC472</td>
<td>Research Proposal: Intermediate &amp; Final Reports</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC462</td>
<td>Reconstructing African Heritage through Multimedia</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS102</td>
<td>Introduction to the Study of History</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS201</td>
<td>African Cultures &amp; Civilisations to C.1500</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS202</td>
<td>Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slave Trade C.1500-c.1800</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS211</td>
<td>The Rise of Europe to World Dominance</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS212</td>
<td>Catastrophe &amp; Survival in 20th Century Europe</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS213</td>
<td>Poverty, Economic Growth and Affluence in Western Europe and America</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS214</td>
<td>Agriculture and Industrialisation in the World Economy to 1945</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS205</td>
<td>Historical Research Methods &amp; Historiography of Botswana</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(A) BA in Archaeology

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
- ARC101: Introduction to Archaeology (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
- ARC102: Introduction to World Prehistory (2)

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
- ARC201: Introduction to Archaeological Theory (3)
- ARC203: Introduction to African Archaeology (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
- ARC202: Introduction to Archaeological Methods (3)
- ARC204: Introduction to Environmental Archaeology (3)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
- ARC301: Archaeological Heritage Management (3)
- ARC323: Research Methods in Archaeology (3)
- ARC302: Quantitative Techniques (3)
- ARC304: Research Project Proposal (3) (core for Single Major Only)
- ARC315: Field Techniques (optional)
- ARC401: Archaeology of Botswana (3)
- ARC417: Heritage Management (3)
- ARC417: Research Project Fieldwork & Preliminary Report (3 credits core for Single Major Only)
- ARC422: Bioarchaeology II (3)
- ARC471: Research Project: Fieldwork & Preliminary Reports (3)
- ARC472: Research Proposal: Intermediate & Final Reports (3)

(B) BA in History

HISTORY COURSES DESCRIPTIONS

HIS102: Introduction to the Study of History
The course applies the skills and methods of university historians to selected aspects of the history of Botswana and neighbouring areas, raising questions of individual identity, gender, class, language and ethnicity, inheritance and heritage. 2 lecture hours per week.

HIS201: African Cultures & Civilisations to C.1500
Selected themes in prehistory, state formation, trade, and small-scale societies— from the origin and spread of modern humans, via Ancient Egypt, Ethiopia and West African kingdoms, to the rise and fall of Great Zimbabwe. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS202: Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slave Trade C.1500-c.1800
From later Islamic and Christian history in North Africa, via the growth of coastal and interior trading states, slave trading in the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, with greater depth on south-eastern Africa. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS211: The Rise of Europe to World Dominance
Rise of Europe from the Middle Ages to its position of world dominance in the late 19th century, including religion, social and cultural change, science and technology, witchcraft and deviance, and changing relations with other civilizations. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS212: Catastrophe & Survival in 20th Century Europe
From world dominance to near self-destruction, and then recovery in three major cycles: the two world wars; the era of Fascism; and the era of Communism—including extremism, economic collapse and the Nazi Holocaust, with use of if Im. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS213: Poverty, Economic Growth and Affluence in Western Europe and America
Examining the transformation of Western European and American economies through the development of trade in medieval Europe, feudal economies, markets during the Renaissance, and the industrialization of Western Europe and North America. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS214: Agriculture and Industrialisation in the World Economy to 1945
Comparing the rise of capitalism in Britain, France, Germany, Russia and parts of southern and eastern Europe, with Japan and North America—with emphasis on an agrarian transition, commercial revolutions, economic crisis and recovery. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS205: Historical Research Methods & Historiography of Botswana
Stages and processes in the research and writing of history—including topic selection, data collection, evaluation, dating analysis and interpretation of data, and systematic presentation of data as coherent meaningful accounts of the past. Debates and research lacunae on historical study of Botswana ecology and environment, culture, family life, migration and settlement, trade and production, technological change, elite formation, labour relations, political institutions, religion, education, etc 4 lecture/tutorial hours per week.

HIS306: Introduction to the Philosophy of History & Research Project Proposal
The course discusses the issues relating to the scientific or non-scientific, objective or non-ob-
HIS331 African Diaspora in the Islamic World & Asia
In the context of the Saharan and Indian Ocean slave trades, contrasting mining and plantation labour with domestic labour and military employment in the Mediterranean and the Near East, Arabia and Persia, and the islands of the Oceans. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS332 African Diaspora in the Caribbean & The Americas
Why Africans rather than natives became slaves, African cultural survivals, slavery within mercurial and industrial economies, debates about emancipation, subsequent racial segregation, black political and intellectual movements. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS333 Introduction to Foreign Policy, Diplomacy and International Relations, 1800 to 1945
The concepts of diplomacy, foreign policy and international relations, and their historical evolution; operation of the international system and role of big powers therein. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS334 Superpowers in the 20th Century
Conceptual frameworks for analysing the international system; main historiographical issues concerning the role of the big powers and the survival of small states. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS335 Colonial Latin America to 1830
Conquest and establishment of colonial rule by Spain and Portugal; the indigenous people of Latin America, impact of conquest, the establishment of colonial rule, and anticolonial struggles. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS336 Modern Latin America
Independence and the failure of Pan Americanism; military dictatorships to bureaucratic-authoritarianism; revolutions in Mexico, Cuba and Nicaragua and the rise of modern Latin American democratic states. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS341 From Slavery to Colonialism in West Africa
Contact with Islam, growth of states, impact of slave trade and Scramble for colonisation, similarities and differences between French and British colonial conquest and systems of rule and changes within them. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS342 Modern Anglophone, Francophone & Lusophone West Africa
Political and socioeconomic changes since the outbreak of the Second World War: late colonial constitutions; early independence and popular betterment; military-bureaucratic coups; structural adjustment and multiparty democracy. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS343 Trade & Politics in Central African Kingdoms
Socio-economic and political organization before contact with Europeans, contact with Europeans and its impact, imposition of colonial rule, and African reaction to colonial policies up to the early 20th century. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS344 The Roots of Crisis in Modern Central Africa
Colonial administrations and settler economies, resistance to colonialism, industrial workers, modern forms of nationalism in Zambia and Malawi, armed struggles in Angola and Congo; ‘structural adjustment’ and multiparty democratisation. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS401 Mfecane & the Settler Scramble for Southern Africa
Historical debates on coastal frontiers in the 18th century, interior states and Mfecane/ Difaqane wars, settlers and missionaries; diamond and gold mining, migrant labour; African states, Boer republics, British, German and Portuguese colonies. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS412 Twentieth Century South Africa
Confrontations between white Afrikaner nationalism and black African nationalism; racial segregation and apartheid; worker resistance, native reserves and ‘Bantustans’; liberation struggles up to 1994 and achievements since then. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS414 Chiefs, Commoners & the Impact of Colonial Rule in Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland
Forms of ‘parallel rule’ through paramount chiefs; economic and political relations with the South Africa and Southern Rhodesia; contrasting political development into kingdoms and a republic; post-colonial internal and regional developments. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS416 Land, Labour & Liberation in Mozambique, Namibia & Zimbabwe
Contrasting colonial conquests and heritages within the context of South African regional domination, white settler and company land and labour alienation; armed liberation movements, post-colonial insurgence and land reclamation. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS421 Political Ideas during the Ancient and Medieval Periods
Concepts and definitions, and the development of the philosophy and theory of the State from the Ancient to Medieval periods, to understand the origins and historical background to later political thoughts, cultures and theories. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS422 Political Ideas during the Modern and Contemporary Periods
Further developments in the philosophy and theory of the State and the organisation of societies to those students can understand political theory and ideas and participate effectively in modern societies and the world system. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS431 Natives & Settlers in Early North America
The dispossession of native North Americans by European settlers between the Arctic and the Caribbean; frontier penetration and settlement by free Europeans and slave Africans, native-settler contact, and land alienation through the 19th century. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS432 Industrialisation & Expansion in Modern North America
Themes from the American Revolution to the present day: expansionism/imperialism and isolationism; extensive use of intensive agriculture; rapid development of extractive and manufacturing industries; markets, settlement and urbanisation; origins of the Information Age. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS433 Civilization and Modernization in China & Japan
Contrasting two ancient cultures and paths to modernization: Japan’s conversion into a world power with consumer-based capitalism, and
China's convulsions, socialist experimentation, and subsequent political and economic developments. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS434 Ancient, Colonial & Independent India & South Asia**
Ancient civilizations, Muslim and early European coastal trade; British colonial rule and transformations during the colonial period; nationalism, independence and partition; different trajectories of India, Pakistan, etc. since independence. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS435 Modern Britain: Nation, Class, Gender, Race, Religion, Culture, Power**
Creation of the 'imagined community' of Britain out of disparate cultures and 'nations'; elites and power structures, class conflict; gender assertion and ideas of 'race'; postimperial crisis of identity and European Union membership. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS436 The British Empire & Commonwealth in World History**
From 16th century rise to 20th century decline of British world power: constitutional development of settler colonies into Dominions, contrasted with non-settler colonies; Commonwealth issues and membership crises since the 1950s. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS437 Civilisations of the Ancient Near East & Mediterranean**
Science and technology, ancient slavery, identifying major achievements, of the 'hydraulic societies' of ancient Iraq and Egypt, through the real or supposed 'democracy' of ancient Greece, to the end of the Roman and Byzantine empires. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS441 Slave Trade & Colonial Conquest in East Africa**
Environmental, cultural and chronological survey of hunting-gathering and pastoralism on the plains to settled agricultural kingdoms; trading in ivory and slaves by Portuguese, French, and Swahili; British and German intervention and colonial partition. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS442 Ecology & Empire, Conservation & Politics in Eastern Africa**
Human settlement in relation to natural environment, and effects of political intervention and land partition—including tsetse-fly and malaria, peasant farmers and white settlers, wildlife conservation and peasant 'betterment' schemes. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS445 Globalisation and Third World Economies in Africa, Latin America and South-east Asia**
How Africa found its modern development path compared with Latin America and South-East Asia: 'African capitalism', agrarian transition, technology and productivity, incorporation into the international economy, and debates in economic history. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS446 Growth, Policy and Poverty in Africa, Latin America, South & South-East Asia**
Comparing pre-colonial, colonial and postcolonial world regions: institutional settings, rise of capitalist development, contending rationalities in the agricultural sector, famines, hunger, and starvation; persistence of poverty and social exclusion. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS443 Islam, Imperialism & the Military in the Making Of Modern Egypt**
Islamization and Arabization of the Nile valley and the coast; Ottoman imperial rule; France and Britain; rise of Egyptian nationalism; Sudan condominium; Nasser and Nasserism in the Arab world; Egypt's role in Palestine, Islamic fundamentalism. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS444 French Colonialism & Its Aftermath in North Africa**
Ottoman imperial rule but Morocco independent; imposition of French colonial rule, alienation of land, white settlement; rise of nationalism and socialism, anti-colonial insurgence; post-colonial developments and contemporary problems. 3 lecture hours per week.

**HIS471 Research Project: Fieldwork & Preliminary Report**
If the HIS 304 proposal has been accepted by the History Department Board, the student is allocated a supervisor and conducts fieldwork during the winter period. The preliminary draft report is presented at a seminar during Semester I. 2 seminar hours (3 credits) per week.

**HIS472 Research Project: Intermediate & Final Reports**
If the HIS 472 proposal has been judged satisfactory by the History Department Board, the student presents a preliminary draft report to a seminar and then submits a final report at the end of Semester II. 2 seminar hours (6 credits) per week.

**HIS473 Special Seminar I**
Special seminars are based on reading and resources recommended by the expert staff member in a chosen topic. Each seminar consists of an essay presentation by one student and a brief critique of by another student, followed by discussion. 3 seminar hours per week.

**HIS474 Special Seminar II (Description as for HIS 474)**
**HIS501 History Research Methodology**
The nature of history and the techniques utilized for research and writing in the discipline--collection evaluation analysis and interpretation of data, and the presentation of the data in a coherent meaningful account in support of a point of view. 3 seminar hours per week.

**HIS602 Philosophy of History**
The course deals with the theoretical and philosophical aspects of historical studies. It focuses on theory of knowledge or epistemology of history as a discipline, and the reflections of scholars on the course of human history as a whole. 3 seminar hours per week.

**HIS603 Historiographical Issues in Precolonial Southern Africa**
The course commences by considering the major "schools" of historical writing about Southern Africa, and then examines debates among historians, mainly in the 19th century, ending with colonization and African responses to it. 3 seminar hours per week.

**HIS604 Historiographical Issues in Modern Southern Africa Add "Em"**
The focus is on continual discourse and debate among historians concerning topics mainly in the 20th century, to give students a good grasp of the main historiographical trends and enable them to be more analytical and critical in their own research. 3 seminar hours per week.

**HIS611 Introduction to the Economic History of Africa**
The course takes a topical approach to economic development in Africa, focusing on the origins of "African capitalism" and industrialization in North and Sub-Saharan Africa, and on controversies and debates in the economic history literature. 3 seminar hours per week.
FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

HIS612 Case Studies in the Economic History of Africa
Topics range from the economy of precolonial Africa, through critical examination of contending rationalities in agriculture, institutional rigidities and the political economy of famines, hunger, and starvation, persistence of poverty and economics of social exclusion. 3 seminar hours per week

HIS613 Political and Economic Aspects of Imperialism
European imperialism has had a profound impact on recent world history, and yet it is surprisingly hard to explain satisfactorily. This course reviews the main political and economic explanations for the phenomenon. 3 seminar hours per week

HIS614 Cultural and Environmental Approaches to the History of Imperialism
The course considers scholarly issues and approaches to the shock between culture and imperialism, including "postcolonial" theory, on the topics of empire, race and gender; the Orientalism debate; and environmental and scientific imperialism. 3 seminar hours per week

HIS615 History of Religion in Africa
An overview of the historical study of religion in Africa, including introduction to the main theoretical issues. Students completing this course should be familiar with and able to discuss the main ideas current in the historical study of African religion. 3 seminar hours per week

HIS616 Religion and Power in Botswana
The course surveys relations between religion and power, including "traditional religion" and chieftainship, impact of missionaries and traders, "church and state", conflicts over medicine, rise of independent churches, and impact of post-colonial secularism. 3 seminar hours per week

HIS627 Archaeology for Teachers
Designed for secondary school teachers to update and expand their knowledge of three archaeological modules: human evolution, the origins of food production, and the origins of civilization, including current theories and case studies. 3 seminar hours per week

HIS651, HIS 652, HIS 653, & HIS 654 Special Topics I, II, III, & IV
Topics vary from year to year, but are designed to immerse students in recent advanced scholarship in areas of expertise of current staff. The course begins with a historiographical introduction by the staff member, and proceeds as a seminar under his/her guidance. 3 seminar hours per week

HIS662 Research Proposal for Dissertation
This course provides a structure in which students prepare their research proposals. Students will meet regularly with assigned staff members, and will be required to make periodic reports. 2 credits/ tutorial hours per week

GEC265 Two World Wars on Film
The course introduces students to public discourse on the two World Wars of the 20th century—how Europe, America and Japan, and their colonial empires, underwent war and genocide; the impact of warfare on their economies and societies; and how visual media have represented, interpreted and manipulated events. 2 lecture hours

GEC362 Africa and its Past on Film
Introducing students to the creation and recreation of the history and imagery of Africa in cinema and television, how the African past has been represented in major television series, and how Southern Africa people, particularly Zulu and Khoe and San, have been represented in drama and documentary films. 2 lecture hours

GEC462 Reconstructing African Heritage through Multimedia
The course uses specially designed audiovisual multimedia materials to study the major achievements of African prehistory evidenced by the remains of material cultures, the representation of material heritage by archaeologists, and how African heritage can be maintained and marketed. 2 lecture hours

(B) BA in History
Level 100
Semester 1
ARC101 Intro. World to Pre-History (core) (2)
Semester 2
HIS102 Intro. to the Study of History (core) (2)
Level 200
Semester 1
HIS201 African Cultures and Civilisations to c. 1500 (core) (3)
Semester 2
HIS202 Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slav Trade c.1500 -1800 (core) (3)
Level 300
Semester 1
HIS305 Historical Research Methods and Historiography of Botswana (core)(3)
Semester 2
HIS 306 Philosophy of History and Research Project Proposal (core) (4)
Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
HIS401 Tsifane and the Settler Scramble for Southern Africa (3)(core)
Semester 2
Alternate Core Courses
HIS412 Segregation, Apartheid & African Nationalism in South Africa (3)
HIS414 Chiefs, Commoners & the Impact of Colonial Rule in Botswana, Lesotho & Swaziland (3)
HIS416 Land, Labour & Liberation in Mozambique, Namibia & Zimbabwe (3)
Level 600
Semester 1
Core Courses
HIS601 History Research Methodology (3)
HIS603 Historiographical Issues in Precolonial Southern Africa (3)
Semester 2
Core Courses
HIS602 Philosophy of History (3 credits)
HIS604 Historiographical Issues in Modern Southern Africa (3)
Assessment
Assessment shall be as per Academic Regulations 00.8
Award of Degree
The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.852

DEPARTMENT OF LIBRARY & INFORMATION STUDIES
CAR100 Special Regulations for the Certificate in Archives and Records Management
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and Faculty of Humanities
Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

**Entrance Requirements**
The normal requirements for entrance to the certificate in Archives and Records Management Program shall be: Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent with at least passes in three subjects including English. Applicants with at least one year work experience in a registry or related institutions will be preferred.

**Programme Structure**
The Certificate in Archives and Records Management extends over two semesters for full-time study or four semesters for part-time (distance learning/sandwich) study in the single subject Archives and Records Management leading to the award of the Certificate in Archives and Records Management. Students can take a minimum of 6 credits of optional courses or elective courses. The Program shall consist of a minimum of 30 credits. All core courses must be passed.

**Level 100**
**Semester 1**
**Core Courses**
- LIS110 Administration and Management of Information Centers (3)
- REC011 Introduction to Records Management (3)
- REC012 Introduction to Archives (3)
- REC015 Introduction to Office Skills (3)
- REC017 Introduction to Information Technology (3)

**General Education Courses**
- GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC121 Computing and Information Skills

**Fundamentals I (2)**
**Semester 2**
**Core Courses**
- REC013 Intro to Principles of Archival Arrangement (3)
- REC014 Search Room Operations (3)
- REC016 Practicum (3)

**Optional Courses**
- LIS104 Intro. to the Internet and Web Design (3)
- LIS106 Information Resources Management (3)

**Progression from Semester to Semester**
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

**Assessment and Examinations**
Evaluation of students’ performance in the Certificate in Archives and Records Management Program shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

**DIS110 Special Regulations for the Diploma in Library and Information Studies**
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

**Entrance Requirements**
The normal requirement for entrance to the Diploma in Library and Information Studies Program shall be a Certificate in Library and Information Studies from this University or its equivalent from any other recognized institution, AND at least one year’s experience in a library or related institution. Candidates with a Certificate in Library and Information Studies from this University shall be admitted directly to Level 2 of the Diploma Program. Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent. All candidates for admission must have a minimum of credit in English Language.

**Programme Structure**
The Diploma in Library and Information Studies Program extends over four semesters for full-time study or six semesters for part-time (distance learning/sandwich) study in the single subject Library and Information Studies leading to the award of the Diploma in Library and Information Studies.

**Level 100**
**Semester 1**
**Core Courses**
- LIS100 The Information Environment (3)
- LIS101 Introduction to Organising Information (3)
- LIS103 Basic Reference Sources and Services (3)
- LIS110 Administration and Management of Information Centres (3)
- BIM100 Introduction to Information Management (3)

**General Education Courses**
- GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)

**Semester 2**
**Core Courses**
- BIM101 Introduction to Information Science (3)
- LIS114 Collection Development and Management (3)

**Optional Courses**
- LIS104 Introduction to the Internet and Web Design (3)
- LIS106 Information Resources Management (3)
- LIS112 Introduction to Publishing and the Book Trade (2)

**Level 200**
**Semester 3**
**Core Courses**
- LIS202 IT Tools and Applications (3)
- LIS223 Digital Libraries (3)
- LIS206 Introduction to Infopreneurship (2)

**General Education Courses**
- LIS200 Organising Information (3)
- LIS205 Library Practice and Attachment (3)
- LIS227 Introduction to Knowledge Management (3)
- BIM200 Information Management Systems Development (3)

**Semester 4**
**Core Courses**
- LIS202 Introduction to Databases and Information Retrieval (3)
- BIM202 Introduction to Databases and Information Retrieval (3)

**General Education Courses**
- LIS212 Information Resources in Business (3)
- LIS230 Legal Aspects in Information (3)

**Progression from Semester to Semester**
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.
Assessment and Examinations
Evaluation of students’ performance in the Diploma in Library and Information Studies shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

DAR110 Special Regulations for the Diploma in Archives and Records Management
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The normal requirements for entrance to the Diploma in Archives and Records Management Programme shall be:

a) Certificate in Archives and Records Management from this University or its equivalent from any other recognized institution;
b) Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent with a credit in English;
c) Candidates with a credit in the Certificate in Archives and Records Management from this University shall be admitted directly to Year Two of the Diploma Programme. Those with a pass in the Certificate in Archives and Records Management of this University plus two years post qualification experience will be admitted directly to Year Two.

Programme Structure
The Diploma in Archives and Records Management Programme extends over four semesters for full-time study or six semesters for part-time (distance learning/sandwich) study in the single subject Archives and Records Management leading to the award of the Diploma in Archives and Records Management. The Programme shall consist of a minimum of 30 credits per year. All core courses must be passed.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS110 Admin. and Management of Info. Centres (3)
REC011 Introduction to Records Management (3)
REC012 Introduction to Archives (3)
REC015 Introduction to Office Skills (3)
REC017 Introduction to Information Technology (3)

General Education Courses
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I [2]
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I [2]

Semester 2
Core Courses
REC013 Intro to Principles of Archival Arrangement (3)
REC014 Search Room Operations (3)
REC016 Practicum (3)

Optional Courses
LIS104 Intro. to the Internet & Web Design (3)
LIS106 Information Resources Management (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
REC212 Managing Media Archives (3)
REC213 Intro. to Preservation and Conservation (3)
REC218 Computer Applications in Archives and Records Management (3)
LIS101 Introduction to Organizing Information (3) (pre-requisite for LIS 200)

General Education Courses
Semester 4
Core Courses
LIS200 Organising Information (3) (pre-requisite, LIS 101)
REC211 Administrative History (3)
REC215 Microphotography & Reprographics (3)
REC216 Records Centre Management (3)

Optional Courses
BMS207 Public Relations, Writing and Reporting (3)
LIS212 Information Resources in Business (3)
LIS230 Legal Aspects in Information (3)
LIS227 Introduction to Knowledge Management (3)

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

Assessment and Examinations
Evaluation of students’ performance for the Diploma in Archives and Records Management shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

BIS220 Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Library and Information Studies (BLIS) – Single Major
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Qualifications
The normal requirements for entrance to the BLIS single major degree shall be:

a) A pass in the Diploma in Library and Information Studies from this university or its equivalent from any other recognized institution
b) Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent. All candidates for admission must have a minimum of credit in English Language.
c) Candidates with at least one year’s experience in a library or related institution will be given preference.
d) Candidates with a Diploma in Library and Information Studies of this university or its equivalent from any other recognized institution may be admitted directly to Level 3 of the program.
e) Candidates with a Certificate in Library and Information Studies of this university or its equivalent from any other recognized institution may be admitted directly at Level 2 of the program.

Programme Structure
The BLIS is a full-time Programme extending over eight semesters in the single subject Library and Information Studies leading to the award of the Bachelors Degree in Library and Information Studies.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS100 The Information Environment (3)
LIS101 Introduction to Organising Information (3) (pre-requisite for LIS200)
LIS103 Basic Reference Sources and Services (3)
LIS110 Admin. and Management of Info. Centres (3)
BIM100 Introduction to Information Management (3)
### General Education Courses
- **GEC111** Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- **GEC121** Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- **BIM101** Introduction to Information Science (3)
- **LIS114** Collection Development and Management (3)

**Optional Courses**
- **LIS104** Intro. to the Internet and Web Design (3)
- **LIS106** Information Resources Management (3)
- **LIS112** Intro. to Publishing and the Book Trade (2)

**Level 200**
**Semester 3**
**Core Courses**
- **LIS202** IT Tools and Applications (3) *(pre-req. for LIS303)*
- **LIS223** Digital Libraries (3)
- **LIS206** Introduction to Infopreneurship (2) *(pre-req. for LIS404)*

**General Education Courses**
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

**Optional Courses**
- **LIS203** African Information Environment (3)
- **LIS211** Information and Society (3)
- **LIS230** Legal Issues of Information (3)
- **BIM200** Info. Management Systems Development (3)

#### Semester 4
**Core Courses**
- **LIS200** Organising Information (3) *(pre-req. for LIS101)*
- **LIS208** Principles of Data Communications (3)
- **BIM202** Intro. to Databases and Info. Retrieval (3)
- **LIS227** Introduction to Knowledge Management (3) *(pre-req. for LIS403)*

**General Education Courses**
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

**Optional Courses**
- **LIS212** Information Resources in Business (3)
- **LIS230** Legal Issues in Information (3)

### Level 300
**Semester 5**
**Core Courses**
- **LIS300** Online Information Retrieval (3)
- **LIS304** Understanding the User (3)
- **LIS303** Advanced IT Applications (3) *(pre-req. for LIS202)*

**General Education Courses**
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

**Optional Courses**
- **LIS309** School Librarianship (3)
- **LIS310** Health Information Systems (3)

**Level 400**
**Semester 7**
**Core Courses**
- **LIS401** Organising Internet Resources (3)
- **LIS402** Marketing of Information Services (3)
- **LIS403** Knowledge Management (3) *(pre-req. for LIS227)*

**BIM402** Research in Information Management (3)

**Optional Courses**
- **CSI461** Computer Communications Network Management (3)
- **LIS407** Emerging Technologies (3)
- **LIS412** Information Policies (3)
- **ENV440** Geographic Information Systems (2)

**Semester 8**
**Core Courses**
- **LIS404** Advanced Infopreneurship (3) *(pre-req. LIS206)*
- **LIS406** Database Management Systems and Design (3)
- **LIS408** Project Work (3) *(Must have taken BIM402)*

**General Education Courses** *(4 credits)*

**Optional Courses**
- **LIS425** Global Information System (3)
- **LIS426** Independent Study (3)

**Progression from Semester to Semester**
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

**Assessment and Examinations**
Evaluation of students’ performance in BLIS shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

**Award of the BLIS Single Major Degree**
Candidates must obtain a minimum of 120 credits including all core courses and optional courses or elective courses, and twenty General Education Courses. In addition, Regulation 00.85 shall apply.

**BIS230 Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Arts, Library and Information Studies (BALIS)**
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

**Entrance Requirements**
The normal requirements for entrance to the BALIS Combined Major Degree Programme are that applicants shall have the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent, with a credit in English. Those applicants who will major in Social Science or Science Subjects must obtain a minimum of credit in Mathematics or Computer Science.

**Programme Structure**
The BALIS is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters in the single subject Library and Information Studies and another subject leading to the award of a BALIS Combined Major with another subject. The Programme shall consist of a minimum of 30 credits per year. All core courses must be passed.

**Level 100**
**General Education Courses** *(4 to 6)*
**Other Subject Core Courses** *(12)*
FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS100 The Information Environment (3)
LIS101 Introduction to Organising Information (3) (pre-requisite for LIS200)
BIM100 Introduction to Information Management (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
BIM101 Introduction to Information Science (3)
LIS114 Collection Development and Management (3)

Semester 3
General Education Courses (4 to 6)
Other Subject Core Courses (12)
Core Courses
BIM200 Organising Information (3) (pre-requisite, LIS101)
LIS206 Introduction to Infopreneurship (2) (pre-requisite for LIS404)
LIS211 Information and Society (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
LIS300 Online Information Retrieval (3)
LIS303 Advanced IT Applications (3) (pre-requisite, LIS202)
LIS304 Understanding the User (3)

Semester 5
Core Courses
LIS305 Advanced Organisation of Information (3) (pre-req. LIS200)
LIS306 Professional Attachment (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
LIS305 Advanced Organisation of Information (3) (pre-req. LIS200)
LIS306 Professional Attachment (3)

Level 400
General Education Courses (4 to 6)
Other Subject Core Courses (12)

Semester 7
LIS Core Courses
LIS401 Organising Internet Resources (3)
LIS402 Marketing of Information Services (3)
LIS403 Knowledge Management (3)
BIM402 Research in Information Management (3)

Semester 8
LIS Core Courses
LIS425 Global Information Systems (3)
LIS406 Database Management and Design (3)
LIS408 Project Work (3)

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

Assessment and Examinations
Evaluation of student performance in BALIS shall be based on continuous assessment and formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

Award of BALIS
Candidates must obtain a minimum of 120 credits, including all core courses in both subjects. In addition, Regulation 00.85 shall apply.

BIS210 Bachelor of Information Systems (Information Management) (BIS) Degree

Entrance Requirements
The normal requirements for entrance to the Bachelor of Information Systems (Information Management) Degree Programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent with a credit in English Language and Mathematics.

Programme Structure
The BIS Degree is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters in the subject of Information Management, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Information Systems Degree.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS100 The Information Environment (3)
BIM100 Introduction to Information Management (3)
STA101 Maths for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Business Statistics I (4)

General Education Courses
GECC11 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
GECC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)

Level 200
Semester 2
Core Courses
BIM101 Introduction to Information Science (3)
STA102 Maths for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
STA114 Statistical Tools for Business (3)

General Education Courses
GECC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2)
GECC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2)

Level 300
General Education Courses (4 to 6)
Other Subject Core Courses (12)
Core Courses
BIM200 Information Management Systems Development (3)
CSI241 Structured Programming (4)
CSI292 Information Systems Fundamentals (3)

Optional Courses
BIM201 Web Information Management (3)
LIS206 Introduction to Infopreneurship (2) (pre-requisite for LIS404)
LIS211 Information and Society (3)

GECs and Electives
General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student from any discipline throughout the University.

Semester 3
Core Courses
BIM200 Information Management Systems Development (3)
CSI241 Structured Programming (4)
CSI292 Information Systems Fundamentals (3)

optional Courses
BIM201 Web Information Management (3)
LIS206 Introduction to Infopreneurship (2) (pre-requisite for LIS404)
LIS211 Information and Society (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
BIM200 Information Management Systems Development (3)
CSI241 Structured Programming (4)
CSI292 Information Systems Fundamentals (3)

Optional Courses
BIM201 Web Information Management (3)
LIS206 Introduction to Infopreneurship (2) (pre-requisite for LIS404)
LIS227 Introduction to Knowledge Management (3) (pre-requisite for LIS403)
**GECs and Electives**

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student from any discipline throughout the University.

**Level 300**

**Semester 5**

**Core Courses**

- BIM300 Distributed Systems (3)
- BIS302 Decision Support Systems I (3)
- CSI315 Web Technology and Applications (3)
- LIS304 Understanding the User (3)

**Optional Courses**

- LIS300 Online Information Retrieval (3)
- BIM301 Information Security (3)
- BIS308 Marketing Information Systems (3)

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

**Semester 6**

**Core Courses**

- CSI342 Systems Analysis and Design (3)
- BIM303 Industrial Attachment (3)
- BIS307 Project Management of Info. Systems (3)

**Optional Courses**

- BIS303 Electronic Commerce (3)
- CSI314 Decision Support Systems II (3)
- CSI392 Ergonomics and Human Computer Interaction (3)
- CSI362 Database Concepts (3)

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

**Level 400**

**Semester 7**

**Core Courses**

- BIM400 Individual Project (3)
- BIM402 Research in Information Management (3)
- CSI471 Object Oriented Systems Development (3)
- CSI461 Computer Communications Networks Management (3)

**Optional Courses**

- LIS403 Knowledge Management (3)
- LIS407 Emerging Technologies (3)
- LIS412 Information Policies (3)
- CSI414 Information Interfaces and Presentation (3)
- BIS405 Legal and Ethical Issues of Info.

Systems (3) (pre-requisite BIS100)

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

**Semester 8**

**Core Courses**

- BIS420 Strategic Information Systems (3)
- CSI472 Social Issues of Information Technology (3)

Optional Courses

- LIS404 Advanced Infopreneurship (3)
- LIS425 Global Information Systems (3)

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

**Progression from Semester to Semester**

Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

**Assessment and Examination**

Evaluation of students’ performance shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and examinations shall be determined in each course.

**Award of the Degree**

Candidates must obtain a minimum of 120 credits including all core courses and optional or elective courses, and 20 General Education Courses. In addition, Regulation 00.85 shall apply.

**DEPARTMENT OF MEDIA STUDIES**

**Professor**

D. Kerr, BA (Newcastle-Upon-Tyne), DCC (University of London), PhD (Eötvös Lórent, Budapest)

**Senior Lecturer**

E. Akpabo, BA (Calabar), MA (Lagos), PhD (Uyo)

**Lecturers**

- K. Ramojela, BA (Columbia, Chicago), MA (Emerson)
- S. Mosanako, Bachelor Social Work (UB), Masters Journalism (Westminster), N. Mankhi, Bed (St. Mark et St. John), Dip Ed (UB), MA (Westminster)
- W. Lesitaokana BA (Melbourne), Advanced Diploma of Arts (Melbourne) MA (Emerson)
- W. Ngjunga, Dip. Journalism (Kalmar), BA (Messiah), MA (Daystar), MA (Harvard)

**Staff Development Fellows**

- W. Heuva, BA (Rhodes), BA Hons (Rhodes), MA (Rhodes), PhD (KwaZulu Natal)
- L. Tjutwane, BA (UB), Dip Creative Writing (Hawick), MA (Cardiff) [On Study Leave]

**Senior Technician**

K. Senne, UHD (Kingston, London)

**Technician**

P. Mathaye, Dip. Graphic Design (Limkokwing, Malaysia), BA (Curtin)

**BACHELOR OF MEDIA STUDIES (BMS) (Revised)**

The Bachelor of Media Studies (BMS) that has been taught since 2002 is now being phased out and replaced with a revised BMS, a BA (Media Studies) and a minor programme in Media Studies. By 2012 all students (apart from those taking repeats) will be enrolled in the revised programme. What follows is the revised BMS and BA (Media Studies). For students taking the old BMS, the programme is unchanged from previous years, and such students should consult their old calendars.

**1.0 Entrance Requirements**

**1.0.1** The normal minimum entrance requirement shall be the Botswana BGCSE or the equivalent with credit in English and in three other subjects.

**1.0.2** Candidates who fulfill Regulation 1.0.1, have a credit in English and work experience in Media are preferred.

**1.0.3** Candidates who do not meet Regulation 1.0.1 but have the BGCSE or equivalent and the CMS from a recognised institution may be admitted directly to Level 100 of the Programme. By 2012 all students (apart from those taking repeats) will be enrolled in the revised programme. What follows is the revised BMS and BA (Media Studies). For students taking the old BMS, the programme is unchanged from previous years, and such students should consult their old calendars.

**1.1 Programme Structure**

**1.1.1** The Bachelor in Media Studies is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters. The programme should contain a minimum of 76 and a maximum of 88 credits. Part-time study for the Degree is also possible. It is expected that part-time students would finish their course in not more than ten semesters.

**1.1.2** In Levels 2 (2nd semester) 3 and 4 of the
FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

Degree Programme, five specialised streams will be offered:

a) Print Media  
b) Radio broadcasting  
c) Television broadcasting  
d) Public Relations  
e) Film and Video

Level 1 Semester 1
BMS110 History of World Media, 3 Credits  
BMS111 Media in Botswana, 3 credits CORE  
ENG 121 Intro to English Language, Description and Usage: 3 credits CORE  
ENG 113 Introduction to Literature and Prose: 3 credits CORE  
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills (1): 2 credits CORE  
GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills (1): 2 credits CORE  
GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills (2): 2 credits CORE

Level 1 Semester 2
BMS112 Introduction to Media Technology, 3 credits CORE  
BMS113 Theories of Mass Communication 3 credits, CORE  
ENG 111 Studies in Prose: 3 credits CORE  
ENG 123 Introduction to Literature, Drama and Poetry: 3 credits CORE  
GEC 112 Communication and Study Skills (2): 2 credits CORE  
GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills (2): 2 credits CORE  
GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills (2): 2 credits CORE

Level 2 Semester 3
BMS220 Introduction to Techniques of Digital Media 3 credits CORE  
BMS221 Introduction to Journalism 3 credits CORE  
BMS222 Introduction to Broadcasting 3 credits CORE  
BMS223 Introduction to PR & Advertising 3 credits CORE  
BMS224 Introduction to Film and Video 3 credits CORE  
BMS225 Media Attachment 1 credit CORE  
BMS226 Ethics for Media Professionals 3 credits CORE  
BMS227 Print Journalism Reporting & Writing 3 credits OPTIONAL

Level 2 Semester 4
BMS228 Broadcast Interviewing & Presentation Techniques 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS229 Basics of Video Production 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS230 Writing for PR & Copy-writing 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS231 Major Film & Video Genres 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS232 History of World Media, 3 Credits  
BMS233 Developmental Communication 3 credits CORE  
BMS234 Broadcast News Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS235 Broadcast Programming 3 credits OPTIONAL

Level 3 Semester 5
BMS320 Media & Society 3 credits CORE  
BMS321 History of Film & Video documentary 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS322 Audio Technology 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS323 Photojournalism 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS324 Broadcast News Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS325 Broadcast Programming 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS326 Broadcast Interviewing & Presentation Techniques 3 credits OPTIONAL

Level 3 Semester 6
BMS327 History of Film & Video documentary 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS328 Communication Research Methods 3 credits CORE  
BMS329 Developmental Communication 3 credits CORE  
BMS330 Media attachment 3 credits CORE  
BMS331 Print Journalism Editing 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS332 Beat Reporting 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS333 Radio Documentary writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS334 TV & Video Documentary Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS335 Motion Graphics 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS336 PR & Advertising Campaigns 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS337 Cinema Language in World Film 3 credits OPTIONAL

Level 4 Semester 7
BMS420 Media project or Dossier 1 2 credits CORE  
BMS421 Current Issues in African media 3 credits CORE  
BMS422 Broadcast Programming 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS423 Investigative Journalism 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS424 Radio Script-writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS425 TV & Video Drama 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS426 Economic & Social Issues in PR & Advertising 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS427 African Cinemas 3credits OPTIONAL  
BMS428 Media Project or Dossier 2 4 credits CORE

Level 4 Semester 8
BMS429 Media Management & Entrepreneurship 3 credits CORE  
BMS430 On-Line Media Production 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS431 Health & Scientific Reporting 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS432 Live Radio Broadcasting 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS433 TV Entertainment Shows 3 credits OPTIONAL  
BMS434 Public Communication Campaign 3 credits OPTIONAL

BA (MEDIA STUDIES).

1.0 Entrance Requirements
As for BMS

1.1 Programme Structure
1.1.1 The B.A. (Media Studies) is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters, as the Major part of a Combined Major/Minor programme. The Media Studies programme should contain a minimum of 54 and a maximum of 56 credits. Part-time study for the Degree is also possible. It is expected that part-time students would finish their coursework in not more than ten semesters.
Level 1 Semester 1

BMS110 History of World Media, 3 Credits
BMS111 Media in Botswana, 3 credits
ENG 121 Intro to English Language, Description and Usage: 3 credits
ENG 113 Introduction to Literature and Prose: 3 credits
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills (1): 2 credits
GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills (1): 2 credits

Level 1 Semester 2

BMS112 Introduction to Media Technology, 3 credits
BMS113 Theories of Mass Communication, 3 credits
ENG 111 Studies in Prose: 3 credits
ENG 123 Introduction to Literature, Drama and Poetry: 3 credits
GEC 112 Communication and Study Skills (2): 2 credits
GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills (2): 2 credits

Level 2 Semester 3

ANY TWO OF THE FOLLOWING
BMS222 Introduction to Broadcasting, 3 credits
BMS220 Introduction to Techniques of Digital Media, 3 credits
BMS221 Introduction to Journalism, 3 credits
BMS223 Introduction to PR & Advertising, 3 credits
BMS224 Introduction to Film and Video, 3 credits
BMS226 Ethics for Media Professional, 3 credits

Level 2 Semester 4

BMS227 Print Journalism Reporting & Writing, 3 credits
BMS228 Broadcast Interview & Presentation
BMS229 Techniques, 3 credits
BMS230 Writing for PR & Copy-writing, 3 credits
BMS231 Major Film & Video Genres, 3 credits

Level 3 Semester 5

EITHER
BMS320 Media & Society 3 credits
BMS 321 Media Law 3 credits
AND 1, 2, OR 3 OF
BMS322 Audio Technology 3 credits
BMS323 Photojournalism 3 credits
BMS324 Broadcast News Writing & Production 3 credits
BMS325 Basics of TV Production 3 credits
BMS326 Research for PR & Advertising 3 credits
BMS327 History of Film & Video documentary 3 credits

1.0 Entrance Requirements
As for BMS

1.1 Programme Structure

1.1.1 The Minor programme in Media Studies is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters, as the Minor part of a Combined Major/Minor programme. The Media Studies programme should contain a minimum of 30 credits. Part-time study for the Degree is also possible. It is expected that part-time students would finish their coursework in not more than ten semesters. Streams are available in Journalism, Public Relations or Mediated Drama

Level 4 Semester 7

1, 2 OR 3 OUT OF:
BMS421 Current Issues in African media 3 credits
BMS422 Broadcast Programming 3 credits
BMS423 Investigative Journalism 3 credits
BMS424 Radio Drama Script-writing & Production 3 credits
BMS425 TV & Video Drama 3 credits
BMS426 Economic & Social Issues in PR & Advertising 3 credits
BMS435 Current Cinema 3 credits

Minor Programme in Media Studies

Level 4 Semester 8

1, 2 OR 3 OUT OF:
BMS429 Media Management & Entrepreneurship 3 credits
BMS440 On-Line Media Production 3 credits
BMS431 Health & Scientific Reporting 3 credits
BMS432 Live Radio Broadcasting 3 credits
BMS433 TV Entertainment Shows 3 credits
BMS434 Public Communication Campaign 3 credits
BMS435 Current Cinema 3 credits

Level 1 Semester 1

BMS 110 History of World Media, 3 credits
BMS 111 Media in Botswana, 3 credits

Level 1 Semester 2

BMS 112 Introduction to Media Technology, 3 credits
BMS 113 Theories of Mass Communication, 3 credits
ENG 121 Intro to English Language, Description and Usage: 3 credits
ENG 113 Introduction to Literature and Prose: 3 credits
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills (1): 2 credits
GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills (1): 2 credits

Level 2 Semester 3

ANY TWO OF THE FOLLOWING
BMS222 Introduction to Broadcasting, 3 credits
BMS220 Introduction to Techniques of Digital Media, 3 credits
BMS221 Introduction to Journalism, 3 credits
BMS223 Introduction to PR & Advertising, 3 credits
BMS224 Introduction to Film and Video, 3 credits
BMS226 Ethics for Media Professional, 3 credits

Level 2 Semester 4

BMS227 Print Journalism Reporting & Writing, 3 credits
BMS228 Broadcast Interview & Presentation
BMS229 Techniques, 3 credits
BMS230 Writing for PR & Copy-writing, 3 credits
BMS231 Major Film & Video Genres, 3 credits

Level 3 Semester 5

EITHER
BMS320 Media & Society 3 credits
BMS 321 Media Law 3 credits
AND 1, 2, OR 3 OF
BMS322 Audio Technology 3 credits
BMS323 Photojournalism 3 credits
BMS324 Broadcast News Writing & Production 3 credits
BMS325 Basics of TV Production 3 credits
BMS326 Research for PR & Advertising 3 credits
BMS327 History of Film & Video documentary 3 credits

1.0 Entrance Requirements
As for BMS

1.1 Programme Structure

1.1.1 The Minor programme in Media Studies is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters, as the Minor part of a Combined Major/Minor programme. The Media Studies programme should contain a minimum of 30 credits. Part-time study for the Degree is also possible. It is expected that part-time students would finish their coursework in not more than ten semesters. Streams are available in Journalism, Public Relations or Mediated Drama

Level 4 Semester 7

1, 2 OR 3 OUT OF:
BMS421 Current Issues in African media 3 credits
BMS422 Broadcast Programming 3 credits
BMS423 Investigative Journalism 3 credits
BMS424 Radio Drama Script-writing & Production 3 credits
BMS425 TV & Video Drama 3 credits
BMS426 Economic & Social Issues in PR & Advertising 3 credits
BMS435 Current Cinema 3 credits

Minor Programme in Media Studies

Level 4 Semester 8

1, 2 OR 3 OUT OF:
BMS429 Media Management & Entrepreneurship 3 credits
BMS440 On-Line Media Production 3 credits
BMS431 Health & Scientific Reporting 3 credits
BMS432 Live Radio Broadcasting 3 credits
BMS433 TV Entertainment Shows 3 credits
BMS434 Public Communication Campaign 3 credits
BMS435 Current Cinema 3 credits
Level 2 Semester 3
ONE OF:
- BMS 221 Introduction to Journalism, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS223 Introduction to PR & Advertising, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 222 Introduction to Broadcasting, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 224 Introduction to Video & Film, 3 credits, OPTIONAL

3 CREDITS

Level 2 Semester 4
ONE OF:
- BMS 227 Print Journalism Reporting & Writing, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 229 Basics of Video Production, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 230 Writing for Public Relations, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 231 Major Cinema Genres, 3 credits, OPTIONAL

3 CREDITS

Level 3 Semester 5
ONE OF:
- BMS 321 Media Law, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 325 Basics of TV Production, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 320 Media and Society, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS326 Research for PR & Advertising, 3 credits, OPTIONAL

3 CREDITS

Level 3 Semester 6
TWO OF:
- BMS 329 Development Communication, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 331 Print Journalism Editing, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 332 Beat Reporting, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 333 Radio Documentary Writing & Production, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 334 TV/Video Documentary Writing & Production, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS336 PR & Advertising Campaigns, 3 credits, OPTIONAL

6 CREDITS

Level 4 Semester 7
ONE OR TWO OF:
- BMS 423 Investigative Journalism, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 424 Radio Drama Scriptwriting & Production, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS 425 TV & Video Drama Script & Production, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS426 Economic & Social Issues in PR & Advertising, 3 credits, OPTIONAL

3 or 6 CREDITS

Level 4 Semester 8
ONE OR TWO OF:
- BMS 429 Media Management & Entrepreneurship, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS431 Health and Scientific Reporting, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
- BMS433 TV/Video entertainment Shows, 3 credits, OPTIONAL

3 or 6 CREDITS

Assessment
Assessment shall be as per General Academic Regulation 00.8

Progression from one Semester to the next
Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulations 00.9

Award of Degree
The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.8

COURSE LISTINGS

BMS 110 HISTORY OF WORLD MEDIA (3)
A brief history of world media from the invention of writing through to the internet and other 21st century developments. The course will also look at some of the major social impacts of media developments through the ages.

BMS 111 MEDIA IN BOTSWANA (3)
A brief history of media in Botswana, including indigenous communication techniques, and showing links to media in the region and the wider world. A survey of current media houses, trends and genres in Botswana is included.

BMS 112 INTRODUCTION TO MEDIA TECHNOLOGY (3)
An introduction to communication principles followed by a survey and simple explanation of the major technologies used by 20th and 21st century media.

BMS 113 THEORIES OF MASS COMMUNICATION (3)
A survey of some major theories of Mass Communication, including their applications in communication practice (both mediated and non-mediated)

BMS 222 INTRODUCTION TO TECHNIQUES OF DIGITAL MEDIA (3)
An introduction to principles and practice of design for digital media (desk-top publishing, digital imaging and web design).

BMS 221 INTRODUCTION TO JOURNALISM (3)
A survey of print and on-line journalism industries, including a description of the whole production process and the main requirements of a journalist, including the basic elements of story writing. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.

BMS 222 INTRODUCTION TO BROADCASTING (3)
A survey of radio and television industries, including a description of the whole production process and the main requirements of a broadcaster.

BMS 223 INTRODUCTION TO PR & ADVERTISING (3)
A survey of the Public Relations and advertising industries, including a description of the whole production process and the main requirements of a worker in the Public Relations and Advertising industries. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.

BMS 224 INTRODUCTION TO FILM & VIDEO (3)
A survey of the history of world film, from silent movies through to the digital age, including the major production methods.

BMS 225 MEDIA ATTACHMENT (1)
A one month internship in a media company during which the student observes and becomes familiar with media organization and participates in work practices

BMS 226 MEDIA ETHICS (3)
An analysis of theoretical issues concerning media ethics and their practical application in various case studies of media within Botswana and beyond.
**BMS 227 PRINT JOURNALISM REPORTING AND WRITING (3)**
A practical course in how to report and write stories for print media journalism. The course will be closely linked to UB Horizon, with students expected to write stories for the newspaper, for which they will be assessed.

**BMS 228 BROADCAST INTERVIEWING & PRESENTATION TECHNIQUES (3)**
Techniques of interviewing and presentation for radio and television (course split into radio or television after mid-semester break).

**BMS 229 BASICS OF VIDEO PRODUCTION (3)**
A mainly practical course on the basic requirements of pre-production, production and post-production in the making of video films.

**BMS 230 WRITING FOR PUBLIC RELATIONS & COPY WRITING (3)**
A mainly practical course on the basic requirements of copy-writing for both print and broadcast media in the field of Public Relations and Advertising. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.

**BMS 231 MAJOR CINEMA & VIDEO GENRES (3)**
A survey of the major genres, such as comedy, adventures, blockbusters, thrillers, art films, dramas and animated films.

**BMS 232 MEDIA & SOCIETY (3)**
A theoretical course analyzing the way media represent various social groups and the way the media impact upon society.

**BMS 234 BROADCAST NEWS WRITING & PRODUCTION (3)**
Electronic news gathering, news writing and production for both radio and television.

**BMS 235 BASICS OF TV PRODUCTION (3)**
The techniques of planning, writing and production of television programmes both in the studio and outside.

**BMS 236 RESEARCH FOR PUBLIC RELATIONS & ADVERTISING (3)**
Market and product research in order to motivate campaigns in the fields of Public Relations and Advertising.

**BMS 237 HISTORY OF FILM & VIDEO DOCUMENTARY (3)**
The history and genres of Film and Video documentary, linked to practical work in documentary and feature script-writing.

**BMS 238 COMMUNICATION RESEARCH METHODS (3)**
An intensive course explaining the principles of research and useful quantitative and qualitative media research methodologies.

**BMS 239 DEVELOPMENT COMMUNICATION (3)**
A survey of major development communication theories and their application in different media projects as part of total communications strategies.

**BMS 240 MEDIA PROJECT & DOSSIER I (3)**
The course will allocate students to individual tutors who will take students through the research process up to the completion of the project proposal for their chosen topics.

**BMS 241 CURRENT ISSUES IN AFRICAN MEDIA (3)**
The course will provide an overview of current issues affecting African media including the press or broadcast organizations that influence the media.

**BMS 242 BROADCAST PROGRAMMING (3)**
How to design short and long term programme schedules for radio and television broadcasting. The 2nd half of the semester may be split into radio & television.

**BMS 243 INVESTIGATIVE JOURNALISM (3)**
In depth, carefully researched, critical journalism for print or broadcast media. For students taking the print pathway; the course and assessment are linked to UB Horizon.

**BMS 244 RADIO DRAMA SCRIPT-WRITING & PRODUCTION (3)**
Writing drama scripts and producing them for radio broadcasts, including casting, rehearsing, recording and post-production editing.
BMS 425 TV & VIDEO DRAMA (3)
Writing drama scripts and producing them for TV and Video drama, including casting, rehearsing, recording and post-production editing.

BMS 426 ECONOMIC & SOCIAL ISSUES IN PR & ADVERTISING (3)
The impact of economic and social issues on Public Relations and Advertising campaigns including issues of ethics and corporate responsibility.

BMS 427 AFRICAN CINEMAS (3)
The course will include skills in film reviewing.

BMS 428 MEDIA PROJECT & DOSSIER II (3)
A research project involving any one or any combination of media to show the student has acquired the skills of using media techniques for communication.

BMS 429 MEDIA MANAGEMENT & ENTREPRENEURSHIP (3)
A practical and theoretical course on how to set up and grow a small media company, and how management/organizational issues relate to the wider economic landscape.

BMS 430 ON-LINE MEDIA PRODUCTION (3)
Preparation of material for online publishing; this includes streaming of video and audio content, formatting images and text, and web-programming. Course and assessment linked to Media Studies and UB Horizon web-sites.

BMS 431 HEALTH & SCIENTIFIC REPORTING (3)
A journalism course on the special skills needed for researching and writing stories on issues of Health and Science. The course and assessment are linked to UB Horizon.

BMS 432 LIVE RADIO BROADCASTING (3)
Techniques of radio for Studio and Outside live Broadcast shows in News, Educational and Entertainment fields.

BMS 433 TV/VIDEO ENTERTAINMENT SHOWS (3)
Production of entertainment programmes such as game shows, talk shows, and music shows for television or video.

BMS 434 PUBLIC COMMUNICATION CAMPAIGNS (3)
Planning, designing and implementation of public media communication campaigns for government or NGO social change agencies.

BMS 435 CURRENT CINEMA (3)
Current issues in film and video production, distribution, exhibition, reception and aesthetics.

DEPARTMENT OF THEOLOGY AND RELIGIOUS STUDIES

Bachelor of Arts in Humanities and Degree Programme

Special Regulations for the BA Programme
1. Theology and Religious Studies is offered as a Single Major Subject, a Major Subject in a Combined Major programme, a Major and Minor Subject and as a multidisciplinary degree as stipulated in General Regulations 22.37 and 00.2114 and departmental regulations 1.1 to 2.4.
2. A multidisciplinary degree including Theology and Religious Studies may, in accordance with General Regulation 00.2114 be approved in special cases, but only at the discretion of the TRS Department.
3. All courses offered in the TRS Department will be semester long. However, students taking TRS 326 Directed Research I will also be required to take TRS 420 Directed Research II.
4. Unless indicated otherwise all courses will carry 3 credits.
5. Not all courses listed may be offered in any one semester.
6. Students pursuing a Single Major in TRS are required to take a total of 96 credits in TRS consisting of 48 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.
7. Students pursuing a Major in TRS as part of a combined Major/Minor are required to take a total of 84 credits in TRS consisting of 48 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.
8. Students pursuing a Major in TRS as part of a combined Major/Minor are required to take a total of 60 credits in TRS consisting of 24 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.
9. Students pursuing a Minor in TRS as part of a combined Minor/Major are required to take a total of 36 credits in TRS consisting of 24 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.
10. Unless otherwise specified in the published course description or in a written syllabus distributed by the instructor to the students during the first week of class lectures, course assessment will be by a standard (750-1,000 word) written assignment, a mid-term test, and a final examination, weighted 1: 1: 2 respectively.
11. Students from other departments and other faculties, who wish to take TRS courses as electives, may take any course for which they have the pre-requisites.
12. Students pursuing a Single Major with concentration in Biblical studies are recommended to include Biblical languages either Hebrew (for Old Testament) or Greek (for New Testament).

Programme Structure

Single Major Programme
In a Single Major Degree, a student shall take the following:

Level: 100
Semester 1: 1 core course, any one optional course.
Semester 2: 1 core course, any one optional course.

Level: 200
Semester 3: 1 core course, any one optional course.
Semester 4: 1 core course, any one optional course.

Level: 300
Semester 5: Three core courses and any three optional courses.
Semester 6: Three core courses and any three optional courses.

Level: 400
Semester 7: Three core courses and any three optional courses.
Semester 8: Three core courses and any three optional courses.

MAJOR (TRS)/ MINOR

In a Major/Minor Degree a student shall take the following courses:

Level: 100
Semester 1: 1 core course, any one optional course.
Semester 2: 1 core course, any one optional course.

Level: 200
Semester 3: 1 core course, any one optional course.
course. Semester 4: 1 core course, any one optional course.

**Level: 300**

**Semester 5:**
2 core courses in the area of specialisation (TRS 301 for Theology, TRS 304 for Biblical Studies, TRS 302 for Religious Studies and TRS 305 for Philosophy), other area and two optional courses.

**Semester 6:**
2 core courses in the area of specialisation (TRS 315 for Theology, TRS 316 for Religious Studies, TRS 317 for Biblical Studies and TRS 318 for Philosophy), any two optional courses.

**Level: 400**

**Semester 7:**
2 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 401 for Theology, TRS 402 for Religious Studies, TRS 403 for Biblical Studies and TRS 404 for Philosophy), and two optional courses.

**Semester 8:**
2 core course from the area of specialisation (TRS 415 for Theology, TRS 416 for Religious Studies, TRS 417 for Biblical Studies and TRS 418 for Philosophy), and two optional courses.

**MINOR (TRS) /MAJOR**

In a Minor/ Major Degree the student shall take the following courses:

**Level: 100**

**Semester 1:** 1 core course.

**Semester 2:** 1 core course.

**Level: 200**

**Semester 3:** 1 core course.

**Semester 4:** 1 core course.

**Level: 300**

**Semester 5:**
1 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 301 for Theology, TRS 302 for Religious Studies, TRS 303 for Biblical Studies and TRS 304 for Philosophy) and any one optional course.

**Semester 6:**
1 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 314 for Theology, TRS 315 for Religious Studies, TRS 316 for Biblical Studies and TRS 317 for Philosophy) and any one optional course.

**Level: 400**

**Semester 7:**
1 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 401 for Theology, TRS 402 for Religious Studies, TRS 403 for Biblical Studies and TRS 404 for Philosophy) and any one optional course.

**Semester 8:**
1 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 415 for Theology, TRS 416 for Religious Studies, TRS 417 for Biblical Studies and TRS 418 for Philosophy) any two optional courses.

**Optional Courses**

TRS102 Religion and Science (3)

TRS103 Religions of Botswana (3)

TRS104 Christianity and the rise of New Religious Movements in Botswana (3)

TRS105 Asian Religions: A Survey (3)

TRS106 Ethics: Classical Theories (3)

**Level 200**

**Semester 2**

**Core Courses**

TRS107 African Traditional Religions (3)

**Optional Courses**

TRS108 History of Philosophy I: Classical Greek Philosophy (3)

TRS109 Biblical Interpretation (3)

TRS110 God in the Hebrew Bible (3)

TRS111 Epistemology I: Theory of Knowledge (3)

TRS112 Bible and Gender (3)

**Level 300**

**Semester 3**

**Core Courses**

TRS201 Logic I: Introduction to Logic (3)

**Optional Courses**

TRS202 Hebrew Bible Narratives (3)

TRS203 African Traditional Religions in Botswana (3)

TRS204 Theologies of Gender (3)

TRS205 History of Philosophy II: Post-Aristotle to Medieval (3)

TRS206 Beginning Biblical Greek I: New Testament Greek (3)

TRS207 Introduction to Christian Theology (3)

TRS208 The Hebrew Bible as History & Story (3)

**Semester 4**

**Core Courses**

TRS209 History of Christian Thought (3)

**Optional Courses**

TRS210 Gospel Narratives (3)

TRS211 Ecclesiology (3)

TRS212 Beginning Biblical Greek II: New Testament Greek (3)

TRS213 Johannine corpus (3)

TRS214 Beginning Arabic I: Intro. to the basic Arabic (3)

TRS215 Metaphysics I: Appearance and Reality (3)

TRS216 History of Philosophy III: Post-Medieval to 19th Century (3)
TR220  Critical Thinking (3)
TR221  Politics of Gender (3)
TR222  Religion and development (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
TR301  Christology (3)
TR302  Missionaries in 19th Century South Africa (3)
TR303  Creation and the Bible (3)
TR304  African Philosophy and Culture (3)

Optional Courses
TR305  Judaism (3)
TR306  Intermediate Greek I: Exam. Of selected texts (3)
TR307  Beginning Arabic II: Arabic construction (3)
TR308  Beginning Biblical Hebrew I: Introduction to Hebrew Script (3)
TR309  Psychology of Religion (3)
TR310  Professional Ethics (3)
TR311  Metaphysics II: Idealism (3)
TR312  Logic II: Logic and the Sciences (3)
TR313  History of Christianity: Medieval to the Reformation (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
TR314  Christian Moral Theology (3)
TR315  Sociology of Religion (3)
TR316  History and Mythology of Jesus (3)
TR317  Theodicy: The Co-existence of God and Evil (3)

Optional Courses
TR318  Beginning Biblical Hebrew II: Translation of Hebrew Texts (3)
TR319  Philosophy of Religion (3)
TR320  Epistemology II: Theories of Truth (3)
TR321  Metaphysics III: Body/mind Problem (3)
TR322  History of Christianity in Southern Africa (3)
TR323  Intermediate Greek II: Translation of selected texts (3)
TR324  Intermediate Arabic I: Arabic grammar (3)
TR325  Foundational Structures of Islam (3)
TR326  Directed Research I: Research Methods (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
TR401  New Religious Movements (3)
TR402  Religion and Politics (3)
TR403  The Doctrine of Sin in the Bible (3)
TR404  Metaphysics IV: Personal Identity (3)

Optional Courses
TR405  Intermediate Hebrew I: Examination of selected Hebrew texts (3)
TR406  Intermediate Arabic II: Translation of Arabic texts (3)
TR407  Islam’s socio-cultural, legal and political structures (3)
TR408  Directed Research I: Research Methods (3)
TR409  African Christian Theologies (3)
TR410  Theory of Government (3)
TR411  Politics and Development of Biblical Thought (3)
TR412  Ecumenical Theology (3)
TR413  Hinduism (3)
TR414  Metaphysics V: Materialism (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
TR415  Twentieth Century Theologians (3)
TR416  Religion and Modernity (3)
TR417  Paul’s Epistles (3)
TR418  Contemporary African Philosophy (3)

Optional Courses
TR419  Intermediate Hebrew II: Hebrew Texts and Dead Sea Scrolls (3)
TR420  Directed Research II: Research Project (3)
TR421  History of Christianity: Modern and contemporary (3)
TR422  Epistemology III: Rationalism & Empiricism (3)
TR423  History of Philosophy IV: Contemporary (3)
TR424  Buddhism (3)
TR425  Theology of the Reformation (3)
TR426  Religious Rituals and Sacred Places (3)
TR427  Applied Ethics (3)
TR428  Religious Pluralism (3)

THEOLOGY AND RELIGIOUS STUDIES COURSE DESCRIPTIONS

TR101  Introduction to Biblical Studies (2)
This course will present a general overview of the contexts in which the Old Testament and the New Testament came into being and a survey of the contents of both testaments. It will consider various ways in which the Bible is used in Judaism and Christianity.

TR102  Religion and Science (2)
This course will study the assumptions, practices, and methodologies of what is commonly called "religion" and what is commonly called "Science". It will ascertain the similarities and differences, continuities and discontinuities between the two domains.

TR103  Religions of Botswana (2)
This course will study the different religious traditions that exist in Botswana with the view towards a better understanding of their beliefs, rituals and practices. It will survey ATR, Christianity, Islam, Hinduism, Bahai, Sikhism and Buddhism as they have developed and are currently practiced in Botswana.

TR104  Christianity and the Rise of New Religious Movements in Botswana (2)
This course will study changes that have taken place in the Christian churches of Botswana since independence. It will examine the rise of New Religious Movements and the integration of Christian belief and practice with cultural tradition.

TR105  Asian Religions A Survey (2)
This course will present a comprehensive survey of Asian religions, namely Jainism, Sikhism, Zoroastrianism, Confucianism, Bahai, Shinto and Taoism.

TR106  Ethics: Classical Theories (2)
This course will offer an introduction to moral philosophy particularly by exploring the origins of ethical reflection among the classical Greek philosophers, including the Sophists, Socrates, Plato and Aristotle.

TR107  African Traditional Religions (2)
This course will study the beliefs and practices of African traditional religions from a phenomenological point of view. It will focus in particular on the traditional religions of Southern Africa.

TR108  History of Philosophy I: Classical Greek Philosophy (2)
This course will study the thought of major Greek Philosophers of the classical period, including the pre-Socrates (e.g. Parmenides, Heraclitus, Pythagoras and Pratogoras), Socrates, Plato, and Aristotle, and the post-Aristotle schools of Stoicism, Epicureanism and Skepticism.
This course will study different methods, both modern and contemporary, of reading the Bible. It will explore modern historical critical methods like textual, form, compositional and redactional criticisms.

**TRS110  God in the Hebrew Bible (2)**  
This course will study the diverse depictions of God in the Hebrew Bible, including the identities of the surrounding cultures. In particular, it will explore such themes as anthropomorphism, creation, monotheism and mythology, the justice of God, the figure of Wisdom, female imagery and God.

**TRS111  Epistemology I: Theory of Knowledge (2)**  
This course will introduce students to the theory of knowledge. Students will explore how Plato, René Descartes, Baruch de Spinoza and Gottfried von Leibniz approached the theory of knowledge from a rationalist point of view.

**TRS112  Bible and Gender (2)**  
This course will explore the construction of gender and identity in the Hebrew and Christian Testaments. It will examine how different types of biblical literature constructed gender over various times and circumstances.

**TRS201  Logic I: Introduction to Logic (2)**  
This course will define “Philosophy” and “Logic”, and examine in detail informal fallacies and deductive methods of reasoning. It will explore the nature of definitions, decisions, and classifications.

**TRS202  Hebrew Bible Narratives (2)**  
This course will study several short narratives from the Hebrew Bible selected from different books. Focus will be on the literary dimension of the story, narrative technique, effect on a reader, and social location implied in the narrative.

**TRS203  African Traditional Religions in Botswana (2)**  
This course will study the beliefs and practices of traditional religions in Botswana. It will survey a large number of the ethnic groups in the country, with emphasis on continuity and change in their mutual relationships and in their development.

**TRS204  Theologies of Gender (2)**  
This course will explore theological questions surrounding the issues of gender and gender identity. It will examine traditional theological positions as well as those of feminist/womanist theologians.

**TRS205  History of Philosophy II: Post-Aristotle To Medieval (2)**  
This course will study the development of philosophy from the time following the classical Greek Philosophers until the Middle Ages. In particular it will examine the interaction of philosophy and religious thought, both Christians and Islamic.

**TRS206  Beginning Greek I: New Testament Greek (2)**  
This course will introduce students to the basic elements of New Testament Greek (Koine) and teach them how to write it. It will focus on basic Koine grammar and how to read some prescribed texts.

**TRS207  Introduction to Christian Theology (2)**  
This course will study the nature of theology, its branches and its relevance to society. It will focus on the different methods used in doing theology, its sources, its relationships with other sciences and its application.

**TRS208  The Hebrew Bible as History and Story (2)**  
This course will study both the historical texts in the Hebrew Bible and the eternal historical factors that have shaped the formation of the Hebrew Bible. It will examine in detail the theological focus and agenda of Hebrew Bible historical texts.

**TRS209  History of Christian Thought (2)**  
This course will study the development of Christianity and Christian thought from the New Testament period to its establishment as the state religion of the Roman Empire under Constantine. It will examine relations between the Church and the state and how these affected the life of the Church and of Christian believers.

**TRS210  Gospel Narratives (2)**  
This course will study gospels of the New Testament, Mark, Matthew, Luke and John. Students will study the gospels through employing different perspectives such as historical, literary, sociological and liberation methods.

**TRS211  Ecclesiology (2)**  
This course will study the doctrine of the Christian Church, its nature and functions in relation to other doctrines, such as the doctrine of God, Christology, and sacraments. It will examine the scriptural, historical and systematic dimensions of the doctrine of the Church from its origin in New Testament times through the patristic period, the Reformation, and the post-Reformation period.

**TRS212  Beginning Greek II: New Testament (2)**  
This course is a continuation of Beginning Koine Greek I.

**TRS213  Johannine Corpus (2)**  
This course will study the Johannine Corpus both the Gospel of John and the Epistles of John. It will examine the historical, philosophical and political factors that shaped its theology in the apostolic period.

**TRS214  Beginning Arabic I: Introduction to Basic Arabic (2)**  
This course will introduce students to the Arabic script and teach them how to write it. It will study basic Arabic grammar and how to read basic prescribed texts.

**TRS215  Metaphysics I: Appearance and Reality (2)**  
This course will introduce students to basic and fundamental concepts of metaphysics. Students will examine why the Platonic theory assigns reality to the “forms” and appearance to the sensible objects.

**TRS216  History of Philosophy III: Post-Medieval of 19th Century (2)**  
This course will survey the main strands of philosophy from the Renaissance to modern times. It will consider Renaissance philosophy, the critical examination of reason and pragmatism.

**TRS301  Christology (2)**  
This course will study the meaning and significance of the person of Jesus Christ. It will examine critically the life of Jesus from the time of his conception to his resurrection and the developing understanding of Christology through the first five years of Christian thought.

**TRS302  Missionaries in Nineteenth Century Southern Africa (2)**  
This course will investigate early missionaries' attitudes toward African culture, beliefs and practices. It will draw much of its information from primary sources.
TRS303  Creation and the Bible (2)
This course will focus on the creation texts of the Hebrew Bible. They will be compared and contrasted with other ancient Near Eastern creation accounts. This will also examine creation in the New Testament.

TRS304  African Philosophy and Culture (2)
This course will examine how philosophy and culture have interacted in an African context. It will investigate the thought of several African thinkers.

TRS305  Judaism (2)
This course will present an introduction to the main beliefs and practices of the several forms of post-biblical Judaism. The course will cover some of the milestones of the history of the Jewish people.

TRS306  Intermediate Greek I: Examination of Selected Texts (2)
This course will build on the knowledge of New Testament vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Koine Greek I and II.

TRS307  Beginning Arabic II: Arabic Construction (2)
This course is a continuation of Beginning Arabic I.

TRS308  Beginning Biblical Hebrew I: Introduction to Hebrew Script (2)
This course will introduce the student to the Hebrew script and teach them how to write it. It studies basic Hebrew grammar and how to read basic prescribed texts.

TRS309  Psychology of Religion (2)
This course will critically discuss the relationship between religion and psychology. It will study and examine the various theories, principles, and methods spruced by the psychologists of religion.

TRS310  Professional Ethics (2)
This course will examine the question of whether professional morality is independent of and separate from ordinary morality. It will look at business, medicine, law and political ethics.

TRS311  Metaphysics II: Idealism (2)
This course will study issues of particular importance in the philosophy of the metaphysical idealists George Berkeley, Immanuel Kant, George W. F. Hegel and others. Concepts such as existence, being causality, change, time and other shall be examined.

TRS312  Logic II: Logic And The Sciences (2)
This course will examine the place of logic in philosophy, the sciences, and other human activities and relations. It will study the concepts [in]validity and soundness of arguments, and the different patterns that arguments can follow. It will consider the benefit to of symbols and will introduce students to the use of elementary symbolic language.

TRS313  History Of Christianity: Medieval To Reformation (2)
This course will study the development of the church from the Middle Ages to the Reformation. It will examine the separation between Eastern and Western Christianity, scholasticism, sacramentalism and opposition to monarchical papacy.

TRS314  Christian Moral Theology (2)
This course will examine the moral implications of being a Christian in a secular society in the context of the teachings of the Christian church. It will focus on issues related to Christian behaviour in regard to marriage and other ethical issues.

TRS315  Sociology of Religion (2)
This course will study the influence of religion in society. It will examine sociological theories of religion and the concrete interaction of religion and particular societies.

TRS 316  History of Mythology (2)
This course will study the presentation of Jesus in the four gospels. It will investigate how each gospel characterizes Jesus and the significance of such characterisation, as well as the character of Jesus that emerges in Paul’s writings.

TRS 317  Theology: The Co-existence Of God And Evil (2)
This course will examine various philosophical arguments for the existence of God. It will discuss the various proofs that have been proposed concerning the existence of God and will examine the problem of Evil and the difficulties it poses for arguments for the existence of God.

TRS318  Beginning Biblical Hebrew II: Translation Of Biblical Texts (2)
This course is a continuation of Beginning Biblical Hebrew I.

TRS319  Philosophy Of Religion (2)
This course will study some fundamental issues connected with the human activity called ‘religion’. It will use rational, critical analysis to investigate the nature of belief, worship, and sacrifice, the question of the existence of a supernatural being, and the roles that religion plays in the lives of human beings.

TRS320  Epistemology II: Theories Of Truth (2)
This course will examine the concepts of knowledge and belief and relate them to theories of truth. It will discuss theories such as the “correspondence theory”, the “coherence theory”, and the “pragmatist theory”.

TRS321  Metaphysics III: Body/mind Problem (2)
This course looks at the mind and body problem. It will examine different theories that arose as an attempt to answer the questions concerning dualism, behaviourism, functionalism, epiphenomenalism and others.

TRS322  History Of Christianity in Southern Africa (2)
This course will study the origins and development of the Christian Church in Southern Africa from its inception to the present. It will examine the cultural context in which the Church was introduced and the role of foreign missionary societies in this process.

TRS323  Intermediate Greek II: Translation of Selected Texts (2)
This course will build on the knowledge of New Testament vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Koine Greek I and II and Intermediate Koine Greek I. Students will translate and study closely selected passages from one book of the New Testament.

TRS324  Intermediaries Arabic I: Arabic Grammar (2)
This course will study intermediate Arabic grammar and examine classical and contemporary Arabic texts. It will also expose the student to standard Arabic oral drills.

TRS325  Foundation Structures Of Islam (2)
This course will study the basic doctrines and practices of Islam. It will introduce the primary
sources of Islam and survey the social history of the Muslim community from its emergence through its early years.

**TRS401 New Religious Movements (2)**
This course will examine new Christian theologies from new Christian movements emerging today in various regional, social and intellectual settings across the world. It will pay special attention to theological and social developments in Africa.

**TRS402 Religion And Politics (2)**
This course will foster a rethinking of the relationship between religion and politics and analyze the changing dimensions of society, religion, and the state.

**TRS403 The Doctrine Of Sin In The Bible (2)**
This course examines the concepts of "Sin" and "evil" in the Hebrew Bible and the Christian New Testament. It will investigate related concepts such as law and commandment, purity/impurity, judgement, punishment, and forgiveness.

**TRS404 Metaphysics IV: Personal Identity (2)**
This course will examine the question of personhood. The course will look at different criteria of personal identity. It will also look at divided minds and consciousness.

**TRS405 Intermediate Hebrew: Examination of Selected Texts (2)**
This course will build on the knowledge of Biblical Hebrew vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Biblical Hebrew I and II. The student will study closely set texts from all three main divisions of the Hebrew Bible.

**TRS406 Intermediate Arabic II: Translation of Arabic Texts (2)**
This course is continuation of Intermediate Arabic I yet students who have not successfully completed that course may take TRS 406.

**TRS407 Socio-Cultural, Legal and Political Structures of Islam (2)**
This course will study the growth of the early Muslim community. It will trace and reflect critically upon the development and evolution of the theological, jurisprudential and mystical schools. It will explore the thoughts and practices of individual representatives of these schools.

**TRS408 Directed Readings: Research Methods (2)**
In this course the student will undertake independent study under the guidance of a supervisor who will be responsible for advising and instructing the student in matters of research method as well as content.

**TRS409 African Christianity Theologies (2)**
This course will comprise readings from African theologians that focus on important theological issues facing the African Church today. It will examine the question of the enculturation of the Church in Africa, taking into account the cultural, social, economic and political factors in both colonial and postcolonial Africa.

**TRS410 Theories Of Government (2)**
This course will discuss the theory of the state, such thinkers as Plato, Thomas Hobbes, John Locke, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Karl Marx have presented it.

**TRS411 Politics and the Development of Biblical Thought (2)**
This course will foreground the idea that the texts of the Bible were written, collected, edited and read in political environments. Political agendas, in turn, have left discernible traces in biblical literature.

**TRS412 Ecumenical Theology (2)**
This course will study the theological foundations of the ecumenical movement, whose aim is to achieve organic church unity. It will investigate the New Testament, especially the Johannine and Pauline writings, to discern the scriptural basis for ecumenical theory and practice.

**TRS413 Hinduism (2)**
This course will study Hinduism from the Harappan culture to contemporary period. The approach will be thematic including themes such as creation, sacrifice, polytheism and others.

**TRS414 Metaphysics V: Materialism (2)**
This course will examine the main tenets of materialism: the uniformity of law, the denial of teleology, the denial of any form of existence beyond that envisaged by the natural sciences. Particularly attention will be given to the thought of Karl Marx, William James and John Dewey.

**TRS415 Twentieth Century Theologians (2)**
This course will study several major theologians, Protestant and Roman Catholic, of the twentieth century, and the contributions their thought has made to the development of contemporary systematic theology.

**TRS416 Religion and Modernity (2)**
This course will study the relationship and interaction between religion and popular culture. It will explore the significance and importance of religious expressions contained in various media such as films, theatre, music and others.

**TRS417 Paul's Epistle (2)**
This course will cover the Pauline and Deutero-Pauline letters of the New Testament. It will use different methods to analyze the socio historical context that gave rise to Pauline letters.

**TRS418 Contemporary African Philosophy (2)**
This course will study some of the major issues that have shaped, and continue to shape, African social, economic and political landscape. It will examine the development and application of such theories as humanism, African socialism and others.

**TRS419 Intermediate Hebrew II: Hebrew Texts and Dead Sea Scrolls (2)**
This course will build on the knowledge of Biblical Hebrew vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Biblical Hebrew I and II. Set texts from the Hebrew Bible and the Dead Sea Scrolls will be studied closely.

**TRS420 Directed Research (2)**
In this course the student will undertake independent study under the guidance of a supervisor who will be responsible for advising and instructing the student in matters of research method as well as content.

**TRS421 History Of Christianity: Modern and Contemporary (2)**
This course will study the expansion of the church from Europe and America to other parts of the world during the missionary era of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. It will discuss issues such as colonialism and missiology.

**TRS422 Epistemology: Rationalism And Empiricism (2)**
The student will study the philosophy position that knowledge is only attained through the senses, and that truth must conform to the rules of logic and of material science.
TRS423 History of Contemporary Philosophy (2)
This course will study the basic tenets of logical positivism and ordinary language philosophy. It will also explore philosophical questions that arise from contemporary concerns such as war and peace and others.

TRS 424 Buddhism (2)
This course will study the origin, development and basic concepts of Buddhism. It will trace ways in which different "Buddhisms" developed.

TRS42 The Theology of the Reformation (2)
This course will study the religious, social economic and political factors that led to the Reformation and counter-Reformation in the sixteenth century Europe. It will consider some of the important theological themes that dominated the thinking of the Reformers.

TRS426 Religious Rituals and Sacred Places (2)
This course will study the role of sacred sites, shrines, rivers, mountains, worship centers and other sacred places in several religious traditions.

TRS427 Applied Ethics (2)
This course will study the concept of human rights, the nature and origin of human rights, and some specific contemporary ethical issues that arise from the question of human rights, such as abortion, infanticide and others.

TRS428 Religion And Pluralism (2)
This course will discuss the relationship between religion and religious pluralism. It will explore the theories pertaining to religious pluralism, and probe the related notions or religious language, religious dialogue and inter-religious cooperation.

GEC232 Critical Thinking (2)
This course will train students not to take anything they hear, read, write and do for granted without first critically assessing and analyzing them. In order to do these students will examine key logical concepts and principles such as laws of identity, non contradiction and exclude middle. Some logical formal and informal will also be dealt with.

GEC233 Logic I: Introduction To Logic (2)
This course will define "philosophy" and "logic" and examine in detail informal fallacies and deductive and inductive methods of reasoning. It will explore the nature of definitions, decisions and classifications.

GEC263 The Politics Of Gender (2)
This course will discuss the roles and contributions of men and women in nation building. It will examine in particular the disadvantaged position women hold in most societies.

GEC264 Religion And Development (2)
This course undertakes a study of religion amidst social transformation in different countries with special reference to sub-Saharan Africa. In the process of assessing the role of religion, taking into account the theories of development, secularization and modernization. It also looks at the paradigms in conflict in the socio-political and economic spheres.

GEC333 Logic II: Logic And The Sciences (2)
This course will examine the place of logic in philosophy, the sciences, and other human activities and relations. It will study the concepts of validity and soundness of arguments and the different parts that arguments can follow.

GEC334 Epistemology II: Theories of Truth (2)
This course will examine the concepts knowledge and belief and relate them to theories of truth. It will discuss theories such as "correspondence theory", "the coherence theory" and "the pragmatic theory".
DEAN
Prof. M.P. Modisi, BSc (Ibaden), M.S (S.Dakota Tech.), PhD (McMaster)

DEPUTY DEAN
Prof. V.R.K. Murty, BSc, MSc,PhD(ANDHRA), LMRPS, MSAIP, MISRP, MIOP(London)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
M.P. Tshebo, B.A (UB), MSc (Salford)
L.M. Paledi, B.A (UB), MPA (UB)

ICPMS SPECIALIST
M. Zhai, BSc (Beijing), PhD (McMaster)

NMR SPECIALIST
M. Bezabih, BSc, MSc, (ADDIS), PhD (UB)

XRD SPECIALIST
S. Diskin, BA, MSc (Trinity College Dublin), PhD (Oxford Brooks University)
DEPARTMENT OF BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES

Bachelor of Science Biological Sciences

General Provisions
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Science Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply.

Programmes and Titles of Degrees
The Department of Biological Sciences offers the following programmes leading to the award of the mentioned degrees:
(i) Single Major programme leading to the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science (Biological Sciences, Single Major); B.Sc. (Biological Sciences).
(ii) Combined degree (Major/Minor) programme with Biological Sciences as the Major leading to the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science (B.Sc.).
(iii) Combined degree (Major/Major) programme with Biological Sciences and another Science subject leading to the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science (B.Sc.).
(iv) Combined degree (Minor/Major) programme with Biological Sciences as the Minor leading to the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science (B.Sc.).

Entrance Requirements
Admission to the Biological Sciences shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Special Regulations. Entrance requirements specific to particular programmes shall be as specified under the specific programmes below.

Structure of the Programme
The Department of Biological Sciences shall:
(i) Offer courses at levels 100 to 400 for the undergraduate programme
(ii) From time to time, design and offer courses for specific needs of other Departments in the University provided there are no suitable courses already on offer.
(iii) Contribute to General Education Courses offered through the Faculty of Science.
(iv) Offer a Single Major Degree programme as per Departmental Special Regulations 2.1.
(v) Offer a Combined Degree Major/Minor programme as per Departmental Special Regulations 2.2.
(vi) Offer a Combined Degree Major/Major programme as per Departmental Special Regulations 2.3.
(vii) Offer a Combined Degree Minor/Major programme as per Departmental Special Regulations 2.4.

SINGLE MAJOR (Biological Sciences)

To be admitted into the Single Major (Biological Sciences) programme, a student must have obtained at least Grade C (GPA: 2.5) in both BIO111 and BIO112.

Semesters 1 and 2
All students who wish to pursue the Biological Sciences programme as Single Major should, in addition to BIO111 and BIO112, take CHE101 and CHE102.

Semesters 3 and 4
Students must take BIO211, BIO214, BIO217 and BIO218 in Semester 3. Students must take BIO212, BIO213, BIO215 and BIO216 in Semester 4. Students are also advised to take as electives CHE211 & CHE213 (Analytical Chemistry), CHE232 & CHE234 (Organic Chemistry) and CHE242 & CHE244 (Physical Chemistry).

Semesters 5 and 6
Students must take BIO301, BIO307 and at least two Optional Courses in Semester 5. Students must take BIO306, BIO308 and at least two Optional Courses in Semester 6.

Semesters 7 and 8
Students must take BIO450 and at least 3 Optional Courses in Semester 7. Students must take BIO450 and at least 3 Optional Courses in Semester 8.

Level Semester
Core Courses
All courses are worth 3 credits each except BIO111 and BIO112 (worth 4 credits each) and BIO450 (which is worth 6 credits). Students who wish to pursue Single Major, Major/Minor or Major/Major in Biological Sciences must take and pass BIO111 & BIO112.

Semester 1
BIO111 Principles of Biology (pre-req. to Single Major/Major/Minor and Major/Major) (4)
BIO122 Anatomy, Physiology and Biochemistry (3)

Semester 2
BIO112 Diversity of Animals and Plants (pre-req. to Single Major, Major/Minor and Major/Major) (4)
BIO120 Introductory Biochemistry (3)
BIO123 Introduction to Microbiology and Stored Products Entomology

Semester 3
BIO211 Cell Biology (pre-req. to BIO307) (3) (also offered in sem.4)
BIO212 Genetics (pre-req. to BIO308) (3) (also offered in sem.4)
BIO214 Intro. to Mammalian Physiology (pre-req. to BIO317) (3)
BIO216 General Microbiology (pre-req. to BIO309, BIO310, BIO312, BIO416, BIO418, BIO419, BIO420, BIO436) (3) (also offered in sem.4)
BIO217 Animal Diversity (pre-req. to BIO315) (3)
BIO218 Biology of Flowering Plants (3)
BIO223 Parasitology for Health Sciences (3)
BIO231 Human Anatomy (3)

Semester 4
BIO211 Cell Biology (3) (also offered in sem.3)
BIO212 Genetics (3) (also offered in sem.3)
BIO213 Plant Structure and Function (pre-req. to BIO316) (3)
BIO215 Principles of Ecology (pre-req. to BIO313, BIO314, BIO406, BIO409, BIO411, BIO412, BIO426, BIO429, BIO434) (3)
BIO216 General Microbiology (pre-req. to BIO309, BIO310, BIO312, BIO416, BIO418, BIO419, BIO420, BIO436) (3) (also offered in sem.3)
BIO225 Human Physiology and the Environment (3)
BIO232 Human Physiology (3)

Semester 5
BIO301 Quantitative Biology (3)
BIO307 Biochemistry (pre-req. to BIO417) (3)
BIO309 Mycology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
BIO313 Dynamics of Savannah Ecosystems (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
BIO315 Invertebrate Zoology (3)
BIO316 Plant Physiology (pre-req. BIO213) (3)
BIO317 Comparative Vertebrate Physiology (pre-req. to BIO214) (3)

Semester 6
BIO305 Insect Pest/Vector Control (3)
BIO306 Developmental Biology (3)
BIO308 Molecular Biology (pre-req. to BIO417) (3)
BIO310 Bacteriology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
BIO311 Plant Systematics (3)
BIO312 Virology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
BIO314 Conservation Biology (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
BIO318 Chordates (3)

Semester 7
BIO403 Applied Botany (3)
BIO409 Life History Strategies (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
BIO412 Aquatic Biology (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
BIO417 Biotechnology (pre-req. BIO307 & BIO308) (3)
BIO419 Medical Microbiology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
BIO421 Entomology (3)
BIO423 Exercise Physiology (3)
BIO425 Parasitology (3)
BIO427 Evolution (3)
BIO431 Plant Responses to Environmental Stress (3)
BIO432 Plant Tissue Culture (3)
BIO436 Environmental Microbiology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
BIO437 Micro techniques in Biology (3)
BIO450 Research Project (yr long - 6)

Semester 8
BIO408 Wildlife Biology of Southern Africa (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
BIO411 Wetlands Ecology and Management (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
BIO416 Immunology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
BIO418 Food Microbiology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
BIO420 Plant Pathology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
BIO422 Applied Entomology (pre-req. BIO315 or BIO421) (3)
BIO424 Vertebrate Structure (3)
BIO426 Behavioural Ecology (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
BIO429 Ecological Impact Assessment (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
BIO430 Post-harvest Physiology (3)
BIO434 Plant Ecology (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
BIO450 Research Project (yr long - 6)

Bachelor Of Education (B.Ed) Degree

B.Ed students can take any of the courses in Biological Sciences as prescribed by the Faculty of Education as long as they satisfy course pre-req. in Chemistry. The Department offers the following programmes:

- Single Major programme leading to a Bachelor of Science Degree in Chemistry
- A Combined Degree with a Major in Chemistry and a Major or Minor in another Science subject leading to a Combined Bachelor of Science Degree

1.1 Entry Requirements
To enter into any of the Chemistry programmes, in addition to fulfilling the faculty requirements for progression from Year One to Year Two, students must have a minimum average grade of C+ (for Single major), C (for Major in Chemistry) and C- (for Minor in Chemistry) in CHE101 and CHE102.

1.2 Programme Outlines and Structures
(a) Common First Year Programme
Two general Chemistry courses, CHE101 and CHE102, each consisting of 3-credit lectures and a 1-credit lab, will be offered to the common programme for first year Science students.

(b) Single Major Programme
In the Single Major programme, students take 85 credits of core courses, 20 credits of General Education courses, and will have opportunities to select more credits from a range of optional and elective courses. Eleven (11) credits of each of Mathematics and Physics courses, are included in the core credits.

(c) Combined Degree Programme (Chemistry Major)
Students in the Combined Degree programme with a Major in Chemistry, in addition to the 34 credits taken in Year One, must complete a minimum of 47 credits in Chemistry, a minimum of 3 credits each in Mathematics and Physics, and 12 credits in General Education courses. Students must also meet the requirements for the second Major or Minor as specified by the appropriate department.

(d) Combined Degree (Major/ Minor) Programme (Chemistry Minor)
Students in the Combined Degree (Major/Minor) programme with a Minor in Chemistry, in addition to the 34 credits taken in Year One, must complete 18 credits in Chemistry core courses consisting of 12 core credits in Year Two, 4 core credits in Year Three, and 2 credits of Year Three practicals.
## FACULTY OF SCIENCE

### Common First Year Programme

**Semester 1**
- **CHE101** General Chemistry I (4 credits)
- **MAT111** Introductory Mathematics I (4 credits)
- **PHY111** Geometrical optics, Mechanics, Vibrations & Waves (3)
- **PHY119** Physics Practicals 1.1 (1)
- **GEC111** Communication & Study skills I

#### Recommended Electives
- **ECO111** Basic Microeconomics (3)
- **MGT100** Principles of Management (3)

### Semester 2

- **CHE102** General Chemistry II (4) (pre-req. CHE101)
- **MAT122** Introductory Mathematics II (4) (pre-req. CHE101)
- **PHY121** Electricity & Magnetism, Modern Physics (3)
- **PHY129** Physics Practicals 1.2 (1)
- **GEC121** Communication & Study skills II

#### Recommended Electives
- **ACC100** Introduction to Accounting (3)
- **ECO112** Basic Macroeconomics (3)
- **MKT100** Principles of Marketing (3)

### Chemistry as Single Major Programme

**Semester 3**

#### Core Courses
- **CHE211** Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102)
- **CHE213** Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1) (Pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102; Co-req CHE211)
- **CHE232** Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102)
- **CHE234** Organic Chem. Lab I (1) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102)
- **MAT291** Engineering Mathematics I (3)
- **PHY211** Mechanics & Physical Optics (2)
- **PHY219** Physics Practicals 2.1 (1)

#### Semester 4

#### Core Courses
- **CHE221** Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102)
- **CHE223** Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I

### Semester 5

#### Core Courses
- **CHE311** Separation Techniques (3) (pre-req. CHE211)
- **CHE321** Coordination Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE221 & CHE223)
- **CHE323** Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (Pre-req. CHE 223; Co-req CHE321)
- **CHE331** Structure and Survey of Functional Groups II (3) (pre-req. CHE232)
- **CHE341** Applications of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE 242)
- **CHE343** Physical Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (Pre-req. CHE 242 & CHE 244)
- **CHE351** Chemical Informatics (1)

#### Recommended Electives
- **BIO307** Biochemistry (3)
- **PHY313** Mathematical Methods of Physics I (2)

### Semester 6

#### Core Courses
- **CHE312** Analytic Spectroscopy (2) (pre-req. CHE211)
- **CHE314** Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE 211 & CHE 213; Co-req CHE311 & CHE 312)
- **CHE322** Group Theory and Organometallic Chemistry (3) (pre-req. CHE321)
- **CHE332** Physical Organic Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE232 & CHE 331)
- **CHE334** Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE 234 & CHE 331)
- **CHE342** Quantum Chemistry & its Applications (3) (pre-req. CHE242 & CHE 341; Co-req CHE322)
- **CHE352** Literature Project (1) (pre-req. CHE351)

### Semester 7

#### Core Courses
- **CHE411** Advanced Analytical Techniques (3) (pre-req. CHE311 & CHE312)
- **CHE421** Advanced Transition Metal Chemistry (3) (pre-req. CHE322)
- **CHE431** Heterocyclic Chemistry, Synthetic Reactions and Design of Organic Synthesis (3) (pre-req. CHE331 & CHE332)
- **CHE441** Advanced Physical Chemistry I (3) (pre-req. CHE341)

#### Optional Courses: Take at least 9 Credits from the following
- **CHE413** Advanced Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (pre-req. CHE311 & CHE312)
- **CHE423** Advanced Inorganic Laboratory II (2) (Pre-req CHE 323; Co-req CHE421)
- **CHE433** Advanced Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (pre-req. CHE334)
- **CHE443** Physical Chemistry Laboratory III (2) (pre-req. CHE343)
- **CHE446** Special Topics in Physical Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE341 & CHE342)

### Semester 8

#### Core Course
- **CHE452** Student Research Project (3) (pre-req. CHE352)

#### Optional Courses: Take at least 9 Credits from the following
- **CHE412** Sample Handling & Biochemical Analysis (3-core) (pre-req. CHE311 & CHE312)
- **CHE416** Environmental Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE311 and CHE312 Co-req CHE 412)
- **CHE418** Special Topics in Analytical Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE311 & CHE312)
- **CHE422** Advanced Organometallic and Solid State Chemistry (3) (pre-req. CHE322)
- **CHE426** Special Topics in Inorganic Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE321 & CHE322)
- **CHE432** Secondary Metabolites and Biomolecules (3) (pre-req. CHE331)
- **CHE436** Special Topics in Organic Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE341)
- **CHE442** Advanced Physical Chemistry II (3) (pre-req. CHE341)
- **CHE470** Excited State Chemistry (2)
### Degree Chemistry as Major Subject in Combined Degree

#### Semester 3

**Core Courses**

- CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102)
- CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1) (Pre - req CHE 101 & CHE 102 : Co-req CHE211)
- CHE232 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102)
- CHE234 Organic Chem. Lab I (1) (Pre-req CHE 101 & CHE 102)
- MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)
- PHY211 Mechanics & Physical Optics (2)
- PHY219 Physics Practicals 2.1 (1)

#### Semester 4

**Core Courses**

- CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102)
- CHE223 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I (1 credit) (CHE 101 & CHE 102; Co-req CHE221)
- CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102; Co-req CHE242)
- CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1) (pre-req. CHE101 & CHE102, Co-req CHE242)

#### Semester 5

**Core Courses**

- CHE311 Separation Techniques (3) (pre-req. CHE211)
- CHE321 Coordination Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE216CHE223)
- CHE323 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (Pre – req CHE 223; Co-req CHE321)
- CHE341 Applications of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE242)
- CHE343 Physical Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE242CHE244)
- CHE351 Chemical Informatics (1)

**Recommended Electives**

- BIO307 Biochemistry (3)
- PHY313 Mathematical Methods of Physics I (2)

#### Semester 6

**Core Courses**

- CHE312 Analytic Spectroscopy (2) (pre-req. CHE211)
- CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE211CHE213 Co -req. CHE311 & CHE 312)
- CHE322 Group Theory and Organometallic Chemistry (3) (pre-req. CHE321)
- CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE232 & CHE 331)
- CHE333 Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE234 & CHE331)
- CHE352 Literature Project I (1) (pre-req. CHE351)

**Semester 7**

**Core Course**

- CHE331 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups II (3) (pre-req. CHE232)

**Optional Courses:** Take at least 6 Credits from the following

- CHE411 Advanced Analytical Techniques (3) (pre-req. CHE311 & CHE312)
- CHE421 Advanced Transition Metal Chemistry (3) (pre-req. CHE322)
- CHE431 Heterocyclic Chemistry, Synthetic Reactions and Design of Organic Synthesis (3) (pre-req. CHE311 & CHE332)
- CHE441 Advanced Physical Chemistry I (3) (pre-req. CHE341)

#### Semester 8

**Core Course**

- CHE342 Quantum Chemistry & its Applications (3) (pre-req. CHE242 & CHE341, Co-req CHE322)
- CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE234 & CHE331)
- CHE452 Student Research Project (3) (pre-req. CHE352)

**Recommended Elective**

- ENV476 Natural Resources Management and Economics (2)

**Chemistry As Minor Subject In Combined Degree**

**Semester 3**

- CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102)
- CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1) (Co-req CHE101 & CHE102)

- CHE232 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE102)
- CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE102)

**Semester 4**

- CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE102)
- CHE223 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I (1) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102; Co-req CHE221)
- CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE 101 & CHE 102, MAT122)
- CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1) (pre-req. CHE101 & CHE102, Co-req CHE242)

- CHE311 Separation Techniques (3) (pre-req. CHE211)
- CHE321 Coordination Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE216CHE223)
- CHE323 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (Pre req CHE 223,Co-req CHE321)
- CHE331 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups II (3) (pre-req. CHE232)
- CHE341 Applications of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE242)
- CHE343 Physical Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE242 CHE244)
- CHE351 Chemical Informatics (1)

**Semester 5**

- CHE312 Analytic Spectroscopy (2) (pre-req. CHE211)
- CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE211, Co req CHE 311 & CHE 312)
- CHE322 Group Theory and Organometallic Chemistry (3) (pre-req. CHE321)
- CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE232 & CHE 331)
- CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE234 & CHE 331)
- CHE342 Quantum Chemistry and Applications (3) (pre-req. CHE242 & CHE 341, Co-req CHE322)
For admission into the Single major or Combined Entry Requirements

(a) BSc (Computer Science (minor), other subject award of:
  (i) Combined minor/major programme leading to award of:
  (b) BIS (Computer Information Systems).
(b) BSc (Computer Science);
  (ii) Single major programme leading to award of:
  (c) Combined major/minor programme leading to award of:

Semester 7
Not required to take any Chemistry courses.

Semester 8
Not required to take any Chemistry courses.

Recommended Electives

BI0308 Molecular Biology (3)
MG303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formations (3)

ENV476 Natural Resources Management and Economics (2)

1.3 Assessment and Examination
The coursework shall be continuously assessed. Continuous assessment shall consist of written tests, assignments and laboratory exercises where applicable. The weighting of final examination where applicable, shall not be less than 50% of the overall grade for a given course.

1.4 Progression from one Semester to the next Semester
Progression from one semester to the next shall be as per General Regulations 00.9

1.5 Award of Degree
The award of the degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.852

DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

Programmes and Programme Titles
The Department of Computer Science offers the following undergraduate and postgraduate programmes:

- Single major programme leading to award of:
  (a) BSc (Computer Science);
  (b) BIS (Computer Information Systems).
- Combined major/minor programme leading to award of:
  (a) BSc (Computer Science [major], other subject [minor];
  (b) Combined minor/major programme leading to award of:
  (a) BSc (Computer Science [minor], other subject [major];

Entry Requirements
Undergraduate Entry Requirements
For admission into the Single major or Combined programmes students must meet the Faculty of Science entry requirements as specified in special regulations of the Faculty of Science 23.2. In addition, the following Departmental Special Regulations shall apply for entry to Level 200. For admission into Level 200 of the Department of Computer Science the student must have met one of the following requirements:

(a) Passed with minimum grade of C in each of MAT111, MAT122, or STA 101 and STA 102, and one other Science subject.
(b) Awarded a Diploma in Computer Studies or equivalent programme from this University or other similar institution and passed with a minimum average of 60%.
(c) Passed A-level or equivalent examination and achieved at least D in Mathematics and Physics and any other science subject.

Bachelor of Science, Computer Science
Single Major
Semesters 1 & 2
(Courses shall apply as prescribed in the relevant Faculty regulations.)

Semester 3
Core Courses
CS1231 Discrete Mathematics I (3)
CS1241 Structured Programming (4)
CS1261 Machine Organisation (3)
CS1292 Information Syst. Fundamental (3)

Optional Courses
MAT221 Calculus (3)
PHY211 Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)

Semester 4
Core Courses
CS1232 Discrete Mathematics II (3)
CS1242 Data Abstraction and Structures (4)
CS1252 Operating System Concepts (3)
CS1272 Communication Network Fundamentals (3)
CS1351 Assembly Language Programming (3)

Optional Courses
MAT212 Linear Algebra (3)
PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)

Semester 5
Core Course
CS1311 File Systems and Data Management (4)
CS1322 Algorithms Analysis and Design (3)
CS1341 Introduction to Software

Engineering (3)

CS1361 Computer Architecture (3)
CS1331 Numerical Methods (3)

Optional Courses
CS1314 Decision Support Systems (3)
CS1372 Expert Systems (3)

Semester 6
Core Course
CS1332 Programming Languages (3)
CS1342 Systems Analysis and Design (3)
CS1352 Industrial Attachment (2)
CS1362 Database Concepts (3)
CS1382 Formal Languages and Automata (3)
CS1312 Programming Languages Translation (3)

Optional Courses
CS1392 Human Computer interaction (3)
CS1393 Multimedia Computing (3)

Semester 7
Core Courses
CS1315 Web Technology and Applications (3)
CS1403 Project I (2)
CS1421 Operating Systems (3)
CS1423 Systems Programming (3)
CS1461 Communication Networks Management (4)

Optional Courses
CS1411 Complexity and Computability Theory (3)
CS1433 Algorithmic Graph Theory (3)
CS1414 Information Interfaces and Presentation (3)
CS1451 Knowledge Engineering (3)
CS1491 Pattern Recognition (3)
CS1493 Computer Graphics I (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
CS1405 Project II (4)
CS1462 Distributed Systems (3)
CS1441 Software Engineering (3)
CS1471 Object-Oriented Systems (3)
CS1481 Database Systems (3)

Optional Courses
CS1431 Formal Methods (3)
CS1434 Knowledge Management Systems (3)
CS1422 Operations Research (3)
CS1452 Computer Simulation and Modelling (3)
CS1422 Operations Research (3)
CSI432  Intelligent Interfaces and Systems (3)  
CSI442  Artificial Intelligence (3)  
CSI494  Computer Graphics II (3)  

**Bachelor of Science, Computer Science**  
- Combined Major

Students must take a minimum of 12 credits from core CS courses and a minimum of 3 credits from another approved programme, excluding GEC courses, in each semester. Students may also take any optional courses offered by the Department.

**Semester 3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSI231</td>
<td>Discrete Mathematics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI241</td>
<td>Structured Programming (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI261</td>
<td>Machine Organisation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI292</td>
<td>Information System Fundamentals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

- LIS223  Digital Libraries (3)
- MGT203  Quantitative Methods (3)
- MAT221  Calculus I (3)

**Semester 4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSI232</td>
<td>Discrete Mathematics II (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI242</td>
<td>Data Abstraction and Structures (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI252</td>
<td>Operating System Concepts (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI272</td>
<td>Communication Networks Fundamentals (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

- MAT212  Linear Algebra (3)
- MAT    Calculus II (3)
- LIS227  Intro to Knowledge Management (3)
- MGT200  Organisational Design & Development (3)

**Semester 5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSI311</td>
<td>File Systems and Data Management (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI322</td>
<td>Algorithms Analysis and Design (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI341</td>
<td>Introduction to Software Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI361</td>
<td>Computer Architecture (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

- CSI371  Information Systems Resource Management (3)
- LIS300  Online Information Retrieval (3)
- LIS310  Health Information Systems (3)
- MGT301  Organisational Behaviour (3)

**Semester 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSI332</td>
<td>Programming Languages (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI342</td>
<td>Systems Analysis and Design (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI352</td>
<td>Industrial Attachment (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI362</td>
<td>Database Concepts (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI382</td>
<td>Formal Languages and Automata (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

- CSI332  Programming Languages (3)
- CSI342  Systems Analysis and Design (3)
- CSI352  Industrial Attachment (2)
- CSI362  Database Concepts (3)
- CSI382  Formal Languages and Automata (3)

**Bachelor of Science Systems (Computer Information Systems)**

**Semester 8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSI471</td>
<td>Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI481</td>
<td>Database Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

- CSI314  Decision Support Systems (3)
- CSI372  Expert Systems (3)
- CSI373  Economics of Information Technology (3)
- CSI392  Human Computer Interaction (3)
FACULTY OF SCIENCE

CSI393 Multimedia Computing (3)
LIS311 Business Information Systems (3)
LIS312 Legal Information Systems (3)
LIS314 Agricultural Information Systems (3)
BIS309 Accounting Information Systems (3)

Semester 7
Core Courses
CSI315 Web Technology and Technology (3)
CSI403 Project I (2)
CSI461 Communication Networks Management (4)
CSI421 Operating Systems (3)

Optional Courses
CSI414 Information Interfaces and Presentation (3)
CSI451 Knowledge Engineering (3)
MGT400 Strategic Management (3)
LIS407 Emerging Technologies (3)
ENV440 Geographical Information Systems (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
CSI405 Project II (4)
CSI462 Distributed Systems (3)
CSI441 Software Engineering (3)
CSI481 Database Systems (3)

Optional Courses
LIS425 Global Information Systems (3)
BIS417 Information Systems Auditing (3)

DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

4. Entrance Requirements
Normal entry requirements shall be as stipulated in General Regulation 20.00 in this Calendar and Departmental Regulation 1.4 (see Departmental Handbook).

5.1 Human Environment Programmes
Level 100
All courses at this level are core courses.
Semester 1
ENV101 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments I (2)
ENV103 Elementary Quantitative Techniques in Geography I (3)

Semester 2
ENV102 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments II (2)
ENV104 Elementary Quantitative Techniques in Geography II (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
ENV215 Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)

Optional Courses
ENV211 Elements of Human Geography I (3)
(pre: ENV102)
ENV214 Elements of Physical Environment I (3) (pre: ENV101)

Semester 4
Core Courses
ENV216 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)

Optional Courses
ENV219 Elements of Human Geography II (3)
(pre: ENV102)
ENV220 Elements of Physical Environment II (3) (pre: ENV101)

Levels 300 to 400
Single Major Programmes
In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, in each of Semesters 5 to 8 the Single Major Programme in Environmental Science shall consist of 10 to 12 core and optional courses for each of the Human Environment Areas of Specialisation, with optional courses selected from the following lists. Availability of courses and areas of specialisation are subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester and/or year. In accordance with Departmental Regulation 1.4, Entry into the programme is by application to HoD.

Human Environment Areas of Specialisation Courses in the Human Environment Areas of Specialisation fall into the following career areas:
- Area 1: Population, Economy and Resources
- Area 2: Rural and Agricultural Development
- Area 3: Management of the Urban and Industrial Environment
- Area 4: Tourism Development and Policy

Semester 5
Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)
ENV301 Environmental Issues (2, all areas)
ENV303 Directed Readings (2, all areas)
ENV304 Quantitative Techniques in Human Geography (3, all areas)
ENV302 Concepts and Principles in Population Geography (2, Area 1)
ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Area 2) (not available 2008/09)

ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Area 4)
ENV317 Industrialisation Trends and the Developing World (2, Area 3) (not available 2008/09)
ENV321 Urbanisation in the Developing World (2, Area 3)
(pre: ENV210/211/212/219/POF303/URP200/204)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)
ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Areas 1 and 2)
ENV306 Globalisation, Socioeconomic and Environmental Change (2, all areas)
(not available 2008/09)
ENV307 Human Settlements: Principles and Morphology (2, all areas)
(pre: ENV210/211/212/219/POF303/URP200/204)
ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Areas 1 and 2)
ENV310 Medical Geography (2, all areas)
ENV319 Economic Geography (2, all areas)
(not available 2008/09)
ENV321 Urbanisation in the Developing World (2, Area 1)
(pre: ENV210/211/212/219/POF303/URP200/204)

Semester 6
Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)
ENV311 Environment, Population and Development (2, Area 1)
(pre: ENV302 or POP120)
ENV312 Sustainable Development (2, all areas)
(pre: ENV301)
ENV314 Project Proposal (2, all areas)
(pre: ENV303)
ENV315 Environmentalism and Social Theory (2, all areas)
(pre: ENV210/211/212/219/383/POL301/SOC322/SOC327)
ENV313 Elementary Techniques in Population Geography (2, Area 1) (pre: ENV302)
ENV316 Agricultural Development (2, Area 2)
ENV318 Tourism II: Tools and Analysis (2, Area 4) (pre: ENV309)
ENV320 Botswana’s Environment (2, all areas)
(not available 2008/09)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)
ENV315 Environmentalism and Social Theory (2, all areas)
(pre: ENV210/211/212/219/383/POL301/SOC322/SOC327)
ENV339 Methods and Techniques in Environmental Appraisal (2, all areas)
ENV318 Tourism II: Tools and Analysis (2,
Areas 1 and 2) (pre: ENV309)

POP305 Population Dynamics, Policies and Programmes (3, Area 1)

**Semester 7**

Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV400/414 Project Data Collection, Analysis and Reporting I (1, all areas)

ENV426 GIS for Socioeconomic Applications (3, all areas) (pre: ENV215)

ENV401 Advanced Techniques in Population Geography (3, Area 1) (pre: ENV313)

ENV402 Natural Resource Conservation and Management (3, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV404 Rural Development Theory and Practice (2, Area 2)

ENV405 Urban and Rural Survey Techniques (2, Area 2)

ENV407 Ecotourism (2, Area 4) (pre: ENV309/431)

ENV423 Urban Social Theory (2, Area 3) (pre: ENV315/383/POL301/SOC421/433/URP400/407)

ENV424 Industry and the Environment (2, Area 3) (not available 2008/09)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV406 Regional Development Studies (2, all areas) (not available in 2008/09)

ENV425 The African Environment (3, all areas)

ENV447 Environmental Hazards (2, all areas)

ENV404 Rural Development Theory and Practice (2, Areas 1 and 4)

ENV407 Ecotourism (2, Areas 1 and 2) (pre: ENV309/431)

ENV423 Urban Social Theory (2, Area 1) (pre: ENV315/383/POL301/SOC421/433/URP400/407)

ENV424 Industry and the Environment (2, Area 4) (not available 2008/09)

**Semester 8**

Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV408 Tourism and Development (2, Areas 1 and 2) (pre: ENV309/431)

ENV414/400 Project Data Collection, Analysis and Report II (2, all areas) (pre: ENV400/414)

ENV456 Remote Sensing for Socio-economic Applications (3, all areas) (pre: ENV216)

ENV415 Rural Development in Botswana (2, Areas 1 and 2)

ENV418 Environmental Policy (2, Area 4)

ENV481 Concepts and Principles of 

Industrialisation (2, Area 3) (not available 2008/09)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV403 Gender and Environment (2, all areas)

ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment (3, all areas) (not available in 2008/09)

ENV427 Energy and Environment (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV476 Natural Resource Management and Economics (2, all areas) (not available in 2008/09)

ENV416 Transport and Environment (2, Areas 2, 3 and 4) B Environmental Policy (2, Areas 1, 2 and 3)

ENV419 Development Geography (3, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV484 Urbanisation and Environment (2, Area 3) (pre: ENV307/321/URP213,301)

POP23 Population and Development (3, Area 1)

Major/Minor Programme with Environmental Science as the Major

In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, in each of Semesters 5 to 8, the Single Major Programme in Environmental Science shall consist of 7 to 8 core and optional courses, with optional courses selected from accompanying lists. The areas of specialisation specified under Regulation 2.1 shall also apply to this Programme. Availability of courses and areas of specialisation are subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester and/or year. In accordance with Departmental Regulation 1.4, entry into the programme is by application to HoD.

**Semester 5**

Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV301 Environmental Issues (2, all areas)

ENV302 Concepts and Principles in Population Geography (2, Area 1)

ENV304 Quantitative Techniques in Human Geography (3 credits, all areas)

ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Area 2) (not available in 2008/09)

ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Area 4)

ENV317 Industrialisation Trends and Developing Countries (2, Area 3) (not available 2008/09)

ENV383 Advanced Human Geography (2, Humanities Students) (pre: ENV102/211/219)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV306 Globalisation, Socioeconomic and Environmental Change (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV307 Human Settlements: Principles and Morphology (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/URP200/204)

ENV310 Medical Geography (2, all areas)

ENV319 Economic Geography (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV339 Methods and Techniques in Environmental Appraisal (2, all areas)

ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Areas 1 and 4) (not available 2008/09)

ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Areas 1 and 2)

ENV317 Industrialisation Trends and the Developing World (2, Areas 1 and 2) (not available 2008/09)

ENV321 Urbanisation in the Developing World (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/URP200/204)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV306 Globalisation, Socioeconomic and Environmental Change (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV307 Human Settlements: Principles and Morphology (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/URP200/204)

ENV310 Medical Geography (2, all areas)

ENV319 Economic Geography (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV339 Methods and Techniques in Environmental Appraisal (2, all areas)

ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Areas 1 and 4) (not available 2008/09)

ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Areas 1 and 2)

ENV317 Industrialisation Trends and the Developing World (2, Areas 1 and 2) (not available 2008/09)

ENV321 Urbanisation in the Developing World (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/URP200/204)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV306 Globalisation, Socioeconomic and Environmental Change (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV307 Human Settlements: Principles and Morphology (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/URP200/204)

ENV310 Medical Geography (2, all areas)

ENV319 Economic Geography (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV339 Methods and Techniques in Environmental Appraisal (2, all areas)

ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Areas 1 and 4) (not available 2008/09)

ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Areas 1 and 2)

ENV317 Industrialisation Trends and the Developing World (2, Areas 1 and 2) (not available 2008/09)

ENV321 Urbanisation in the Developing World (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/URP200/204)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV306 Globalisation, Socioeconomic and Environmental Change (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV307 Human Settlements: Principles and Morphology (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/URP200/204)

ENV310 Medical Geography (2, all areas)

ENV319 Economic Geography (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV339 Methods and Techniques in Environmental Appraisal (2, all areas)

ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Areas 1 and 4) (not available 2008/09)

ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Areas 1 and 2)

ENV317 Industrialisation Trends and the Developing World (2, Areas 1 and 2) (not available 2008/09)

ENV321 Urbanisation in the Developing World (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/URP200/204)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV306 Globalisation, Socioeconomic and Environmental Change (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV307 Human Settlements: Principles and Morphology (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/URP200/204)

ENV310 Medical Geography (2, all areas)

ENV319 Economic Geography (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)

ENV339 Methods and Techniques in Environmental Appraisal (2, all areas)

ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Areas 1 and 4) (not available 2008/09)

ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Areas 1 and 2)

ENV317 Industrialisation Trends and the Developing World (2, Areas 1 and 2) (not available 2008/09)

ENV321 Urbanisation in the Developing World (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/URP200/204)
Semester 8
Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)
ENV415 Rural Development in Botswana (2, Areas 2 and 4)
ENV418 Environmental Policy (2, Area 4)
ENV424 Industry and Environment (2, Area 3) (not available 2008/09)
Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)
ENV403 Gender and Environment (2, all areas)
ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment (3, all areas) (not available in 2008/09)
ENV418 Environmental Policy (2, Areas 1, 2 and 3)
ENV419 Development Geography (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)
ENV427 Energy and Environment (2, all areas) (not available 2008/09)
ENV456 Remote Sensing for Socioeconomic Applications (3, all areas) (pre: ENV216)
ENV476 Natural Resource Management and Economics (2, all areas)
ENV416 Transport and Environment (2, Areas 2, 3 and 4)
ENV483 Advanced Map-work and Air Photo Interpretation (3, Humanities)
ENV484 Urbanisation and Environment (2, Area 3) (pre: ENV307,321)
URP213,301 POP423 Population and Development (3, Areas 1 and 2)

Combined Major/Minor Programme

Semester 5
(See above or Dept Handbook for course pre-req.)
In Semester 5, Combined Major/Minor students shall take core course ENV301 and an additional 4 credits from the following list of optional courses: ENV302, ENV304, ENV305, ENV306, ENV307, ENV309, ENV310, ENV317, ENV319, ENV321, ENV339, and ENV383. For students registered in the Faculty of Humanities, ENV383 shall be taken as a core course.

Semester 6
(See above or Dept Handbook for course pre-req.)
In Semester 6, Combined Major/Minor students shall take core course ENV312 and an additional 4 credits from the following list of optional courses: POP305, ENV311, ENV313, ENV315, ENV316, ENV318, ENV320, and ENV384. For students registered in the Faculty of Humanities, ENV384 shall be taken as a core course.

Semester 7
(See above or Dept Handbook for course pre-req.)
In Semester 7, Combined Major/Minor students shall take 3 to 4 credits from the following Environmental Science optional courses: ENV401, ENV402, ENV404, ENV405, ENV406, ENV408, ENV423, ENV424, ENV425, ENV440, and ENV447.

Semester 8
(See above or Dept Handbook for course pre-req.)
In Semester 8, Combined Major/Minor students shall take 3 to 4 credits from the following Environmental Science optional courses: ENV402, ENV403, ENV412, ENV415, ENV416, ENV418, ENV419, POP423, ENV427, ENV428, ENV440, and ENV447.

5.2 Physical Environment Programmes
The Physical Environment Programmes are designed for students registered in the Faculty of Science and are subject to Departmental Regulations 1.4.1.2 to 1.4.1.5.

Level 100
In accordance with Faculty Special Regulation 23.45, Environmental Science is not offered at this level to students registered in the Faculty of Science.

Levels 200 to 400
Semester 3
Core Courses
Environ 210 Introduction to the Human Environment I (2)
Environ 213 Introduction to the Physical Environment I (2)

Optional Courses
Environ 215 Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
Environ 212 Introduction to the Human Environment II (2) (pre: Environ 210)
Environ 218 Introduction to the Physical Environment II (2) (pre: Environ 213)

Optional Courses
Environ 216 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)

Single Major Programme
In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, in each of Semesters 5 to 8 the Single Major Programme in Environmental Science shall consist of 10 to 12 core and optional courses for each of the Physical Environment Areas of Specialisation, with optional courses selected from the following lists. Availability of courses is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester and/or year.

Semester 5
Core Courses
Environ 301 Environmental Issues (2)
Environ 303 Directed Readings (2)
Environ 330 Remote Sensing for Environmental Science (3) (pre: Environ 216)

Optional Courses
Environ 331 Hydro-meteorology (2)

Environ 332 Air Photography (3) (pre: Environ 215/216)
Environ 334 Principles of Soil Science (3) (pre: Environ 218)
Environ 338 Introduction to Geomorphology (3) (pre: Environ 218)
Environ 340 Biogeography (2)
Environ 382 Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
Environ 312 Sustainable Development (2) (pre: Environ 301)
Environ 314 Project Proposal (2) (pre: Environ 303)
Environ 336 Advanced Statistical Techniques for Environmental Science (3)

Optional Courses
Environ 335 Principles of Hydrology (3)
Environ 337 Dynamic Meteorology (3)
Environ 339 Methods and Techniques for Environmental Appraisal (2) (not available in 2008/09)
Environ 342 The Climate System (3)
Environ 385 Soil Geography (3)

Semester 7
Core Courses
Environ 400/414 Project Data Collection, Analysis and Reporting I (1) (pre: Environ 314)
Environ 440 Geographical Information Systems (3) (pre: Environ 215)

Optional Courses
Environ 441 Applied Hydrology I (3) (pre: Environ 335)
Environ 442 Boundary Layer Climates (3)
Environ 447 Environmental Hazards (2)
Environ 449 Land Reclamation (3)
Environ 450 Rangeland Management I (3) (pre: Environ 340)
Environ 462 Environmental Quality and Management: Land and Air (3)
Environ 475 Pedology (2)
Environ 477 Internet Kalahari Transect Land-use Change Modelling I (3)

Semester 8
Core Course
Environ 414/400 Project Data Collection, Analysis and Reporting II (1, all areas)

Optional Courses
Environ 445 Arid Lands Geomorphology (2) (pre: Environ 338)
Environ 451 Rangeland Management II (2) (pre: Environ 450)

Environ 452 Soil survey and land evaluation (3) (pre: Environ 334/385)
Environ 458 Water Resources Development and Management (2)
Environ 463 Environmental Quality and Management: Water and Wastewater (3) (pre: Environ 462)
Environ 478 Climates of Southern Africa (2) (pre: Environ 342)
Environ 479 Applied Hydrology II (3) (pre: Environ 435)
Environ 480 Internet Kalahari Transect Land-use Change Modelling II (3) (not available)

Combined Major/Minor Programme with Environmental Science as the Major
In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, the Combined Major/Minor Programme in Physical Environment shall consist of 7 to 8 credits from core and optional courses, with optional courses selected from the following lists. Courses Environ 303, Environ 400 and Environ 414 jointly satisfy Faculty Regulation 23.47. Availability of courses is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester.

Semester 3
Core Courses
Environ 210 Introduction to the Human Environment I (2)
Environ 213 Introduction to the Physical Environment I (2)

Optional Courses
Environ 216 Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
Environ 212 Introduction to the Human Environment II (2) (pre: Environ 210)
Environ 218 Introduction to the Physical Environment II (2) (pre: Environ 213)

Optional Courses
Environ 216 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)

Semester 5
Core Courses
Environ 301 Environmental Issues (2)
Environ 303 Directed Readings (2)
Environ 330 Remote Sensing for Environmental Science (3) (pre: Environ 216)

Optional Courses
Environ 331 Hydro-meteorology (2)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisite(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENV332</td>
<td>Air Photo Interpretation</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV215/216)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV334</td>
<td>Principles of Soil Science</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV338</td>
<td>Introduction to Geomorphology</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV218)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV340</td>
<td>Biogeography</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV382</td>
<td>Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Semester 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV312</td>
<td>Sustainable Development</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV301)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV314</td>
<td>Project Proposal</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV303)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV336</td>
<td>Advanced Statistical Techniques for</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Environmental Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Optional Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV335</td>
<td>Principles of Hydrology</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV337</td>
<td>Dynamic Meteorology</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV339</td>
<td>Methods and Techniques for Environmental</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appraisal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(not available)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV442</td>
<td>The Climate System</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV458</td>
<td>Principles of Soil Science</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV462</td>
<td>Environmental Quality and Management: Water</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and Waste</td>
<td></td>
<td>(pre: ENV215/216)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV478</td>
<td>Climates of Southern Africa</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV479</td>
<td>Applied Hydrology II</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV335)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Combined Major/Major Programme In</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>accordance with General Academic Regulation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.0.62, the Major/Major Programme in Physical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Environment shall consist of 5 to 6 credits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>from core and optional courses, with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>optional courses selected from the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>following lists. Course ENV485 satisfies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Faculty Regulation 23.47. Availability of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>courses is subject to the staffing situation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the particular semester.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Semester 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV210</td>
<td>Introduction to the Human Environment I</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV213</td>
<td>Introduction to the Physical Environment I</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Optional Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV209</td>
<td>Quantitative Techniques for Environmental</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Science I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV215</td>
<td>Introduction to Spatial Analysis</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Semester 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV212</td>
<td>Introduction to the Human Environment II</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV218</td>
<td>Introduction to the Physical Environment II</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Optional Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV216</td>
<td>Introduction to Remote Sensing</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV217</td>
<td>Quantitative Techniques for Environmental</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Science II</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Semester 5</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Core Course</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV301</td>
<td>Environmental Issues</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Optional Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV330</td>
<td>Remote Sensing for Environmental Science</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV216)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV331</td>
<td>Hydro-meteorology</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV332</td>
<td>Air Photography</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV215/216)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV334</td>
<td>Principles of Soil Science</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV338</td>
<td>Introduction to Geomorphology</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV218)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV340</td>
<td>Biogeography</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV382</td>
<td>Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Semester 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV312</td>
<td>Sustainable Development</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV301)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV336</td>
<td>Advanced Statistical Techniques for</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Environmental Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Optional Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV335</td>
<td>Principles of Hydrology</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV337</td>
<td>Dynamic Meteorology</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV339</td>
<td>Methods and Techniques for Environmental</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appraisal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(not available)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV440</td>
<td>Geographical Information Systems</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV215)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV441</td>
<td>Applied Hydrology I</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV335)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV442</td>
<td>Boundary Layer Climates</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV447</td>
<td>Environmental Hazards</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV449</td>
<td>Land Reclamation</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV450</td>
<td>Rangeland Management I</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV350)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV462</td>
<td>Environmental Quality and Management: Land</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV350)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and Air</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV475</td>
<td>Pedology</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV332)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Semester 7</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV445</td>
<td>Arid Lands Geomorphology</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV338)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV451</td>
<td>Rangeland Management II</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV450)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV452</td>
<td>Soil Survey and Land Evaluation</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV215/216)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV458</td>
<td>Water Resources Development and Management</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV462</td>
<td>Environmental Quality and Management: Water</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and Waste</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Semester 8</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV445</td>
<td>Arid Lands Geomorphology</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV338)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV451</td>
<td>Rangeland Management II</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV450)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV452</td>
<td>Soil Survey and Land Evaluation</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(pre: ENV215/216)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV458</td>
<td>Water Resources Development and Management</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV462</td>
<td>Environmental Quality and Management: Water</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and Waste</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Combined Minor/Major Programme with Environmental Science as Minor

In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, the Major/Minor Programme in Physical Environment shall consist of 3 to 4 core and optional courses, with optional courses selected from the following lists. Availability of courses is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester.

Semester 3
Core Courses
ENV210 Introduction to the Human Environment I (2)
ENV213 Introduction to the Physical Environment I (2)

Semester 4
Core Courses
ENV212 Introduction to the Human Environment II (2) (pre: ENV210)
ENV218 Introduction to the Physical Environment II (2) (pre: ENV213)

Semester 5
Core Course
ENV301 Environmental Issues (2)

Optional Courses
ENV330 Remote Sensing for Environmental Science (3) (pre: ENV216)
ENV331 Hydro-meteorology (2)
ENV332 Air Photo Interpretation (3) (pre: ENV215/216)
ENV334 Principles of Soil Science (3)
ENV338 Introduction to Geomorphology (3) (pre: ENV218)
ENV340 Biogeography (2)
ENV382 Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards (3)

Semester 6
Core Course
ENV312 Sustainable Development (2) (pre: ENV301)

Optional Courses
ENV336 Advanced Statistical Techniques for Environmental Science (3)
ENV335 Principles of Hydrology (3)

ENV337 Dynamic Meteorology (3)
ENV339 Methods and Techniques for Environmental Appraisal (2) (not available)
ENV342 The Climate System (3)
ENV385 Soil Geography (3)

Semester 7
Core Courses
None

Optional Courses
ENV440 Geographical Information Systems (3) (pre: ENV215)
ENV441 Applied Hydrology I (3) (pre: ENV335)
ENV442 Boundary Layer Climates (3)
ENV447 Environmental Hazards (2)
ENV449 Land Reclamation (3)
ENV450 Rangeland Management I (3)
ENV462 Environmental Quality and Management: Land and Air (3) (pre: ENV382)
ENV475 Pedology (2) (pre: ENV332)

Semester 8
Core Courses
None

Optional Courses
ENV445 Arid Lands Geomorphology (2) (pre: ENV338)

DEPARTMENT OF GEOLOGY

Programmes and Titles of Degrees

The Department of Geology offers the following Programmes leading to the award of the mentioned Degrees:

- Single Major Programme, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree in Geology as per Departmental Regulation 2.2
- Combined Major/Minor with a Geology major leading to the award a Bachelor of Science degree as per Departmental Regulation 2.2
- Combined Major/Major Degree Programme with Geology and one of Chemistry, Environmental Science and Physics leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as per Departmental Regulations 2.2
- Combined Major/Minor with Geology as a Minor leading to the award of the degree in which the student is enrolled as per Departmental Regulation 2.2
- Master of Science Programme leading to the award of a Master of Science Degree in Hydrogeology as per Departmental Regulations 4.0.

Entry Requirements

(a) Admission to the Geology Single Major and Combined Degree Programmes shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Regulations 23.2.1 and 23.4.
(b) Students who wish to register for Geology (Single Major or Combined Degree) at Level 200 must have taken and passed Mathematics, Physics, Chemistry and Geology or Mathematics, Physics and Chemistry at Level 100.
(c) In accordance with the Faculty of Science Special Regulation 23.2.4, a Geology student (Single Major and Combined Degree) can register directly at Level 200 but cannot be exempted from Level 100 Geology courses.
(d) A student admitted to Level 200 Geology who has not completed Level 100 Geology courses must take them during the first semester of Level 200.
(e) A student admitted to Level 200 Geology who has successfully completed Level 100 Geology courses must comply with the University of Botswana Academic General Regulation 00.311 by taking relevant General Education courses or Elective courses in consultation with the Head of Department.

Award of Degree

To be awarded a Bachelor of Science Degree in Geology or a Bachelor of Science for a Combined Degree involving Geology as a subject, a student must satisfy General Academic Regulations 00.85 and 00.9 and Faculty of Science Special Regulation 23.7.

Course Structure

Geology courses shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the Undergraduate Programme as outlined in Regulations 2.1 to 2.4 below and Levels 600 to 700 for Master of Science candidates.

Level 100
Semester 1 GEO101 Introduction to Geology (4)
Semester 2 GEO102 Introduction to Mineralogy (3)
Levels 200, 300 and 400 Bachelor of Science, Geology Single Major

At Level 200, the Single Major Programme consists of 19 credits of core courses and 9 credits of
selective courses from Statistics and Mathematics. In addition, students must take a minimum of 4 credits of General Education Courses.

Semester 3
Core Courses
GEO201 Structural Geology (3)
GEO204 Sedimentology (3)
GEO205 Introduction to Hydrogeology (3)
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)
STA113 Basic Statistics (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
GEO202 Optical Mineralogy (2)
GEO203 Photogeology and Remote Sensing Applied to Geology (2)
GEO206 Petrography (3)
GEO207 Chemical Geology (3)
MAT292 Engineering Mathematics II (3)

Level 300
At Level 300, the Single Major Programme will consist of 35 credits of core courses which include a winter course GEO301 (Field Mapping) to be done during the long vacation/winter semester after Level 200.

Long Vacation/Winter Semester
GEO301 Field Mapping (3)

Semester 5
Core Courses
GEO302 Igneous Petrology (3)
GEO303 Sedimentary Petrology (3)
GEO305 Ore Geology (3)
GEO306 Exploration Geophysics I (3)
GEO312 Research Methods & Computer Applications in Geology (2)

Semester 6
Core Courses
GEO304 Advanced Structural Geology (4)
GEO308 Metamorphic Petrology (3)
GEO309 Hydrogeology (3)
GEO310 Exploration Geophysics II (3)
GEO311 Palaeontology and Stratigraphy (3)
GEO313 Theoretical Geochemistry (3)

Level 400
At Level 400, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 23 credits of core courses and at least 3 credits from optional courses.

Long Vacation/Winter Semester
GEO401 Research Project (Data Acquisition)

Semester 7
Core Courses
GEO401 Research Project (6, year long)
GEO404 Geology of Africa (3)
GEO407 Economic Geology (3)
GEO408 Environmental Geology (3)
GEO409 Geology of Botswana (3)
GEO410 Advanced Methods in Exploration Geophysics (3)

Bachelor of Science, Combined
(geology Major)

Level 200
At level 200, the Major/Minor programme shall consist of 19 credits of core courses. In addition, students must take the relevant General Education Courses and comply with Academic General Regulations 00.62

Semester 5
Core Courses
GEO305 Petrology I (2)
GEO307 Petrology II (2)
GEO312 Research Methods & Computer Applications in Geol. (2)
GEO315 Introduction to Exploration Geophysics (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
GEO304 Advanced Structural Geology (4)
GEO309 Hydrogeology (3)
GEO313 Theoretical Geochemistry (3)
GEO314 Petrology II (2)

Level 400
At Level 400, the Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 15 credits of core courses and at least 2 to 3 credits from optional courses.

Long Vacation/Winter Semester
GEO401 Research Project (Data Acquisition)

Semester 7
Core Courses
GEO401 Research Project (6, year long)
GEO402 Geotectonics (2)
GEO403 Exploration Geochemistry (3)
GEO405 Engineering Geology (3)

Bachelor of Science, Combined
Major

Level 200
At level 200, the Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 11 credits of core courses for all streams (Geology/Chemistry; Geology/Environmental Science; and Geology/Physics). In addition, the student must take the relevant General Education Courses and comply with Academic General Regulation 00.62

Semester 3
Core Courses
GEO201 Structural Geology (3)
GEO204 Sedimentology (3)
GEO205 Introduction to Hydrogeology (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
GEO202 Optical Mineralogy (2)
GEO203 Photogeology and Remote Sensing Applied to Geology (2)
GEO206 Petrography (3)
GEO207 Chemical Geology (3)

Level 300
At Level 300, the Major/Minor Programme (Geology Major) shall consist of 23 credits. In addition, the students must take relevant General Education Courses.

Long Vacation/Winter Semester
GEO301 Field Mapping (3)
first year have to register for these courses at level 200.

**Semester 4**  
**Core Courses**  
GEO203 Photogeology and Remote Sensing Applied to Geology (2)  
GEO206 Petrography (3)

**Level 300**  
At Level 300, the Major/Major Programme is offered in the 3 following streams:  
a) Geology/Chemistry;  
b) Geology/Environmental Science;  
c) Geology/Physics.

The programme consists of 13 credits of core and optional courses. In addition, the students must take the relevant General Education courses and comply with Academic General Regulation 00.62

**Long Vacation/Winter Session**  
**Core Course for all Streams**  
GEO301 Field Mapping (3)

**Bachelor of Science, Combined Major (Geology/Chemistry)**

**Semester 5**  
**Core Courses**  
GEO305 Ore Geology (3)  
GEO307 Petrology I (2)

**Semester 6**  
**Core Courses**  
GEO309 Hydrogeology (3)  
GEO314 Petrology II (2)

**Level 400**  
At level 400, the Major/Major programme shall consist of 3 credits of core courses and 5 to 6 credits of optional courses. In addition, the students must take the relevant General Education courses and comply with the Faculty of Science General Regulation 00.62

**Semester 7**  
**Core course**  
GEO408 Environmental Geology (3)  
GEO407 Economic Geology (3)  
GEO409 Geology of Botswana (3)

**Semester 8**  
Optional Courses (choose at least 2)  
GEO402 Geotectonics (2)  
GEO403 Exploration Geochemistry (3)  
GEO405 Engineering Geology (3)

**Important Notice for 4th Year Combined Major Students**  
(a) Students who wish to do a research project in Geology must register for GEO406 (in semester 2).  
(b) Students who do not register for GEO406 must register for a project in the other subject.

**Bachelor of Science, Combined Major (Geology/Environmental Science)**

**Semester 5**  
**Core Courses**  
GEO305 Ore Geology (3)  
GEO307 Petrology I (2)

**Semester 6**  
**Core Courses**  
GEO309 Hydrogeology (3)  
GEO314 Petrology II (2)

**Level 400**  
At level 400, the Major/Major programme shall consist of 3 credits of core courses and 5 to 6 credits of optional courses. In addition, the students must take the relevant General Education courses and comply with the Faculty of Science General Regulation 00.62

**Semester 7**  
**Core course**  
GEO404 Geology of Africa (3)  
GEO408 Environmental Geology (3)

**Semester 8**  
GEO402 Geotectonics (2)  
GEO405 Engineering Geology (3)

**Important Notice for 4th Year Combined Major Students**  
(a) Students who wish to do a research project in Geology must register for GEO406 (in semester 2).  
(b) Students who do not register for GEO406 must register for a project in the other subject.

**Bachelor of Science, Combined Major/Minor (Geology minor)**

The combined Major/Minor programme with Geology as a Minor shall consist of 24 credits of core courses taken in Semesters 3 to 8.

**Core Courses**  
GEO101 Introduction to Geology (4)  
GEO102 Introduction to Mineralogy (3)  
GEO201 Structural Geology (3)  
GEO204 Sedimentology (3)  
GEO205 Introduction to Hydrogeology (3)  
GEO206 Petrography (3)  
GEO305 Ore Geology (3)  
GEO408 Environmental Geology (3)

It is important to note which courses are taken in the first semester or second semester of the academic year (Refer to Single Major Programme for such information)

**Service Courses**  
The following are offered as service courses for
non-Geology Majors
GEO103  Geology for Teachers (3)
GEO104  Introductory Geology for Engineers (2)

General Education Courses
GEC250  Earth Processes, Mineral Resources and Development (2)
GEC251  Groundwater and Society (2)

Assessment and Examination
(a) 2.5.1 If not stated otherwise, the examination will represent 2/3 and the continuous assessment 1/3 of the final marks.
(b) GEO301 shall be examined by continuous assessment only.

Progression
Student progression is made in accordance with The University of Botswana General Academic Regulation 00.9

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS

Programmes and Titles of Degrees
The Department of Mathematics offers the following Programmes leading to the award of the mentioned degrees:
• Single Major Programme leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree in Mathematics as per Departmental Regulation 2.1
• Combined Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as the Major, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as per Departmental Regulation 2.2
• Combined Major/Major Programme leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as per Departmental Regulation 2.3
• Combined Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as the Minor leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as per Departmental Regulation 2.4. It is stipulated that the student must be registered in the Faculty of Science.

Entry Requirements
Admission to the Mathematics Programmes shall be as specified in Faculty of Science Regulation 23.21.

Single Major (Mathematics Major)
Level 100
Semester 1
MAT111  Introductory Mathematics I (4)

Semester 2
MAT122  Introductory Mathematics II (4)
Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
MAT211  Introductory Set and Number Theory (3)
MAT221  Calculus I (3)
Optional Courses (6 credits)
MAT251  Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT271  Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
MAT212  Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
MAT222  Calculus II (3)
Optional Courses (6 credits)
MAT242  Computing I (3)
MAT244  Numerical Methods (3)
MAT252  Newtonian Mechanics (3)

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. An additional 6 credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62 Levels 300 and 400
Core Courses
MAT311  Abstract Algebra I (3)
MAT321  Real Analysis I (3)
MAT323  Vector Calculus (3)
Optional Courses (6 credits)
MAT251  Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT271  Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)
MAT361  Maths. Programming and Game Theory (3)
MAT371  Mathematical Statistics I (3)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. An additional 6 credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.
Core Courses
MAT312  Abstract Algebra II (3)
MAT322  Real Analysis II (3)
MAT324  Differential Equations (3)
Optional Courses
MAT342  Computing II (3)
MAT344  Numerical Methods for Linear Algebra (3)
MAT352  Dynamics I (3)
MAT372  Mathematical Statistics II (3)

Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. An additional 6 credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62. The project course MAT400 shall run over Semesters 7 and 8.
Core Courses
MAT400  Project (3)
MAT411  Linear Algebra (3)
MAT421  Functions of a Complex Variable (3)
Optional Courses
MAT423  Mathematical Methods (3)
MAT425  Measure Theory (3)
MAT431  General Topology (3)
MAT441  Numerical Analysis (3)
MAT451  Dynamics II (3)
MAT453  Electromagnetic Theory (3)
MAT461  Optimisation and Control Theory (3)
MAT471  Multivariate Statistics (3)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 12 credits of optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.
Optional Courses
MAT404  Topics in Advanced Mathematics (3)
MAT412  Number Theory (3)
MAT414  Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)
MAT416  Abstract Algebra III (3)
MAT422  Functional Analysis (3)
MAT424  Dynamical Systems (3)
MAT426  Partial Differential Equations (3)
MAT432  Algebraic Topology (3)
MAT442  Computational Mathematics (3)
MAT452  Quantum Mechanics (3)
MAT454  Introduction to Fluid Dynamics (3)
MAT462  Mathematical Modelling (3)
MAT472  Linear Models (3)
MAT474  Stochastic Processes (3)
MAT476  Statistical Computing (3)

Combined Major/Minor Programme (Mathematics Major)
Semester 3
In Semester 3, the Combined Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as the Major shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and 3 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
MAT211 Introductory Set and Number Theory (3)
MAT221 Calculus I (3)

Optional Courses
MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Semester 4
In Semester 4 the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and 3 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
MAT212 Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
MAT222 Calculus II (3)

Optional Courses
MAT242 Computing I (3)
MAT244 Numerical Methods (3)
MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3)

Semester 5
In Semester 5 the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses.

Core Courses
MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3)
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3)
MAT323 Vector Calculus (3)

Optional Courses
MAT351 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT371 Mathematical Statistics I (3)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses.

Core Courses
MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3)
MAT322 Real Analysis II (3)
MAT324 Differential Equations (3)

Optional Courses
MAT342 Computing II (3)
MAT344 Numerical Methods of Linear Algebra (3)
MAT352 Dynamics I (3)
MAT372 Mathematical Statistics II (3)

Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses. The project course MAT400 shall run over Semesters 7 and 8.

Core Courses
MAT400 Project (3)
MAT411 Linear Algebra (3)
MAT421 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)

Optional Courses
MAT423 Mathematical Methods (3)
MAT425 Measure Theory (3)
MAT431 General Topology (3)
MAT441 Numerical Analysis (3)
MAT451 Dynamics II (3)
MAT453 Electromagnetic Theory (3)
MAT461 Optimisation and Control Theory (3)
MAT471 Multivariate Statistics (3)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 9 credits of optional courses.

Core Courses
MAT402 History of Mathematics (3)
MAT412 Number Theory (3)
MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)
MAT416 Abstract Algebra III (3)
MAT422 Functional Analysis (3)
MAT424 Dynamical Systems (3)
MAT426 Partial Differential Equations (3)
MAT432 Algebraic Topology (3)
MAT442 Computational Mathematics (3)
MAT452 Quantum Mechanics (3)
MAT454 Introduction to Fluid Dynamics (3)
MAT462 Mathematical Modelling (3)
MAT472 Linear Models (3)
MAT474 Stochastic Processes (3)
MAT476 Statistical Computing (3)

Combined Major/Major Programme
Semester 3
In Semester 3 the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT211 Introductory Set & Number Theory (3)
MAT221 Calculus I (3)

Optional Courses
MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Semester 4
In Semester 4, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT212 Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
MAT222 Calculus II (3)

Optional Courses
MAT242 Computing I (3)
MAT244 Numerical Methods (3)
MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3)

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3)
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3)

Optional Courses
MAT351 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT371 Mathematical Statistics I (3)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 3 credits of core courses. An additional 3 credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT324 Differential Equations (3)
Optional Courses
MAT252  Newtonian Mechanics (3)
MAT312  Abstract Algebra II (3)
MAT322  Real Analysis II (3)
MAT342  Computing II (3)
MAT344  Numerical Methods of Linear Algebra (3)
MAT352  Dynamics I (3)

Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62. The project course MAT400 shall run over Semesters 7 and 8.

Core Courses
MAT411  Linear Algebra (3)
MAT421  Functions of a Complex Variable (3)

Optional Courses
MAT361  Maths. Programming and Game Theory (3)
MAT371  Mathematical Statistics I (3)
MAT400  Project (3)
MAT423  Mathematical Methods (3)
MAT425  Measure Theory (3)
MAT431  General Topology (3)
MAT441  Numerical Analysis (3)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT411  Linear Algebra (3)
MAT421  Functions of a Complex Variable (3)

Optional Courses
MAT361  Maths. Programming and Game Theory (3)
MAT371  Mathematical Statistics I (3)
MAT400  Project (3)
MAT423  Mathematical Methods (3)
MAT425  Measure Theory (3)
MAT431  General Topology (3)
MAT441  Numerical Analysis (3)

Combined Major/Minor Programme (Mathematics Minor)
Semester 3
In Semester 3, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 6 credits of core courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT211  Introductory Set and Number Theory (3)
MAT221  Calculus I (3)

Semester 4
In Semester 4, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 6 credits of core courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT212  Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
MAT222  Calculus II (3)

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 6 credits of core courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT311  Abstract Algebra I (3)
MAT323  Vector Calculus (3)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 3 credits of core courses.

Core Courses
MAT312  Abstract Algebra II (3)

Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 3 credits of core courses.

Core Courses
MAT321  Real Analysis I (3)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 6 credits of core courses.

Core Courses
MAT322  Real Analysis II (3)
MAT324  Differential Equations (3)

Courses for Non-Mathematics Majors (Service course)
MAT201  Ancillary Mathematics (3)

Engineering Mathematics
MAT191  Design Mathematics I (3)
MAT192  Design Mathematics II (3)
MAT291  Engineering Mathematics I (3)
MAT292  Engineering Mathematics II (3)
MAT391  Engineering Mathematics III (3)
MAT392  Engineering Mathematics IV (3)
MAT394  Engineering Mathematics IVB (3)
MAT491  Engineering Mathematics V (3)
MAT492  Engineering Mathematics VI (3)

Bachelor of Education Degree

(Secondary)
In Semesters 5 to 8, students pursuing the Bachelor of Education (Secondary) Programme shall take credits from the following core courses:

Semester 5
MAT381  Calculus for Teachers I (3)
MAT383  Linear Algebra for Teachers (3)
MAT387  Mechanics for Teachers I (3)
MAT389  Linear Programming and Game Theory for Teachers (3)

Semester 6
MAT382  Calculus for Teachers II (3)
MAT384  Computing for Teachers (3)
MAT388  Mechanics for Teachers II (3)

Semester 7
MAT481  Geometry for Teachers I (3)
MAT483  Real Analysis for Teachers (3)
MAT485  Number Theory and Abstract Algebra for Teachers (3)

Semester 8
MAT324  Differential Equations (3)
MAT482  Geometry for Teachers II (3)
MAT484  Introduction to Probability and Statistics for Teachers (3)

Assessment and Examination
Performance in each course shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment and final examination marks in the ratio of 1:2, except for the computing courses, where the ratio shall be 1:1. The project course MAT 400 will have 30% of the final mark allocated to the supervisor’s evaluation of the work done, 50% of the final mark allocated to the final report, which will be assessed by two internal examiners and 20% of the final mark allocated to the oral examination.

Progression from Semester to Semester
In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must obtain a cumulative GPA, which is in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.

Award of Degree
To be awarded a Degree, a student must satisfy the appropriate provisions of General Academic Regulation 23.71.

DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS

1.0 Departmental Regulations
1.1 General Provisions
1.2 Programmes and Titles of Degrees

The Department of Physics offers the following Programmes leading to the award of the mentioned degrees:

- Single Major Programme leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree in Physics as/Departmental Regulation 2.3.1
- Combined Major/Minor with a Physics Major leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as/Departmental Regulation 2.3.2
- Combined Major/Minor Programme with Physics and another subject other than Physics as Majors leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as/Departmental Regulation 2.3.3
- Combined Major/Minor with Physics as the Minor leading to the award of the Degree in which the student is enrolled, as/Departmental Regulation 2.3.4
- Master of Science Programme in Physics leading to the award of a Master of Science Degree as/Departmental Regulation 5.0
- MPhil and PhD Programmes in Physics leading to the award of MPhil (Physics) and PhD (Physics) Degrees, respectively, as/Departmental Regulation 6.0.

1.3 Entry Requirements

1.3.1 Admission to the Physics Programmes shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Regulation 23.21.

1.3.2 To register in Level 300 of the Physics Single Major Programme, a student must have obtained a minimum of a CGPA of 3.0 in Physics courses by the end of Level 200.

1.4 Award of Degree

To be awarded a Degree, a student must satisfy the appropriate provisions of General Academic Regulation 23.71.

2.0 Programme Structure

2.0.1 The Physics courses shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the undergraduate programme as outlined in Regulations 2.1 to 2.3 below, Levels 600 to 700 for the Master of Science candidates and Levels 800 and 900 for the MPhil and PhD candidates.

2.0.2 In addition to Physics courses, an undergraduate candidate majoring in Physics shall take General Education Courses (GECs) and electives in accordance with General Regulation 00.21.24.

2.0.3 The Department of Physics offers service courses in Physics to Non-Physics Majors as outlined in Regulation 2.4.

2.0.4 The Department of Physics offers GECs under Area 5: Science and Technology as outlined in Regulation 2.5.

2.1 Level 100

Semester 1

PHY111 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (3)
PHY119 Physics Practicals 1.1 (1)

Semester 2

PHY121 Electricity and Magnetism, Modern Physics (3)
PHY129 Physics Practicals 1.2 (1)

2.2 Level 200

Semester 3

PHY211 Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)
PHY212 Properties of Matter and Thermodynamics (2)
PHY219 Physics Practicals 2.1 (1)

Semester 4

PHY221 Electricity and Magnetism (2)
PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY229 Physics Practicals 2.2 (1)

2.3 Levels 300 and 400

2.3.1 Single Major Programme

Semester 5

In Semester 5, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 12 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses

PHY311 Mechanics (2)
PHY312 Quantum Mechanics I (2)
PHY313 Mathematical Methods for Physics I (2)
PHY314 Electronics I (2)
PHY339 Physics Practicals 3.3 (2)
PHY412 Statistical Mechanics and Solid State Physics I (2)

Optional Courses

PHY315 Introduction to Potential Fields in Geophysics (2)
PHY331 Relativity (2)
PHY332 Literature Survey in Physics (2)

Semester 6

In Semester 6, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 12 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses

PHY321 Electromagnetism (2)
PHY322 Thermal Physics (2)
PHY323 Vibrations, Waves and Optics (2)
PHY341 Mathematical Methods for Physics II (2)
PHY349 Physics Practicals 3.4 (2)
PHY421 Solid State Physics I (2)

Optional Courses

PHY324 Electronics II (2)
PHY325 Environmental Physics (2)
PHY425 Applied Acoustics (2)

Semester 7

In Semester 7, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 12 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses

PHY411 Atomic and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY431 Statistical Mechanics and Solid State Physics II (2)
PHY432 Quantum Mechanics II (2)
PHY433 Mathematical Methods for Physics III (2)
PHY438 Research Project in Physics I (2)
PHY439 Physics Practicals 4.3 (2)

Optional Courses

PHY413 Energy Physics (2)
PHY414 Digital and Microprocessor Systems (2)
PHY415 Applied Optics (2)
PHY434 Fluid Dynamics (2)

Semester 8

In Semester 8, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 12 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses

PHY422 Microcomputing for Physics (2)
PHY441 Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY442 Solid State Physics II (2)
PHY443  Mathematical Methods for Physics IV (2)
PHY448  Research Project in Physics II (2)
PHY449  Physics Practicals 4.4 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY423  Introduction to Seismology (2)
PHY424  Radiation Physics (2)
PHY444  Electronics III (2)
PHY445  Atomic Physics (2)

2.3.2 Combined Major/Minor Programme (Physics Major)

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY311  Mechanics (2)
PHY312  Quantum Mechanics I (2)
PHY319  Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY313  Mathematical Methods for Physics I (2)
PHY314  Electronics I (2)
PHY315  Introduction to Potential Fields in Geophysics (2)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY321  Electromagnetism (2)
PHY322  Thermal Physics (2)
PHY329  Physics Practicals 3.2 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY323  Vibrations, Waves and Optics (2)
PHY324  Electronics II (2)
PHY325  Environmental Physics (2)

Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY411  Atomic and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY412  Statistical Mechanics and Solid State Physics I (2)
PHY419  Physics Practicals 4.1 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY413  Energy Physics (2)
PHY414  Digital and Microprocessor Systems (2)
PHY415  Applied Optics (2)
PHY418  Project in Physics 4.1 (2)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY421  Solid State Physics I (2)
PHY422  Microcomputing for Physics (2)
PHY429  Physics Practicals 4.2 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY423  Introduction to Seismology (2)
PHY424  Radiation Physics (2)
PHY425  Applied Acoustics (2)
PHY428  Project in Physics 4.2 (2)

2.3.3 Combined Major/Major Programme

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY311  Mechanics (2)
PHY312  Quantum Mechanics I (2)
PHY319  Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY313  Mathematical Methods for Physics I (2)
PHY314  Electronics I (2)
PHY315  Introduction to Potential Fields in Geophysics (2)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY321  Electromagnetism (2)
PHY322  Thermal Physics (2)
PHY329  Physics Practicals 3.2 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY323  Vibrations, Waves and Optics (2)
PHY324  Electronics II (2)
PHY325  Environmental Physics (2)

Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY411  Atomic and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY412  Statistical Mechanics and Solid State Physics I (2)
PHY419  Physics Practicals 4.1 (2)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses chosen from PHY423, PHY424, PHY425 or PHY428 in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
PHY421  Solid State Physics I (2)
PHY422  Microcomputing for Physics (2)
PHY429  Physics Practicals 4.2 (2)

2.3.4 Combined Major/Major Programme (Physics Minor)

Semesters 5 to 8
In Semesters 5 to 8, the Combined Major/Major (Physics Minor) Programme shall consist of 4 to 5 credits of any of the Physics courses from the core courses or optional courses of the Combined Major/Minor Physics Programme as defined in Regulation 2.3.2, in the given semester. To complete the Physics Minor Programme, a candidate must take 4 credits of practical courses in Semesters 5 to 8.

2.4 Service Courses

The following Physics courses are offered as service courses for non-Physics majors.

PHY161  Physics for Nurses (3)
PHY162  Physics Applied to Home Economics (3)
PHY360  Air Pollution Control I (2)
PHY460  Air Pollution Control II (2)

Bachelor of Education (Secondary) Degree

Semesters 5 to 8
In Semesters 5 to 8, students pursuing the Bachelor of Education (Secondary) Degree Programme shall choose credits from the core courses or optional courses of the Combined Major/Minor Physics Programme as defined in Regulation 2.3.2, or from the Combined Major/Major Programme as defined in Regulation 2.3.3, in the given semester. The courses chosen must include practical courses PHY319, PHY329, PHY419 and PHY429.

2.5 General Education Courses

The Department of Physics offers the following courses under the Area 5: Science and Technology, with a tag of General Education Courses.

GEC252  Origin of the Universe (2)
DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY

100 Level Courses

CHE101 General Chemistry I (4 credits)
Course covers fundamental concepts and principles of chemistry, i.e. the structure of matter, quantitative as well as qualitative aspects of chemistry.

CHE102 General Chemistry II (4 credits)
This is a continuation of CHE101. The fundamental principles associated with properties of chemical systems will be presented.

CHE107 Chemistry Applied to Home Economics (3 credits)
The role that chemistry plays in everyday life will be presented. Atomic structure, periodic table, oxidation and reduction, chemistry of carbon compounds, acids and bases, soaps and detergents, food and energy, fats, carbohydrates, proteins, minerals and vitamins, additives, poisons and toxins, gases, polymers and plastics, cosmetics.

CHE109 Introductory Chemistry for Bachelor of Nursing Science, Bns (3 credits)
Topics include: Structure and bonding, stoichiometry, solutions, chemistry of certain elements, electricity and chemical change, osmosis, reaction rates and catalysis, radioactivity.

200 Level Courses

CHE211 Introduction To Analytical Chemistry (2 credits)
Basic principles of analytical chemistry, concepts of classical and modern methods in analytical chemistry, statistical treatment of experimental data including error analysis and significance tests; Gravimetry, titrimetry; Introduction to analytical spectroscopy and electro analytical chemistry.

CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1 Credit)
Practical experience in analytical procedures, classical and modern methods of analytical chemistry, an overview of analytical instrumentation and the progress made towards development of analytical methodology, gravimetric analysis, titrimetric analysis, Electro analytical/ spectrophotometry.

CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2 Credits)
Structure of the atom based on elementary quantum theory. Bonding in simple molecules based on molecular orbital and valence bond theories; Trends in periodic properties and chemical reactions of s- and p-block elements.

CHE223 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I (1 credit)
This course covers qualitative inorganic analysis, the synthesis of a selection of compounds, as well as solution chemistry of main group elements.

CHE232 Structure And Survey Of Functional Groups I (2 credits)
Survey of various functional Groups; Aspects of stereochemistry; Review of alkanes, alkenes and alkynes: addition and substitution reactions. Organic halogen compounds: substitution and elimination reactions, aromatic compounds, and electrophilic substitution reactions. Introduction to chirality’s: Acids and bases: alcohols, ethers, epoxides, carbonyls compounds.

CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1 credit)
Course topics include: Purification and separation of organic compounds-distillation and fractional distillation, crystallization and recrystallization melting point and refractive index determination; Introduction to qualitative analysis of organic compounds; Preparations of simple organic compounds.

CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2 credits)
Basic principles of thermodynamics: first, second and third laws of thermodynamics; rates of chemical reactions.

CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1 credit)
This is an introduction to laboratory techniques in physical chemistry, Experiments dealing with properties of solutions, Calorimetry, thermodynamics, electrochemistry and chemical kinetics.

300 Level Courses

CHE311 Separation Techniques (3 credits)
Introduction to chromatographic separation and detection techniques: Liquid-liquid extraction; column chromatography, TLC, GC and HPLC. Supercritical fluid; Capillary electrophoresis. Detection systems include FID/ECD & thermal conductivity detector for HPLC. Electrochemical/ conductivity detectors for Ion Chromatography.

CHE312 Analytical Spectroscopy (2 credits)
Introduction to spectroscopic methods. Molecular absorption & emission: UV-visible, IR, phosphorescence, fluorescence, Fourier transform spectroscopy. Atomic absorption & emission techniques; AAS / AES and ICP-MS; NMR and X-ray spectroscopy.

CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1 credit)
Introduction to practical aspects of spectrophotometric methods of analysis: UV-visible, IR, Fourier transform spectroscopy, GC, HPLC, AAS/AES, etc.

CHE321 Coordination Chemistry (2 credits)
Introduction to nomenclature, properties and reactions of coordination compounds & complexes; isomerism and magnetic properties. Valence bond and crystal field theories; absorption spectra; field strength; Jahn-Teller effects; covalency and electron delocalization in complexes. Thermodynamics of complex formation. Hard and soft acids and bases. Non-aqueous chemistry. The chemistry of d-block elements and their compounds. Trends in the properties of elements of groups 3 to 12.

CHE322 Group Theory and Organometallic Chemistry (3 credits)
Introduction to group theory and basic knowledge of organo-metallic chemistry. Fundamental concepts of organometallic chemistry; organometallic chemistry of transition elements; catalytic applications of organometallic compounds.

CHE323 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1 credit)
Involves use of modern instruments to charac-
terize organic compounds. Synthesis of inorganic compounds and their characterization using various techniques such as NMR, IR and UV-VIS spectroscopy; Reactions of transition elements and their compounds.

CHE331 Structure And Survey Of Functional Groups II (3 credits)

CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2 credits)

CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory III (1 credit)
Introduction to modern synthetic and characterization methods for organic compounds: Preparation of liquid and solid products then separation, purification and identification by physical and spectroscopic properties - UV, IR and NMR techniques. Chemical and spectroscopic methods in qualitative analysis of organic compounds. Molecular modeling. Simulation of spectra.

CHE341 Applications Of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2 credits)
Introduction to the applications of chemical thermodynamics to solutions and electrochemical processes. Partial molar quantities, thermodynamics of mixing, properties of ideal solutions, non-ideal solutions, activity and activity coefficient, phase diagrams, chemical equilibrium, conductivity, ion activities, standard potentials, electrochemical cells applications of standard potentials.

CHE342 Quantum Chemistry And Its Applications (3 credits)
Microscopic concepts of physical chemistry. Basic principles of quantum mechanics, postulates, simple quantum mechanical systems (particle in a1-D and 3-D box), rotational and vibrational energy levels in molecules, rotational, vibrational and electronic spectroscopy, photophysical and photochemical processes in molecules and atoms, photochemical kinetics.

CHE343 Physical Chemistry Laboratory II (1 credit)
Practical familiarization with microscopic and time dependent macroscopic aspects of physical chemistry. Laboratory experiments in application of quantum chemistry, spectroscopy, photochemical kinetics, conductivity and transport phenomena.

CHE351 Chemical Informatics (1 credit)
Use of conventional and electronic chemical information resources. An overview of information resources in chemistry. Purpose of scientific literature. Peer review process. Electronic and non-electronic databases. Searching methodologies including Internet searching [use of chemical web browsers]. Searching for information using chemical names, CAS numbers, structures, substructures, molecular formulas, etc. Searching material safety data sheets (MSDS).

CHE352 Literature Based Project (1 credit)
Course will cover professional writing in chemistry and scholarly project reports. Writing styles in chemistry: comprehensive report on an assigned topic in chemistry under the supervision of an academic staff. Thorough search of the chemical literature including the latest information available on the subject.

400 Level Courses

CHE411 Advanced Analytical Techniques (3 credits)
Advanced analytical methods: Statistical treatment of experimental data; Electroanalytical Chemistry-potentiometry, voltammetry, coulometry, classical and modern polarography, Instrumentation and application of GC-MS, LC-MS, CE-MS, tandem MS, thermochemical and Radiochemical methods of analysis; isotope dilution and activity analysis.

CHE412 Sample Handling and Biochemical Analysis (3 credits)
Sampling strategies, sample preparation and clean-up techniques; solid phase extraction, solid phase micro-extraction, dialysis, solvent extraction, supported liquid membrane. Enzymatic analysis methods; application of immobilised enzymes, competitive binding immunoassays, enzyme immunoassays, proteomics, and genomics. Properties of antibodies. Polymer structure elucidation of carbohydrate polymers; precipitation assays.

CHE413 Advanced Analytical Chemistry Laboratory (2 credits)

CHE414 Environmental Chemistry (2 credits)
Introduction to environmental pollutants and their analysis using local case studies e.g., SO2 emission from the BCL mine; Pesticide analysis, industrial waste management; Selection of safe methods of disposal. Degradation reactions and the dispersal pathways of materials into the environment.

CHE418 Special Topics in Analytical Chemistry (2 credits)
Special topics selected from the following: Application of Analytical Chemistry, Food, Drugs and Forensic Analysis, Chemometrics and Clinical Analysis.

CHE421 Advanced Transition Metal Chemistry (3 credits)
Advanced topics in transition metal chemistry and introductory bio-inorganic chemistry. Electronic properties of transition metal complexes; magnetic properties of transition metal complexes; inorganic reaction mechanisms; introduction to photo-chemical reactions; f-block chemistry; introduction to bioinorganic chemistry.

CHE422 Advanced Organometallic and Solid State Chemistry (3 credits)
Organometallic Chemistry: Main group organometallics; structure and chemistry of (CSH5)2M Ln complexes; organometallic chemistry in synthesis; stereochemically non-rigid molecules; metal clusters and metal-metal bonds; low- and high-nuclearity clusters; NMR spectra; Latimer diagrams, oxidation state stability. Solid state chemistry: lattices; crystal packing; ion-icstructures; crystal defects; metallic bonding.
CHE423 Advanced Inorganic Laboratory (2 credits)
Physical methods in Inorganic Chemistry: the study of physical and chemical properties of transition metal and organometallic complexes using electronic, infrared, and nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy techniques as well as optical isomerism, reaction kinetics, and inert atmosphere techniques.

CHE426 Special Topics in Inorganic Chemistry (2 credits)
Selection may be made from the following specialised topics: Nanochemistry, Synthesis of inorganic materials for the fabrication of semiconductors; Molecular orbital calculations; Kinetics and mechanisms of inorganic reactions in solution media; Applied homogeneous catalysis with organometallic compounds; Chemistry and applications of boranes, carboranes and metalloboranes.

CHE431 Heterocyclic Chemistry Synthetic Reactions and Design of Organic Synthesis (3 credits)
Aromaticity and reactions of heterocyclic compounds – furan, pyrrole, thiophene, pyridine, indole, and quinoline. Synthetic reaction, Protective groups; Molecular rearrangements. Design of organic synthesis: introduction to disconnection approach / retrosynthetic analysis.

CHE432 Secondary Metabolites and Biomolecules (3 credits)

CHE433 Advanced Organic Chemistry Laboratory (2 credits)

CHE436 Special Topics in Organic Chemistry (2 credits)
Selection may be made from the following specialised topics: Chemistry of drugs; Chemistry of lipids; Selected natural products; Agrochemicals; Free radicals and photochemistry; Polymer materials.

CHE441 Advanced Physical Chemistry I (3 credits)

CHE442 Advanced Physical Chemistry II (3 credits)
Reaction kinetics, techniques of fast reactions, theories of reaction rates, reaction in solution, composite reactions, chain reactions, explosions, Transport phenomena. Polymers, kinetics of polymerization, osmometry, viscometry, gel-permeation chromatography, TGA, DSC. Introduction to polymer processing.

CHE443 Physical Chemistry Laboratory III (2 credits)
Laboratory experiments in polymers, surface and colloid chemistry.

CHE446 Special Topics in Physical Chemistry (2 credits)
Detailed treatment of topics chosen from: solid-state chemistry; irreversible thermodynamics; molecular dynamics; intermolecular forces; atmospheric and/or astrophysical chemistry.

CHE452 Senior Research Project (3 credits)
The course involves scientific bench work research. Will comprise a study leading to a written report and shall be based on an original investigation of a chemical problem. To be carried out under the supervision of a member of staff.

CHE470 Excited State Chemistry (2 credits)

DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

2.5 BSc/BIS Degree Course Details

CSI231 Discrete Mathematics I (3)
pre-req.: MAT122/STA102
Sets, relations and functions Propositional and predicate calculus; Mathematical proofs; Induction; Basic number theory – well-ordering, divisibility and congruence; Discrete probability; Algebraic structures – groups and rings.

CSI232 Discrete Mathematics II (2)
pre-req.: CSI231

CSI241 Structured Programming (4)
pre-req.: GEC122
Problem solving with computer: The programming process. High level language programming: data types, input/output, control structures, functions, objects and classes, file I/O; simple data structures like arrays and records. Programme design concepts. Programme testing, debugging and documentation Practical problem-solving exercises.

CSI242 Data Abstraction and Structures (4)
pre-req.: CSI241
Abstraction, decomposition, Abstract Data Types, information hiding; records, sets, arrays, tables, stacks, queues, binary trees, trees, graphs, etc. Object-orientated paradigm; practical application in problem-solving.

CSI252 Operating System Concepts (3)
History, evolution, philosophies, structures of OS systems. Introduction to the concepts processes; resource management; virtual machines; scheduling; memory management; file systems; device management, allocation techniques, memory protection; virtual memory; paging and segmentation. OS in security and protection: OS interface and distributed/network. Detailed comparative study of features and architecture of current OS.

CSI261 Machine Organization (3)
Introduction to computer hardware: Computer systems organization: CPU organization; memory organization; I/O devices characteristics. Digital logic circuit; Combinational logic: sequential
logic. Data representation; data coding; error detection and correction. Microprogramming based on a simplified machine example; sample macro-architecture. Some examples from Intel-80x86 architectures

**CSI272 Computer Communications Networks Fundamentals (2)**
Network basic Concepts Data transmissions, Multiplexing, Concentrators; Front-end Controllers line connectors, components of data communications system, network topologies, ISO-OSI reference model, LAN, WAN, Internet; Network Components and Technologies. Installation of networks particularly LAN and WAN Network tools, cables, hubs, and routers, NICs. Practical involving cables preparations etc., network installation, NOS and installation.

**CSI292 Information Systems Fundamentals (3)**
Fundamental Systems Concepts; Systems components and relationships; IS in perspective; Information and knowledge economy; Information as an organizational resource; Processing models; IS Architectural Framework: IS infrastructure: Organisations as systems; IS in organizational context: IS Development frameworks: Life cycles and Methodologies; Global IS; Fundamentals of IS for Enterprise: Elements of Socio-economics of of IS. Case studies

**CSI311 File Systems and Data Management (4)**
Pre-req.: CSI242
Techniques for storing, accessing, and managing long-term data in computer systems Hardware and software aspects of data processing: processors, storage devices, communications, file I/O control. Techniques for organizing and managing files: DBMS. Data organisation methods in relation to physical database design. Major practical data management systems implementation

**CSI312 Programming Language Translation (3)**
Pre-req.: CSI241, CSI351/CSI361
The principles and design aspects of programming language translation. Compiler organisation Lexical analysis, Syntax analysis, type checking, code generation, optimisation Alternative parsing strategies, comparison with respect to time and space trade offs. Grammars and ambiguity Data representation Error recovery strategies Symbol table design Binding Compiler writing tools: Incremental compiling, interpreters' Abstract machine concept

**CSI314 Decision Support Systems II (3)**
Structure of the decision problem DSS Framework and applications: DSS Model Representation. DSS; Data Warehousing, Data marting and Data Mining for DSS; DSS Re-engineering; Modelling and decision support; Decision model construction; Forecasting; Optimisation and Simulation; Group support systems. Model Based Management Systems. DS and IS. DSS Development Tools Group DSS; DSS development project

**CSI315 Web Technology and Applications (3)**
Pre-req.: CSI241
The Internet, intranet and Web technologies; Systems development; Rapid Applications Development concept; Web application development, architectures, environments, and technologies. Web applications Web Development using Web-authoring tools Database –Web connectivity Scripting languages for Web development; Web application Client/Server technologies Project.

**CSI322 Algorithm Analysis and Design (3)**
Pre-req.: CSI242
Measuring algorithm performance: worst case analysis; average case analysis; lower bounds. Techniques of efficient algorithm design: greedy method, dynamic programming graph traversal. Illustration with topics from integer and polynomial arithmetic; matrix multiplication; random number generation; sorting; searching; graph and tree algorithms. Introduction to complexity theory Parallel and Randomized algorithms

**CSI331 Numerical Methods I (3)**
Approximation and errors finite differences Interpolation Solution of linear and non-linear equations. Numerical integration Curve fittings

**CSI332 Programming Languages (3)**
Pre-req.: CSI241

**CSI341 Introduction to Software Engineering (3)**
The software development process Design objectives. Function oriented and object oriented design methodologies. Documentation Implementation strategies Debugging, anti-bugging. Introduction to specifications verification, and validation. Elementary proof of correctness Code and design reading, structured walkthroughs. Testing strategies Software reliability issues Configuration management. CASE tools Team project assignments

**CSI342 Systems Analysis and Design (3)**
General Systems Theory: development life cycle; analysis; description and modelling techniques. Systems development project planning: concepts and tools; System Requirements; design: implementation, changeover and maintenance overview; Documentation; Systems development management; Modern systems development tools, implementation, techniques, and methodologies; Systems Analysis and Design project.

**CSI351 Assembly Language Programming (3)**
Assembly language programming Language hierarchy, the assembly-linking process and the role of the OS in assembly level programming. Machine level data structures Assembly language programming techniques: advanced data structures like arrays; advanced I/O. Interrupt handling and introduction to concurrent programming. Use and definition of macros; conditional assembly object modules and linking Assembly/High-level language interface. Run-time considerations

**CSI352 Industrial Attachment (2)**
Pre-req.: Completion of All Level 200 courses

**CSI361 Computer Architecture (3)**
Pre-req.: CSI261
The computer system: interconnection structure; internal I/O external memory; input/output; relationship between the architecture and the OS. Advance topic in computer organization: pipelining; horizontal vertical microprogramming architecture; microprogramming applications. Alternative architectures: parallel processing; vector processing; RISC vs. CISC.

**CSI362 Database Concepts (3)**
Principles and concepts of the DBS DBMS architecture Databases and data modelling Services
of DBMS Overview of database languages Trans-
actions The relational model. Mapping from a
conceptual model to a relational model Database
design methodologies The network and hierar-
chical models. Database Design languages Over-
view of commercially available systems. Practical
work with DBMS

CSI317 Information Systems Resources
Management (3)
Information Systems resources (ISR) ISR Man-
agement objectives, responsibilities, principles
and environment. IS Management, Control
and Maintenance (MCM) concepts IS Manage-
ment tasks and state models; Tasks at ISR Tasks
Management level; IS Control and Maintenance
Processes modeling; Organisation of ISR man-
agement ISR Management types. ISR Manage-
ment issues; practice; IT infrastructure Library;
resources planning; and impact on organisa-
tional planning cycle Case studies

CSI312 Expert Systems (3)
pre-req.: CSI241
Expert System technology forward and back-
ward reasoning State space, decompositions and
game trees Heuristic search. Plausible reasoning
Bayesian probability theory Certainty factors and
other approach to uncertainty Knowledge rep-
resentation (KR) Knowledge acquisition. Hybrid
expert systems design. ES development tools ES
and database systems. Intelligent data handling

CSI313 Economics of Information
Technology (3)
Economic aspects of IT; systems managers, sys-
tem users, the IT industry, and national policy-
makers; the systems management perspective;
performance and capacity, system financing, and
price-for- service strategies. Cost/ benefit trade-
off and measurement. Impacts of IT industries
and markets National issues Global competition
informatics policies, and the role of IT in devel-

CSI318: Formal languages and Automata (3)
pre-req.: CSI231 and CSI232
Theory of formal languages The Chomsky hierarchy
of formal grammars and the corresponding au-
tomata Finite state automata and regular ex-
pressions Deterministic and nondeterministic
finite state automata, Criterion for regularity
Context-free grammars and push down automa-
ta Pumping Lemma for regular and context-free
languages Push-down automata in parsing pro-
gramming languages Decision problems

CSI319 Human Computer Interaction (3)
Basic principles and methodology for user inter-
face design. Background of human information
processing and human factors. Practical case
studies Techniques for user-centred analysis
and design Prototyping tools Introduction to Us-
ability Engineering and evaluation methods.
Methods for enhancing system usability includ-
ing systems ergonomics

CSI311 Complexity and Computability
theory (3)
pre-req.: CSI322
Computational complexity of algorithms Phrases
like NP-Complete and NP-Hard have already
become common to the lexicon of algorithm
designers. Computability, addresses time-hon-
roured issues such as the famous halting prob-
lem, and, of course, some of the more interesting
variations on the Turing machine theme.

CSI312 Topics in Computer Science (3)
A selected advanced topic in computer science
may be offered depending on the qualification
and interest of available teaching staff. This
course would be offered in first semester
Number of hours/week: 4 lecture hours, or
equivalent.

CSI314 Information Interfaces and
Presentation (3)
General: Multimedia IS; Animations Artificial,
augmented and virtual realities. Audio I/O, Hy-
pertext Navigation and maps; Video; Users Inter-
faces; Auditory feedback: Benchmarking; Evalu-
ation/methodology; Graphical user interface
(GUI) I/O strategies; Interaction styles Natural
language prototyping; Screen design Standard-
ization; Style guides Theory and methods;
User-centred design User interface management
systems Voice I/O Windowing systems Group
and Organization interface: Hypertext/Hypermedia:
Sound and Music Computing.

CSI316 Topics in Information Systems (3)
Selected current topics in Information Systems
may be offered depending on the qualification
and interest of available teaching staff. This
course would be offered in first semester.

CSI321 Operating Systems (3)
pre-req.: CSI252
Issues in analyzing, designing and implementing
operating systems (OSs); Models of OS structure
Processes: models, scheduling. Memory manage-
ment: allocation techniques, memory protection;
virtual memory, paging and segmentation. File
System: structure; directories; implementation;
security and protection and deadlocks. Distrib-
uted OSs: design issues; communications; syn-
chronization; processes and processors. In-depth
case studies of implementation of selected Oper-
ating Systems.

CSI322 Operations Research (3)
Operations Research (OR): concepts, tools, tech-
niques, applications in solving practical problems.
Topics include: linear programming, parametric
programming, dual, post optimal analysis, inte-
ger programming, the transportation problem,
networks, simulation, queuing theory, inventory
control and forecasting models. OR packages and
their uses

CSI323: Systems Programming (3)
pre-req.: CSI241
Introduction to Systems Programming Pro-
cess Control and Scheduling Processes Threads
and Threads Programming File I/O and Signal
Processing. Memory Management Programming
Distributed Systems and Client Server Program-
ming Unix socket programming. Java Systems
Programming; SWING, multithreading and net-
working.

CSI331 Formal Methods (3)
Introduction to Formal Methods: Introduction;
Rationale for use of formal methods; Review of
specification methods; Properties of specifica-
tions; Specification classes; Overview of formal
method approaches. Mathematical Basis for
CSI432 Intelligent Interfaces and Systems (3)
pre-req.: CSI372
Introduction to Natural Language Processing
Natural Language Interfaces
The linguistic Application if NLP
APL as a tool for Linguistic Research.
Software for Natural Language Systems
Comparison between Natural Language Interaction
Interfaces and direct manipulation, graphical
interfaces

CSI433 Algorithmic Graph Theory (3)
pre-req.: CSI322
Graph Algorithms: depth first search, breadth
first search, connected components, topological
sorting, shortest path algorithm, network flow,
string searching, parallel computation, graph
partitioning, and graph isomorphism.

CSI434 Knowledge Management Systems (3)
pre-req.: CSI362
Knowledge systems theoretical foundations
infrastructure enabling technologies, emerging
applications and management Knowledge-based
Economy; Knowledge Management systems;
Types of knowledge Technologies KM technical
infrastructure; Data Warehousing/Data Mining
and Knowledge delivery Systems; Knowledge
modeling; Application of AI technologies in KMS
development; Case studies;

CSI441 Software Engineering (3)
pre-req.: CSI341
Conventional development Requirements analysis
architectural high-level design, implementation
testing maintenance Formal development
Project planning and control Metrics and measure-
ment Software reliability modelling AI/KBS
approaches environments AI/KBS development
techniques Principles of object-oriented systems
Prototyping Software reuse

CSI442 Artificial Intelligence (3)
pre-req.: CSI372
Proof techniques: State space search: exhaustive,
heuristic, performance evaluation. Searching
decompositions, AND/OR graphs, means-
end analysis. Playing games by searching trees
minimax procedure, pruning: Alternative search
strategies. Searching and rule base systems.
Language for AI problem solving: Natural Language
Processing. Computer vision systems and image
processing: Neural networks.

CSI451 Knowledge Engineering (3)
pre-req.: CSI372
The facility of KE and problem solving – an overview
Fuzzy sets and fuzzy operations Fuzziness and
probability. Fuzzy systems Neural Networks
Theoretical and Computational models Real and
artificial neurons Fuzzy neurons and fuzzy neural
networks NN for Knowledge Engineering and
problem Solving NN as a problem solving paradigm
Hybrid Symbolic and Fuzzy Systems

CSI452 Computer Simulation (3)
pre-req.: CSI331 and MAT271
Models, model development, verification, and
validation; Simulation Study; Discrete and Con-
tinuous Probability distributions Linear congru-
tential method for generating uniform random
numbers; Tests for uniformity and independ-
ence; Inverse transform technique, Accept-
ance-rejection technique; Student, Chi-square
and Kolmogorov-Smirnov tests, Covariance and
Correlation, ANOVA; Testing for significance of
regression.

CSI461 Computer Communications Networks Management (4)
pre-req.: CSI272
Data communications: theory, and systems
structures. Networks types, structures, ISO-OSI
reference model Protocols types and structure.
Protocol layers: functions. LAN and WAN and
ISDN; Network management and Administration

CSI462 Distributed Systems (3)
pre-req.: CSI411 and CSI361
Design issues of Distributed Systems (DS), Ar-
chitecture, design, and implementation of DS.
Comparison of DS to PC’s and centralized sys-
tems. Performance security and reliability issues
Process communication: IPC, remote procedure
call (RPC), java communications, transactions;
processing and concurrency control. Naming, se-
curity, Distributed file system, replication, shared
memory, distributed algorithms and message
passing.

CSI471 Object Oriented Systems Development (3)
pre-req.: CSI241
Object-orientation paradigm; analysis design,
OO databases; Software reusability Abstracting
Polymorphism Object messages and encapsula-
tion Classes, inheritance, and class categories
Foundations and collection classes Iconic user
interfaces. Design and implementation Survey
of Object Oriented features of programming
languages, modeling database and knowledge –
based systems.

CSI472 Social Issues of Information Technology (3)
Historical development and transfer of Science
and Technology of computing; Social context of
computing; Perspectives to computer systems
development; Risks and liabilities of computer-
based systems; intellectual property; Privacy
and civil liberties; Computer crime; Ethics and
professionalism issues; IT in socio-economic
development: Computing technology transfer to
Developing countries. Case studies

CSI481 – Database Systems (3)
pre-req.: CSI362
Database systems development framework,
Planning; Logical and Physical DB design Query
processing. Backup and recovery Concurrency
Management; Performance tuning DB security,
integrity and control. DBS architectural framework:
Client/Server, Distributed and parallel
DBS. Object-oriented DB KB and DB Intelligent
DB Data and DBA; Data Warehouse DB Design;
Web-DBS; DB Programming languages Current
topics

CSI482 Information Systems Engineering (3)
Information Systems(ISs) Engineering principles;
Design for ISs; IS architectural (ISA): frameworks,
models, and concepts; IS Strategies, Planning;
methodologies; IS Requirements Engineering;
IS Engineering; Enterprise IS Integration: Frame-
work, dimensions, and impacts; Legacy IS re-
engineering; Data Warehouse systems engineering;
Web-based systems engineering; IS Engineering
impacts assessment; . Practical I

CSI484 National Information Systems Infrastructure (3)
IS Technology (IST) and techno-economic de-
velopment; National IST (NIST); Components and
Perspectives; IS structure and System. Human
capital economic growth, and policy; National
development vision versus IST infrastructure vi-
sion Models to Strategic thrusts: E-Governance;
IST culture issues; Telecommunications regula-
tion. Legislative framework for IST; translating
vision to reality; thrusts to action; Case studies

CSI491 Pattern Recognition (3)
pre-req.: CSI372
Introduction to Pattern Recognition Statistical Decision theory; Image processing and Analysis. Pattern recognition models Pattern Recognition Design Methodology. NN for Pattern recognition Pattern Recognition implementation – interactive systems, special architectures Pattern recognition applications – computer vision, signal processing, text processing etc.

CSI493 Computer Graphics I (3)
pre-req.: CSI241
Computer Graphics (CG)?, Image Analysis(lA) vs. CG. Hardware devices Software packages 2D-Graphics; homogeneous coordinates, Transformations, Clippings 3D-Graphics 2D screens, perspective Realism (basic illumination models, primary and secondary effects.

CSI494 Computer Graphics II (3)
pre-req.: CSI493
Colour Models and Colour Applications; Modeling in 3D; Surface Rendering; Lighting effects; Computer Animation; Interaction; Computer Graphics in Scientific Visualization; Graphics on the World Wide Web; Graphics and multimedia systems.

GEC Area 2

GEC121 Computing and Information Skills for Degree Students I (2)
Hardware and software systems concepts and principles OS and file management basics Applications areas of computers; Data Communications and network systems; Internet and Electronic mails basics; Computers and society issues; Information skills and organisation Information need, and sources Security and legal issues. Problem-solving with computers Practical laboratory exercises.

GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills for Degree Students II (2)
pre-req.: GEC121
Advanced operating systems file management; Spreadsheet and database management; Use of basic spreadsheet application package facilities; Basic database application package facilities; Principles of problem-solving with computers. Design and specification with pseudo-code and other tools; evaluating information sources; Practical

GEC 221 Information Management Skills (2)
pre-req.: GEC122
Word processing and database management; application package facilities; DB application package facilities; problem-solving methods Data communication and network systems Evaluating information sources; Electronic information resources. Information management using intermediate to advanced Database management; Electronic information communications Topic analysis; integrated information management.

GEC222 Problem-Solving with Spreadsheet (2)
pre-req.: GEC122
Problem solving Concepts and principles Spreadsheet problem-solving methodology; Problem specification and solution design. Advanced Spreadsheet features. Survey of Spreadsheet application domains Spreadsheet programming Practical problem-solving using spreadsheet facilities Further information skills: Electronic information sourcing and evaluation; Information synthesis; Practical lab exercises.

GEC 223 Web Application Skills (2)
pre-req.: GEC122
The Internet and Web technologies; Systems development Web Application development cycle; Web-Based Systems, structure and applications; Survey of Web application development tools and use; HTML components and syntax; Web planning, design using programmatic (e.g. scripting) and non-programmatic approaches; Use of tables and pictures; Validation and verification, error checking; Qualities of a good web site; Static versus Dynamic web concepts; Practical

GEC321 Multimedia Information Presentation Skills (2)
pre-req.: GEC122
Multimedia information resources; Use of facilities in appropriate Presentation application packages Integrated use of presentation application packages with related application packages (e.g. Word processing, Spreadsheet, and Database packages). Advanced information skills: Topic analysis - Information needs analysis and problem definition; Use of advanced electronic information resources.

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS

MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4)
Basic algebra; Introduction to functions; Trigonometry; Series; Induction; Complex numbers; Permutations and combinations.

MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II (4)
Calculus; Co-ordinate geometry; Vectors.

MAT191 Design Mathematics I (3)
Basic Algebra; Trigonometry; Statistics.

MAT192 Design Mathematics II (3)
Co-ordinate Geometry; Matrices and Determinants; Calculus.

MAT201 Ancillary Mathematics (3)
Linear algebra; Calculus; Probability and statistics.

MAT211 Introductory Set And Number Theory (3)Logic; Sets; Relations; Integers; Modular Arithmetic.

MAT212 Introductory Linear Algebra (3)
Linear equations; Matrices; Vector spaces; Transformations; Eigenvectors.

MAT 221 Calculus I (3)
Techniques of integration; Applications of integration; Improper integrals; Generalized mean value theorem; Taylor's theorem; Differential equations; Sequences and series.

MAT 222 Calculus II (3)
Power series; Conic sections; Differential calculus; Multiple integrals.

MAT 242 Computing I (3)
Elements of programming; Procedures and subroutines; Structured design; Introduction to modularization.

MAT244 Numerical Methods (3)
Computer arithmetic; Numerical approximation and integration.

MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
Vectors; Vector calculus; Particle motion in a straight line; Newton's laws of motion; Kinematics; Dynamics in space; Statistics.

MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3)
Work, power and energy; Momentum; Simple harmonic motion; Statics of rigid bodies; Centre of gravity; Dynamics of a rigid body.
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)
Sample space and probability function; Distributions of random variables; Expectations; Normal distribution; Applications of t, chi-square and F distributions; Sampling distributions; Statement of central limit theorem; Confidence intervals and testing of hypothesis.

MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)
Determinants and matrices; Application of derivatives; Number sequences and series; Partial derivatives; Application of integration.

MAT292 Engineering Mathematics II (3)
Ordinary differential equations; Statistics; Probability; Binomial, Poisson and normal distributions.

MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3)
Groups; Factor groups; Homomorphisms; Rings.

MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3)
Group actions; p-groups; Rings; Fields.

MAT 321 Real Analysis I (3)
The real number system; Sequences of real numbers; Series; Functions; Continuity; Differentiability; Integration.

MAT 322 Real Analysis II (3)
Introduction to R^n as a metric space; Differentiation in R^n; Power series; Integration in R^n.

MAT 323 Vector Calculus (3)
Vectors and applications to lines and planes; Curves and surfaces; Differentiation and integration of vector functions; The divergence theorem and Stoke's theorem.

MAT324 Differential Equations (3)
Second order linear differential equations; Power series solutions to ordinary differential equations; Systems of differential equations; Boundary value problems for ordinary differential equations and partial differential equations.

MAT342 Computing II (3)
Recursion, pointers and linked lists; Object oriented programming; Dynamic memory allocation; Mathematical usage of objects and modules.

MAT344 Numerical Methods of Linear Algebra (3)
Direct and iterative methods for solving systems of linear equations; Numerical methods for computation of eigenvalues and eigenvectors of matrices.

MAT352 Dynamics I (3)
Central forces, systems of particles, variable mass; Non-inertial frames; Rigid body motion; Lagrangian and Hamiltonian dynamics.

MAT361 Mathematical Programming and Game Theory (3)
Graphical solution for linear programming; Simplex method and new developments; K-T condition and basic methods for non-linear programming; Linear programming method for two person zero-sum games.

MAT371 Mathematical Statistics I (3)
Review of probability; Distributions of random variables; Conditional distributions; Normal, gamma, t, chi-square and F distributions; Different modes of convergence; Limiting distributions; Introduction to estimation theory and hypothesis testing.

MAT372 Mathematical Statistics II (3)
Estimation theory; Classical methods of estimation versus Bayes estimation; Theory of uniformly powerful tests and likelihood ratio tests; Introduction to linear models; Linear regression and ANOVA models.

MAT381 Calculus for Teachers I (3)
Differentiation; Integration.

MAT382 Calculus for Teachers II (3)
Complex numbers; Differential equations; Partial differentiation.

MAT383 Linear Algebra for Teachers (3)
Linear equations; Matrices; Transformations; Vectors; Geometric equations.

MAT384 Computing for Teachers (3)
Introduction to computing; Basics of programming; laboratory exercises.

MAT387 Mechanics for Teachers I (3)
Newton's law of motion; Momentum and impulse; Conservation of momentum; Work, power and energy; Simple harmonic motion.

MAT388 Mechanics for Teachers II (3)
Newton's law of motion; Momentum and impulse; Conservation of momentum; Work, power and energy; Simple harmonic motion.

MAT389 Linear Programming and Game Theory For Teachers (3)
Mathematical formulation of linear programming (LP) problem; Graphical method; The simplex procedure and other techniques; Game theory; Two-person games; Zero-sum games; Mixed strategies; Graphical solution; The best mixed strategy as an LP problem.

MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III (3)
Laplace transforms; Vector analysis; Interpolation; Numerical solution of differential equations; Fourier series representation of periodic functions.

MAT392 Engineering Mathematics IVA (3)
Laplace transforms; Partial differential equations; Complex analysis.

MAT394 Engineering Mathematics IVB (3)
Partial differential equations; Laplace transforms.

MAT400 Project (3)
MAT402 History Of Mathematics (3)
The origins of mathematics; Greek mathematics; Mathematics in other cultures; The European renaissance; Modern mathematics.

MAT404 Topics in Advanced Mathematics (3)
Topics to be determined.

MAT411 Linear Algebra (3)
Vector spaces; Linear transformations; Eigenvalues and eigenvectors; Inner product spaces; Multilinear algebra.

MAT412 Number Theory (3)
Brief revision of elementary number theory; Quadratic reciprocity; Number theoretic functions; Sums of squares; Algebraic integers.

MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)
Graphs; Planar graphs; Paths; Directed graphs; Networks; Matchings.

MAT416 Abstract Algebra III
Group theory; Field theory.

MAT421 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)
The elementary functions; Analytic functions; Series; Calculus of residues; Introduction to conformal mappings and analytic continuation.
MAT422 Functional Analysis (3)
Normed linear spaces; Inner product spaces; Fundamental theorems for normed linear spaces; Applications.

MAT423 Mathematical Methods (3)
Laplace transforms and applications; Fourier series; Fourier transforms and applications; Classification of partial differential equations; Boundary value problems.

MAT424 Dynamical Systems (3)
Periodic attractors; Stability and bifurcations; Chaos and chaotic attractors.

MAT425 Measure Theory (3)
Measure spaces; Measurable functions; Integration; Spaces of functions; Product measures.

MAT426 Partial Differential Equations (3)
Initial boundary problems for parabolic, elliptic and hyperbolic equations.

MAT431 General Topology
Topological spaces; Bases and sub-bases; Continuous mappings; Hausdorff spaces; Compact spaces; Connected spaces.

MAT432 Algebraic Topology (3)
Homotopy theory; Homology theory; Categories and functors.

MAT441 Numerical Analysis (3)

MAT442 Computational Mathematics (3)
Symbolic calculations with a computer; Automatic symbolic differentiation and integration; Symbolic solution of differential equations; Approximation of functions with a computer.

MAT451 Dynamics II (3)
Further work on systems of particles; Lagrangian and Hamiltonian dynamics; Variational principles; Canonical transforms; Hamilton-Jacobi theory.

MAT452 Quantum Mechanics (3)
Quantization rules; Application to the hydrogen atom; Schrodinger wave equation; Poisson brackets and commutation relations; The uncertainty principle.

MAT453 Electromagnetic Theory (3)
Electric field; Electric currents in linear conductors; Biot-Savart law; Magnetic field; Potentials and related boundary value problems; Maxwell's equations.

MAT454 Introduction to Fluid Dynamics (3)
Tensor methods; Two dimensional steady flow; Stream lines and streak lines; Properties of fluids; Mass conservation; Continuity equations; Convective derivative; Vorticity.

MAT461 Optimization And Control Theory (3)
Calculus of variation; Pontryagin maximum principle; Optimal control of linear systems; Linear systems with quadratic cost.

MAT462 Mathematical Modelling (3)
Population models; Competing species; Epidemic models; Van der Pol and Lotka-Volterra equations.

MAT471 Multivariate Statistics (3)
Multivariate, marginal and conditional distributions; Multivariate normal distribution Np(m,S); Wishart distribution and Hotelling T2 distribution; Maximum likelihood estimation of m and S of Np(m,S) distribution; Likelihood ratio test for testing H0: m = m0; Multivariate regression; Canonical correlations; Principal components.

MAT472 Linear Models (3)
General linear model and linear hypotheses; Models of full rank and models not of full rank; Estimable functions; Testable hypotheses; The exponential family and generalized linear models; Introduction to fixed models; Illustration of fitting models to real life data with a computer package.

MAT474 Stochastic Processes (3)
Stochastic processes in both discrete and continuous time; Markov chains; Poisson processes; Renewal theory; Branch processes; Applications.

MAT476 Statistical Computing (3)
Use of symbolic computation in statistics with a computer algebra system; Developing computational methods for selected problems of multivariate statistics; Using a statistics package for estimation and testing of hypotheses in different statistical models with real life data and/or data supplied by simulation.

MAT481 Geometry for Teachers I (3)
Logic; Axiomatic systems; Incidence geometry; Euclidean geometry.

MAT482 Geometry for Teachers II (3)
Analytic Geometry in the Euclidean plane and space; Transformational Geometry in the Euclidean plane.

MAT483 Real Analysis for Teachers (3)
Sequences; Functions; Continuity; Derivatives; Riemann integral.

MAT484 Introduction to Probability and Statistics For Teachers (3)
Sample space and probability function; Distributions of random variables and their moments; Binomial, Poisson, normal and other probability functions; Estimation and hypothesis testing.

MAT485 Number Theory and Abstract Algebra for Teachers (3)
Elementary number theory; The Diophantine equation; Congruences; Fermat’s and Wilson’s theorems; Group theory; Polynomials.

MAT491 Engineering Mathematics V
Partial differential equations; Bessel functions; Legendre polynomials; Reliability theory

MAT492 Engineering Mathematics VI
Tests of hypothesis; Linear programming; Stochastic processes.

MAT493 Real Analysis (3)
Measure spaces; Measurable functions; Integration; Spaces of functions; Product measures.

MAT494 Statistical Computing (3)
Use of symbolic computation in statistics with a computer algebra system; Developing computational methods for selected problems of multivariate statistics; Using a statistics package for estimation and testing of hypotheses in different statistical models with real life data and/or data supplied by simulation.

MAT495 Number Theory (3)
Elementary number theory; The Diophantine equation; Congruences; Fermat’s and Wilson’s theorems; Group theory; Polynomials.

MAT496 Dynamical Systems (3)
Periodic attractors; Stability and bifurcations; Chaos and chaotic attractors.

MAT497 Optimization and Control Theory (3)
Calculus of variation; Pontryagin maximum principle; Optimal control of linear systems; Linear systems with quadratic cost.

MAT498 Mathematical Modelling (3)
Population models; Competing species; Epidemic models; Van der Pol and Lotka-Volterra equations.

MAT499 Numerical Analysis (3)

MAT500 Computational Mathematics (3)
Symbolic calculations with a computer; Automatic symbolic differentiation and integration; Symbolic solution of differential equations; Approximation of functions with a computer.

MAT501 Dynamics II (3)
Further work on systems of particles; Lagrangian and Hamiltonian dynamics; Variational principles; Canonical transforms; Hamilton-Jacobi theory.

MAT502 Quantum Mechanics (3)
Quantization rules; Application to the hydrogen atom; Schrödinger wave equation; Poisson brackets and commutation relations; The uncertainty principle.

MAT503 Electromagnetic Theory (3)
Electric field; Electric currents in linear conductors; Biot-Savart law; Magnetic field; Potentials and related boundary value problems; Maxwell’s equations.

MAT504 Introduction to Fluid Dynamics (3)
Tensor methods; Two dimensional steady flow; Stream lines and streak lines; Properties of fluids; Mass conservation; Continuity equations; Convective derivative; Vorticity.

MAT505 Optimization And Control Theory (3)
Calculus of variation; Pontryagin maximum principle; Optimal control of linear systems; Linear systems with quadratic cost.

MAT506 Mathematical Modelling (3)
Population models; Competing species; Epidemic models; Van der Pol and Lotka-Volterra equations.

MAT507 Multivariate Statistics (3)
Multivariate, marginal and conditional distributions; Multivariate normal distribution Np(m,S); Wishart distribution and Hotelling T2 distribution; Maximum likelihood estimation of m and S of Np(m,S) distribution; Likelihood ratio test for testing H0: m = m0; Multivariate regression; Canonical correlations; Principal components.

MAT508 Linear Models (3)
General linear model and linear hypotheses; Models of full rank and models not of full rank; Estimable functions; Testable hypotheses; The exponential family and generalized linear models; Introduction to fixed models; Illustration of fitting models to real life data with a computer package.

MAT509 Stochastic Processes (3)
Stochastic processes in both discrete and continuous time; Markov chains; Poisson processes; Renewal theory; Branch processes; Applications.

MAT510 Statistical Computing (3)
Use of symbolic computation in statistics with a computer algebra system; Developing computational methods for selected problems of multivariate statistics; Using a statistics package for estimation and testing of hypotheses in different statistical models with real life data and/or data supplied by simulation.
ECONOMICS
LAW
POLITICAL & ADMINISTRATIVE STUDIES
POPULATION STUDIES
PSYCHOLOGY
SOCIAL WORK
SOCIOLOGY
STATISTICS

FACULTY OF
SOCIAL SCIENCES

DEAN
Prof. H. K. Siphambe, BA (UB), MA (Western Michigan), PhD (Manitoba)

DEPUTY DEAN
R.G. Majelantle, BA (UB), PGDipPopStud (Rips, Ghana), MA (Pennsylvania)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATORS
M. B. Maje, BA PGDE (UB), MEd (Birmingham)
N. A. Nkanga, BA, MLIS (UB), MSc HRM (Cardiff)
Introduction
The Faculty of Social Sciences comprises the following Departments:
- Economics
- Law
- Political and Administrative Studies
- Population Studies
- Psychology
- Social Work
- Sociology
- Statistics.

Programmes of Study
Until recently, the Faculty concentrated mainly on its Combined Programmes, which allows students to choose any 2 areas of study from the Departments mentioned above, i.e. Bachelor of Arts in Social Sciences (BASS), and with special permission, from courses offered by other Faculties or Departments, e.g. Environmental Science and Accounting.

However, in order to more effectively meet the demand for fully trained Social Scientists, the Faculty has been trying to activate its Single Major Programmes to provide for specialisation in particular areas. During the academic year 1981/82, the Faculty changed its Year 1 and Year 2 Programmes from the unit to the subject system. With the introduction of the subject system, students in the Faculty are still being provided with the facility of electing 1 of their majors as Environmental Science (Faculty of Science), and Accounting (Faculty of Business). Furthermore, in response to the growing need for middle-level manpower, the Departments of Population Studies, Law, Social Work, Sociology and Statistics offer Programmes leading to the Diploma in Population Studies, Diploma in Law, Social Work, Criminal Justice Studies and Statistics. Consistent with its objectives, the Faculty started offering its first Post Graduate Programme during the 1990/91 academic year. This was the Masters in Public Administration. Since then six (6) more Post Graduate Programmes have been introduced. These are the Master of Arts in Law, in Statistics, in Economics, Population Studies, Development Studies and Social Work. A new Masters degree programme in Politics and International Relations has been introduced in August 2007.

Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences
24.00 General Regulations of the University shall apply.

24.01 Failure, without good cause, to deliver an assignment within the first 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of the week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS

Bachelor of Arts in Economics Degree Programme

Special Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Arts in Economics (Combined Degree and Economics Minor)

Entry Requirements
Subject to the provisions of General Regulation 20.20, at least a credit in Mathematics shall be required for all students intending to take Economics as a Major or Minor subject. Alternative qualifications may be accepted as per General Academic Regulation 20.24b. Requirements for entry into the Bachelor of Arts (Economics) Degree Programme are determined by the Department of Economics Board and may vary from year to year. The Department offers Economics as a Single Major Bachelor of Arts (Economics) Degree, a Combined Major (Major/Major) Degree for the BASS and other Degrees, and a Minor in Economics. Students majoring in other subjects may take courses in Economics provided the prerequisites are satisfied.

Single Major Programme
Students intending to take Economics as a Single Major shall take and pass the following courses:

Level 100
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (3)
Semester 2
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
STA121 Elements of Probability (3)

Level 200
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
ECO231 Intermediate Mathematics for Economists (3)
Semester 2
ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
ECO232 Intermediate Statistics for Economists (3)

Level 300
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO311 Microeconomics I (3)
ECO321 Macroeconomics I (3)
ECO331 Mathematics for Economists I (3)
ECO341 Econometrics I (3)
ECO463 Economics of Botswana and Southern Africa (3)
Semester 2
ECO312 Microeconomics II (3)
ECO322 Macroeconomics II (3)
ECO332 Mathematics for Economists II (3)
ECO342 Econometrics II (3)
ECO465 History of Economic Thought (3)

Level 400
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO431 Research Methods in Economics (3)
Plus: 4 Optional Courses.
Semester 2
ECO432 Project in Applied Economics (3, core)
Plus: 4 Optional Courses.

Optional Courses
ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-Majors
ECO222 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors
ECO411 Development Economics
ECO412 Development Problems and Policy
ECO421 International Trade
ECO422 International Finance
ECO441 Economics of Agriculture
ECO442 Agricultural Policy and Rural Development
ECO451 Environmental Economics
ECO452 Resource Economics
ECO463 Economics of Botswana and Southern Africa
ECO465 History of Economic Thought
ECO466 Public Finance
ECO467 Labour Economics
ECO468 Industrial Economics
Combined Major Programme

Students intending to take Economics as a Combined Major shall take and pass the following courses:

Level 100
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (3)

Semester 2
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
STA121 Elements of Probability (3)

Level 200
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
ECO231 Intermediate Mathematics for Economists (3)

Semester 2
ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
ECO232 Intermediate Statistics for Economists (3)

Level 300
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO311 Microeconomics I (3)
ECO321 Macroeconomics I (3)
ECO331 Mathematics for Economists I (3)

Semester 2
ECO312 Microeconomics II (3)
ECO322 Macroeconomics II (3)
ECO332 Mathematics for Economists II (3)

Level 400
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO341 Econometrics I [3]
ECO463 Economics of Botswana and Southern Africa [3]
Plus one Optional Course

Semester 2
ECO342 Econometrics II (3)
Plus: 2 Optional Courses.

Minor in Economics

Students intending to take Economics as a Minor subject shall take and pass the following courses:

Level 100
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)

Semester 2
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)

Level 200
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)

Semester 2
ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)

Levels 300 and 400

Students are required to take 2 Optional Courses.

Assessment

The continuous assessment (CA) of each course will normally include at least 2 components as outlined in the General Academic Regulation 00.811. These 2 components will normally be in written form. However, non-written presentations will count for no more than 10 percent of the CA. The CA will count for 40 percent of the total assessment while the final examination will count for 60 percent of the total assessment. This applies to all courses except ECO432 (Project in Applied Economics).

Research Proposal

All students taking ECO431 Research Methods in Economics shall write a research proposal that shall be graded, and there shall be no final examination for that course. The proposal for this course will normally be used as a basis for ECO432 Project in Applied Economics.

Department of Law

The Department of Law offers programmes and courses leading to the award of the following qualifications:

- Diploma in Law (DIL)
- Bachelor of Laws (LLB)
- Master of Laws (LLM)

Departmental Regulations General Provisions

Subject to the provisions of Academic General Regulations and Faculty of Social Sciences Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply.

Entry Requirements

The normal requirement for admission to the Diploma in Law Programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) obtained with a minimum of three credits, one of which shall be in English language, or an equivalent qualification. Relevant work experience shall also be an advantage. An applicant in possession of a Certificate in Law of this University, obtained with a minimum classification of a merit, or an equivalent qualification shall also be eligible for admission to Level 200 of the Diploma in Law programme. Subject to Academic General Regulations 00.4, a student admitted to the Diploma in Law programme with a Certificate in Law shall be exempted from taking Level 100 courses on the Diploma in Law programme deemed equivalent to those passed under the Certificate in Law programme, but shall be required to take General Education and Core courses that are not deemed equivalent to any of the courses passed under the Certificate in Law.

Duration

The normal duration for the Diploma in Law programme shall be four (4) semesters on a full time basis. A student admitted to the programme with a Certificate in Law shall however be entitled to complete the Diploma in Law within a period of not less than two (2) semesters.
Programme Structure.

The Diploma in Law Programme shall consist of Level 100 General Education Courses (GEC) in the areas of Communication and Study Skills, specified Core (C) and Optional (O) courses in the principal subject Law offered at Levels 100 and 200, and Electives in other subject areas offered at comparable levels. Level 100 Core and Optional Courses are foundation courses, which students admitted to the programme without a Certificate in Law, shall normally be required to take before attempting the Core and Optional courses at Level 200. Level 200 courses shall be offered and taken in the designated areas of specialization identified as Private Law, Public Law and Commercial Law. Subject to variations approved from time to time, courses for the Diploma in Law shall be arranged as follows:

Level 100
Semester 1
General Education Courses
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills (2)
GEC121 Computer and Information Skills (2)

Core Courses
LAW101 Introduction to the Botswana Legal System (3)
LAW102 Criminal Law in Botswana I (3)
LAW103 Constitutional Law in Botswana (3)
And, Either
LAW104 Trial Practice I (4)
Or
LAW105 Law of Obligations I (4)
Total Number of Credits 17

Semester 2
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills (2)
GEC122 Computer and Information Skills (2)
And
LAW106 Customary Law (3)
LAW107 Criminal Law in Botswana II (3)
LAW108 Administrative Law in Botswana (3)
And Either
LAW109 Trial Practice II (4)
Or
LAW110 Law of Obligations II (4)
Total Number of Credits 17

Private Law
Level 200
Semester 3
LAW201 Introduction to Property Law (3)
LAW202 Land and Mineral Resources Law (3)
LAW212 Sales and Consumer Law in Botswana [3]
LAW208 Human Rights Law in Botswana (3)
Total Number of credits 16.

Semester 4
LAW204 Deeds Registration in Botswana [4]
LAW203 Environmental Laws of Botswana (3)
LAW211 Local Government Law [3]
LAW215 Labour Law in Botswana [4]
And One of
LAW210 Electoral Law and Procedures (3)
LAW217 Insolvency and Secured Transactions (3)
Elective (3)
Total Number of Credits 17

Public Law
Level 200
Semester 3
LAW206 Civil Litigation and Process (4)
LAW207 Advanced Criminal Litigation (3)
LAW208 Human Rights Law in Botswana (3)
And at least two of:
LAW209 Criminology and Penology [3]
LAW105 Law of Obligations I (4)
Elective (3)
Total Number of Credits 16.

Semester 4
LAW210 Electoral Law and Procedures (3)
LAW211 Local Government Law [3]
LAW215 Labour Law in Botswana [4]
And at least two of:
LAW110 Law of Obligations II (4)
LAW203 Environmental Laws of Botswana (3)
Elective (3)
Total Number of Credits 17

Commercial Law
Level 200
Semester 3
LAW212 Sales and Consumer Law in Botswana [3]
LAW213 Negotiable and other Instruments of Payment (3)
LAW214 Companies and Partnerships in Botswana [4]
LAW201 Introduction to Property Law [3]
LAW205 Law of Persons and the Family in Botswana (4)
Total Number of Credits 17

LAW215 Labour Law in Botswana (4)
LAW216 Insurance Law in Botswana [3]
LAW217 Insolvency & Secured Transactions (3)
LAW218 Tax Law in Botswana [3]
And one of:
LAW210 Electoral Law and Procedures (3)
LAW211 Local Government Law [3]
Elective [3]
Total Number of credits 16
Minimum Total Credits for the Programme: 67 Credits.

Award of Diploma

1. A student shall be eligible for the award of the Diploma in Law upon completion of a minimum of 67 credits from the courses indicated on the programme structure.
2. Except for course LAW 109, each law course on the Diploma in Law Programme shall be assessed through continuous assessment and a formal examination at any time before the end of the semester.

Continuous Assessment

1. Continuous assessment shall consist of at least two or more pieces of the following: written assignments, written tests, oral tests, mock trials, moots, class or seminar exercises, practicals, projects, research exercises, or independent study.
2. Except for course LAW 109, the ratio between continuous assessment and the formal examination shall be 2:3.
3. In Law 109 students shall be assessed from mock trials, seminar exercises, field trip reports and other exercises as shall be determined by the Departmental Board and indicated at the beginning of the course. A final mark of 100 per cent for the course shall consist of marks allocated for each component of the assessment in proportions to be determined by the Departmental Board and indicated at the beginning of the
course.  
4. Failure without good cause to submit continuous assessment work within twenty-four hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within forty-eight hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 50 percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark. Formal Examinations Formal written examinations for all Core and Optional law courses on the programme shall be of the type and for the duration approved by Departmental Board and indicated in the course outline or at the beginning of each course.

Bachelor of Laws (LLB) Degree

Entry Requirements
1. The normal requirement for admission to the Bachelor of Laws degree programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) obtained at one sitting with a minimum of five credits, one of which shall be in English language, or an equivalent qualification.
2. An applicant in possession of a Diploma in Law from this University, obtained with a minimum classification of a credit, or an equivalent qualification shall also be eligible for admission to the LLB programme.
3. Subject to Academic General Regulation 00.4, a student admitted to the LLB programme with a Diploma in Law shall be exempted from taking Levels 100 and 200 courses on the LLB programme designated by the Departmental Board as equivalent to courses passed under the Diploma in Law Programme and shall be allocated comparable credits under the LLB programme for the exemptions. A student admitted to the LLB programme with a Diploma in Law will not normally be entitled to register for courses offered at levels 300, 400 and 500 of the LLB programme before completing and accumulating credits for levels 100 and 200 Core, Optional, Electives and General Education Courses.
4. Subject to changes approved from time to time, LLB courses shall be arranged as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 100</th>
<th>Semester 1</th>
<th>LAW130</th>
<th>LAW131</th>
<th>LAW132</th>
<th>LAW133</th>
<th>GEC / Elective (4)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semester 2</td>
<td>LAW134</td>
<td>LAW135</td>
<td>LAW136</td>
<td>LAW137</td>
<td>LAW138</td>
<td>GEC / Elective (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Number of Credits 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 200</th>
<th>Semester 3</th>
<th>LAW230</th>
<th>LAW231</th>
<th>LAW232</th>
<th>LAW233</th>
<th>LAW234</th>
<th>GEC / Elective (2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semester 4</td>
<td>LAW235</td>
<td>LAW236</td>
<td>LAW237</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Number of Credits 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 400</th>
<th>Semester 5</th>
<th>LAW430</th>
<th>LAW431</th>
<th>LAW432</th>
<th>LAW433</th>
<th>LAW434</th>
<th>GEC / Elective (4)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semester 6</td>
<td>LAW435</td>
<td>LAW436</td>
<td>LAW437</td>
<td>LAW438</td>
<td>LAW439</td>
<td>LAW440</td>
<td>GEC / Elective (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Number of Credits 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 500</th>
<th>Semester 7</th>
<th>LAW530</th>
<th>LAW531</th>
<th>LAW532</th>
<th>LAW533</th>
<th>LAW534</th>
<th>GEC / Elective (4)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semester 8</td>
<td>LAW535</td>
<td>LAW536</td>
<td>LAW537</td>
<td>LAW538</td>
<td>LAW539</td>
<td>LAW540</td>
<td>GEC / Elective (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Number of Credits 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Level 500
Semester 9
LAW531 Clinical Legal Education III (4)
LAW532 Conveyancing Principles and Practice (4)
LAW535 Research Paper (3)
And at least two of
LAW536 International Moot (3)
LAW537 Private International Law I (3)
LAW538 International Organizations (3)
LAW539 International Business Transactions (3)
LAW540 Intellectual Property Law I (3)
Total Number of Credits 17

Semester 10
LAW533 Introduction to Notarial Practice (4)
ACC407 Accounting for Lawyers (4)
And at least three of
LAW536 International Moot (3)
LAW541 Intellectual Property Law II (3)
LAW542 International Trade Law (3)
LAW538 International Organizations (3)
LAW543 Private International Law II (3)
LAW539 International Business Transactions (3)
Total Number of Credits 17

Minimum Total Credits for the Programme: 165 Credits

Award of Degree
A student shall be eligible for the award of the LLB degree upon completion of a minimum of 165 credits from the Core, Optional, Electives and GECs indicated in the programme structure.

Assessment
1. The following Special Regulations shall supplement Academic General Regulations and Faculty of Social Sciences Regulations on assessment and grading of law courses on the LLB programme.
2. Except for the courses LAW135, Law and Social Research Methods; LAW433, Clinical Legal Education I; LAW436, Clinical Legal Education II; LAW531, Clinical Legal Education III; LAW535, Research Paper; and LAW536, International Moot, each Core and Optional course on the LLB programme shall be assessed through at least two or more pieces of continuous assessment work. Each piece of continuous assessment work shall be marked and shall contribute towards the final mark of 100 per cent for the course. 4 Clinical Legal Education Courses I to III shall be assessed as follows:

a) LAW 433 Clinical Legal Education I
1. Participation in seminars and written assignments - 30%
2. Oral examination on work performed in the Legal Clinic - 40%
3. End of semester examination - 30%
Total 100%

b) LAW 436 Clinical Legal Education II
1. Oral Examination on work performed in the Legal Clinic - 40%
2. Moot/Mock trial documents and performance - 60%
Total 100%

c) LAW 531 Clinical Legal Education III
1. Internship Report - 30%
2. Moot/mock trial documents and performance - 50%
3. Oral examination on work performed in the Legal Clinic - 20%
Total 100%

International Moot
The Course LAW536, International Moot, shall be assessed as follows:
1. Documents prepared for the Moot - 60%
2. Advocacy skills in the Moot - 40%
Total 100%

Research Paper
The final version of the research paper in course LAW535 shall be submitted for examination by the relevant date and marked out of 100 per cent. A student who fails to submit the research paper for examination by the relevant date shall be awarded an incomplete Grade [(I) in accordance with Academic General Regulation 00.844. Delay and Failure to Submit Continuous Assessment Work Subject to Special Departmental Regulations 3.6.4 and 3.6.5, failure without good cause to submit continuous assessment work within twenty-four hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within forty-eight hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 50 percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

Formal Examinations
Formal written examinations for Core and Optional law courses on the LLB programme shall be of the type and for the duration approved by the Departmental Board and indicated in the course outline or at the beginning of each course.

Service Courses
Subject to optimal student demand and the availability of staff and other resources, the Department of Law shall offer the following courses at levels 100 to 600 to students not registered for law programmes.

Level 100
GEC277 Law and Society in Botswana
(2 sem 1 or 2)
LAW151 Law and Social Work (4 sem 1)

Level 200
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law
(3, Sem 1)
LAW252 Specific Business Transactions
(4, Sem 2)
LAW253 Foundations of Engineering Law
(3, Sem 3)

Level 300
LAW351 Introduction to Company Law
(4, Sem 1)
LAW353 Planning and Environmental Law
(3, Sem 1 or 2)

Level 400
LAW452 Construction Law (3, Sem 1 or 2)
LAW453 Labour and Industrial Property Law
(3, Sem 1 or 2)
4.6 Degree Structure
4.6.1 The Public Administration and Political Sciences courses shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the undergraduate programmes.
4.6.2 In addition to Public Administration and Political Sciences courses, an undergraduate candidate majoring in these courses shall take the General Education Courses (GECs) and Electives in accordance with the General Regulation 00.2124.
4.6.3 The Department of Political and Administrative Studies offers undergraduate Public Administration and Political Science courses (as Combined Majors including a Major combined with a Minor) to students majoring in other subjects. In addition, the Department offers single majors in Political Science and Public Administration.
4.6.4 The Department of Political and Administrative Studies offers GECs as outlined in the General Academic Regulations.

5.0 Undergraduate Degree Course Listings.

5.1 Bachelor of Social Science Degree in Public Administration (Single Major)

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
POL 101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
STA III Basic Statistics (3)
Plus one Elective and two GECs
Total Credits 16

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD102 Institutions and Processors of Public Administration (3)
POL 102 Modern State (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
Plus one Elective and two GECs
Total Credit 16
Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD401 Development Administration (3)
PAD403 Internship (3)
PAD402 Government Budgeting (3)
Two Optional Courses from
PAD405 Seminar in Public Policy (3)
PAD407 Comparative Public Administration (3)
PAD413 Leadership & Governance (3)
Plus one Elective
Total Credits 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD405 Seminar in Public Policy (3)
PAD407 Comparative Public Administration (3)
PAD413 Leadership & Governance (3)
Plus one Elective
Total Credits 18

5.2 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme in Political Science (Single Major)

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA111 Basic Statistics (3)
Plus two GECs.
Total Credits 16

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL102 Modern State (3)
PAD102 Institutions and Processes of Public Administration (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
Plus one Elective and two GECs.
Total Credits 18

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Micro Economics for non-major or 211: Intermediate Micro Economic (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
Plus one Elective and two GECs.
Total Credits 16

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL202 Classical Political Thought (3)
ECO222 Intermediate Macroeconomics for non-major: or 2/2 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
One Optional Course from
POL204 Media and Politics (3)
SOC236 Social Inequality (3)
Plus one Elective and one GEC
Total Credits= 17

Level 300
Semester 1
POL301 Modern Political Thought (3)
POL306 International Political Economy (3)
POL310 Contemporary Africa (3)
One Optional Course from
POL302 Politics of South Africa (3)
SOC334 Sociology of Development (3)
Plus one Elective and one GEC
Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL305 Politics of Southern Africa (3)
POL307 Politics of Regionalism (3)
LAW237 Administrative Law (3)
Two Optional Courses from
POL309 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
SOC327 Political Sociology
POL308 Politics & Management of Natural Resources (3)/core-coding
ENV 301: Environmental Issues (2) or ENV 476: Natural Resource Management & Economics (2)
Plus one GEC
Total Credits= 18

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL401 International Relations (3)
POL402 Democratic Theory and Practice (3)
POL410 Internship in Political Science (3)
Two Optional Courses from
POL406 Africa in World Politics (3)
POL407 Civil Military Relations (3)
PAD402 Government Budgeting (3)
PAD413 Leadership & Governance (3)
Plus one Elective
Total Credits 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL405 Comparative Politics (3)
POL409 Security Studies (3)
Two Optional Courses from
POL403 Modern Ideologies (3)
POL411 Research Project in Political Science (3)
PAD408 International Administration (3)
Plus one Elective and one GEC
Total Credits 17

5.3 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme

Major in Public Administration + Major in Political Science

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA111 Basic Statistics (3)
Plus one Elective and two GECs.
Total Credits 16

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD102 Institutions and Processes of Public Administration (3)
POLS102 The Modern State (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
Plus two GECs.
Total Credits 16
Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD201 Organisation Theories (3)
POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-Majors (3); or ECO212: Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
Plus one Elective and one GEC
Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD202 Public Administration in Botswana (3)
POL202 Classical Political Thought (3)
ECO222 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors (3); or ECO212: Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
Two Optional Courses from
POL204 Media and Politics (3)
SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
SOC236 Social Inequality (3)
Plus one GEC
Total Credits 17

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD306 Public Policy Analysis (4)
POL301 Modern Political Thought (3)
Three Optional Courses from
POL310 Contemporary Africa (3)
PAD302 Human Resource Management (3)
POL302 Politics in South Africa (3)
PAD303 Local Government Management (3)
POL306 International Political Economy (3)
PAD308 Industrial Relations (3)
Plus one GEC (2)
Total Credits 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD307 Human Resource Development (3)
POL307 Politics of Regionalism (3)
LAW237 Administrative Law (3)
Three Optional Courses from
POL305 Politics of Southern Africa (3)
POL309 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
PAD304 Public Enterprise Management (3)
POL308 Politics and Management of Natural Resources (3)
Plus one Elective and one GEC
Total Credits 18

5.4 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme

Major in Political Science and Major in Another Subject.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
ECO111 Basic Micro-Economics (3)
STA111 Basic Statistics (3)
Plus 2 GECs and one Other Major course (6).
Total Credits 19

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL107 Politics of Regionalism (3)
LAW237 Administrative Law (3)
One Optional Course from
POL305 Politics of Southern (3)
POL309 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
POL308 Politics & Management of Natural Resources (3)
or
ENV301 Environmental Issues (2) or
ENV476 Natural Resource Management and
### Level 400

#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- POL401: International Relations (3)
- POL402: Democratic Theory and Practice (3)
- Two Optional Courses from POL406, POL407, or POL411

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- POL405: Comparative Politics (3)
- Two Optional Courses from POL403, POL409, or PAD408

### Level 200

#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- PAD201: Organisation Theories (3)
- LAW234: Constitutional Law (3)
- ECO221: Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-majors (3) or ECO 211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- PAD202: Public Administration in Botswana (3)
- ECO222: Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors (3)
- SOC226: Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)

### Level 300

#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- PAD306: Public Policy Analysis (3)
- PAD302: Human Resource Management (3)
- One Optional Course from PAD303, LAW 237, or STA 112

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- PAD307: Human Resource Development (3)
- LAW 237: Administrative LAW (3)
- One Optional course from PAD304, or POL308

### Level 400

#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- PAD401: Development Administration (3)
- PAD402: Government Budgeting (3)
- Two Optional Courses from POL403, ECO221, or ECO221

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- PAD404: Contemporary Issues in Public Administration (3)
- One Optional Course from PAD406, POL408, or PAD412

### 6.6 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme: Major in Political Science and Minor in Other Subject

#### Level 100

#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- POL101: Introduction to Political Science (3)
- PAD101: Introduction to Public Administration (3)
- ECO111: Basic Microeconomics (3)
- STA111: Basic Statistics (3)

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- POL102: The Modern State (3)
- PAD102: Institutions and Processes in Public Administration (3)
- ECO112: Basic Microeconomics (3)
- STA 112: Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)

### Level 200

#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- POL201: Botswana Politics (3)
- ECO221: Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-Majors (3) or ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
### Level 100
#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- **POL101** | Introduction to Political Science (3)
- **ECO111** | Basic Micro Economics (3)
- **POL102** | Introduction to Public Administration (3)
- **STA111** | Basic Statistics (3)

Plus one Elective, one GEC and one Minor Course
Total Credits 18

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- **POL103** | Comparative Politics (3)
- **POL104** | Security Studies (3)
- **ECO112** | Basic Macro Economics (3)
- **POL105** | Institutions and Processes of Public Administration (3)
- **STA112** | Statistical Tools Social Research (3)

Plus two GECs and one Minor Course.
Total Credits 19

### Level 200
#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- **PAD201** | Organisation Theories (3)
- **LAW234** | Constitutional Law (3)
- **ECO212** | Intermediate Micro Economics for Non-Majors (3)
- **POL406** | Africa in World Politics (3)

Total Credits 19

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- **PAD202** | Public Administration in Botswana (3)
- **ECO222** | Intermediate Macro Economics for Non-Majors (3)
- **ECO211** | Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
- **POL407** | Civil Military Relations (3)
- **POL410** | Internship in Political Science (3)

Plus one Elective and one Minor Course
Total Credits 15

### Level 300
#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- **PAD302** | Human Resource Development (3)
- **LAW237** | Administrative Law (3)
- **POL307** | Politics of Regionalism (3)
- **POL305** | Politics of Southern Africa (3)
- **ENV301** | Natural Resource Management and Economics (2)

Plus one Elective and one Minor Course
Total Credits 16

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- **PAD303** | Local Government Management (3)
- **PAD308** | Industrial Relations (3)
- **SOC226** | Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
- **POL309** | Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
- **ENV476** | Natural Resource Management and Economics (2)

Plus two GECs and one Minor course.
Total Credits 17

### Level 400
#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- **PAD401** | Development Administration (4)
- **LAW234** | Constitutional Law (3)
- **ECO222** | Intermediate Macro Economics for Non-Majors (3)
- **POL406** | Africa in World Politics (3)
- **POL407** | Comparative Public Administration (3)

Total Credits 15

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- **PAD402** | Government Budgeting (3)
- **POL408** | Politics and Management of Natural Resources (3)
- **ENV301** | Environmental Issues (2)
- **ENV476** | Natural Resource Management and Economics (2)
- **PAD407** | Case Studies in Public Policy Analysis (3)

Plus one Elective and one Minor course
Total Credits 15

### 5.7 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme: Major in Public Administration + Minor
#### Level 100
#### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- **POL101** | Introduction to Public Administration (3)
- **ECO111** | Basic Micro Economics (3)
- **POL105** | Institutions and Processes of Public Administration (3)
- **STA112** | Statistical Tools Social Research (3)

Plus two GECs and one Minor Course.
Total Credits 19

#### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- **PAD201** | Organisation Theories (3)
- **LAW234** | Constitutional Law (3)
- **ECO222** | Intermediate Macro Economics for Non-Majors (3)
- **POL406** | Africa in World Politics (3)

Total Credits 19
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 2</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PAD404</td>
<td>Contemporary Issues in Public Administration (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAD410</td>
<td>Public Financial Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Optional Course from PAD406 Ethics and Public Management (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAD411</td>
<td>Local Government Finance (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAD412</td>
<td>Research Project in Public Administration (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one Elective, one GEC and one Minor course</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Credits 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 5.8 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme: Minor Political Science + Major in Other Subject |

**Level 100**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 1</th>
<th>Core Courses for Minor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>POL101</td>
<td>Introduction to Political Science (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA111</td>
<td>Basic Statistics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and two GECs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Credits 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Semester 2**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Courses for Minor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>POL102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and two GECs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Credits 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 5.9 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme: Minor in Public Administration + Major in Other Subject. |

**Level 100**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 1</th>
<th>Core Courses for Minor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PAD101</td>
<td>Introduction to Public Administration (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA111</td>
<td>Basic Statistics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus two Major Core Courses, and two GECs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Credits 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Semester 2**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Courses for Minor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PAD102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus two Major Core Courses, and two GECs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Credits 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| DEPARTMENT OF POPULATION STUDIES |

**Diploma in Population Studies**

Special Regulations for Diploma in Population Studies
Subject to the provisions of the Academic General Regulations 000 and 100, and the Faculty of Social Sciences Special Regulations, the following Special Regulations shall apply:
Entrance Requirements

The normal requirement for entrance into Diploma in Population Studies shall be:

a) A minimum of 3 credits (one of which is Mathematics) in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent; or:

b) A GPA of at least 2.0 at the Certificate in Civil Registration and Population Dynamics of this University or its equivalent;

Duration of the Programme

The normal duration of the Diploma in Population Studies Programme shall be 4 to 6 semesters on a part-time basis or 8 to 12 semesters on a part-time basis.

Programme Structure

The curriculum and methods of assessment shall be as follows:

Level 100

Semester 1
Core courses (6 credits)

POP120 Introduction to Substantive Demography (3 credits)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (3 credits)

Selective courses (6 credits)

Technical Demography (3 credits)

General Education courses (3 credits)

Students planning to enter a degree programme after the completing of their Diploma should take STA101 as well.

Semester 2
Core courses (6 credits)

POP121 Introduction to Epidemiology and Technical Demography (3 credits)

Selective courses (6 credits)

Introduction to Population and Demographic Aspects of the HIV/AIDS Epidemic (3 credits)

General Education courses (3 credits)

Students entering the degree programme after the completing of their Diploma should take STA101 as well if the course was not taken during the diploma studies.

Level 200

Semester 3
Core courses (6 credits)

POP200 Methods of Demographic Analysis (3 credits)

Selective courses (6 credits)

Computing for Demographers (3 credits)

General Education courses (3 credits)

Students entering the degree programme after the completing of their Diploma should take STA102 as well if the course was not taken during the diploma studies.

Semester 4
Core courses (3 credits)

POP202 Introduction to Population and Developments (3 credits)

Selective courses (3 credits)

POP204 Reproductive Health and Family Planning (3 credits)

General Education courses (3 credits)

It is recommended that all Diploma students take POP202: Introduction to Population and Development.

Assessment

Each course shall be evaluated by a combination of continuous assessment and final examination or semester paper in the ratio of 2:3.

Award of Diploma

In order to be awarded the Diploma, a student must have completed a minimum of 60 credits and have a cumulative GPA of at least 2.0.

Bachelor of Arts Degree

Special Regulations for the Major/Major Programme in Population Studies Subject to the provisions of the Academic General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements

The normal requirement for entrance into the Bachelor’s Degree in Population Studies Programme shall be:

a) A minimum of 5 credits (one of which is Mathematics) in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent; Or:

b) A GPA of at least 2.0 in the Diploma in Population Studies of this University or its equivalent; Other qualifications for entrance to the Bachelor’s Degree in Population Studies may be accepted on their own merit as alternatives as shown by the General Regulation 00.052.

Duration of the Programme

The normal duration for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in Population Studies Programme shall be 8 to 10 semesters of full-time study.

Level 100

Semester 1
Core courses (9 credits)

POP120 Introduction to Substantive Demography (3 credits)

STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences (3 credits)

STA116 Introduction to Statistics (3 credits)

Semester 2
Core courses (6 credits)

POP121 Introduction to Epidemiology and Technical Demography (3 credits)

STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences (3 credits)

General Education courses (8 credits)

Level 200

Semester 3
Core courses (6 credits)

POP220 History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3 credits)

POP221 Theories of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3 credits)

Students entering the degree programme after the completing of their diploma should take STA101 as well if the course was not taken during the diploma studies.

Semester 4
Core courses (6 credits)

POP222 Demography of Botswana (3 credits)

POP223 Demographic Techniques (3 credits)

Selective courses (3 credits)

Select one from the following:

POP224 Demographic Aspects of the Labourforce (3 credits)

POP225 Demographic Aspects of the HIV/AIDS Epidemic (3 credits)

Selective courses (3 credits)

General Education courses (3 credits)

Students entering the degree programme after the completing of their diploma should take STA102 as well if the course was not taken during the diploma studies.
Level 300
Semester 5
Core course (6 credits)
POP300 Sources, Evaluation, Adjustment and Analysis of Demographic Data (3 credits)
POP302 Research Methods (3 credits)
POP304 Inter-relationships of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3 credits)
Optional course (3 credits)
POP301 Computer Applications in Population Analysis (3 credits)
Semester 6
Core courses (6 credits)
POP303 Migration, Urbanisation and Development (3 credits)
POP305 Population Policies and Programmes (3 credits)
General Education courses (4 credits)
Level 400
Semester 7
Core courses (9 credits)
POP400 Integrating Population Variables into Development Planning (3 credits)
POP401 Research Paper (3 credits)
POP402 Indirect Estimation Techniques (3 credits)
Optional courses (6 credits)
Select from the following:
POP403 Population, Development and Environment (3 credits)
POP404 Gender, Reproductive Health and Development (3 credits)
POP405 Demographic Dimensions of Poverty (3 credits)
POP406 Demographic Aspects of Ageing (3 credits)
POP407 Demographics (3 credits) Elective courses (2 credits) General Education courses (2 credits)
Assessment
Each course shall be evaluated by a combination of continuous assessment and final examination or semester paper in the ratio of 2:3.
Progression
In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must obtain a Cumulative GPA that is in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.
General Education Courses offered by the Department.
Semester 1 & 2
GEC 372 Migration and Globalisation (2)
GEC278 Population and Society (2)
DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY
Programmes
The Department offers two degree programmes at undergraduate level:

i) Bachelor of Arts in Social Sciences degree with Psychology as Combined Major (Major/Major) and
ii) Bachelor of Psychology degree, which is a semi-professional programme.

2.0 Bachelor of Arts in Social Sciences with Psychology as Combined Major

2.1 Aims of the Programme
The main aim of a Bachelor’s programme with Psychology as a Combined Major is to introduce students to the discipline of psychology and provide them with basic knowledge about major substantive areas of research in psychology.

2.2 Entrance Requirement
Subject to provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.2, a credit in Mathematics shall be required for applicants intending to enroll for Psychology as a Combined Major.

2.3 General Provisions.
2.3.1 Psychology as a Combined Major shall consist of an eight semester programme and with core and optional psychology courses.
2.3.2 Subject to special regulations of programmes in other departments, students may pursue a combined major in psychology and any other major of their choice.
2.3.3 Students who enroll for psychology as part of a combined degree (major/major) shall be expected to combine courses from psychology and the second subject in the ratio of 50:50 (major/major).
2.3.4 Students at any level of their university studies may be allowed to enroll in a psychology course at another level with the permission of the Head of Department.

2.4 Programme Structure
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
STA101* Mathematics for Social Sciences I (3)
STA116* Introduction to Statistics (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
*) or equivalent course
Semester 2
Core Courses
PSY102 Biological Basis of Human Behaviour (3)
Level 200
Combined Major students are expected to enroll in at least two psychology courses per Semester.

Semester 3
Core Courses
PSY201 Theories of Personality (3)
Optional Courses
PSY206 Developmental Psychology of Adulthood and Old Age (3)
PSY207 Psychology of Work and Labour Relations (3)
Level 300
For the Combined Major, all but one Level 300 psychology courses are optional in order to enable the student flexibility in his/her choice of courses. Level 300 Combined Major students are expected to enroll in at least two psychology courses per Semester.

Semester 5
Optional Courses
PSY302 Psychological Testing and Psychometrics (3)
PSY303 Cognition and Learning (3)
PSY304 Health Psychology (3)
3.2 Entrance Requirement
Subject to provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.2, a credit in Mathematics shall be required for applicants intending to enroll for a B.Psych. degree.

3.3 General Provisions
3.3.1 The B.Psych. degree shall consist of an eight-semester programme.
3.3.2 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree shall take a minimum of 87 credits in psychology courses (consisting of 54 credits in core and 15 credits in optional psychology courses and 18 credits in the internship), 6 credits from core Mathematics and Statistics courses, and 20 credits from General Education Courses. Required credits from another subject taken during Level 100 and Level 200 shall be determined by this other subject.
3.3.2.1 The core and optional psychology courses shall consist of 6 credits at Level 100, 12 credits at Level 200, 24 credits at Level 300 and 33 credits at Level 400.
3.3.2.2 B.Psych. students at any level of their university studies may be allowed to enroll in a psychology course at another level with the permission of the Head of Department.
3.3.2.3 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree shall enroll in a Bachelor’s programme of any faculty at Level 100 and Level 200 and study psychology together with another major subject.
3.3.2.4 Students shall normally be selected for the B.Psych. programme after completing Level 200 to start the programme at Level 300 (fifth semester).
3.3.2.5 Students who are not selected for the B.Psych. programme may continue with psychology as a Combined Major.
3.3.2.6 The B.Psych. programme shall consist of core and optional psychology courses that include lectures, seminars, laboratory work and supervised practical work and a research project based on empirical data.
3.3.2.7 The B.Psych. programme shall include a supervised internship undertaken over six months with a minimum of 960 hours practical experience.

3.4 Programme Structure
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
STA101* Mathematics for Social Sciences I (3)
STA116* Introduction to Statistics (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
PSY201 Theories of Personality (3)
PSY202 Social Psychology (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least one)
PSY203 Developmental Psychology of Childhood and Adolescence (3)
PSY204 History and Philosophy of Psychology (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
PSY301 Abnormal Psychology I (3)
PSY302 Psychological Testing and Psychometrics (3)
PSY303 Cognition and Learning (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least one)
PSY304 Health Psychology (3)
PSY305 Organisational and Personnel Psychology (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
PSY401* Research Methods in Psychology (3)
PSY402 Social Psychology (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least one)
PSY403 Human Factors in the Work Environment (3)

Level 500
Semester 9
Core Courses
PSY501 Advanced Social Psychology (3)
PSY502 Advanced Personality Psychology (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least one)
PSY503 Advanced Psychopathology (3)

Level 600
Semester 11
Core Courses
PSY601 Research Methods in Psychology (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least one)
PSY602 Advanced Methodology in Psychological Research (3)

Level 700
Semester 13
Core Courses
PSY701 Psychological Assessment I (3)
PSY702 Abnormal Psychology II (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least one)
PSY703 Advanced Personality Psychology (3)
Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
PSY401 Research Project (3)
PSY402 Abnormal Psychology II (3)
PSY403 Counselling II (3)

Optional courses
(Students choose at least two courses)
PSY404* Psychotherapy (3)
PSY405** Training and Human Resource Development (3)
PSY406 Psychological Challenges of HIV/AIDS (3)
PSY407 Special Topics in Psychology (3)

* This course is recommended to students who wish to pursue a career in the field of clinical psychology.
** This course is recommended to students who wish to pursue a career in the field of industrial psychology.

Semester 8
Core Course
PSY408 Internship* (18 credits)

The internship shall start with the first week of Semester VIII and continue for at least eight weeks in the Winter vacation.

3.5 Assessment
3.5.1 Assessment of psychology courses shall be based on any one or combinations of the following: tests, assignments, written examinations, oral examinations, practical examinations as approved by the Department.
3.5.2 Assessment of the performance on the internship shall consist of an evaluation of the intern according to criteria set by the Department.
3.5.2.1 A student who fails the internship shall be permitted to repeat the internship only once.
3.5.2.2 A student who, for a good reason, fails to complete the internship may be permitted to continue his/her psychology studies as a combined major.

3.6 Special Departmental Regulation
Subject to provisions of the General Examination Regulations, admission to an examination of a course that contains essential practical components (e.g., PSY305, PSY306, PSY403, PSY404 and PSY405) shall be subject to or given if a student has achieved a class attendance of at least 80% and a continuous assessment mark of at least 50%. Students who fail to achieve the required minimum class attendance or continuous assessment mark in courses with an essential practical component may be permitted to repeat the course only once.

3.7 Progression from Level to Level
3.7.1 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree must achieve an average of at least 60% (Grade Point 3.0) in all core psychology courses at Level 100.
3.7.2 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree must achieve an average of at least 60% (Grade Point 3.0) in all core psychology courses at Level 200.
3.7.3 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree may be permitted to register for the programme only at Level 300 but not before.
3.7.3.1 The intake into the B.Psych. programme at Level 300 shall be based on academic merit and restricted to a specified number of students per annum. The number of students selected into the B.Psych. programme shall be determined by the Department from time to time.
3.7.3.2 The criteria for selection into the B.Psych. programme shall take into consideration academic performance, performance in a selection interview and the number of spaces available for practical training.
3.7.3.3 A student who does not meet the requirements for the B.Psych. programme may be permitted to continue his/her studies with psychology as a combined major.

3.8 Award of the Degree
In order to be awarded the B.Psych. degree, a student must meet the requirements of the Academic General Regulations, Faculty and Departmental Special Regulations and obtain a minimum of Grade Point of 3.0 (60%) in the internship.

DEPARTMENT OF SOCIAL WORK

Diploma in Social Work (DSW) Programme

Entry Requirements
Subject to the General Regulations 200 and the Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences, the following Special Regulations of the Department of Social Work shall apply:
The normal minimum requirement is a BGCSE with credit in English or a Certificate in Social Work from this University or an equivalent qualification. Students shall be subject to the guidelines and regulations of the Department’s Fieldwork Manual.

DSW Programme Structure and Content
The Diploma in Social Work (DSW) programme has a total of 72 to 74 credits.

Level 100
Semester 1
DSW100 Introduction to Social Work and its Literature (3)
DSW101 Social Work with Communities and Groups (3)
DSW102 Social Services in Botswana (2)
DSW103 Social Work with Youth (3)
DSW104 Social Work in Health Services (3)
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills 1 (2)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Semester 2
SWF101 Orientation to Fieldwork (1)
DSW105 Social Work with Families and Children (3)
DSW106 Psychology for Social Work (3)
DSW107 Social Work and Disabilities (3)
DSW108 Interpersonal Communication (3)
STA111 Elementary Statistics (2)
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills 2 (2)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (3)

Level 200
Semester 1
SWF200 Fieldwork (Block Placement) (3)
SWF201 Fieldwork and Professional Development (3)
DSW200 Introduction to Counselling in Social Work (3)
DSW201 Introduction to Social Policy (2)
DSW202 Selected Issues in Social Work (2)
DSW205  General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits)

NB: SWF200 is a 12-week block placement in social welfare agencies that takes place during the long vacation between Levels 1 and 2.

Semester 2
DSW203  AIDS and Home Based Care (3)
DSW204  Social Work and Social Development (3)
DSW206  Management and Supervision in the Human Services (3)
DSW207  Culture, Change and Social Work in Botswana (3)
SOC122  The Social Structure of Society (3)

NB: A student can choose to take a GEC or an Elective course.
GEC/Elective

Assessment
Assessment shall be as per General Academic Regulations 00.8. Assessment criteria shall also be stated in each course outline.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from one semester to the next shall be as per General Academic Regulations 00.9.

Award of the Diploma
The award of the Diploma shall be as per General Regulations 00.852.

Diploma in Youth in Development Work (DYD)

Entry Requirements
The normal minimum requirement is a BGCSE, six credits with Credit in English or a Certificate in Adult Education or Social Work from this University or an equivalent qualification in related areas. [Preference will be given to students who hold such qualifications]. Applicants with Certificate in Adult Education or Social Work from this University or an equivalent qualification in related areas may be exempted from certain courses.

Mode of Delivery
As is the case with current UB distance education programmes, teaching will be done primarily through printed course modules. Other possible future additions are audio and video tapes, web-based instruction, e-mail interactions, etc. Additional face-to-face tutorial support will be provided in designated centres, but with the University of Botswana serving as the initial tutorial centre.

Programme Structure and Content Structure
The programme will last for a minimum of four semesters and a maximum of eight semesters. It is comprised of core courses and the University’s General Education Courses. Students are expected to cover a total of 65 credits.

Content
Level 100
Semester 1
DYD 101 (3)
DYD 102 (3)
DYD 103 (3)

Level 100
Semester 2
DYD104 (3) GEC/Gender
DYD 107 (3)
CSS 112 (2)
GEC 122 (2)
DSW 106 (3)
16 Credits

Level 200
Semester 1
DYD 208 (3)
DYD 209 (3)
DYD 210 (3)
DYD 211 (3)
DYD 212 (3)
DYD 213 (3)
18 credits

Level 200
Semester 2
DYD 214 (3)
DYD 215 (3)
DYD 216 (4)
BNS101(2) HIV/AIDS
DSW 200 (3)
15 credits(TOTAL- 65)

Course Listings
Level 100
Semester 1
DYD101  Commonwealth Values in Youth in Development Work
DYD102  Young People and Society
DYD103  Principles and Practice of Youth in Development Work
GEC111  Communication and Study Skills 1
GEC121  Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 1
DYD106  Learning Processes

Semester 2
DYD104  Working with People in their Communities
DYD 105  Gender and Development
DYD 107  Management Skills
GEC 112  Communication and Study Skills 2
GEC 122  Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 2
DSW 106  Psychology for Social Work

Level 200
Semester 1
DYD 208  Project Planning, Implementation, Monitoring and Evaluation
DYD 209  Policy, Planning and Implementation
DYD 210  Conflict Resolution and Management Skills
DYD 211  Promoting Enterprise and Economic Development
DYD 212  Youth and Health
DYD 213  Sustainable Development and Environmental Issues

Semester 2
DYD 214  Proposal Development
DYD 215  Statistics for Development Workers
BNS 101  HIV/AIDS Education, Prevention and Control
DYD 216  Youth in Especially Difficult Circumstances
DSW 200  Introduction to Counselling in Social Work

Assessment
Students will be assessed through written assignments, supervised tests, projects, and, at the end of each semester, examinations. The assignments to be done will be provided in the Students’ Information and Assignment Booklet. The ratio between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 1:1, where the CA may constitute 50% [which may include Assignments, Supervised Tests, and Projects] and Examination, 50%.

Award of a Diploma
Subject to General regulation 00.85, to be awarded a Diploma in Youth in Development Work, a student must successfully complete a minimum of 65 credits.
Bachelor of Social Work Programme

Entry Requirements
Subject to the General Regulations 200 and the Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences, the following Special Regulations of the Department of Social Work shall apply:

1. The normal minimum requirement for entry into the Bachelor of Social Work (BSW) Programme is a credit in Mathematics.

2. Students shall be subject to the guidelines and regulations of the Department’s Fieldwork Manual.

3. Applicants with a Diploma in Social Work from this University or an equivalent qualification with a minimum grade of a credit shall be eligible for entry at Level 2 of the first semester of the second year of the BSW Programme.

BSW Programme Structure and Content
The BSW programme has a total of 129-137 credits.

Level 100
Semester 1
BSW100 Reading and Writing in Social Work (2)
BSW101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
LAW151 Social Work and Law (3)
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)
GEC111 Communication Skills II (2)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)

Semester 2
BSW102 Oral Communication (3)
BSW103 Introduction to Social Welfare (3)
BSW104 Introduction to Social Work (3)
SWF102 Helping in the Community–Fieldwork Experience (3)
GEC112 Communication Skills II (2)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (3)

Level 200
Semester 1 (Regular)
BSW200 Introduction to Community Work (3)
BSW201 Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals (3)
STA111 Elementary Statistics (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
LAW151 Social Work and Law (4)
General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits)

Semester 1 (Direct Entry)
BSW201 Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals (3)
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
LAW151 Social Work and Law (4)
STA111 Elementary Statistics (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
*GEC (2-3 credits)
*GEC (2-3 credits)
NB: Direct entry students are exempted from BSW200.

Semester 2
SWF101 Orientation to Fieldwork (1)
BSW202 Social Policy (3)
BSW203 Social Work and Mental Health (3)
BSW204 Theory and Social Work Practice (3)
BSW205 Introduction to Group Work (3)
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)

Level 300
Semester 1
SWF300 Fieldwork I (Block Placement) (3)
SWF301 Reflective Practice on Fieldwork (2)
BSW301 Administration and Change in the Social Services (3)
BSW302 Counselling (3)
BSW303 Social Work Practice with AIDS (3)
*General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3)

Semester 2
SWF302 Fieldwork Practice, Culture and Social Work (2)
BSW305 Community with Practice (3)
BSW306 Research in Social Work (3)
BSW307 Social Service Planning (3)
*General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits)

Level 400
Semester 1
SWF400 Fieldwork II (Block Placement) (3)
SWF402 Linking Theory and Fieldwork (2)
BSW401 Supervision in Social Work (3)

Students shall take one of the following
BSW402 Seminar (3)
BSW403 Seminar (3)
BSW404 Seminar (3)
BSW405 Seminar (3) or:
BSW406 Research Project I (3)
General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits each)

*GEC (2-3 credits)

Semester 2
SWF401 Integrative Fieldwork Practice (3)
Students shall take two of the following
BSW407 Seminar (3)
BSW408 Seminar (3)
BSW409 Seminar (3)
BSW410 Seminar (3)
or:
BSW415 Research Project II (3, 1 seminar)
General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits each)

*GEC (2-3 credits)
*N: A student can choose to take a GEC or an Elective course.

NB: Students with a minimum of a B average can choose BSW406 and BSW415 in place of one seminar in Semester 1 and one seminar in Semester 2.
NB: SWF300 and SWF400 are 9-week fieldwork placements in social welfare agencies that take place during the long vacation between Levels 2 and 3 and Levels 3 and 4 respectively.

Assessment
Assessment shall be as per General Academic Regulations 00.8. Assessment criteria shall also be stated in each course outline.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from one semester to the next shall be as per General Academic Regulations 00.9.

Award of the Degree
The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.852.

DEPARTMENT OF SOCIOLOGY

Diploma Programme in Criminal Justice Studies

Entry Requirements
The normal Entry Requirements shall be as stipulated in General 10.2

Duration
The normal duration for the Diploma in Criminal Justice Studies programme shall be four (4) semesters on a full-time basis.

Programme Structure
The Diploma in Criminal Justice Studies shall...
consist of levels 100 and 200 core and optional courses, General Education Courses (GECs) and electives in other subject areas offered at comparable levels. A student wishing to graduate with the Diploma in Criminal Justice Studies shall take and pass the following courses:

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)
LAW101 Introduction to the Legal System (3)

Optional Courses
SOC130 Crime and Punishment in Modern Society
LAW102 Criminal Law in Botswana
Electives (3) GEC (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC224 Concepts and Social Research (3)
STA111 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
SOC234 Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)
SOC247 Gender and the Criminal Justice Process (3)
LAW211 Local Government Law in Botswana (3)
Electives (3) GEC (3)

Requirements for the Single Major Degree in Sociology
Only students with a cumulative GPA of at least 3.5 (B-) for all Sociology courses taken during the first and second years of their studies will be invited to pursue a single major degree in Sociology. A student pursuing a single major degree in Sociology must take and pass the following Sociology courses:

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
SOC224 Concepts and Social Research (3)
SOC247 Gender and the Criminal Justice Process (3)
LAW211 Local Government Law in Botswana (3)
Electives (3) GEC (3)

Assessment
Performance in each course shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment scores (CAS) and final examination marks; each contributing 50 percent to the final grade awarded. The final examination in every course will normally be not less than two hours. Seminars, internships and research projects will be assessed through assignments, term papers and (research) reports.

Progression from One Semester to another Semester
Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulation 00.9

Award of Diploma
The award of the Diploma shall be as per General Regulation 00.852

Entrance Requirement
The normal Entrance Requirements shall be as stipulated in General 20.2

Duration of Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in Sociology shall be eight (8) semesters on a full-time basis. Students who are granted exemptions under the Departmental regulations may be able to complete the programme in a shorter period of time.

Programme Structure
The Department offers Sociology as a subject in the following Programmes:

1. Single Major Programme leading to the award of Bachelor of Arts Degree (Sociology)
2. Combined Major/Major Programme leading to the award of Bachelor of Arts Degree
3. Combined Major/Minor (with Sociology as Minor) Programme leading to the award of Bachelor of Arts Degree.
### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- SOC226: Concepts and Principles of Social Research (3)

**Optional Courses**
Any one of the following courses:
- SOC225: Sociology of Policing (3)
- SOC233: Families and Households (3)
- SOC241: Social Structure of S. African Societies (3)
- SOC243: Crime and Social Justice (3)
- SOC246: Communities and Crime (3)
- STA241: Statistical Analysis (3)

**Electives (3)**
- GEC (5)

### Level 300
**Semester 1**
**Core Courses**
- SOC322: Classical Sociological Theories (3)
- SOC339: Quantitative Research Methods (3)

**Optional Courses**
Any two of the following courses:
- SOC328: Comparative Social Institutions (3)
- SOC329: Urban Sociology (3)
- SOC331: Industry and Society (3)
- SOC334: Sociology of Development (3)
- SOC342: Crime and Victimization (3)

**Electives (3)**
- GEC (3)

### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- SOC421: Contemporary Sociological Theories (3)
- SOC422: Research Project (6)
- SOC442: Data Analysis and Report Writing (3)

**Optional Courses**
Any one of the following courses:
- SOC438: The Medical Prof and Allied Occupations (3)
- SOC439: Special Topics in Sociology (3)
- SOC443: Sentencing Theory and Practice (3)
- SOC444: Contemporary Research in Criminology (3)

**Electives (3)**

#### Requirements for a Combined Major/Major Degree
A student intending to pursue a double major degree with Sociology as a major subject must take and pass the following Sociology courses:

### Level 100
**Semester 1**
**Core Courses**
- SOC121: Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)
- STA111: Elementary Statistics (3); or Equivalent course(s) approved by the Department

**Optional Courses**
Any four of the following courses:
- SOC241: Social Structure of S. African Societies (3)
- SOC243: Crime and Social Justice (3)
- SOC246: Communities and Crime (3)
- STA241: Statistical Analysis (3)

**Electives (3)**
- GEC (4)

### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- SOC122: The Social Structure of Society (3)
- SOC123: Introduction to Social and Cultural Anthropology (3)
- SOC127: Introduction to Penology (3)
- SOC133: The History of Punishment in Botswana (3)

**Optional Courses**
Any one of the following courses:
- SOC225: Sociology of Policing (3)
- SOC233: Families and Households (3)
- SOC241: Social Structure of S. African Societies (3)
- SOC243: Crime and Social Justice (3)
- SOC246: Communities and Crime (3)
- STA241: Statistical Analysis (3)

**Electives (3)**
- GEC (4)

### Level 200
**Semester 1**
**Core Courses**
- SOC224: Introduction to Sociological Theory (3)

**Optional Courses**
Any one of the following courses:
- SOC234: Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)
- SOC236: Social Inequality (3)
- SOC242: Concepts of Health and Illness (3)
- SOC245: Gender and the Criminal Justice System (3)

**Electives (3)**
- GEC (4)

### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- SOC226: Concepts and Principles of Social Research (3)

**Optional Courses**
Any one of the following courses:
- SOC225: Sociology of Policing (3)
- SOC233: Families and Households (3)
- SOC241: Social Structure of S. African Societies (3)
- SOC243: Crime and Social Justice (3)
- SOC246: Communities and Crime (3)
- STA241: Statistical Analysis (3)

**Electives (3)**
- GEC (5)

### Level 300
**Semester 1**
**Core Courses**
- SOC322: Classical Sociological Theories (3)
- SOC339: Quantitative Research Methods (3)

**Optional Courses**
Any two of the following courses:
- SOC328: Comparative Social Institutions (3)
- SOC329: Urban Sociology (3)
- SOC331: Industry and Society (3)
- SOC334: Sociology of Development (3)
- SOC342: Crime and Victimization (3)

**Electives (3)**
- GEC (3)

### Semester 2
**Core Courses**
- SOC341: Qualitative Research Methods (3)
- SOC342: Data Analysis and Report Writing (3)

**Optional Courses**
Any one of the following courses:
- SOC324: Sociology of Gender (3)
- SOC326: Race and Ethnicity (3)
- SOC327: Political Sociology (3)
- SOC332: Traditional and Alt Medical Systems (3)
- SOC335: Rural Sociology (3)
- SOC343: Advanced Criminological Theories (3)

**Electives (3)**

### Level 400
**Semester 1**
**Core Courses**
- SOC424: African Social Thought (3)
- SOC436: Micro Sociological Theories (3)
- SOC441: Research Proposal (3)

**Optional Courses**
Any one of the following courses:
- SOC425: Sociology of Policing (3)
- SOC426: Communities and Crime (3)
- STA241: Statistical Analysis (3)

**Electives (3)**
- GEC (4)
Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC341 Qualitative Research Methods (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
SOC324 Sociology of Gender (3)
SOC326 Race and Ethnicity (3)
SOC327 Political Sociology (3)
SOC332 Traditional and Alt Medical Systems (3)
SOC335 Rural Sociology (3)
SOC343 Advanced Criminological Theories (3)

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC441 Research Proposal (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
SOC424 African Social Thought (3)
SOC428 Family and Kinship (3)
SOC431 Sociology of Law (3)
SOC432 Work and Occupations (3)
SOC434 Social Movements (3)
SOC436 Micro Sociological Theories (3)
SOC439 Special Topics in Sociology (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC221 Contemporary Sociological Theories (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC224 Introduction to Sociological Theory (3)
SOC225 Sociology of Policing (3)
SOC233 Families and Households (3)
SOC241 Social Structure of S. African Societies (3)
SOC243 Crime and Social Justice (3)
SOC246 Communities and Crime (3)

STA211 Elementary Statistics (3); or Equivalent course(s) approved by the Department

STA241 Statistical Analysis (3)
Electives (3)
GEC (5)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC322 Classical Sociological Theories (3)
SOC339 Quantitative Research Methods (3)

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC441 Research Proposal (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC421 Contemporary Sociological Theories (3)
SOC442 Data Analysis and Report Writing (3)

Assessment
Performance shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment scores (CAS) and final examination marks; each contributing 50 percent to the final grade awarded. Seminars, internships and research projects will be assessed through assignments, term papers and research reports.

Progression from one Semester to another Semester
Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulation 00.9

Award of Degree
The award of the degree shall be as per General Regulation 00.852

DEPARTMENT OF STATISTICS
Diploma in Statistics Programme

Special Regulations for the Diploma in Statistics Programme
Subject to the General Academic Regulations 000 and 100, the following Special Departmental Regulations shall apply:

1.2 Direct Entry into the Diploma Programme
Students possessing an Ordinary Level pass with grade C or better in Mathematics, or an additional Mathematics paper are eligible for direct entry admission to the Diploma Programme; those who have a credit of C or better in the extended concepts.
The core Programme comprises 10 courses in Statistics, 4 courses in Mathematics and 2 courses in Economics, totaling 49 credits. In addition, there are 2 optional/elective courses with 6 credits and 5 General Education Courses with 10 credits. Students can take electives from other related disciplines. The Statistics component of the programme is listed below:

### 1.4 Programme Structure

#### 1.5 Core Courses

**Level 100**

- **STA113** Basic Statistics (3, Sem 1)
- **MAT111** Introductory Concepts of Mathematics I (4, Sem 1)
- **ECO111** Basic Microeconomics (3, Sem 1)
- **STA121** Elements of probability (2, Sem 2)
- **STA214** Statistical Data Analysis (3, Sem 2)
- **MAT112** Introductory Concepts of mathematics II (4, Sem 2)
- **ECO112** Basic Macroeconomics (3, Sem 2)

#### Elective Courses

- Semester 1: A 200 Level course from Populations Studies/Environmental Science or any other related discipline (3, Sem 1)
- Semester 2: A 200 Level course from Populations Studies/Environmental Science or any other related discipline (3, Sem 2)

#### General Education Courses

**Semester 1**

1. **GEC 111** Comm. & Study Skills I (2)
2. **GEC 121** Computing & Info. Skills I (2)

**Semester 2**

3. **GEC 112** Comm. & Study Skills II (2)
4. **GEC 122** Computing & Inf. Skills II (2)

**Level 200**

**Semester 2**

- **STA221** Statistical Distributions I (3)
- **STA227** Statistical Computing (3)
- **MAT221** Calculus I (3)
- **STA354** Survey Research Methods (3)
- **STA222** Probability I (3)
- **STA211** Statistical Methods (3)
- **STA351** Analysis and Design of Experiments (3)
- **STA391** Field Survey (3)
- **MAT222** Calculus II (3)

Optional Courses (2 courses, 6 credits)

**Semester 1**

- **MAT212** Introduction to Algebra (3)
- **Level 200** Economics Course (3)
- **Level 200** Population or Environmental Science Course (3, Sem 2)

### General Education Courses

One GEC course at 200 level (2 credits).

### Assessment

Each course shall be assessed through continuous assessment and a final examination at the end of the semester as per Departmental Regulations. The final written examination normally shall be of 2 hour duration. The weighting for continuous assessment to examination shall be in the ratio of 1:2, unless otherwise specified.

### Award of Diploma

A student shall be eligible for the award of the Diploma in Statistics after completing a minimum of 65 credits for courses specified in section 7.3.

### Classification of the Diploma

The award of the Diploma shall be classified as Distinction, Merit, Credit or Pass, according to the GPA as per General Regulation 10.4.

### Undergraduate Programmes

The Department offers Statistics as a subject in the combined Bachelor of Arts Degree in Social Sciences and the Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree for both the Social Sciences and Science students. In addition Statistics is offered as a subject for the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree in Science. For the Diploma Programme in Statistics see Faculty Regulation 180.

### Special Regulations for the Undergraduate Degree Programmes

Special regulation for the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree in Statistics Subject to the General Academic Regulations 00.00 and 20.00 the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

**Entrance Requirements**

1. Entrance requirements are subject to the Faculty General Regulations.
2. Students who have passed the Diploma in Statistics Examination of this University or who possess the equivalent qualification can be admitted to Semester 5 of the Programme.

### Duration of the Programme

The normal duration for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in Statistics Programme shall be 8 semesters on a full-time basis. Students, who were granted exemption under the Departmental Regulations, may be able to complete the Programme in a shorter period of time.

### Programme Structure

1. At Levels 100 and 200, the Statistics part of the Programme requires 10 core courses in Statistics totaling 29 credits, normally taken during the first 4 semesters. In addition courses from the other major as well as electives and General Education Courses are required as per Faculty Regulations. Core courses are listed in Sections 1.4.1, 1.4.2 and 1.4.3.
2. At Levels 300 and 400, the Statistics part of the Programme consists of 8 core courses in Statistics totaling 24 credits normally taken in Semester 5 and upwards. In addition, students are required to take 12 credits of optional courses and 4 credits of General Education Courses. Core and optional courses are given in Sections 1.4.1, 1.4.2, and 1.4.3.

### Assessment

Normally the assessment for any course is based on the continuous assessment and the final examination in the ratio of 1:2, unless otherwise specified.

### Award of Bachelor of Arts Degree

A student who has completed the entire core, optional, elective and General Education Courses as listed above shall be eligible for the award of the Bachelor of Arts Combined Degree in Statistics.

### Bachelor of Science in Statistics Degree

The Single Major Bachelor of Science Programme can be taken by students from the Faculty of Science as well as students from the Faculty of Social Sciences or any other faculty, provided they satisfy the requirements outlined below.

### Special Regulations for the Single Major Bachelor of Science in Statistics Degree

Subject to General Regulation 20.00 and the relevant Faculty of Science Special Regulations, the following Department of Statistics Special
Departmental Special Regulations.

in the ratio 1:2, unless otherwise specified in the

Assessment

Normally assessment of any course is based on

Departmental Special Regulation 4.6.1.3 may be able to

Full-time. Students who join under Depart

Admission students are expected to take elective

Programme Structure

1 At Levels 100 and 200, the Programme requires

Introduction to Statistics (4, Sem 2)

Mathematics II (4, Sem 2)

Mathematics for Social Sciences II (3)

Mathematics for Social Sciences I (3)

Elements of Probability (2)

One Course on the advice of HoD (3)

At Level 100 a student intending to major in

Semester 1

Semester 2

Semester 2

2 Classification of Degree

The award shall be classified according to the GPA, as per General Regulation 20.4.

Level 100

Undergraduate Degree Programmes

At Level 100 a student majoring in the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree in Statistics shall take:

STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

STA102 Mathematics for Social Sciences II (3)

STA121 Elements of Probability (2)

Elective Courses

Semester 2

Semester 1

MAT111 Introductory Concepts of Mathematics I (4)

Semester 2

MAT112 Introductory Concepts of Mathematics II (4, Sem 2)

STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

STA122 Introductory Concepts of Probability (4, Sem 2)
General Education Courses
Two GEC courses as required for the Faculty (2+2 credits) in semester one.
Two GEC courses as required by the Faculty (2+2 credits) in semester two.

Level 200
At Level 200 a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree in Social Sciences shall take:

Semester 1
STA201 Elementary Calculus (3)
STA221 Statistical Distributions I (3)

Semester 2
STA102 Matrix Algebra (2)
STA222 Probability I (3)
STA211 Statistical Methods (3)
STA272 Statistical Computing (3, Sem 1 & 2)
General Education Courses
A GEC course (2 credit)

At Level 200 a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

Semester 1
STA221 Statistical Distributions I (3)
MAT212 Introduction to Algebra (3)

Semester 2
STA222 Probability I (3)
STA211 Statistical Methods (3)

Optional Courses
One 200 level course from Math/Comp.Sc/Econ/Pop.Studies/Env.Science (3, Sem 3)
One 200 level course from Math/Comp.Sc/Econ/Pop.Studies/Env.Science (3, Sem 4)

At Level 200 a student majoring in Statistics for the Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

Semester 1
MAT221 Calculus I (3)
STA221 Statistical Distributions I (3)

Semester 2
MAT222 Calculus II (3)
STA211 Statistical Methods (3)
STA222 Probability I (3)
STA272 Statistical Computing (3, Sem 1 & 2)

Optional Course
1. Two 200 level courses from Math/Comp.Sc/Econ/Pop.Studies/Env.Science (3+3 credit)
2. A 200 level course from Math/Comp.Sc/Econ/Pop.Studies/Env.Science (3 credit)

Electives
One 200 level course (2or 3)
General Education Courses
GEC course (2 credit)

Levels 300
At Level 300, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree shall take:

Semester 2
Core Courses
STA321 Statistical Distributions II (3)
STA354 Survey Research Methods (3)
STA352 Regression and Linear Models (3)

Optional Courses
STA322 Probability II (3)
STA353 Experimental Design I (3)

At Level 300, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

Semester 1
Core Courses
STA301 Advanced Calculus (3)
STA361 Time Series Analysis (3)
STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3)

Semester 2
STA302 Linear Algebra for Statistics (3)
STA382 Operations Research I (3)
STA384 Economic Statistics (3)
STA391 Field Survey (3)
Optional Courses (3 courses, 9 credits)

At Level 300, a student majoring in Statistics for the Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

Semester 1
Core Courses
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3)
STA321 Statistical Distributions II (3)
STA352 Regression and Linear Models (3)

Optional Courses
STA301 Advanced Calculus (3)
STA361 Time Series Analysis (3)
STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3)

Semester 2
STA302 Linear Algebra for Statistics (3)
STA382 Operations Research I (3)
STA383 Econometric Methods (3)
STA384 Economic Statistics (3)

Level 400
At Level 400, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree shall take:

Semester 1
Core Courses
STA321 Statistical Distributions II (3)
STA352 Regression and Linear Models (3)
STA354 Survey Research Methods (3)

Optional Courses
One 200 level course (2or 3)

Semester 2
STA322 Probability II (3)
STA353 Experimental Design I (3)

Optional Courses
One 200 level course (2or 3)

At Level 400, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree shall take:

Semester 1
Core Courses
STA431 Theory of Estimation (3, Sem 1)
STA453 Sampling Theory and Applications (3, Sem 1)

Optional Courses
STA432 Theory of Hypothesis Testing (3, Sem 2)

Optional Courses
One 200 level course (2or 3)

Semester 2
STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
STA461 Elements of Stochastic Process (3)
STA481 Operations Research II (3)
STA483 Health Statistics (3)
STA490 Research Project (6, Sem 1 and 2)
At Level 400, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

**Semester 1**

**Core Courses**
- STA433 Introduction to Bayesian Inference (3)
- STA451 Theory of Estimation (3)
- STA453 Sampling Theory and Applications (3)

**Optional Courses**
- STA461 Elements of Stochastic Process (3)
- STA462 Applied Stochastic Process (3)
- STA463 Elements of Stochastic Process (3)
- STA481 Probability (2)
- STA482 Multivariate Statistics (3)
- STA483 Health Statistics (3)

**Programme Structure**
- STA621 Probability (2)
- STA631 Statistical Inference I (2)
- STA641 Statistical Analysis I (3)

**Semester 2**

**Core Courses**
- STA451 Experimental Design II (3)
- STA452 Introduction to Generalized Linear Model (3)
- STA462 Applied Stochastic Process (3)
- STA463 Elements of Stochastic Process (3)
- STA481 Probability (2)
- STA482 Multivariate Statistics (3)
- STA483 Health Statistics (3)

**Optional Courses**
- STA461 Elements of Stochastic Process (3)
- STA462 Applied Stochastic Process (3)
- STA464 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)

**Entrance Requirements**
- The normal entrance requirement is a Bachelor’s Degree with at least 40 percent of the courses in Statistics, from any recognized Univeristy. Other applicants may be considered in exceptional cases on the recommendation of the Department; however they may be required to take some undergraduate courses as specified by the Department.

**Duration of the Programme**
- The normal duration of the Programme on a full-time basis is 2 semesters. However a maximum of 6 semesters is allowed for part-time students to complete the Programme.
The last date of submission of the Report shall be the last day of lectures of the second semester. In exceptional cases, it may be extended by not more than 2 months, if a request is made through the Head of the Department, supported by the supervisor, at least 2 weeks before the due date. The length of the report shall be around 60 typed, A4 pages (1.5 line spacing). The report will be internally evaluated and will further be externalized. The final assessment grade for the course will be based on the 2 presentations (20 percent) and the report (80 percent).

Examinations and Assessment
The written examination for all courses, unless otherwise specified in the course template, will normally be of 3 hours’ duration. The continuous assessment and the examination shall be weighted in the ratio of 1:1. The cumulative GPA shall be computed in accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.86.

Course Descriptions

POLITICAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE STUDIES

PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
The aim of this introductory foundation course is to promote the student’s understanding of Public Administration and the processes and institutions through which it formulates and implements public policy. The topics that it covers include definition of Public Administration, Institutions of the state decision-making, administration leadership and responsibility, motivation and communication.

PAD102 Institutions and Processes of Public Administration (3)
The aim of this course is to enable students to have an understanding of essentials of public administration institutions and processes. It covers topics such as the ecology of public administration, decentralization and centralization, local government and intergovernmental relations, public enterprises and public financial administration and improvement of the performance of public administration.

PAD201 Organisation Theories (3)
The aim of this course is to introduce students to organization theories as a basis for understanding organisations and their management. Emphasis shall be on critical examination of major ideas and significant developments that have taken place over the years. The course will cover essentials of significant organisation theories, including early management thought, organisations as rational instrumental entities as associations, and as systems.

PAD202 Public Administration in Botswana (3)
This course is meant to serve as a foundation for introducing to the students some key aspects of the organisation and operation of public administration machinery in Botswana. The course covers organization and functioning of central government, local government and public enterprises. It seeks to explain the nature and characteristics of Botswana’s public policies, organisation of development planning and administration of public finances.

PAD302 Human Resource Management (3)
The aim of this course is to introduce students to the theory and concepts of managing human resources. A practical approach will be emphasized. This course will cover topics such as job design and analysis, human resource planning, recruitment, training, motivation, performance appraisal, leadership, discipline and labour-management relations.

PAD303 Local Government Management (3)
The aim of this course is to provide students with an understanding of the nature and functioning of local government management. It attempts to expose and familiarize students with the various complexities of local government management. At the end of the course students should be able to critically analyse and evaluate concepts and theories associated with local government, understand more deeply the complexities involved in local government and analyse and apply appropriate strategies for effective operation of local government.

PAD304 Public Enterprise Management (3)
The aim of this course is to promote student’s understanding of organization and management of public enterprise with particular reference to developing countries. It also seeks to explore viable strategies for remedying the problems faced by public enterprises. Topical amongst the remedies is the issue of privatization, its theory and implications.

PAD306 Public Policy Analysis (4)
This course introduces the field of policy studies, starting with its rationale, scope, significance,
and relationships with other disciplines. It also covers conceptual approaches to critical assessment of the causes and consequences of public policies. Policy processes such as agenda setting, formulation, implementation, monitoring and evaluation, and the interactions of the actors involved in them are also discussed. Application of analytical tools and models in real world are discussed through case studies.

PAD307 Human Resource Development and Management (3)
The main objective of the course is to enable students to understand and appreciate the importance of Human Resource and its development in the “art of getting things alone” – frequently referred to as management in any organisation and public sector in particular. The course will cover theory, practice and issues of human resource planning and development and effective deployment – emphasizing the need for the right combination of operational skills and managerial capabilities in both quality and quantity in order to safeguard continuity and improve performance.

PAD401 Development Administration (4)
The course discusses the theoretical and practical aspects of state promotion of national development. It seeks to provide an understanding of the context and context of state-directed development, by focusing on national development policy processes, planning, and implementation. The course then examines selected critical issues, such as the role and effects of foreign aid, administrative reforms, and globalization, on the management of national development. Lastly, it considers the future of development administration in the context of changing relationships of the state, the private sector, and society. This course will also include seminar on the course topics.

PAD402 Government Budgeting (3)
The course exposes students to basic concepts in Government Budgeting with a focus on political and administrative aspects. The course is divided into three main segments the first part considers the justifiable aspects of state intervention. The second part focuses on Government budgets (evolution of budgeting and expenditure control) and the last covers budgetary reforms.

PAD403 Internship in Public Administration (3)
To enable the students majoring in Public Administration to gain insight into the operation of public administration machinery at central or local government levels by supplementing theory with some work experience. This involves 8 weeks attachment of students to government Organisations during the long vacation at the end of their 3rd year.

PAD404 Contemporary Issues in Public Administration (3)
This course will begin with a discussion of critical issues in the intellectual development of Public Administration as a discipline and examine the contemporary issues such as changing role of the state; political, social and economic environment of Public Administration in Africa; challenges of good governance; new Public Management; and impact of Globalization.

PAD405 Seminar in Public Policy (3)
This course is aimed at examining, through case studies, the causes, and consequences of government actions on society. It gives the student a chance to critically analyse any contemporary policy, project, or programme of choice.

PAD406 Ethics and Public Management (3)
This course discusses the ideals of public management ethics; the nature, causes and consequences of declining standards; effectiveness of mechanisms for checking corruption, mal-administration and public accountability; and measures for enhancing the standards of ethics, accountability and responsible conduct in public management.

PAD407 Comparative Public Administration (3)
This course is meant to contribute to the understanding of institutions and processes of Public Administration through a comparative perspective that looks at the features of Public administration in different developed as well as developing countries with a focus on public bureaucracy. African countries will receive special attention.

PAD408 International Administration (3)
The aim of this course is to familiarize students with the theories of international organization and administration, and to appreciate the need for international organisations.

PAD410 Public Financial Management (3)
This course examines a major set of components in the financial management in public sector financial resources. It explains and analyses how modern financial management techniques are applied to the public sector. It emphasizes the dynamic nature of change and the increasing role of markets and competition in the public sector through various forms of privatization. Some of the topics covered in the course are context of public financial management, revenue administration and management financial planning and aid management, managing budgetary/expenditure control and significance of budget reforms and management.

PAD411 Local Government Finance (3)
It raises critical issues about financial arrangements for decentralized revenues and expenditures. This course is concerned with how different levels of government raise money and how they spend it. At the end of the course students should be able to: analyse current issues of local government finance and apply appropriate solutions to the needs of the situation, critically evaluate the role of local government in financial management and understand intergovernmental fiscal relations.

PAD412 Research Project in Public Administration (3)
The course is intended to give students majoring in Public Administration a chance to do an extensive search of the literature and produce an extended research essay.

POLITICAL SCIENCE

POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
This course is about the study of politics and aims to introduce students to the field of political science and the tools used to understand it. The course aims to ensure that students will have a basic understanding of the core concepts and main theories of politics and to help them understand how politics is organised and how political issues are dealt with in the context of modern society. It introduces students to concepts such as political power, political parties, civil society and human rights.

POL102 The Modern State (3)
The course on the Modern State introduces the major state theories, the legitimacy or illegitimacy of the state, state capacity or the power of the state, the democratic and undemocratic state, and state and civil society. The course introduces state-related concepts and theories and analyses the productive or unproductive ways in which the state interacts with business.
POL201 Modern Political Thought (3)
The course is aimed at acquainting students with the major schools of thought that dominate modern political theory in the last half of the twentieth century. The course covers some important philosophical developments that characterize the last half of the twentieth century. It outlines and interprets such philosophical theories as contractarian, communitarian, feminism, complex equality and entitlement. These theories constitute the core of political philosophy today.

POL202 Classical Political Thought (3)
Classical political philosophy has laid the foundations of modern political theory. It has been re-stated, reworked and re-interpreted over time. This course will outline and critique some of the major classical philosophies. The major classical political thoughts covered in this course include Social Contract, Republicanism, Utilitarianism, Liberalism, and Marxism.

POL203 Contemporary Africa (3)
Contemporary Africa is complex and varied—the continent consists of around fifty states with very different histories, colonial experience, economies, values, and social structures. This course will provide students both with a sense of this diversity, and with a grasp of the main patterns currently energizing the continent. It will discuss a range of contemporary approaches to analyzing and theorizing African politics, and will identify key contemporary issues. Topics covered in the course include: instability and neo-Patrimonialism, state collapse, economic decline, democratization, class analysis, coups and military in Africa, Gender and politics, civil society, ethnicity, religion and politics.

POL204 Media and Politics (3)
This course examines the role and power of the media in politics, with a specific emphasis on print and electronic forms of communication. It examines both Western and developing country media industries from a political, economic, and historical viewpoint. Often called the “fourth estate,” the media historically have played an important role in the political and democratic process in the Western world. Since the end of the Cold War, the media has come to be seen as an important ‘watchdog of democracy’ in transitional states.

POL205 Politics of Southern Africa (3)
This course examines Southern Africa as a regional sub-system within the broader global political economy. It attempts an overview of contemporary Southern African politics focusing on the national politics of select Southern African countries; cooperation and conflict in the region; security and development in the region; and peace and Democracy in the Region. It concludes with a discussion of the democratic transition in South Africa and its position in the regional integration.

POL206 International Political Economy (4)
The course unpacks and problematizes International Political Economy as a discipline, the main actors in it, the theoretical debates that have characterized it since its inception and how the forces of globalization are redefining and reshaping the discipline of International Political Economy.

POL207 Politics of Regionalism (3)
This course explores the several dimensions of regionalism in the current era of Neoliberalism and globalisation. There will be a survey of both new and traditional literature on regionalism and regional integration. The course will then compare the aims, objectives and evolution of regional cooperation in the North and South. As far as formal, state-centered attempts at regional integration are concerned, a number of historical and contemporary case studies. The case studies will cover the history and the institutions of regional integration as well as the political dynamics, the social and economic dimensions of the process and the growing significance of these processes for the international relations of the countries concerned. The course will also focus on what is being called ‘regionalism from below’.

POL208 Politics and Management of Natural Resources (3)
This course is concerned with an empirical analysis of the natural resource base of the majority of SADC’s states, historical and current patterns of resource use, typical resource conflicts and attempts at management, and strategies for sustainable development. The course sets South Africa within wider theoretical, historical and global political-economic and sociopolitical context. In addition to country-specific topics, special attention will be given to specific environmental issues and problems faced by all/some states and peoples in the region.

POL209 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
Rural and urban poverty and the search for sustainable livelihoods are issues that students of Political Science ought to be familiar with given existing large poor rural populations of Southern Africa and the fact that many of the granddams of political science will in future be employed by government departments/ministries dealing with issues of rural development and poverty eradication.

POL401 International Relations (3)
The course thoroughly examines the emergence of International Relations as a separate discipline in the broad field of Political Science, what is distinctive about it, its relationship with international law and diplomacy, the theoretical disputes that have surrounded it since its emergence and the perennial issues of international security, conflict management and resolution— including the challenging questions of peace-keeping and peace-building.

POL402 Democratic Theory and Practice (3)
Different forms of democracy will be identified and examined for their strengths and weaknesses, among them Athenian participatory democracy; the Levelers and Diggers in the English...
Civil War; the contrast between Anglo-American liberalism focused on the individual and property and the more radical French tradition; democratization in the 19th and early 20th centuries as a potentiality within capitalist development; the elitist counter-attack and the liberal/Elitist-democratic compromise; the social democratic variant; and the contemporary threat to democracy from global corporate power.

POL403 Modern Ideologies (3)
To understand the ideologies, or great systemic bodies of thought, that have shaped the modern world and its political environment. This course will cover discussion of modern ideologies such as liberalism, conservatism, socialism, nationalism, anarchism, communism, fascism, feminism, and religious fundamentalism.

POL405 Comparative Politics (3)
This course examines a diverse selection of the world’s political/economic systems by contrasting and comparing key aspects of each system, and by seeking generalizations about them. The specific country case studies we examine will be drawn from industrialized, transitional, and that broad category often referred to as less developed/Third World states. The examination and analysis of each country case study will focus on the common themes of political history, key institutions, political cultures, political parties, interest groups, political issues, and cleavages.

POL406 Africa in World Politics (3)
The key objectives of this course are to explore the place and role of Africa in world politics; in particular, to unravel the structural position of Africa in the world economy and what this implies for African development. The origins, dimensions, and consequences of the African debt crisis will be given due attention – including the burning issues of democracy and ‘good governance’. It will also consider the evolution and trajectory of the African state system, especially the role of the Organisation of African Unity (now the African Union) in conflict management and resolution.

POL407 Civil Military Relations (3)
The civil-military relations course explores the interface between the civilian democratic institutions and the military. It will cover aspects related to civilian control of military, military professionalism, military’s role in democratization, human rights and the rule of law.

POL409 Security Studies (3)
This course will explore and an introduction to various approaches to the study of security. It will provide a general introduction to a number of issues on the contemporary security agenda and give an understanding of the changing nature of security concepts and security policies, and their relations to historical and political contexts.

POL410 Internship in Political Science (3)
This course involves eight weeks attachment of students to government non-government organisations during the long vacation at the end of their third year, to enable them to gain insight into the operation of these institutions. During this period the students will observe procedures and functioning, and participate in work assignments given by their supervisors as advised by the Department. At the end of the attachment period, the students will complete assignments in the form of essays and reports related to their work in the organisations to which they are attached.

POL411 Research Project in Political Science (3)
The course is intended to give students majoring in Political Science a chance to do an extensive search of the literature and produce an extended research essay.

PSYCHOLOGY

PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
This is a foundation course to the study of psychology as a scientific discipline and it introduces students to major themes in psychology such as cognition, emotion, behaviour, intelligence, learning, and motivation from various theoretical perspectives.

PSY102 Biological Basis of Human Behaviour (3)
This course is an introduction to essential topics in the area of psychobiology and its historical, contextual and empirical development. It deals with the basic units of the central and peripheral nervous system, neuro-anatomy and physiology. It establishes a foundation in understanding the brain behaviour relationship.

PSY201 Theories of Personality (3)
This course discusses major theories of personality applied in psychology and psychotherapy such as psycho-dynamic theories, behavioural

theories, cognitive theories, humanistic and existential perspectives, and systemic theories.

PSY202 Social Psychology (3)
This course emphasises the social basis of human behaviour. Concepts of socialization, culture, conformity and gender are addressed as well as theories of self-knowledge and self-justification, interpersonal attraction, prosocial behaviour and aggression. Attitudes, attributions, stereotypes and prejudices are discussed in the context of social perception and cognition. In addition, the course emphasises group processes and dynamics.

PSY203 Developmental Psychology of Childhood and Adolescence (3)
This course traces human development through prenatal period, infancy and childhood up to adolescence. Emphasis is placed on physical, cognitive, emotional and social development and relevant theories.

PSY204 History and Philosophy of Psychology (3)
This course introduces students to the history of psychology and its link to philosophy. Schools of thought such as Cartesian dualism, materialism, behaviourism, functionalism, cognitivism, post-modernism as well as African discourses on philosophy are discussed, particularly with regard to psychologically relevant constructs such as ‘individuals’, ‘self’ and ‘personhood’.

PSY205 Research Methods and Statistics for Psychology I (3)
This course introduces students to the relationship between research and theory, basic research criteria (validity, reliability, objectivity), methods of data generation (e.g. experiment, observation, questionnaire, interview) and basic descriptive and inferential statistics commonly applied in psychological research.

PSY206 Developmental Psychology of Adulthood and Old Age (3)
This course examines life-span development during early, middle and late adulthood considering biological, cognitive, emotional and social factors and the relevance of life events (e.g. marriage, parenthood, divorce, first employment, unemployment, retirement, illness, and death) for development.

PSY207 Psychology of Work and Labour Relations (3)
This course highlights the psychological functions of work and the psychological effects.
of the lack or loss of work (e.g. with regard to unemployment and retirement). Work ethics, job attitudes, job satisfaction, work motivation, and work related stress are further topics in this course. In addition, the course presents a psychological approach to labour relations and related concepts (such as negotiation, collective bargaining, mediation, and conflict handling).

**PSY301 Abnormal Psychology I (3)**
This course familiarises students with a range of psychological disorders (such as mood disorders, anxiety disorders, personality disorders, schizophrenia, dissociative disorders, substance-related disorders, eating disorders, disorders of childhood and adolescence), their causes and conceptualization within the various schools of thoughts in psychology as well as in traditional healing approaches in the African context.

**PSY302 Psychological Testing and Psychometrics (3)**
This course introduces students to the principles of psychological testing. Classification and construction of tests, norms, standardization, validity and reliability are addressed, together with critical views on social and ethical issues of testing in general, and the utilization of psychometrics within multi-cultural settings in particular.

**PSY303 Cognition And Learning (3)**
This course discusses topics about human thought and memory. Topics include attention, various kinds of memory, problem solving, decision making, and language. In addition, the course explores learning processes, influences upon these processes and resultant behaviour.

**PSY304 Health Psychology (3)**
This is an applied psychology course that focuses on the contributions of psychology to the understanding of physical and mental health and illness. With regard to prevention and intervention, behavioural, environmental, psychosocial and cultural factors that may affect health and illness are addressed and applied to various fields of health such as cardiology, oncology, rehabilitation, and HIV/AIDS.

**PSY305 Organisational and Personnel Psychology (3)**
This course familiarises students with the application of psychology in (work) organisations. Leadership theories, processes of decision-making, communication and interactive behaviour are presented as well as the psychological relevance of theories about organisational structure and organization development. In addition, concepts of human resource management such as recruitment and selection, job description, job analysis, and performance appraisal are presented from a psychological perspective.

**PSY306 Counselling I (3)**
In this course students develop basic skills in interviewing, counselling and rapport building with regard to a diverse population. Students build up theoretical knowledge of the process of counselling through observing processes of interaction and non-verbal behaviour and through the practical use of attending and listening skills.

**PSY307 Psychological Assessment (3)**
This course is a continuation of PSY302 and trains students in selection, administration and interpretation of psychological assessment tools (e.g. intelligence tests, personality tests, aptitude tests, interest inventories, attitude scales, projective tests, interviews) (up to test level B), and in report writing.

**PSY308 Research Methods and Statistics for Psychology II (3)**
This course is a continuation of PSY202 and teaches students how to conceptualize a research project. With reference to quantitative and qualitative research paradigms, students learn how to use methods of sampling, data generation, and data analysis and interpretation. Ethical issues in psychological research are discussed as well. At the end of this course, students are expected to present a research proposal.

**PSY309 Human Factors in the Work Environment (3)**
This course presents the sensory systems (visual, auditory, haptic and kinaesthetic) with regard to ergonomic principles. The psychological relevance of the compatibility of machines and equipment with human capabilities as well as the machine-human interaction in its various applications (e.g. manufacturing, aviation, transport, architecture, sport, rehabilitation etc.) are major topics in this course.

**PSY310 Consumer Psychology (3)**
This course introduces students to psychological theories and research that explain consumer needs, motivation and behaviour. Consumer perception, attitudes and decision making are analysed in the context of the social environment. Ethics in consumer psychology are a further part of this course.

**PSY401 Research Project (3)**
In this project course students carry out an empirical study on an approved topic and under departmental supervision. The study could be based on the research proposal submitted in PSY307. At the end of the course, students submit a research paper (of approximately 10,000 words).

**PSY402 Abnormal Psychology II (3)**
This course is a continuation of PSY301 and focuses on the diagnosis of psychological disorders (e.g. based on the DSM IV, neuropsychological tests and examination) and their treatment (e.g. psychotherapy, psychopharmacological treatment). This course also considers traditional forms of treatment within the African context.

**PSY403 Counselling II (3)**
This course is a continuation of PSY303. The course expands the students’ repertoire of interviewing and counselling skills and techniques and enables students to apply them in practice. Students are also enabled to assess clients and to develop intervention strategies and referral expertise. In addition, matters of ethical conduct are emphasised.

**PSY404 Psychotherapy (3)**
This course introduces students to the various psychotherapeutic approaches on practical level (e.g. Cognitive-Behavioural Therapy, Family Therapy, Psychoanalysis, Psychodrama, Gestalt-therapy), and also reviews their application to the African context.

**PSY405 Training and Human Resource Development (3)**
This course trains students in skills and techniques of training and human resource development. With regard to qualification and development of employees, students learn how to conduct a needs assessment and how to design and conduct a training programme that emphasizes the psychological empowerment of the workforce (e.g. leadership and managerial skills, communication and interaction skills, managing cultural diversity, competences in team building and conflict resolution).

**PSY406 Psychological Challenges of HIV/AIDS (3)**
This is an applied psychology course that em-
phasises the psychological effects on people infected or affected by HIV/AIDS, for instance, with regard to identity development, sexual development, risk-taking behaviour, coping with stigmatisation, HIV/AIDS-related multiple losses (e.g. health, income, social support, death of closed ones), grieving and bereavement, hopelessness and the threat of death, and suicide. The course also highlights the psychological role of hope and meaning making in the context of HIV/AIDS.

**PSY407 Special Topics in Psychology (3)**
This course provides the opportunity to present various specific themes and topics of psychology depending on students' and lecturers' interests or the expertise of visiting/guest lecturers. Thus, the content taught in this course varies from year to year.

**PSY408 Internship (18)**
The supervised internship (professional on-site supervision and regular supervision through the Department) shall be undertaken over six months with a minimum of 960 hours practical exposure and experience involving competencies and skills in the following areas:
- interviewing
- conflict management
- assessment and evaluation
- professional and ethical conduct
- report writing
- psychological coping skills (e.g. with regard
- administering psychometric tests to
  - transference/counter-transference, stress
- referral expertise
  - management, burnout etc.)
- counselling
- project implementation and management
- group supervision
- research
An Act to re-enact the University of Botswana
Act with substantial revisions to the governance
structures of the University and matters incidental thereto.
Date of assent: 28.08.2008
ENACTED by the Parliament of Botswana.
An Act to re-enact the University of Botswana Act with substantial revisions to the governance structures of the University and matters incidental thereto.

Date of assent: 28.08.2008
Date of Commencement: ON NOTICE ENACTED by the Parliament of Botswana.

PART I - Preceding
Short title and commencement
1. This Act may be cited as the University of Botswana Act, 2008, and shall come into operation on such commencement or operation on such date as the Minister may, by Order published in the Gazette, appoint.

Interpretation
2. In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires -
"Council" means the University Council established under section 6;
"member" means a member of the Council; "Minister" means the Minister of Education and Skills Development; "Statutes" means the statutes enacted under section 22; "University" means the University of Botswana established under section 3.

PART II - Establishment of University of Botswana
Continuance of the University
3. (1) The University of Botswana, established in terms of section 2 of the Act repealed under section 32, shall continue to exist as it established under this Act.
(2) The University shall be a body corporate with perpetual succession and common seal, capable of suing and being sued in its own name and, subject to the provisions of this Act, performing such acts as bodies corporate may by law perform.

Functions of University
4. The functions of the University shall include the following -
(a) providing higher education and training;
(b) advancing and disseminating knowledge through teaching;
(c) undertaking, promoting and facilitating research and scholarly investigations;
(d) collaborating with business, professional, cultural, social or other institutions of learning, higher education, training or research, within or outside Botswana, upon such terms as may be provided in the Statutes;
(e) establishing or participating in the establishment of research, training or other co-operations as may be necessary in the discharge of its functions;
(f) collaborate with universities and other institutions of learning, higher education, training or research, within or outside Botswana, upon such terms as may be provided in the Statutes;
(g) establish relationships and collaborate with other persons or bodies, or other institutions of learning, higher education, training or research, within or outside Botswana, upon such terms as may be provided in the Statutes;
(h) collaborate with business, professional, cultural, social or other interests within and outside Botswana as may be necessary in the discharge of its functions;
(i) collaborate with alumni and associations of alumni and graduates of the University;
(j) receive and accept donations on such terms and conditions as shall not be inconsistent with this Act and the functions of the University;
(k) maintain, manage and invest funds in a manner which shall not be inconsistent with this Act and the functions of the University;
(l) acquire and hold movable or immovable property, sell, lease, mortgage or otherwise alienate or dispose of the property, and enter into other transactions.

WHEREAS the University has resolved that it is necessary or expedient to acquire a property under subsection (1)(h), the property may be treated as property required for public purposes, and the Acquisition of Property Act shall apply with necessary modifications to allow for the vesting of the property acquired in the University and for the cost to be defrayed by the University.

PART III - Governance of University
Principal officers
6. The Principal officers and the governance bodies of the University shall be -
and governance bodies
(a) Chancellor;
(b) Chairperson of the University Council;
(c) Vice-Chancellor;
(d) University Council;
(e) Senate; and
(f) Deputy Vice-Chancellors.

Chancellor
7. (1) The Chancellor shall be appointed by the President of Botswana.
(2) The Chancellor shall hold office for five years and shall be eligible for one more term of five years.
(3) The Chancellor shall be the titular head of the University and shall be its ambassador, promoting goodwill and mobilising resources for the University.
(4) The Chancellor shall preside over ceremonial assemblies of the University, confer awards of the University and, perform and exercise other functions and powers as described in this Act and in the Statutes.
(5) In the absence of the Chancellor, the Chairperson of the Council shall act as Chancellor.

Vice-Chancellor
8. (1) The Vice-Chancellor shall be appointed by the Minister after consulting the University Council and the Senate.
(2) The Vice-Chancellor shall be the chief executive officer of the University, having overall responsibility for academic and administrative leadership as well as chief disciplinary officer of the University, subject to directions of policy that the University may give from time to time.
(3) The Council shall, in consultation with the Senate, appoint Deputy Vice-Chancellors in accordance with the Statutes.
(4) When the post of Vice-Chancellor is vacant, or when the Vice-Chancellor is absent, or for any other reason unable to perform the functions of the Vice-Chancellor, the Council shall appoint, in accordance with the Statutes, one or both Deputy Vice-Chancellors, or if no Deputy Vice-Chancellor is available, any other suitable member of the University staff, to act as Vice-Chancellor.
(5) The Vice-Chancellor and the Deputy Vice-Chancellors shall together constitute an executive management team to provide executive leadership of the University.

Establishment of Council
9(1) There shall be established the University Council which shall of Council consist of the following 32 members -
(a) 12 people appointed by the Minister, five of whom shall be appointed by the Minister at his or her discretion and seven on the recommendation of the Council;
(b) seven people representative of civil society and the private sector, appointed by the Chancellor on the recommendation of Council in accordance with the procedure and criteria specified in the Statutes;
(c) two people who are not resident in Botswana appointed by the University Council by reason of their special knowledge and competence in tertiary education;
(d) one graduate of the University and its antecedents who is not a member of staff of the University elected by the Alumni Association of the University;
(e) the Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellor;
(f) two members of Senate elected by Senate, one of whom shall be a professor and the other a Dean of Faculty;
(g) one member of the academic staff who is not on Senate, elected by members of academic staff;
(h) two members of the support staff elected by the support staff, one of whom shall be a senior member of staff;
(i) one student elected by the student body of the University;
(j) the procedure for election of members under paragraphs (f), (g), (h) and (i) of subsection (1) shall be prescribed in the Statutes.
(2) A member shall be responsible to the Council and not to the entity that appointed or elected the member and shall have a duty to act in good faith, avoid conflict of interest and, to exercise skill and judgment in the interest of the University.
(3) A member shall have collective responsibility for the decisions of the Council.

Chairperson of Council
10. (1) The Minister shall appoint the Chairperson of Council and members shall elect the Vice-Chairperson from amongst those members that are not employees or students of the University.
(2) The Chairperson of the Council shall -
(a) provide leadership to the Council;
(b) conduct meetings of Council;
(c) act as the representative and spokesperson of Council; and
(d) subject to restrictions and directions of the Council, act for and make decisions on behalf of the Council where it is not feasible or practicable to convene a meeting of the Council for that purpose.
(3) The Vice-Chairperson of the Council shall act as Chairperson in the absence of the Chairperson.

Functions of Council
11. (1) The Council shall be the governing body with ultimate responsibility for ensuring the performance of the powers conferred by this Act.
(2) Without prejudice to subsection (1), the Council shall -
(a) set the strategic directions of the University by overseeing the development and adoption of the mission and strategic plans of the University;
(b) approve major policies, capital plans, and the annual planning and budget report;
(c) monitor and review the overall performance of the University in relation to plans, policies, values, academic standards, financial management and buildings and estates management;
(d) approve the annual report and annual statement of accounts of the University;
(e) ensure the strategic leadership of the University;
(f) enhance the engagement between the University and the community;
(g) approve the institutional plan of the University; and
(h) maintain, through Senate, high levels of academic standards.

Powers of Council
12. (1) The Council shall have the power to do or provide for any act or thing which it considers necessary or expedient for the performance or exercise of its powers and functions under this Act,
(2) Without prejudice to subsection (1), the Council shall -
(a) determine persons who are authorised to sign contracts, cheques and other documents on behalf of the University, and otherwise regulate procedure in relation to transactions entered into by the University;
(b) provide for the safe custody and proper use of the seal of the University;
and
(c) approve terms and conditions of service for employees of the University.
(3) The Council may, where it deems it necessary or desirable, prohibit the admission of a person as a student of the University.
(4) The Council shall exercise the powers under subsection (3) notwithstanding the disciplinary powers conferred on the Vice-Chancellor by section 80.
(5) Without prejudice to the powers conferred on any other person or public officer under any other law, the Council shall have the power, after consultation with the Minister and the Senate, to declare the University closed for purposes of offering some or all academic programmes and courses and, whenever possible, indicate the period during which the University shall remain closed.
(6) Notwithstanding subsection (5), where there is an emergency, the Chairperson shall have the power to act on behalf of the Council and order the University closed.
Accounts and annual reports 13. (1) The Council shall cause the accounts of the University to be annual report drawn up, audited and published annually and at such times and in such manner as the Minister may direct.
(2) The Council shall cause, within six months after the end of each academic year, a report of the activities of the University to be drawn up and made available to the public.
(3) The Council shall, within 30 days of receiving a copy of the audited accounts and the report give such copy and report to the Minister.
(4) The Minister shall, within 90 days of receiving the report and a copy of the audited accounts, lay such report and accounts before the National Assembly.

Tenure of office 14. (1) The Chairperson and Vice-Chairperson of Council shall hold office for a period of three years and shall be eligible for re-election for one more term.
(2) Any appointed or elected members, other than the member elected by the student body of the University, shall hold office for a period exceeding three years and shall be eligible for reappointment or re-election for one more term at the end of the first period.
(3) The member elected by the student body shall hold office for a period not exceeding one year and shall be eligible for re-election for one more term.

Disqualification, removal and resignation of member 15. (1) A person shall not be appointed, or elected a member or be qualified to continue to hold office, who-

(a) terms of a law in force in any country-

(i) has been adjudged or otherwise declared bankrupt and has not been discharged;
or
(ii) made an assignment, arrangement or composition with his or her creditors, which has not been rescinded or set aside;
(b) within a period of 10 years immediately preceding the date of his or her appointment, been convicted—

(i) of a criminal offence in any country;
or
(ii) of a criminal offence for which he or she has not received a free pardon and notwithstanding that the sentence has been suspended, which, if committed in Botswana, would have been committed, the penalty for which would be at least six months imprisonment without the option of a fine;
(2) The Council may remove a member from office after consultation with the appointing authority if the member-

(a) is absent without reasonable cause from three consecutive meetings of the Council of which the member has had notice;
or
(b) is inefficient;
(c) has been found to be physically or mentally incapable of performing his or her duties efficiently;
or
(d) contravenes this Act, Statutes, or other instruments stipulating the duties and responsibilities of members, or otherwise misconducts himself or herself to the detriment of the objectives of the Council.

(3) A member may resign from office by giving 30 days notice in writing to the person or officer designated in the Statutes as the Secretary to the Council;

(4) The office of a member shall become vacant after-

(a) a period of 30 days from the date the member is convicted of an offence referred to under subsection (1) (b), where the member does not appeal;
(b) a period of 30 days from the date a ruling against the member is made on an appeal made in respect of a conviction against the member under subsection (1) (b), where the member appeals;
(c) a period of 30 days has elapsed from the date the member gave notice in writing of his or her intention to resign in accordance with subsection (3);
(d) a period of 30 days has elapsed from the date the member is given notice in writing by the Council to vacate office; or
(e) a member is summarily required by the Council to vacate office on the grounds referred to in subsection (2) (d).

Meetings of Council 16. (1) Subject to this Act and the Statutes, the Council shall regulate, its own proceedings.
(2) The Council shall meet at least three times in an academic year.
(3) The Chairperson may, upon giving a written notice of not less than 14 days, and upon a written request of not less than one half of the members, call a meeting.
(4) The Chairperson may, where the urgency of the matter does not permit giving notice as required in paragraph (a), call a special meeting of the Council, giving a shorter notice;
(5) The Chairperson shall preside at any meeting of Council, but in the absence of the Chairperson the Vice-Chairperson shall preside, and in the absence of both the Chairperson and Vice-Chairperson, the members present shall elect one of them, not being an employee or student of the University, to preside at that meeting.
(6) The quorum at any meeting of Council shall be one half of the members.
(7) A decision of the Council on any question shall be taken by the majority of the members present and voting at that meeting, and in the event of an equality of votes, the person presiding shall have a casting vote in addition to that person's deliberative vote.

(8) The Council may invite any person whose presence it considers necessary, to attend and to participate, in the deliberations of the Council but such person shall have no vote.

(9) Disclosure of interest 17. (1) A member who has a direct or an indirect interest in a private capacity in any matter to be considered by the Council or a committee of Council shall, as soon as practicable after the commencement of the meeting, disclose the interest and shall not, unless the Council otherwise directs, take part in any consideration or discussion of, or vote on, any question relating to the matter.
(2) A disclosure of interest made under this section shall be recorded in the minutes of the meeting at which it is made.

(3) Where a member fails to disclose or his or her interest in accordance with subsection (1) and a decision by the committee is made which benefits — , such member directly, such decision shall be null and void;

(4) A member who contravenes the provisions of subsection (1) shall be guilty of an offence and liable to a fine not exceeding P6 000, or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months, or to both.

Confidentiality 18. (1) Every member and any person co-opted to a committee shall observe and preserve the confidentiality of all matters coming before a committee, and such confidentiality shall subsist even after the termination of his or her term of office or his or her co-option.
(2) A person to whom confidential information is revealed through working with a committee shall not disclose that information to any other person unless he or she is required to do so in terms of any written law or for purposes of any judicial proceedings.
(3) A member or an expert engaged to render services that may include access to confidential information shall not, for a period of two years after leaving office or rendering such expert service, use to their personal advantage information acquired by him or her by virtue of being associated with a committee.
(4) Any person who contravenes the provisions of this section shall be guilty of an offence and liable to a fine not exceeding P6 000, or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months, or to both, and for a second or subsequent offence to a fine not exceeding P6 000, or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.

Committees of Council 19. (1) The Council shall have the following committees whose terms and membership shall be as specified in the Statutes —

(a) the Executive Committee of Council;
(b) the Joint Committee of the Council and the Senate;
(c) the Audit Committee;
(d) the Finance Committee;
(e) the Human Resources Committee;
(f) the Staff Appeals Committee; and (g) the Physical Resources Committee.
(2) The Council may from time to time establish other committees of a special or general nature, consisting of its members or other suitably qualified persons, as it may deem fit.
(3) The Council may delegate any of its functions under this Act to a committee established in terms of subsection (2).
(4) The provisions of sections 16 and 17 shall, with necessary modifications, apply to a member of a committee.

Remuneration and Allowances 20. A member may be paid remuneration and allowances, if any, as Government may from time to time determine.

Senate 21. (1) There shall be a Senate which shall have overall responsibility Senate for the —

(a) academic policies and academic plans,
(b) academic development strategies, and
(c) research and community service functions of the University.
(2) The Senate shall consist of the Vice-Chancellor and such other members as shall be specified in the Statutes.
(3) The Senate shall—

(a) have control and direction of teaching, research, assessment, conferment of degrees and granting of other awards of the University;
(b) be responsible for the integration of academic, financial and physical plans through the annual planning and budget report;
(c) be responsible for articulating the objectives, goals, mission and strategic direction of the University for approval by the Council;
(d) be responsive to requests of Council and regularly monitor its own performance; and
(e) establish committees of the Senate and regulate their membership as it sees fit.
(4) The Senate shall have such other functions and powers as shall from time to time be specified in the Statutes.

PART IV - General

Indemnity 22. No matter or thing done or omitted to be done by a member or a member of a committee shall, if the matter or thing is done or omitted to be done bona fide in the course of operations of the Council a or committee, render a member or a member of a committee personally liable for an action, claim or demand.

Statutes 23. The Council, acting in consultation with the Senate may, from time to time, enact Statutes for the better carrying into effect of this Act.

Repeal of Cap.57.01 24. The University of Botswana Act, (hereinafter referred to as the repealed Act, is hereby repealed.

Savings 25. (1) All Statutes, rules, ordinances and regulations made under the repealed Act shall, to the extent consistent with this Act, and until otherwise provided for in this Act, continue to apply and have effect.
(2) All principal officers, the Council and the Senate appointed under the repealed Act shall continue to hold and perform the duties and exercise the powers conferred under the repealed Act until they are replaced by officers and governance structures provided for in this Act.

Transitional provisions 26. (1) Upon commencement of this Act, there shall be transferred to and vested in the University, by virtue of this Act and without further assurance, all property, rights, liabilities and obligations that, immediately before the commencement of this Act, were the property, rights, liabilities and obligations of the former University.
(2) The Minister may, by notice published in the Gazette, make such transitional arrangements not otherwise provided for in this Act as shall be necessary.

Passed by the National Assembly this 14th day of August, 2008.
E.S. MPOHU, Clerk of the National Assembly
THE UNIVERSITY OF BOTSWANA STATUTES

In Exercise of the powers conferred by Section 14 of the University of Botswana Act (Cap.57:01), the Council of the University of Botswana hereby makes the following Statutes:

Part I Preliminary

1. These Statutes shall be cited as the University of Botswana Statutes, 1982, which came into operation on 7th October 1983, as revised from time to time.

2. In these Statutes, unless the context otherwise requires:
   (a) "Academic staff" means an employee of the University whose terms and conditions of service include the obligation to undertake teaching, research and service and/or holders of posts declared by Council on the advice of Senate to be academic;  
   (b) "Act" means the University of Botswana Act (Cap.57:01);  
   (c) "Chancellor" means the person holding the office of Chancellor in accordance with Section 5 of the Act;  
   (d) "Council" means the University Council established under Section 8 of the Act;  
   (e) "Department" means either an academic department of the University established under Statute 45 in which one or more programmes of study are offered, or an administrative department;  
   (f) "Deputy Vice Chancellor" means a Deputy Vice Chancellor appointed under Part VI hereof;  
   (g) "Director" means the director of an institute, an academic centre or an administrative department;  
   (h) "Graduate" means any person currently registered for the receipt of a diploma or degree or other academic qualification;  
   (i) "Graduate School" means the Graduate School established under Section 35 of the Act;  
   (j) "Joint Committee" means the Joint Committee established under Statute 12 of the Act;  
   (k) "Joint University Council" means the Joint University Council established under Part VII of the Act;  
   (l) "Member" means a person appointed to the Council established in accordance with Statute 2 (ii) except that no member shall be an employee of the University;  
   (m) "Ministries" means the Ministries of the Republic of Botswana and its antecedents.  
   (n) "Ordinary meeting" means a meeting of the Council held in accordance with Statute 7;  
   (o) "Pay Roll Staff" means employees of the University who are not academic staff or support staff;  
   (p) "Professor Emeritus" means a person who is no longer employed by the University but who is declared by the Council and witnessed by a Dean of Faculty or School as having held an appointment of a professor, or equivalent, at any time of the period of twenty years ending with the date of the appointment;  
   (q) "Professor" means a person appointed to a professorship at the University and holding a professorship at the University;  
   (r) "Pro viso" means subject to the conditions specified;  
   (s) "Quorum" means the minimum number of members required to be present to constitute a valid meeting. Except where otherwise specified by the Statutes, the quorum of every committee shall be 50% (fifty percent) of the membership thereof;  
   (t) "Senate" means the Senate established under Section 9 of the Act;  
   (u) "Staff Development Fellow" means an employee of the University who is required to undertake programmes of study or training in order to become a member of the academic staff;  
   (v) "Student" means any person currently registered for the receipt of a diploma or degree;  
   (w) "Support staff" means an employer of the University whose terms and conditions of service do not include the primary obligation to undertake teaching and research;  
   (x) "University" means the University of Botswana established under Part I of the Act;  
   (y) "Vice Chancellor" means the Vice Chancellor appointed pursuant to Section 7 (i) of the Act.

3. Nothing in these Statutes shall be interpreted in such a manner as to conflict with the provisions of the Act and where such conflict occurs the provisions of the Act shall take precedence.

4. The members of the University shall be:
   (a) The members of the Council;
   (b) The members of the Senate;
   (c) The employees of the University;
   (d) The professors emeritus;
   (e) The graduates;
   (f) The students;
   (g) Such other persons as the Council may declare to be members.

5. The membership of students on Council, Senate, the Committees of Council and Senate, and any other Committees or Boards defined in these Statutes shall cease if they cease to be registered students of the University or when they are suspended, provided that during such period of suspension the Student Representative Council may nominate replacement members from its membership.

6. Unless otherwise specified in these Statutes, the Secretary of every Committee or Board shall be appointed by the Chairperson of the Committee or Board.

7. The Secretary to Council, Senate, and any other Committee or Board defined in these Statutes shall also be the Secretary to the respective Executive Committee.

Part II Meetings of Council

8. The Council shall hold an annual meeting in each calendar year within six months after the end of each academic year, as shall be appointed by the Chairperson of Council.

9. At each annual meeting the Council will receive an annual report of the activities of the University, together with an audited Statement of Accounts, and the Council shall take such action as may be necessary and make such appointments as required to be made at an annual meeting.

10. Notice of the annual meeting shall be circulated by the Secretary of Council at least twenty-one days before the date thereof and a copy of the annual report and the audited Statement of Accounts shall be sent to every member of the Council at least fourteen days before the date of the annual meeting.

11. An agenda shall be circulated by the Secretary to Council at least fourteen days before any meeting of the Council.

12. The Council shall exclude from its meetings the student members, when it is considering the restricted agenda of Council.

13. Subject to these Statutes, Council shall regulate its own procedure.

9. The University’s duly appointed Director of Legal Services shall act as Secretary to Council and shall be responsible for the management of the Council Committee structure.

10. (i) When a vacancy occurs in the membership of the Council the Secretary of the Council shall notify the appointing or electing person or body, as appropriate, of the appointment or election of a successor to the vacant office, in accordance with Section 8 of the Act and the schedule thereto.

(ii) The Secretary may, at any time, refer any matter to the Joint Committee for consideration or to any other groups of University staff as shall be determined from time to time by the Vice Chancellor.

(iii) Elections conducted under Statute 10 (ii) to membership of Council shall be conducted by secret ballot.

11. The Secretary shall be responsible for the signing and custody of notices and official documents on behalf of the University and Council shall pass a resolution to such effect for the purpose of legal process.

Part III The University Seal

12. (i) The Secretary to Council shall be responsible to the Council for the safe custody of the University Seal.

(ii) The University Seal shall be affixed to leases, contracts and agreements to which the University is a party, and to parchments issued in respect of any degree, diploma or certificate conferred by the authority of the Senate; provided however, that it is specifically recorded that any failure by the University to affix the University Seal shall not affect the enforceability of such lease, contract or agreement in any manner whatsoever.

(iii) Except as provided in Statute 12 (ii), the University Seal shall be used only on the specific authority of the Council.

(iv) The affixing of the University Seal to any document, other than certificates, diplomas, degrees or awards, as authorised by the Secretary to Council and witnessed by a Dean of Faculty or School.

(v) The affixing of the University Seal to any document, other than certificates, diplomas, degrees or awards, as authorised by the Secretary to Council and witnessed by a Dean of Faculty or School.

(vi) The affixing of the University Seal to any document, other than certificates, diplomas, degrees or awards, as authorised by the Secretary to Council and witnessed by a Dean of Faculty or School.

(vii) The affixing of the University Seal to any document, other than certificates, diplomas, degrees or awards, as authorised by the Secretary to Council and witnessed by a Dean of Faculty or School.

Part IV Appointment of the Vice Chancellor

13. (i) There shall be a Joint Committee of the Council and the Senate to recommend to the Council what advice it should give to the Chancellor, in terms of Section 7 (i) of the Act, on the appointment of a Vice Chancellor.

(ii) The Joint Committee shall consist of the following members:

(a) A chairperson, who is not the chairperson of Council, appointed by Council from among those of its members who are not employees of the University;

(b) Three persons appointed by Council from among those of its members who are not members of the Senate; and

(c) Three persons appointed by the Senate.

Part V Appointment of Deputy Vice Chancellors

14. (i) There shall be a Joint Committee of the Council and the Senate which shall make recommendations to the Council in respect of the appointment of Deputy Vice Chancellors.

(ii) The Joint Committee prescribed by the Statutes shall be constituted as in Statute 13 (ii) except that the Vice Chancellor shall also be a member.

(iii) The Council shall appoint Deputy Vice Chancellors after considering recommendations from the Joint Committee of Council and Senate, and for such period and under such conditions as the Council shall determine.
(a) Recommend policies regarding the management and administration of the finances of the University;
(b) Receive the annual estimates of revenue and expenditure and act as an advisory committee to Council on such estimates;
(c) Recommend to Council the form in which the annual estimates of revenue and expenditure and financial statements shall be prepared;
(d) Make rules and prescribe procedures for the control of expenditure and generally for the administration of financial affairs; and
(e) Determine the persons who shall be authorised to sign cheques, contracts and other financial orders and documents on behalf of the University, provided such persons shall include the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Finance and Administration).

20. (i) The Committee shall cause to be established a fund (in this Statute referred to as “the Fund”);
(ii) There shall be paid into the Fund:
(a) Monies representing any gift, donation, legacy or endowment received by the University without direction as to the purpose to which the same shall be applied;
(b) Monies appropriated in terms of Statute 20 (ii); and/or
(c) Monies accruing or realised from any investment or deposit made under Statutes 20 (ii) or (iv);
(iii) The annual estimates of the University shall make provision for the expenditure of any monies to be appropriated by the Committee for payment into the Fund, and shall specify the purposes for which those monies may be paid from the Fund;
(iv) Pending payment from the Fund, monies of the Fund (including monies appropriated for payment into the Fund) shall, as far as is practicable, be invested;
(v) Monies of the Fund which are not invested in accordance with Statute 20 (ii) shall be deposited in a University bank account specifically opened for that purpose.
(vi) Subject to the supervision of the Committee, investments of the monies of the Fund may be made at any time and in such manner as may be determined by the Committee.
(vii) Monies may be paid from the Fund either for the purposes specified under Statute 20 (iii) or for such other purposes as the Committee may determine.

21. (i) The Committee shall cause to be kept all proper books and records of account of the income, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the University.
(ii) Within three months of the end of each financial year, the Committee shall cause to be submitted to the Auditor the account of the University together with:
(a) a statement of income and expenditure during such year;
(b) a statement of the assets and liabilities of the University on the last day of such year;
(c) a statement of the financial position of the University as at the last day of such year; and
(d) a statement of the financial position of the University as at the last day of the year immediately preceding the year of which such financial statements form part.

22. (i) The University shall be from time to time determined and shall be published in the University Gazette, and shall be strictly without derogation to the authority of the Vice Chancellor.
(ii) No student shall be awarded a degree or other qualification of the University unless he/she has paid, or have had paid on his/her behalf, all fees and other charges due to the University.

23. (i) The University shall be from time to time determined and shall be published in the University Gazette, and shall be strictly without derogation to the authority of the Vice Chancellor.
(ii) No student shall be awarded a degree or other qualification of the University unless he/she has paid, or have had paid on his/her behalf, all fees and other charges due to the University.

24. (i) The Committee may codify or perform any duty conferred or imposed on it with financial implications, subject to such limitations as the Council may specify.

Part VIII Human Resources Committee

25. (i) There shall be a Human Resources Committee of the Council (in this Part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:
(a) Vice Chancellor;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellor;
(c) Director of Human Resources;
(d) A person appointed by Senate;
(e) One Dean of Faculty elected by the Deans;
(f) One external member of Council appointed by Council;
(g) One member of the academic staff elected by the academic staff;
(h) One member of the support staff elected by the support staff;
(i) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than two additional members with special competence from within or outside the University;
(ii) The Council shall appoint, on an annual basis, a chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.

26. The Committee shall inter alia recommend to Council the appointment of the Chairperson and of members of the Committee.

Part IX Physical Resources Committee

27. (i) There shall be a Physical Resources Committee (in this Part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:
(a) Vice Chancellor;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellor;
(c) Permanent Secretary of the Ministry of Education or representative;
(d) Permanent Secretary of the Ministry of Finance and Development Planning or representative;
(e) One member of Senate appointed by Senate;
(f) Director of Institutional Planning;
(g) Director of Campus Services;
(h) Director of Financial Services;
(i) Director of the Department of Architecture and Building Services in the Ministry of Works, Transport, and Communications or representative;
(j) A representative of a local authority as a co-opted member;
(k) The member of Council appointed to Council from Senate;
(l) One external member of Council appointed by Council.

(ii) The Committee shall appoint, on an annual basis, a chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.

28. (i) The Committee shall, inter alia recommend to the Council policies on the physical development of the University and the overall management of construction, maintenance and security of buildings, grounds, campus properties, equipment and vehicles of the University.

Part X Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee

29. (i) There shall be a Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee of the Council (in this Part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:
(a) Vice Chancellor;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellor;
(c) Principal of the Botswana College of Agriculture;
(d) Two external members of Council appointed by Council;
(e) One Dean of Faculty elected by the Deans;
(f) Director of Human Resources;
(g) Three professors from within the University, coming from different faculties, elected by Senate for a term of three years after which they shall be eligible for re-election for a second term only.

(iii) The Council shall appoint, on an annual basis, a chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.
(iv) Deans of Faculties and Schools, Directors of Institutes and Centers, and Directors of Administrative Departments of or within which an appointment or promotion is to be made may be invited but only when the business of their Faculty, School, Institute, Centre, or Department is under consideration.
(v) Subject to any directions which may be given by the Council, the Committee shall regulate its own procedure.

30. (i) Subject to such directions as may be given by the Council, the Committee shall have all such powers as are necessary or expedient for the management and development of the University.
(ii) The Committee shall hear appeals by staff against decisions on personnel issues and shall have all such powers as are necessary or expedient for the performance of these duties and may establish committees as the Vice Chancellor may deem necessary for the better carrying into effect of these functions.

31. The Vice Chancellor shall have overall direction and responsibility for the academic and administrative work of the University and the staff thereof, and the officers and servants employed in, or in connection with, such work, including (but without limitation by reason of such particularity) the Deputy Vice Chancellors, and has such other powers and shall perform such other duties as may be conferred upon or assigned to the Vice Chancellor by the Council, it being specifically recorded that any delegation of responsibility to such officers, servants and Deputy Vice Chancellors made in accordance with these Statutes shall be strictly without derogation to the authority of the Vice Chancellor as provided for by Section 7 (1) of the Act.

32. (i) Subject to such regulation as the Council may approve, the Vice Chancellor may in the performance of his duties under Section 34, by order:
(a) Prohibit the admission as a student of any person to the University;
(b) Prohibit, for such period as shall be specified, any student from attending classes or a particular class;
(c) Prohibit any student from entering or remaining on such part or parts of the University premises as shall be specified;
(d) Deny or suspend for such period as shall be specified any student or group of students;
(e) Take any other action against any student as the Vice
Chancellor may in the circumstances deem appropriate.
(c) The Vice Chancellor may appoint a disciplinary committee, with such membership as is deemed appropriate, to assist the Vice Chancellor in the performance of the Vice Chancellor’s duties under this Statute.

39. Subject to the Act and to Statute 37, the Vice Chancellor may delegate such powers, duties or functions as is deemed fit and prescribe conditions governing the exercise of any delegated power, duty or function, provided that, in the absence of express provision made by him/her power delegated shall not include power to sub-delegate.

40. The Vice Chancellor shall by virtue of office be a member of every faculty and of every other entity of the University established by or under the Statutes and of every board or committee appointed by the Council, by the Senate, by any Faculty or by any other authority of the University established by or under these Statutes.

Part XIX Deputy Vice Chancellors

41. (i) The Deputy Vice Chancellors shall be responsible to the Vice Chancellor for providing leadership through policy formulation and planning, management and administration in their respective areas of responsibilities as may be defined in the Ordinances or Regulations provided for in Part XXIX, if any.
(ii) By virtue of office, a Deputy Vice Chancellor shall be a member of such other committees of Council and Senate as may from time to time be prescribed in these Statutes.

Part XVII Senate

42. (i) The membership of the Senate shall consist of:
(a) Vice Chancellor;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellors;
(c) three representatives from each faculty elected by the Faculty Board, two of whom shall be professors or Associate professors and the other a senior lecturer or lecturer;
(d) the Deans of the Faculties, Schools of the University and the Colleges of the Botswana College of Agriculture;
(e) three students of whom one should be a graduate student appointed annually by the Students Representative Council;
(f) Director of Academic Development;
(g) two representatives of each faculty, elected by the Faculty Board one of whom shall be a Professor or an Associate Professor;
(h) Director of Library Services;
(i) Director of Research and Development;
(j) Director of Affiliated Institutions;
(k) Director of Academic Services;
(l) Director of Continuing Education.
(ii) The Vice Chancellor shall be Chairperson of the Senate and in the Vice Chancellor’s absence the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall act as Chairperson of Senate.

(iii) Where Senate is considering any matter where conflict of interest might arise when discussed in the presence of any member, such a member shall be required by the Senate to excuse themselves from any further consideration of the matter.

(iv) The Senate shall exclude from its meetings the student members when it is considering the academic performance in examinations or otherwise, of individual students, or matters relating to a member or members of staff where the Senate in its discretion shall consider confidential.

(v) Senate shall regulate its own procedures by the standing orders formulated by itself.

(vi) The Senate may:
(a) Appoint any committee consisting of members of the Senate and such other persons as it deems appropriate;
(b) Authorise any committee appointed under this Statute to act jointly with any committee appointed by the Council; and
(c) Delegate any of its powers and functions to any committee appointed under this Statute.

43. Senate shall be the academic authority of the University and shall have general control and direction under the Council of the teaching, research, examinations and the granting of other awards of the University. In addition, Senate shall be responsible for articulating the mission statement, goals and objectives of the University for approval by Council.

44. Subject to the provisions of the Act, the Senate shall have power to:
(a) Make regulations relating to teaching and instruction within the University including programmes of study and contents of courses, provided that the introduction of new programmes of study shall be subject to the approval of the Council.
(b) Make regulations governing the admission of persons to programmes of study in the University;
(c) Make regulations governing methods of assessing and examining the academic performance of students, and regulations for the conduct of examinations;
(d) Make regulations governing the award of such fellowships, scholarships, studentships, exhibitions and other prizes as the Council may establish, subject to any conditions made by the founders or donors thereof and accepted by the Council;
(e) Authorise the conferment of degrees, diplomas, certificates and other awards and shall be determined their titles and abbreviations;
(f) By regulation, define academic dress and prescribe the use thereof;
(g) Recommend to Council the conferment of the title and status of Emeritus Professor on any Professor at or after his/hers retirement in recognition of long and distinguished service to the University or to the former University of Botswana and Swaziland and their antecedents;
(h) Initiate proposals relating to the conduct of the University generally, discuss matters relating to the University and make recommendations thereon to the Council; exercise all such other powers as are or may be conferred upon the Senate by the Act, by the Statutes, or by the Council, and make such regulations or rules as are necessary in the exercise of those powers.

45. The Senate shall recommend to the Council the establishment of academic Departments and determine which Departments and academic subjects shall form part of or be the responsibility of each Faculty or school and may determine that a Department or academic subject shall form part of or be the responsibility of more than one Faculty or School.

46. The Senate shall meet at least twice each semester.

Part XV Executive Committee of Senate

47. (i) There shall be an Executive Committee of the Senate (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:
(a) Vice Chancellor;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellors;
(c) the Deans of the Faculties and Schools of the University and the Deans of the Colleges of the Botswana College of Agriculture;
(d) two persons who are members of the Senate, elected by the Senate, one of whom shall be a Professor or an Associate Professor;
(e) Director of Academic Services;
(f) Director of Continuing Education; and
(g) Director of Research and Development.

(ii) The Committee may make rules and regulations to govern its proceedings provided that the Vice Chancellor may summon the Committee and in the Vice Chancellor’s absence the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall act as Chairperson of the Committee.

(iii) Subject to any directions which may be given by the Council and the Senate, the Committee shall regulate its own procedure.

Part XVII Honorary Degrees

51. (i) There shall be an Academic Honours Committee of Senate (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:
(a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall be chairperson;
(b) three persons appointed by the Council; from among those of its members who are not members of the Senate; and
(c) three professors appointed by the Senate.

(iv) The Committee shall recommend to Senate the conferment of honorary degrees.

(v) Subject to any directions which may be given by the Council and the Senate, the Committee shall regulate its own procedure.

Part XIX Planning and Resources Committee

52. There shall be a Planning and Resources Committee of Senate (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:
(a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Finance and Administration) who shall be the chairperson;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs);
(c) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Student Affairs);
(d) the Deans of the Faculties and Schools;
(e) two members of the academic staff appointed by Senate;
(f) Director of Academic Services;
(g) Director of Financial Services;
(h) Director of Campus Services;
(i) Director of Human Resources;
(j) Director of Institutes and Centers;
(k) Director of Library Services; and
(l) Director of Institutional Planning.

53. The Committee shall inter alia:
(a) Review the mission statement, goals, and objectives of the University and recommend to Senate accordingly;
(b) Co-ordinate the University’s planning and development strategy;
(c) Co-ordinate the methodology of allocation and distribution of internal resources in support of the institutional planning and development strategy;
(d) Review sectional planning submissions in order to ensure their appropriateness and consistency with the mission, strategy and objectives of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(e) Evaluate sectional planning submissions and recommend funding priorities to Senate; and
58. Subject to the Statutes and to such limitations as the Senate may impose, a Faculty Board or School may:
(a) Direct and regulate, within the general academic policy formulated by the Senate, all matters relating to teaching, instruction and research within each Faculty or School, including curricula and examinations, and advise the Senate on such matters;
(b) Appoint internal and external examiners and recommend to the finance Committee the fees payable to the examiners;
(c) Make recommendations to the Senate in respect of the award of degrees, diplomas, certificates and other awards, academic titles and distinctions within the Faculty;
(d) Discuss any matters relating to the work of the Faculty and submit recommendations thereon to the Senate;
(e) From time to time, consider the progress and conduct of the students of the Faculty and make regular reports to the Senate;
(f) Consider all matters referred to it for its consideration by the Senate and report to the Senate;
(g) Receive at each meeting oral and written reports from Heads of Departments and Faculty representatives on University committees and boards;
(h) Advise Senate on the integration of academic, financial and other resources available to the Faculty, and the consequences of the integration of academic, financial, and other resources available to the Faculty, and the implementation, and advise Senate accordingly;
(i) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
(j) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are central to the academic plans of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(k) Review and advise on the submissions from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are central to the academic plans of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(l) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
(m) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are central to the academic plans of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(n) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
(o) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are central to the academic plans of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(p) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
(q) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are central to the academic plans of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(r) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
(s) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are central to the academic plans of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(t) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
(u) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are central to the academic plans of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(v) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
(w) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are central to the academic plans of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(x) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
(y) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are central to the academic plans of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(z) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
{| {Part XX Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee 54. There shall be an Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee of Senate (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Dean of the Faculty, who shall be Chairperson;
(b) The Head of the School, who shall be Vice-Chairperson;
(c) Heads of Departments;
(d) Such members of the academic staff of the Faculty Board as the Dean may determine;
(e) The Deans of the Faculties of the Botswana College of Agriculture; and
(f) Such number of staff development fellows of the Institute or Centre as the Board may determine.
(i) Each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre shall have a Board which shall meet at least twice each semester but otherwise shall regulate its own procedure by the standing orders formulated by it.
(ii) The Executive Committee of the Board of an Institute or Centre (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Dean of the faculty, who shall be Chairperson;
(b) Two persons appointed by the Senate; and
(c) Heads of Departments;
(d) Such members of the academic staff of the Departments of the Faculty as the Board may determine;
(e) One representative of each of the Faculties including the Faculties of the Botswana College of Agriculture;
(f) Director of Library Services; and
(g) Director of Academic Services;
(h) Director of Academic Development;
(i) Director of Institutional Planning;
(j) Director of Research and Development;
(k) Director of Continuing Education. 55. The Committee shall:
(i) Review the University’s academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
(ii) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are central to the academic plans of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(iii) Review any matters relating to a member or members of staff which a Faculty Board, individual students, or when it is discussing any other matter which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Dean of the Faculty, who shall be Chairperson;
(b) Such members of the academic staff of the Faculty Board as the Board may determine;
(c) The Heads of Department of the Faculty;
(d) One representative of each of the Departments offering programmes;
(e) Two persons elected by the Faculty Board one of whom shall be a professor or an associate professor;
(f) Two persons appointed by the Senate; and
(g) Such other persons as the Senate may determine.
(i) The members of the School Board referred to in Statute 58 (i) (a) and (b) shall vacate their seats at the end of each academic year but shall be eligible for reappointment.
(ii) The members of the School Board referred to in Statute 61 (ii) (a) and (b) shall vacate their seats at the end of each academic year but shall be eligible for reappointment.
(iii) Subject to the direction of Senate, the Board of an Institute or Centre may:
(a) Decide on matters of general policy regarding the work of the Institute or Centre, after consultation with the staff of the Institute or Centre;
(b) Establish advisory groups to give the Board and the Director advice on any academic work, research project, or consultancy being, or to be, undertaken by the Institute or Centre;
(c) Notwithstanding the generality of Statute 61 (i), advise the Director of the Institute or Centre on the priorities and emphasis of scholarship required for the benefit of the nation or of particular sectors of the nation;
(d) Approve the affiliation or attachment to an Institute or Centre of individual academics;
(e) Generally direct and approve proposals for activities of the Institute or Centre in pursuance of its objectives;
(f) Consider all matters referred to it by Senate and report thereon to the Senate.
(iv) The quorum of the Board of an Institute or Centre shall be one third of the membership thereof.
Part XIII Executive Committees of Boards, Schools, Institutes or Centres 56. Each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre shall have a Board which shall meet at least twice each semester but otherwise shall regulate its own procedure by the standing orders formulated by it.
57. (i) There shall be a Faculty Board of each Faculty which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Dean of the faculty, who shall be Chairperson;
(b) Two persons appointed by the Senate; and
(c) Heads of Departments;
(d) Such members of the academic staff of the Departments of the Faculty as the Board may determine;
(e) One representative of each of the Faculties including the Faculties of the Botswana College of Agriculture;
(f) Director of Library Services; and
(g) Director of Academic Services;
(h) Director of Academic Development;
(i) Director of Institutional Planning;
(j) Director of Research and Development;
(k) Director of Continuing Education.
58. Each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre shall have a Board which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Dean of the Faculty, who shall be Chairperson;
(b) One person appointed by Senate;
(c) One representative from each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre who shall be of the rank of at least senior lecturer or equivalent;
(d) One representative of each of the Departments offering postgraduate programmes;
(e) Director of Library Services or representatives;
(f) Two postgraduate students elected for a period of one academic year by and from among the postgraduate students; and
(g) Such other persons as the Senate may determine.
(i) The members of the School Board referred to in Statute 58 (i) (b) and (c) shall vacate their seats at the end of each academic year but shall be eligible for reappointment.
(ii) The quorum of the School Board shall be one third of the membership thereof.
(iii) The School Board shall exclude from its meeting the student members when it is considering the academic performance in examination or otherwise, of individual students, or when it is discussing any matters relating to a member or members of staff which the Board in its discretion shall consider confidential.
(iv) The Board shall be a body of members of the academic staff, which shall be, or to be, undertaken by the School Board as an advisory body to the Dean or Director.
(v) The Committee may make rules and regulations to govern its proceedings, provided that the Dean or the Director may summon meetings whenever the Dean or Director may deem it necessary to do so.
59. The Executive Committee of the Board of each Faculty Board (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Dean of the Faculty;
(b) The Deputy Dean of the Faculty;
(c) The Heads of Department of the Faculty;
(d) One person appointed by the Senate;
(e) One person who is a member of the School Board, elected by the School Board;
(f) One person who is a member of the School Board, elected by the School Board; and
(g) Such other persons as the Senate may determine; and
(f) Such number of staff development fellows of the Institute or Centre as the Board may determine.
(i) The members of the Board referred to in Statute 64 (i) (ii) and (iii) shall vacate their seats at the end of each academic year but shall be eligible for reappointment.
(ii) Subject to the direction of Senate, the Board of an Institute or Centre may:
(a) Decide on matters of general policy regarding the work of the Institute or Centre, after consultation with the staff of the Institute or Centre;
(b) Establish advisory groups to give the Board and the Director advice on any academic work, research project, or consultancy being, or to be, undertaken by the Institute or Centre;
(c) Notwithstanding the generality of Statute 64 (i), advise the Director of the Institute or Centre on the priorities and emphasis of scholarship required for the benefit of the nation or of particular sectors of the nation;
(d) Approve the affiliation or attachment to an Institute or Centre of individual academics;
(e) Generally direct and approve proposals for activities of the Institute or Centre in pursuance of its objectives;
(f) Consider all matters referred to it by Senate and report thereon to the Senate.
(i) The quorum of the Board of an Institute or Centre shall be one third of the membership thereof.
60. Subject to the Statutes and to such limitations as the Senate may impose, the School Board shall:
(i) Promote the development of quality and relevance in the provision of graduate studies;
(ii) Approve admissions and progression for all graduate students;
(iii) Provide leadership in the co-ordination and development of graduate studies;
(iv) Maintain quality across all graduate programmes;
(v) Assist with fund-raising and marketing of graduate programmes;
(vi) Establish guidelines for supervision of graduate students (approval of supervisors and monitor the progress of graduate students);
(vii) Maintain clear lines of communication with each faculty and department offering graduate studies;
(viii) Work to enhance the facilities available to graduate students.
61. (i) There shall be a Board of each Institute or Centre which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Director of the Institute or Centre who shall be the chairperson;
(b) Such members of the academic staff as the Board may from time to time determine;
(c) One member from each Faculty elected by the Faculty Board;
(d) One member of Senate elected by Senate;
Part XXVIII Appointments of Deans, Deputy Deans and Council and Senate as may from time to time be prescribed in

(i) The Dean or Director shall be the chief executive officer of the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre to which he/she is appointed and in the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre shall:

(a) Subject to the Act and these Statutes, be responsible for its implementation and promotion of the academic policies of the University and shall promote academic excellence in the teaching, research and service programmes of the University. He/She shall provide academic leadership to the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre, and shall have the power to make regulations directing and co-ordinating the formulation and implementation of the academic plans and programs of the departments of the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre.

(ii) The Dean or Director, subject to the approval of the Vice Chancellor may delegate any powers or duties under this Statute subject to such restrictions and conditions as may be imposed, provided that a power delegated shall not include power to sub-delegate.

(iii) By virtue of office, the Dean or Director shall be a member of all the boards and committees in the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre. In addition, he/she shall be a member of such committees of the Council and Senate as from time to time may be prescribed in these Statutes.

67. Where the Dean of a Faculty is unable, whether by reason of his/her absence from the University, or for any other reason, to carry out any of his/her functions as such, the Deputy Dean of the Faculty shall act as Dean of the Faculty. If the Deputy Dean is unable to act as Dean, the Deputy Vice Chancellor may, after consulting the Dean, if that is reasonably practicable, and the members of the Executive Committee of the Faculty Board appoint a person of the rank of at least an associate professor from among those members of the Faculty Board referred to in Statute 57 (ii) (c) to act as Dean of the Faculty.

68. Where the Dean of the School of Graduate Studies is unable, whether by reason of his/her absence from the University, or for any other reason, to carry out any of his/her functions as such, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall, after consulting the Dean, if that is reasonably practicable, and the members of the Executive Committee of the Board of the School of Graduate Studies, appoint a person of the rank of at least an associate professor from among members of the Faculty Boards to act as Dean of the School.

69. Where the Director of an Institute or a Centre is unable, whether by reason of his/her absence from the University, or for any other reason, to carry out any of his/her functions as such, the Deputy Director shall act as such, provided that a power delegated shall not include power to sub-delegate.

70. The Dean of a Faculty shall assist the Dean in the formulation, implementation and evaluation of the academic policies of the Faculty and shall have responsibility for ensuring the academic plans and programs of the departments of the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre shall:

(a) Take such action as is necessary to ensure the quality of the academic programmes offered in the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre;

(b) Subject to the Act and these Statutes, be responsible for its implementation and promotion of the academic policies of the University and shall promote academic excellence in the teaching, research and service programmes of the University. He/She shall provide academic leadership to the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre, and shall have the power to make regulations directing and co-ordinating the formulation and implementation of the academic plans and programs of the departments of the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre.

71. Each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre shall have a Director who shall be appointed by the Academic and Administrative Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee taking into consideration the recommendation of the appropriate Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee.

72. (i) The Dean of the School of Graduate Studies shall be appointed by the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee taking into consideration the recommendation of a Special Selection Committee which shall consist of the following members:

(a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall be chairperson;

(b) The Deans of the Faculties and the Schools of the University and the Deans of the Faculties of the Botswana College of Agriculture;

(c) Two Professors appointed by the Senate;

(d) Director of Human Resources or representative.

(iii) The Dean or Director shall make their candidacy known either through an application or through a nomination or by invitation of the University of Botswana.

(iv) In the event of the establishment of a new Faculty, or where a vacancy of Dean of Faculty has been advertised in accordance with Statute 71 (ii) and it has been determined that there are no suitable internal candidates, the University shall, after consultation with the Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee, extend the search for a Dean internationally. In this event, the requirements shall be for a person holding the rank of associate professor or above.

(v) A Dean appointed in accordance with Statute 71 (iv) above shall, upon successful completion of two three-year terms, have the option to apply to take up appointment at the appropriate rank in the relevant Department by filling a vacant position. Alternatively, the University may offer appointment on a temporary basis for a period not exceeding three years.

(vi) The file of candidates shall be reviewed by the appropriate Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee which shall recommend a short list of candidates to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee for appointment as Deans and Deputy Deans of the Faculties and Directors of Institutes and Centres.

(vii) No person shall be eligible for appointment as Dean, Deputy Dean, or Director unless he/she has been, for the twelve months prior to the completion of the initial three year term, a member of the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre and Promotions Committee taking into consideration the performance of the incumbent to the Special Selection Committee which shall make a recommendation to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

(viii) The Dean, Deputy Dean or Director shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall provide a report to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

(ix) Subject to these Statutes, the Dean of the School of the University shall hold the initial appointment as such for three years, and shall be eligible for reappointment for a further term of three years provided that he/she shall not hold office for a continuous period exceeding six years.

(x) If the Dean intends to extend the term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall submit an assessment of the performance of the incumbent to the Special Selection Committee which shall make a recommendation to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee on the reappointment of the Dean.

(xi) Before the completion of the initial three year term, the Dean shall inform the Deputy Vice Chancellor of higher intentions regarding renewal of the term of office; which intention shall be recorded in writing at least 60 days prior to the completion of the said initial three year term.

(xii) If the Dean does not intend to renew the term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall initiate the process of appointment of a new Dean.

Part XXX Departmental Boards

73. (i) Every Academic Department shall have a Departmental Board which shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Head of the Department, who shall be chairperson;

(b) The full-time members of the academic staff of the Department;

(c) Not more than three students elected annually by the students of the Department from among themselves;

(d) Staff Development Fellows of the Department;

(e) Such other persons as the Department may determine from time to time.

(ii) Part-time members of the academic staff may attend the meeting of the Department Board at the discretion of the Head of Department but shall have no vote.

74. (i) The functions of a Departmental Board shall be to:

(a) Make recommendations for programmes and courses in the Department;

(b) Consider the general organization of programmes and courses of study and research within the Department and make recommendations to the Faculty Board and the Board of the School of Graduate Studies;

(c) Make arrangements for the examination of each course in the Department and the selection of external examiners for their academic programmes;
(b) Initiate recruitment and recommend candidates for appointment to posts within the Department;
(c) From time to time consider the progress and conduct of the students of the Department and make regular reports to the Faculty Board and to the Board of the School of Graduate Studies;

(i) Consider other academic matters as determined by the Department.

(ii) A Departmental Board shall exclude from its meetings the student members when it is considering the academic performance in examinations or otherwise, of individual students, or when it is discussing the appointment or promotion of a member of staff or any other matter relating to a member or members of staff which a Departmental Board in its discretion shall consider confidential.

95. Every Departmental Board shall meet at least twice each semester, but otherwise shall regulate its own procedure including the creation and establishment of committees.

Part XXXII Affiliated and Associate Institutions

96. The Senate shall participate in the formulation, implementation and evaluation of the academic policies of the University and shall promote academic excellence in the teaching, research and service programmes of the University. In addition, the Head of a Department shall provide academic leadership to the Department by planning, directing, and co-coordinating the formulation and implementation of the academic plans and programmes of the Department.

(ii) The Head of a Department shall be appointed by the Vice Chancellor after receiving a recommendation from the Dean of the Faculty concerned, who shall make such recommendation after consulting the full-time members of the academic staff of the Department and the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs).

(iii) No person shall be eligible for appointment as Head of Department unless he/she has served, for the twelve months preceding his/her appointment, or of above the rank of senior lecturer.

(iv) The Head of Department shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Dean of the Faculty who shall provide a report to the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs).

(v) Subject to these Statutes, the Head of a Department shall hold the appointment as such for three years, and shall be eligible for reappointment for a further term of three years provided that he/she shall not hold office for a continuous period exceeding six years.

(vi) On completion of the second term of office, a Head of a Department shall not be eligible for further appointment to the position of Head of a Department until a three year period has elapsed.

(vii) If the Head of a Department intends to renew the term of office (which intention shall be recorded in writing at least 60 days prior to the completion of the said initial three year term), the Dean shall, after consultation with the full-time members of the academic staff and the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs), make a recommendation to the Vice Chancellor on re-appointment of the Head of Department.

(viii) If the Head of a Department does not intend to renew his/her term of office, the Dean shall initiate the process of appointment of a new Head of Department.

Part XXXIII Affiliated Institutions

77. The Council may on the recommendation of the Senate, approve the affiliation of the University with any other institution of teaching or research situated within or outside Botswana and may designate it an Affiliated Institution of the University.

(ii) In respect of any Affiliated Institution the Senate shall:
(a) Advise on and assist in the preparation of programmes of instruction;
(b) Validate programmes of instruction, examinations and the granting of certificates and other awards of the Affiliated Institutions; and
(c) Have the right of inspection and each institution affiliated to the University to observe observance of affiliation regulations.

(i) The Senate shall establish a Board of Affiliation with the following functions:
(a) Consider recommendations concerning the growth and development of the Affiliated Institutions;
(b) To consider matters concerning regulations, syllabi, assessment procedures, and teaching methods and to make recommendations to Senate accordingly;
(c) To oversee assessment procedures and to appoint external examiners;
(d) To deal with any matter of affiliation that may be delegated by Senate from time to time;
(e) To receive reports on other matters concerning Affiliated Institutions;
(f) To encourage research initiatives in the areas of educational expertise of the Affiliated Institutions;
(g) To present periodic reports to Senate;
(h) To consider and recommend examination results and awards to Senate.

(i) The membership of the Board of Affiliation shall be determined by Senate after consultation with the governing bodies of the Affiliated Institutions.

(ii) The Director of Academic Development shall be chairperson of the Board.

78. Associate Institutions

(i) The Council may, on the recommendation of the Senate, designate any academic or research institution situated within Botswana and seeking to offer programmes leading to the award of degrees, diplomas and other awards of the University of Botswana, an Associate Institution of the University.

(ii) The award of degrees, diplomas and other awards of an Associate Institution shall be the responsibility of, and shall be made by, the University of Botswana.

(iii) In respect of degrees, diplomas and other awards to be granted by the University, the University Senate shall be entirely responsible for approving programmes and courses of study, regulating the conduct of examinations, the marking of examinations, and the granting of such degrees, diplomas, or awards.

(iv) The governing body of an Associate Institution shall obtain the approval of the University in respect of:
(a) The appointment, promotion and review of academic staff and of Deans and Heads of Departments who teach courses, or are responsible for programmes leading to the awards by the University of Botswana; and
(b) The establishment of Boards for each Faculty or Department which is responsible for programmes leading to the awards of the University of Botswana.

Part XXXIII Appointments, Promotions and Review Committees

79. [The appointment, promotion, and annual appraisal and performance review of every academic member of staff and of every member of the support staff of the University shall be made by an Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee.]

(ii) Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committees shall make recommendations for the appointment or the promotion of staff in accordance with the provisions of Statutes 30 and 31.

80. Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review Committees

(i) There shall be a Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee of each Faculty (in this part referred to as ‘the Committee’) which shall have the following members:
(a) The Dean of the Faculty who shall be Chairperson; and where the Dean is under review, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall be the Chairperson;
(b) The Deputy Dean;
(c) Heads of Departments;
(d) Two members elected by the Faculty Board;
(e) One professor or associate professor from each Department, elected by the members of the Departmental Board, provided where the Department does not have positions of associate professor and professor, or the positions are vacant, the Department shall be represented by a senior member of the academic staff elected by the members of the Departmental Board; (f) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than two Professors with special competence from outside the Faculty; and
(g) The Director of Human Resources or representative.

(ii) Subject to such directions as may be given by the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee, the Committee shall recommend the appointment, the promotion and review of the academic staff of the Faculty.

81. Appointment, Promotion and Review of Academic Staff in Institutes or Centres

(i) The appointment, promotion, or review of academic staff who are members of a Centre or Institute which is not part of a Faculty shall be considered by the Faculty Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee of that Faculty which contains the discipline or academic subject area of the staff member under consideration.

(ii) In such circumstances, the membership of the Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review committee specified under Statute 80 (i) shall be extended to include the Director of the Institute or Centre concerned.

(iii) When considering the appointment, promotion or review of professors of the University who are members of an Institute or Centre which is not part of a Faculty, the membership of the Committee specified under Statute 80 (i) shall be extended to include a professor or an associate professor of the Institute or Centre concerned provided where the Department does not have positions of associate professor and professor, or the positions are vacant, the Department shall be represented by a senior member of the Academic Staff elected by members of the Departmental Board.

(iv) An Institute or a Centre which is not part of a Faculty shall have an Appointments, Promotions, and Review Selection Committee which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Director of the Institute or Centre who shall be the Chairperson;
(b) Three members of the academic staff of the Institute or Centre elected by the academic staff of the Institute or Centre;
(c) Two persons with special competence, from outside the Institute or Centre.

(v) No recommendation on the appointment, promotion or review of academic staff of the University who are members of an Institute or Centre which is not part of a Faculty shall be made by a Faculty Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee unless it has considered every recommendation made to it by an Appointments, Promotions, and Review Selection Committee in accordance with Statute 81 (iv).

82. Support Staff Appointments, Promotions and Review Committees

(i) For the purposes of this Statute, the Library and any other group of staff which Council shall specify, shall be regarded as Departments and the term Head of Department shall be correspondingly interpreted.

(ii) Where support staff consists of a cadre confined to a single Department, there shall be Departmental Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committees which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Head of Department, who shall be chairperson;
(b) Director of Human Resources or representative;
(c) Three members of the staff of the Department; and
(d) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than four additional members with special competence from within or outside the University.

(iii) Where support staff consist of a common cadre which is not confined to a single Department, there shall be for each such cadre a Common Cadre Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Director, Human Resources, who shall be the Chairperson;
(b) The Deputy Director (Appointments and Administration);
(c) Two members of the staff belonging to the common cadre;
(d) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than four...
ACT AND STATUTES

additional members with special competence from within or outside the University.
(iv) Heads of Departments to, or within which, an appointment or a promotion of common cadre staff is to be made shall be invited but only when the business of their Department is under consideration.

83. Special Appointments
(i) Notwithstanding the provisions of Statutes 80, 81, and 82, the Vice Chancellor may, in the event that he/she is satisfied that exceptional circumstances so require, and on the recommendation of any academic, support or other unit of the University, appoint any person as a member of staff of the University for a period not exceeding twelve (12) months.
(ii) Appointments made under this provision shall be reported periodically to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

84. Miscellaneous
(i) Where a spouse or relation of a member of Appointments, Promotions Review Committee, constituted under these Statutes is a candidate for appointment or promotion under consideration by the Committee, the member concerned shall recuse himself/herself from any further consideration of the matter. Where the Chairperson is recused in accordance with the provisions hereof, another member shall be elected to preside. Heads of Departments, where recused, must be represented by a senior member of staff of the Department.

(ii) Subject to Statute 83, no appointment shall be made to any vacant post within the approved establishment of any Department of the University unless the vacancy which exists has been advertised publicly for a reasonable period in such a manner as the Council shall determine.

Part XXXV Terms and Conditions of Service of Members of University Staff
85. (i) Subject to these Statutes, an employee of the University shall hold his/her appointment upon such terms and conditions of service as the Council shall in such case determine.

(ii) The terms and conditions of service of every employee of the University shall be set out in a written contract of service.

(iii) Without prejudice to the foregoing, every member of staff of the University shall be subject to the general authority of the Council and of the Vice Chancellor.

86. Every contract of service between the University and an employee of the University shall contain or be deemed to contain a provision that the contract is subject to the Employment Act, University Act and Statutes, and to all regulations made hereunder.

87. Where an employee of the University is convicted by a court within or outside Botswana, of an offence which is a criminal offence under the laws of Botswana and in consequence thereof is sentenced to imprisonment, whether in respect of the conviction in question or for any offence of which he/she is convicted thereupon, another member shall be elected to preside. Heads of Departments, where recused, must be represented by a senior member of staff of the Department.

Part XXXVI Students Representative Council
88. (i) The affairs of the students of the University shall be governed by a Students Representative Council.

(ii) The constitution of the Students Representative Council shall be subject to review and/or amendment in such manner as the Constitution provides and/or as directed by Council should Council find it necessary consequently in the interests of the student body.

(iii) The function of the Students Representative Council shall be:

(a) to represent the students in their relations with the authorities of the University and other relevant bodies;

(b) to develop the intellectual, cultural, social and sporting life of the students; and

(c) to foster the corporate spirit of the students.

89. Subject to the observance by them of the Statutes and of regulations prescribed under these Statutes, the students shall enjoy all the privileges and facilities available to them in the University.

Part XXXVII Ordinances/Regulations
90. The University reserves the right, through Ordinances and/or Regulations, to implement measures to control and to regulate access to, and movement within, its buildings and premises, and to promulgate such other regulations as may be required to establish and maintain good order, and to protect persons and property provided that such measures shall at all times be consistent with the preservation of individual rights of movement, association and privacy.

Part XXXVIII Amendments to Statutes
91. (i) Subject to the Act and the Statutes, the Council may make amendments and/or revocations of any Statute which, in the opinion of Council, is appropriate to be prescribed for the better carrying out of the University’s functions and in furtherance of these Statutes.

(ii) Ordinances/Regulations may provide such information, activities or acts as, in the opinion of the Council, may be appropriate.

(iii) The Council may at any time amend or repeal any Ordinance/Regulation.

(iv) Ordinances/Regulations need not be published in the Calendar, but the Council shall publish them in such a manner as the Council considers will best make them known to the persons to whom they apply.

3.1 An investigator or investigators, as the case may be, shall, having completed the investigation forthwith, submit a report thereon to the Vice Chancellor which report may contain any proposals and such recommendations as he/she or they may think fit to make.

3.2 Neither the Vice Chancellor, nor any investigator shall disclose to any person any information obtained or disclosed during any investigation, save as required by the Statutes of the University.

*Please note that the University of Botswana Statutes are currently under review and/or consolidation.*
University of Botswana
Gaborone, Botswana
Tel: (+ 267) 355 0000 (Switchboard)
     (+ 267) 355+ (extention)
Fax: (+ 267) 355 6591
Telex: 2429BD
Telegrams: University Gaborone